

**T**he hystory of the moost noble and valyaunt knyght Arthur of  
lytell bityayne, translated out of frenshe in to englische by the no:  
ble Johan bourghcher knyght lord Barbers, newly Imprinted.



*At rest*

## The prologe

Here foloweth the transla-  
tours prologue.

**A**s moche as it is delectable  
to all humayne nature to rede  
and to here these auncient noble  
hystories of the chivalrous  
feates and marttyrall prowesses of the  
victorious knyghtes of tymes paste  
whose tryumphauit dedes of wyrtynge  
were not wolde be had cleue oute of  
remembraunce. And also because that  
ydelnesse is reputed to be the moder of al  
vices, wherfore somewhat in eschewynge  
therof and in the waye of lowlytudytyon  
and learnynge I John Bourghchere  
knyght lord Berners haue enterprysed  
to translate out of frensche in to our ma-  
ternal tongue a noble hystory makynge  
mencon of the famous dedes of the ry-  
ght valyaunt knyght Arthur sonne and  
heire to the noble duke of Brytayne and  
of the fayre lady florence daughter and  
heire to the myghty Emendus kynge of  
the noble realme of sorolours, and of the  
grete trouble that they endured or they  
attayned to the perfourmaunce of theyr  
vertuous amorous despers, for fyrste  
they overcame many harde & straunge ad-  
uentures the whiche as to our humayne  
reason wolde seme to be incredible, wher-  
fore after that I had begon this sayd pro-  
cesse I haue determined to haue left and  
gyuen vp my labour for I thoughte it  
wolde haue be reputed but a folpe in me  
to translate beseming suche a fayned ma-  
ter wherin se meth to be so many byposi-  
syblytees, how be it than I called agay-  
ne to my remembraunce that I had redde  
and seen many a sondrye volume of dy-  
uerse noble hystories wherin were con-

tayned the redoubted dedes of the aun-  
cient inuynsible conquerours & of other  
ryght famous knyghtes who achieved ma-  
ny a straunge and wonderfull aduentu-  
re the whiche by playne letter as to our  
vnderstandynge wolde seme in a maner  
to be supernaturall, wherfore I thought  
that this present treatyse myght as well  
be reputed for trouthe as some of those.  
And also I doubted not but that the first  
auctour of this boke deuyfed it not with  
out some maner of trouthe or vertuous  
erent, the whiche consyderacyons and  
other gaue me agayne audacyte to con-  
tinue forth my fyrste purpose tyll I had  
fynysshed this sayd boke, not presumyn-  
ge that I haue reduced it in to frensche or  
nate polysshed englyshe, for I knowe  
my selfe insuffycent in the faccondpous  
arte of rethoryke, nor also I am but a ler-  
ner of the language of frensche, how be  
it I truste my symple reason hath ledde  
me to the vnderstandinge of the true sen-  
tence of the mater, accordyng to the whi-  
che I haue folowed as nere as I coude  
despyrge all the rebets and herets ther-  
of to take this my rude traslacion in gre-  
and psonfante be to laye it to myn by-  
commynge and derke Ignorance and to  
mynyshe, adde, or augmet as they shall  
fynde cause requysyte, and in theyr so do-  
ynge I shall praye to god that after this  
vayne and transitory lyfe he may byrn  
gethem vnto the perdurable Joye of he-  
uen. Amen.

Thus endeth the transla-  
tours prologue.

## Tabula

¶ Here after foloweth the table of  
thys present hyſtorie.

¶ The fyrſte chapyter maketh mencyon  
of the byrth of the noble kynge Arthur  
ſone and heire to the duke of Brytayne.  
Capitulo.i. folio.i.

¶ How þe duke of brytayne deliuered his  
ſon Arthur to the gouernance of a pri-  
dent knyght named ſyr Gouernat who  
ſhoulde enſpygne hi in all goodly maners &  
bedes of armes ſo that afterwarde there  
was none lyke vnto hym. ca.ii. folio.i.

¶ How Arthur founde in the foreſt a no-  
ble lady wout ſocour, & with her a ſayce  
ponge mapde her doughter named Je-  
hannet befoze a lytell lodge the whiche  
they had made of þe bryches of the trees  
And how þe Arthur was amorous of the  
ſayd Jehannet. caplo.iii. folio.i.

¶ How Arthur cauſed to be deliuered to  
Jehannet & her moder the reuenues that  
belonged to the ſtange of ponde of the fo-  
reſt, whereby there ſtoode a ſayce goodly  
place of pleaſure, & afterwarde Arthur  
ſhoulde oftentimes reſorte thider to paſſe  
the tyme with them. cap.iiii. folio.ii.

¶ How within. viii. dayes after Arthur &  
Gouernat went to þe ſtange to ſee þe lady  
Jehannet her doughter. ca.v. folio.iii.

¶ How that the duke & duches toke coun-  
ſeyle to marry theyr ſon Arthur, & howe  
they ſent theyr ſeruarde to the lady Lu-  
ke of oſtryge ſo, to demaunde her dought-  
er ſo, Arthur. cap.vi. folio.iii.

¶ How the ſeneſhall demaunded þe dought-  
er of oſtryge ſo, Arthur of brytayne, the  
whiche request wote ſore was graun-  
ted hym. cap.vii. folio.iii.

¶ How þe Arthur was ſore diſpleaſed ſo,  
that his father wold marry hi to þe dought-  
er of oſtryge becauſe it was ſaid he was  
of yll gouernance. ca.viii. folio.iii.

¶ How þe Arthur went to ſee Jehannet &  
declared to her how the duke his father  
ſhoulde marry hi whereof he was ſore diſ-  
pleaſed ſo, the loue of her. ca.ix. folio.iii.

¶ How þe Arthur & Hector his coſyns ge-  
mayne were made knyghtes ſo, the loue  
of Arthur, who than ſhoulde enſure Per-  
ron doughter to the lady Luke of oſtryge, &  
of ygrete tournaie þe was there done at na-  
uities ſo, the loue of Arthur. ca.x. folio.iii.

¶ How that Arthur wedded ſayce Per-  
ron doughter to the lady Luke of oſtry-  
ge. And of the proteſtacyon that he made  
befoze all the barony. ca.xi. folio.iii.

¶ How this lady Luke of oſtryge ſente  
ſo, Jehannet & cauſed her ſecretlye the  
firſt night to lie with Arthur becauſe þe per-  
ſon was no mayde, to the entente that Ar-  
thur ſhoulde not perceyue it. ca.xii. folio.iii.

¶ How þe Jehannet who was a bed with  
Arthur in the ſtede of his wyfe Perro, &  
of ſhe wold ſuffre him to touche her ſhe  
demanded her endowment. ca.xiii. folio.iii.

¶ How that Arthur Hector, & Gouernat  
went early in the morninge to ſee Jehannet  
at the ſtange, who ſhe wold vnto Arthur  
all the treaſon of his wyfe, & how that  
ſhe had layne with him all that night  
in ſtede of Perro, whereof he meruail-  
led greatly. cap.xiiii. folio.iii.

¶ How þe Gouernat raynquished in ba-  
tyle ſyr Buſel cauſed hi to make know-  
ledge of this treaſon & counſelled how þe  
brought Jehannet fro the ſtange ſo, to ly  
all nyght with Arthur. ca.xv. folio.iii.

¶ How Arthur demaunded licence of his  
father and mother to go play him out of  
his owne countrey ſo, he wold go ſeeke  
aduentures to ſee whether by his force &  
proweſſe. cap.xvi. folio.iii.

¶ How the mighty kinge of Eſpaigne  
called Emeus helde open courte in his  
realme, where as was ſoure payſantes  
ii.

## Tabula

kynges, who were al his subgettes, and  
there pe shal here of thynges ryght mer-  
uapulous. capitulo. xvi. folio xlii.

**T**he description of the facyon and sy-  
tuacion of the mount peryllous the whi-  
che was conquered by the pryncesse of Ar-  
thur. capitulo. xviii. folio. xliii.

**H**ow it was determyned that the que-  
ne Fenyce shoulde take her chaumber in  
the palays besyde the castell of the porte  
noyre. capitulo. xix. folio. xv.

**H**ow that the daughter of the myghty  
kyng Emendus & of Fenyce his quene  
was destyned ouer the fountaine in þ her-  
ber of the mount peryllous by iii. quenes  
of þ sayr, the chiefe of them was named  
Dioscorpe, who was the mooste sayrest  
creature of all the worlde. ca. xx. fo. xvi.

**H**ow þ king of balefol sent his son  
to þ city of Sabba for to be brought by  
in the company of florence. ca. xxi. fol. eo.

**H**ow þ the quene fenice mother to flo-  
rence dyed, & how she made her testamēt  
guyng to her daughter a kyng in put-  
tyng her therby in possession of the real-  
me of blanchetowre. ca. xxii. fo. xvi.

**H**ow the quene fenice mother to flo-  
rence was nobly buried. ca. xxiii. fo. eo.

**H**ow þ the emperour of rade the moze  
demanded of kyng Emendus the sayre  
florence his daughter in marriage. And  
of the answer þ kyng Emendus made  
to hym And also of the retine þ was ta-  
ken to mary florence, and how that mar-  
tier Steven knewe by the regarding of  
the planettes that there was commynge  
out of the west a knyght, who shoulde a-  
chiefe the adventures of the porte noyre  
And how he shoulde haue and enioye the  
Whyte shilde and the sword and obtayne  
florence in marriage, wherof she was  
greatly comforted, for in no wyse she lo-  
ued the emperour. ca. xxiiii. fo. xvi.

**H**ow that Arthur slewe threue knigh-  
tes, who hadde taken a Wape a yonge da-  
moyzell fro her father and mother, & had  
tyed her to a tree, there to haue defouled  
her virginitye, who was saued by Ar-  
thur. capitulo. xxv. folio. xx.

**H**ow that Arthur Hector & gouernac-  
lewe. xxx. theues in a grete forest the whi-  
che was a grete welth to all the countre,  
for they had pylled and wasted the coun-  
tre all aboute. Capitulo. xxvi. fo. xxi.

**H**ow that sy de la launde shewed to  
Arthur the occasyon why that this tour-  
ney was fyrst taken by the lord Beauen  
capitulo. xxvii. folio. xxii.

**H**ow that Arthur had the honour in  
the tourney that was made at Wyndes-  
trewe the Marshall of Myrpoys & the  
erle of Beauen, where as was dyuerse  
great kynges, erles, barons, and many  
other good knyghtes ryghte valpauite,  
whereby Arthur gate hym great thanke  
and prayse and was greatly honoured of  
all ladies and damoyelles there assem-  
bled. capitulo. xxviii. folio. xxvi.

**H**ow þ Arthur the second day had the  
honour of the tourney, & so to hym abode  
the pryce of the fye. ca. xxix. fol. xxix.

**H**ow that the Marshall of myrpoys for-  
enup that he had because that Arthur had  
the honour of the tourney and because he  
had beaten him downe, for he had wende  
hym selfe to haue ben the best knyght of  
the worlde, therfore he despyed Arthur &  
challenged hym to Juste. And howe that  
Arthur barniquyshed him and dyd break  
one of his armes and two rybbes in his  
spyes. capitulo. xxx. fol. xxxi.

**H**ow that Arthur was crowned to be  
kyng of al the knyghtes of the tourney &  
they promysed hym sayth & trouh to ser-  
ue hym in dedes of armes alwayes & in  
enery place where as it semed hym beste,

## Tabula

and the ponge kinge of Malogres dyd  
crown him. ca. xxi. fol. xxii.

How that arthur after his coronacio  
toke leue of the poe kyng and of al the  
othe lordes & knyghtes, ladies & damoy  
scilles, who conuayed him on hys Jour  
ney warde, and had great sojow to leue  
his company. ca. xxiii. fol. xxiiii

How arthur and his copany acted in  
the erledom of byewle marching against  
the land of lozolois and entered into the  
cite of byewle. the which was bespced  
bi the duke of ozgoule named malaguis  
because the erle wold not let hi haue his  
doughter in mariage, whereof by false  
treas he slew the erle. ca. xxv. fol. xxvi

How y arthur went alone to the duke  
of Ozgoule & gaue him his answer and  
bad hi abide no longer for the saye alice  
for he thewed him how y he had giue  
her to hector his colin. And how that he  
had promised to her his head because he  
slew her father by treason, to the which  
answer the duke was soze displeased  
so much that there was bywene them  
a great batayle. ca. xxviii. folio. xxix

How Hector & Gouvernar & syz  
dthes rode out of the Litte Wel accompanied  
to rescow arthur, who all alone assaye  
led the duke of Ozgoule and all his ar  
mie. cap. xxx. fol. xxxi

How arthur, Hector, Gouvernar & syz  
dthes discomfyred Peter the cornu, bo  
der to the duke who was comen to him  
with, liii. C. knyghtes, & there this cornu  
was slaine, & al his people slayne & take  
prisoners, and howe arthur toke the  
dukes hoise named asple, the best hoise  
as tha of the world. ca. xxxvi. fol. xxxviii

How that arthur & his copany brek  
ly discomfyred the duke & strake of hys  
head, & did sende it by Gouvernar to the  
saye lady Alice & to her moder as he had

promysed before. ca. xxxviii. fol. xl.

How arthur and his company wente  
to the cite of ozgoule for to take it by for  
ce, but the burgeses therof broughte bu  
ro him the keys, and dyd vnto him ho  
mage, and so dyd all the nobles of that  
countrey as vnto the saye chefe soueraine  
loze. cap. xxxix. fol. xli

How y arthur made his colin Hector  
duke of Ozgoule by the assent of all the  
lordes of y countrey. ca. xli. fol. xlii.

How that arthur & Gouvernar depar  
ted a sonder, and of the terrible aduentu  
res that eche of them founde of the mar  
agapne. cap. xli. fol. xlii

How Gouvernar after that he was des  
parted fro arthur found in a great forrest  
two knyghtes armed who had beate  
wounded an other knight & wold haue  
raupished his wyfe, and how he resco  
wed her and dyd vanyquyshe al her ene  
mies. ca. xlii. fol. xliii

How that Gouvernar came to a stronge  
castel called the byosse, & vanyquyshe  
the knyght that kept it. And how that  
after warde he was kept in that castell  
agaynst his will in great daunger of deeth  
till at the last arthur deliuered him as  
re shal here hereafter. ca. xliii. fol. xliii

How y arthur conquered the castell of  
the poe noye by his prouesse, & slew  
all them y kept it, & howe after that he  
entered in the halles of the palays, where  
he was assayed of two great & horribile  
lyons and of a great giuant, and how he  
ouercame them al with great payne, &  
achued all the meruaylous aduētures  
of the castel, the which are right wond  
erous to reherse. ca. xliiii. fol. xliii

How arthur after y he had achued y  
aduētures of the palays & deliuered the  
prisoners, & after how y he achued the  
aduenture y was in the galery going in  
.iii.

## Tabula

to the garden of the moſt perillous, & bi  
his myghte with a great barre bet down  
it. maſſue pimages of coper eche of the  
holding a ſnaple y was of ſuch wight y  
x. men might ſcant liſt one of them fro  
the erth, wherw they were euer beſtinge  
wyth great ſtrokes made by enchaſtre  
ment, to the intent that none ſholde paſſe  
into the gardens of the moſt perillous,  
a ſo tha ſapled and ended al the enchaſt  
maences of that place. cap. xliiii. fo. xlix.  
How maſter Streuen Wente with ar  
thur in the palays win the caſtell to the  
intent to ſe the wonderful aduſtures y  
arthur had there acheued. ca. xlv. fol. l.  
How proſerpyne quene of the ſayre a  
bout mydnyght appered to Arthur with  
great lycht of torches, and how that ſhe  
ſhewed him that win the moſt perillous  
there was the white ſhelde and the good  
ſwerde enchaſtres called belance, & how  
that he ſhould haue them with much ho  
nour if he ſhert durſt ſerue hym. And  
how the next day maſter Streuen ledde  
Arthur into y herber where as the white  
ſhelde was, the which could neuer be re  
meued fro the tree wheron it haged, and  
how chat Arthur toke it at his eaſe & cla  
ience the ſwerde alſo the whiche coude  
neuer befoze that tyme be drawen out of  
the ſhe the, noz it wold helpe no body but  
al only Arthur who drew it out lychtly,  
& after that it did him much helpe as  
ye ſhal here after. ca. xlv. fol. lii.  
How maſter Streuen ſhewed arthur  
how y Gouvernar his knyght was in the  
caſtel of broſſe, & how y the cuſtome of y  
caſtel was fyrſt begon. ca. xlv. fo. liii.  
How that arthur whan he was depar  
ted fro the porte noyze ſoz to go to deip,  
uer Gouvernar out of the caſtell of the  
broſſe & alſo ſoz to fyght with the mon  
ſter, he founde in a ſayre medow the ne

uew of the duke of bygoz accompanied  
with xiii. other knyghtes, who aſſayled  
hym right ſpyerly, but he defended hym  
ſelf ſo valiantly y he ſlew. iii. of them &  
wounded ſo the dukes neww that he  
was ſayne to be carried away in an hoſe  
liſter. cap. xlv. fol. liii.  
How that arthur fought w the mon  
ſter, the moſt ſoulleſt & horrible ſygure  
that euer was ſeen with mannis eyen  
& ſo baſtynquyſhed him by his valiant pro  
weſſe, & ſtake of his head & did ſende it  
to the ſayre florence. ca. xlv. fol. lii.  
How that the kyng Emericus ſent a  
knyght named Wyſebar accompanied  
with a thouſand men of warre to the in  
tent that he and hys company ſhould go  
ſight with the monſter, and how the ſaid  
knyght arrived at the monſters pyes the  
ſame ſeaſon whyle that Arthur and the  
monſter were ſyghting together, & there  
he and al hys company dyd ſe, how that  
Arthur ſlew the monſter without helpe  
cap. l. fol. lii.  
How ſy? Jembarras coſyn embuſſhed  
hym in a great foreſt wyth a great mul  
titude of me of warre to the intent to ſlea  
Arthur by treaſon, & there Arthur did w  
hys handes ſuch dedes y in a maner it  
was incredyble. And how that Gouver  
nar & Wyſebar were taken prſoners  
and led forth to a toure, & there Arthur  
ſlew of hys enemyes, v. hondred & mou  
ted into the toure, & ſo reſcowed the prſ  
oners in the ſpite of al the town & there  
wanne the palays. ca. li. fo. lix.  
How Arthur & hys copany were beſy  
ged in y palays by the duke of bygoz, but  
thanked be god they eſcaped by the ſubril  
arte of maſter Streue clerke to the ſayre  
florence of Sozolopa. ca. lii. fo. lxi.  
How maſter Streuen by the vertu of  
hys arte of nigromancy deſpynered arthur

## Tabula

& his cōpany fro peryl & daunger of ybus  
 of bygo; & his newwe. cap. liii. folio. lxxii.  
**C** How the newwe of Bysebar aryued  
 at the court of the mighty king Emen-  
 dus with the head of the monster; & dyd  
 salute the kynge and also the Emperour  
 of ynde Who was styl in the court atten-  
 dyng that the kynge shoulde give him in  
 maryage his doughter the sayre florence  
 and to her the head of the monster was  
 presented from Arthur, and he wold her  
 how that al onely by his noble prowesse  
 he had slayne the terrible monster of the  
 brosse. capitulo. liiii. folio. lxxv.  
**C** How that Arthur & mayster Steuen  
 wente to the garden pertaynyng to the  
 palays of the postenoyre, and entred in  
 to the ryche pauplion where as ymage  
 was holdyng in her handes the chaplet  
 the which she dyd set on Arthurs heade  
 in significacion how that he shold haue  
 the sayre florence to Whome the ymage  
 was resemblable, for there was non that  
 wolde haue florence in maryage wyth  
 out he shold dye an euell death, withoute  
 it were he that the ymage dyd geue vn-  
 to the sayd chaplet. ca. lv. folio. lxxvi.  
**C** How that Arthur slewe and dyscon-  
 fered. xv. knyghtes ryghte myghty and  
 purssant, Who were com to assaile his  
 hoost, Who was called the squyer of the  
 plagues. capitulo. lvi. folio. lxxvii.  
**C** How the gret vilayn broughte Arthur  
 where as he fought with a greate & a ter-  
 ryble lyon, but finally Arthur slew him  
 And how after he fought with a gret gy-  
 auntle and an horryble gaunte, and by  
 his prowesse he conquered them bothe, &  
 after that fought with a gret gyffon, &  
 this was the begynnynge of the aduen-  
 tures of the toure tenebrous, wherun ye  
 shal here many terrible and meruaylous  
 thynges, the which were all achyueved by

the onely prowesse of the balyaunte Ar-  
 thur. capitulo. lvii. folio. lxxviii.  
**C** How on the next mornynge the vilayn  
 broughte Arthur to an other aduenture  
 nye to the toure tenebrous, where as he  
 was fyrst assailed w terrible monstrous  
 byrdes and grette gyffons without nom-  
 bre, and after that he was assailed with  
 xiiii. knyghtes, and how he by his pro-  
 wesse slewe thym all. And also he bette  
 downe the gret machomet of bras out  
 of the whiche there yssued suche a Wynd  
 that it tourned aboute greate myllones  
 lyke poudre, and also how that he entred  
 into the castell tenebrous, and quenched  
 the fyre which was the cause of the gret  
 darkenes the whiche contayned the cyr-  
 cupte of. v. leges compasse as ye shal here  
 afterwarde. ca. lvi. folio. lxxix.  
**C** How arthur bette downe the gret ma-  
 chomet settynge in the vessell of bras, &  
 therby the wynde ceased. ca. lxi. folio. lxxx.  
**C** How that Arthur entred into the toure  
 tenebrous, and how he there quenched  
 the fyre, wherby all the terrible enchan-  
 tement ceased. ca. lxi. folio. lxxx.  
**C** How after y Bysebar & mayster Ste-  
 uen were departed fro Arthur fro the por-  
 te noyre they aryued at conyle where as  
 kynge emendus was, and in his compa-  
 ny the emperour of ynde, & his other. iii.  
 kynges holdyng the same tyme a grette  
 sumptuous open court, & there mayster  
 Steuen & Bysebar recounted to thym  
 all in open audyence the noble chyualry of  
 Arthur, & this same meane season there  
 came into the court a knyght all armed  
 and broughte trydnges to the kynge how  
 al the aduentures of the toure tenebrous  
 were achueved by the only promes of one  
 noble knyght. ca. lxi. folio. lxxxi.  
**C** How the Emperour was aferde leasse  
 florence shoulde cast her lone on Arthur,

## Tabula

wherfore he demaunded of the kyng her  
father to haue her in maryage wout any  
lenger delaye, wherwith the kyng was  
contente, but flozence wolde not agree  
thereto, wherwith the kyng her fader was  
with her ryght soze dyspleased as ye shal  
here after warde. ca. lxxii. folio. lxxviii.

How flozence whan she knewe þat mai  
ster Steue was come to þe court she was  
right glad, & how þe by his policy gate  
her lenger respyte, þe was tyll barclmeth  
tpe next after. ca. lxxii. folio. lxxix

How that Arthur was receiued of the  
fayre lady Margarete into the cype of  
Argence. capi. lxxiii, folio. lxxxii,

How that the next day the maister an  
swered for the lady, and Arthur toke her  
quarrell in hande agaynst þe tuges neuw  
sy: Almbarte, cap. lxxv, folio. lxxxvi,

How the same season whyle the kyng  
of ozqueneþ & al these other noble people  
were at dyner in great ioye and myrthe  
there came in a messenger fro the wounded  
knyght to Arthur desyryng hym to come  
& helpe him o: elles he wolde wyte hym of  
his deatly, wherwith al the court was soze  
troubled, & seased all they: Ioye for the  
loue of Arthur, for incontynent he depar  
ted fro the court & went forth to the mes  
senger, & how þe al the court fered greatly  
Arthur for that enterpryse, for there was  
neuer none þe ever returned agayne aliue  
fro that aduenture, cap. lxxvi folio. lxxxix,

How that Gouvernar in seyching of Ar  
thur had the honour of a courney, þe was  
made by the erle of the ple perdue, & there  
Gouenar was amorous of the countesse  
And how þe erle charged the countesse  
þe she shuld not speke to gouenar, wherof  
cuyll came to hym, for the nexte day Gou  
uenar dydde beate hym well in the tour  
ney and lape al night after with the coun  
tesse his wyfe, cap. lxxvii, folio. lxxxixii,

How that Gouvernar dydde beate delyue  
at the tourney the erle of the ple perdue,  
capitulo. lxxviii, folio. lxxxixb.

How that after Arthur was departed  
fro Argenton to go to the castell of hurte  
by se to he wounded knyght who had sent  
ozhym, in his waye at the last he founde  
at the entyrnge of a fayre forst thre la  
dyes of ryght excellent beaute of whom  
the chiefe was called Proserpyn quene of  
the fayre who greatly despyed Arthur of  
his loue, but in no wyse he wolde agre  
thereto, & there he lost his barlet that was  
his gird, wherfore it behoued hym to tary  
there all þe nyght. for it is darke & wyse  
not whether to go, cap. lxxix folio. lxxxvii,

How Arthur conquered the castell of  
hurte by se the mooste stronge place of the  
world nexte to the porte norze, where as  
was the damofell by whom the wounded  
knyght was hurte & there Arthur dydde  
soo moche by his prowlle that the sayd  
knyght reconered helth ca. lxx, folio. lxxxix.

How that Arthur whan he was depar  
ted fro the quene Proserpyne it fortunied  
hym to take his lodgyng in the neuwe  
of sy: Almbarte, who take Arthur and  
locked hym fast in a toure to thentent to  
haue slayne hym by nyght, but there Ar  
thur dyd so valiauntly that he brake out  
of the toure and slewe the knyght and al  
his people, capi. lxxxi, folio. c. ii,

How that Gouvernar in seyching of Ar  
thur by aduenture he passed for by þe same  
Castell wher as Arthur had slayne the  
lord therof, & there he was assayled of the  
frendes of the sayde knyght, & there dyd  
so valiauntly that he slewe the most part  
of them, cap. lxxxi. folio. c. iii,

How that Arthur founde, xl, knyghtes  
who had taken a damofell the whiche  
they founde in a forst, & they wold haue  
raupshyd her, & there Arthur rescowd

## Tabula

her and she we all the .xl. knights who  
wolde haue pilled & robbed the ladies  
castell and haue slayne all that had ben  
within. cap. lxxiii. fol. c. xii

How that mayster Steuen departed  
fro the porte norye to go to the tournay  
at Cornice and toke with him the noble  
florence riche pavilion, wherein was  
theymage with the chaplet who resem-  
bled in all thing vnto the lady florence  
the most fayre creature that was as cha-  
in all the worlde. ca. lxxiiii. folio. c. vi

How that Roibland of Bygoz speched  
Arthur of treason bycause he had slain  
his cousin at Argence, & so defied hym at  
the vntaunce, but Arthur at the fyrste  
stroke dyde hym downe horse & al to the  
erch, & brake one of his arms & two rib-  
bes, wherof florence was right sorowful  
and specially when she saw her lover Ar-  
thur wounded she neuer saw before. And  
how after that Roiblandes seruantes as-  
sayled Arthur to haue slayne him, but  
he valiantly defended himself & slew ma-  
nie of them cap. lxxv. fol. c. vii

Howe that duke Phillip and mayster  
Steuen wente to seche Arthur to  
the king of Orqueney and to the fayre  
florence. cap. lxxvi fol. c. xi

How a great and a puissant knight  
fied Arthur bycause he sate by florence  
& did pul downe a corner of her kerche-  
se, which the winde had blown vp,  
and so Arthur did iuste with him and  
did cast him to the erch so rudely that he  
was not able to lepe on horsebacke. v.  
monethes after. ca. lxxvii. fol. c. xiii

How florence & Arthur spake toge-  
at good leysse at the ende of the feste &  
there promysed to loue eche other, & there  
the queene Proserpine appered to them &  
she wed to florence howe that Arthur  
loued her truly, & how that they shoulde

haue eche other by the way of maryage  
but fyrst they shoulde endure great payne  
and trouble cap. lxxviii. fol. c. xiiii

How that Arthur had the honour of the  
tournay the fyrst daye the whiche was  
made for the fayre florence betwene  
king Emendus and the emperour who  
wolde haue had florence to his wife, on  
the which day arthur gat hym self great  
praysse amonge al the barony, in so much  
that euery knight was glad to be in his  
company, wherof the fayre florence was  
right sorowful, for she loued hym aboue  
al other. ca. lxxix. fol. c. xviii

How that florence sayned her self to  
be leue to the emperour that arthur shoulde  
not tournay the next day, for she was in-  
fere that Arthur had ben wery be cause  
of the trausple that he had endured the  
fyrst day of the tournay. And howe that  
the emperour when he knewe he wente  
to se her & so dyd her father king Emen-  
dus, and al other kinges dukes erles &  
barons, and all the hole chynalty. capi-  
tulo. lxxx fol. c. xxi

How that the tournay the nexte daye  
was deferred bycause of the dysense of  
florence. Cap. lxxxi fol. c. xxiii

How the ymage in the pavilion dyd  
set her chaplet on Arthurs hed in the pre-  
sence of the emperour & of .x. other kinges  
& of all the hole assembly, wherwith the  
emperour was right sorowful bycause  
he thought to haue had florence in ma-  
riage, but he sayled of his purpose, for  
the ymage toke no regarde neither to the  
emperour nor to none other there, but  
all only to Arthur to whose frely she dyd  
giue her chaplet. ca. lxxxii fol. c. xxviii

How that Proserpine quene of the fayr  
y who resembled to florence layde her  
downe in florence hed in florences stede,  
and she sente her vnto the porte norye

## Tabula

with the archebpyshop and al her knygh-  
tes. caplo. lxxxiii. folio. c. xxi.

How that lady Margarete of Argen-  
ton w<sup>th</sup> all her hole barony wente & mette  
florence & receiued her in to Argence w<sup>th</sup>  
grete feist & Joye. ca. lxxxiiii. fo. c. xxviii.

How that Proserpyne was ensured to  
the emperour in the stede of florence, and  
how that the kynge banysshed our of his  
countre the kynge of orquenev, & also the  
kynge of valefounde & mayster Steuen  
and Arthur. caplo. lxxxv. fo. c. xxviii.

How that Proserpyne quene of fay-  
ry was ledde to the chyrche to haue ben  
wedded to the emperour wenyng that it  
had ben florence, but whan the byshop  
had thought to haue put the weddinge  
rynge on her spynge, so depnly she banys-  
shed awaye, soo that none wyfte wheder  
she became, and so than they stode all a-  
basshed as though the clowdes had fal-  
len from heuen. caplo. lxxxvi. fo. c. xxx.

How that Arthur sent Gouvernar to his  
cosin Hector duke of orgoule despryge hi  
to come & helpe & socoure hym apens<sup>t</sup> the  
emperour of ynde, & apens<sup>t</sup> the kynge Eme-  
dus, who wolde bessege hi in the castell  
of the porte noyre. ca. lxxxvii. fo. c. xxxi.

How that Hector as he wente to warde  
the porte noyre to socour Arthur, he en-  
countred one of the kynges that was co-  
mynge to warde the emperour, and had in  
his company well to the nomb<sup>r</sup>e of. xliii.  
thousande men of warre, the whiche kyn-  
ge Hector slewe & all his people, soo that  
there was none that euer escaped saupn-  
ger w<sup>o</sup>, and soo they fledde awaye, and  
there Hector was a grete borpe and mo-  
che tresour and grete haboundaunce of by-  
table the whiche was al brought in to the  
porte noyre. ca. lxxxviii. folio. c. xxxii.

How that the emperour of ynde and the  
kynge Emedus accompanied with. viii.

kynges. & wel to the nomb<sup>r</sup>e of. iii. C. M.  
men of warre layde sege aboute the cas-  
tell of the porte noyre where as florence  
and Arthur were, wherof yll tourned to  
the emperour, for there he losse thye of his  
kynges and well an hondred thousande  
of his men. caplo. lxxxix. fo. c. xxxiii.

How Phylpp duke of sabary and may-  
ster Steuen sone to the kynge of valefou-  
de were made knyghtes, and of the dys-  
comfytur that Arthur made on the empe-  
tour. caplo. lxxxix. folio. c. xxxvi.

How that the emperour spake with the  
quene Proserpyne wenyng to hym that  
it had ben the fayre lady florence, but he  
was deceyued, for she dyde set a grete dis-  
corde bytwene hi & the kynge Emedus  
as ye shal here after. ca. lxxxix. fo. c. xxxvii.

How that after the emperour was thus  
departed in dyspleasure and had despyed  
the kynge with mortall warre the nexte  
nyghte solo wnyng by the subtyll arte of  
mayster Steuen all the kynges hoost was  
brought euery man faste a slepe, & in the  
meane tyme the mayster and s<sup>ome</sup> other  
knyghtes with hym bare the kynge Eme-  
dus faste a slepe as he laye, bedde and all  
by in to the palays of the Castell of the  
porte noyre. ca. lxxxix. folio. c. xli.

How that kynge Emedus whan that  
he awoke forgaue all his yl wyll to flo-  
rence his daughter, and dyde put all the  
gouernynge of his realme in to her han-  
des. capitulo. lxxxix. folio. c. xli.

How that Arthur demaunded congre-  
and lycence of kynge Emedus fader to  
his lady florence to departe in to Bry-  
tayne to se the duke of Brytayne his fa-  
der and the duchesse his moder, the whi-  
che lycence they gaue hym with moche  
payne, & florence was in grete sorowe for  
his departynge. ca. lxxxix. folio. c. xlii.

How Arthur in the waye as he wente

## Tabula

to bytaine he aryued in a fayre medowe  
that was fopnige to the towne of Lion  
sur le rone, & there he founde the kynge of  
malogre accompaied w diuerse erles &  
other barones, and thei had there cryed a  
grete tournai, & there Arthur & his com  
pany were frendly receyued & had grete  
chere bothe of the kynge & of al othe lordes  
& knyghtes. ca. lxxxv. fo. c. xliii.

How that Arthur & Hector his colyn  
with al theyr company aryued at Blois  
& how the erle of Blois father to Hector  
& the counsell his mother, & al the hole  
barony of the realme mette them on the  
way and receiued them with great ioye,  
for they had ben before in great fere &  
Arthur theyr neww & Hector theyr son  
had ben dead. ca. lxxxvi. fo. c. xlvii

How Arthur aryued in Bytayne and  
how the duke his father & al his chynal  
ty met & receyued Arthur with great ho  
nour & triumphe, & how & the duchesse  
his mother sorrowed for ioye whan she  
saw her sonne Arthur, & in like wyse did  
Jehannet his olde loue, wherof the mai  
ster & Phillip had great fere lest & Jehan  
net shoulde draw away Arthurs harte fro  
Florence because of the great loue & they  
saue betwene the. ca. lxxxvii fo. c. c.

How after that Arthur was departed  
fro kynge Sinendus & Florence to go se  
his frendes, Florence than departed fro  
the porte noye & the quene of ozquney  
& the lady Margaret of Argenton with  
her and went to visite her in her owne  
realme and castell of clere toun, where  
as the emperour came and besyged her  
for she was ware therof he & his com  
pany were laide round aboute the town  
and they were to the nombre of two  
hondred thousand, what of emperours  
and of sarasins. ca. lxxxviii. fo. c. xlix  
How that Arthur was right sorowful

because that his horse dyd stombie vnder  
hym, and how the mayster shewyd  
hym how that florence was besyged by  
the emperour in her castell of the clere toun,  
wherof arthur was in great fere &  
trouble. cap. lxxxix. fol. c. i.

How that Arthur and the mayster, Hector,  
Gouernar, and syr Eyslebar entred  
into the clere toun where as florence  
was besyged, & they. v. discōfited a py  
ssaunc king sarasin who was called &  
soluban, who was come thider to helpe  
the emperour, and there were al the saras  
yns and turkes slayne. ca. c. fo. c. ii  
How that rewise was taken for a mo  
neth by the emperour and arthur  
cap. c. i. fol. c. liii.

How that the ponge kynge of malogre  
and of the duke of Bytayne, w diuerse  
other erles and barons, and accompaied  
with a great army of men of warre ary  
ued at the clere toun, to the entenc to sor  
cour florence and Arthur who were be  
syged by the emperour, who had nye en  
raged out of his wyte whan he knewe  
that they were come into that countrey  
Cap. c. ii. fol. c. lvi.

How that kynge Jonas all alone came  
to the castell of the clere toun, and there  
dyd his message fro the emperour of ynde  
the moze. cap. c. iii. fol. c. lvii

How that the emperour and kynge Jo  
nas accompaied with fyfty thousande  
men of warre came to the clere toun for  
to haue made assaute therto, & than they  
found the gate open and entred bothe in  
to the towne and in to the castell, for they  
thoughe verely that al the frenshe men  
had bene fledde, but they were deceyued  
for than the frenshe men lepte out from  
theyr enbuslymentes and theyr faste the  
gates, & there flew kynge Jonas & al the  
fyfty thousande, so & none escaped aliue

## Tabula

but one and the emperour who was ca-  
ken prysoner. ca. c. liii. folio. c. lvi.  
How Gouvernar went in to the realme  
of Sorolops to thencent to geue know-  
lege to kynge Emendus how y<sup>e</sup> chempe-  
rour had bespyed his doughter floren-  
ce in her castell of clere toure despyng  
hym to haste his hooft to rescoue her at  
that tyme. capitulo c. v. folio. c. lxi.  
How that Arthur accompanied w<sup>th</sup> the  
frenshemen dyscomfyted kynge flozpes  
broder to the emperour & alle we all them y<sup>e</sup>  
were in his company. ca. c. vi. folio. c. lxi.  
How mayster Steuen by his arte and  
connyng caused the emperours to goo a  
troung wape from Arthur, & so encoun-  
tered the myghty kynge Emendus and al  
his hooft. ca. c. vii. folio. c. lxi.  
How that the emperour dyed in prys-  
on for sorow whan that he knewe that his  
kynge and people were al slayne & dys-  
comfyted. ca. c. viii. folio. c. lxi.  
How that kynge Emendus came to y<sup>e</sup>  
blaunche tour w<sup>th</sup> al his noble compa-  
ny to y<sup>e</sup> buryenge of the emperour and of  
the other. liii. kynge. ca. c. ix. folio. c. lxi.  
How after y<sup>e</sup> dyscomfyture of the empe-  
rour & al his people y<sup>e</sup> kynge gaue licence  
to all his hooft to departe eury man ho-  
me, & went hymselfe to Argence there to  
make the weddyng betwene Arthur &  
Florence, & how that Florence wente to  
the porte noyze to make chere to the du-  
chesse of britayne & to the other ladies &  
to byng the m to Argence to her fader  
kynge Emendus. ca. c. x. folio. c. lxi.  
How florence bycause of the doubte y<sup>e</sup>  
she had lest y<sup>e</sup> Jehanne wold take fro  
her Arthur she gaue her to Gouvernar, &  
gaue them the realme of mozmall, & cau-  
sed them to be ensured togyder the same  
houre, and also the same tyme she caused  
The ladye Margarete to be ensured to

mayster Steuen. cap. c. xi. folio. c. lxi.  
How Arthur wedded the saye florence  
doughter to the myghty king Emendus  
w<sup>th</sup> great honour & triumphe, & kynge  
Gouvernar wedded the saye Jehanne,  
and mayster Steuen wedded the saye  
Margaret of Argenton all in one daye  
and one houre. ca. c. xii. folio. c. lxi.  
How the frenshe knyghtes, and those  
of Sorolops, of Argence, of Orqueney,  
of Mozmall, of Jmaelite, of Waleford  
and of Sabary did tozney togeder w<sup>th</sup>  
of Arthur and gouvernar had the honour  
ca. c. xiii. folio. c. lxi.  
How that after the mariage of Arthur  
the barons and ladies of Fraunce retor-  
ned into theyr owne countreys, excepte  
kynge Alexander whome kynge Emen-  
dus kepte still and made vnto hym gre-  
chere, and he caried there so longe tyll y<sup>e</sup>  
florence was deliuered of a saye sonne  
who kynge Alexander helde on the fone  
cap. c. xiiii. folio. c. lxi.  
How king Alexander returned into his  
countrey and ledde w<sup>th</sup> hym Arthur,  
Gouvernar, Hector, and mayster Steuen  
and caried in bytayne so longe tyll flo-  
rence sent for Arthur bycause that her  
fader kynge Emendus was departed  
out of this life, wherfore she made great  
lamentacion. ca. c. xv. folio. c. lxi.  
How that arthur was sent for bycause  
of the dethe of kynge Emendus, and how  
that he was crowned kynge of Soro-  
lops. cap. c. xvi. folio. eodem  
Here is deuyfed how long that the noble  
arthur liued and how that he was bu-  
ried. ca. c. xvii. folio. eodem

Thus endeth the table of  
this present hystory.

**¶** The first Chappter maketh mencyon  
of the byrth of the noble knyght Arthur  
sonne and heyre to the duke of Bityayne.  
Capitulo. .i.



**A**fter the death of good kynge  
Arthur who was ryght noble  
and gentyll, specially in ches  
ryf. kynge and enhaunsynge  
of nobyl nesse, and mayntaynyng of the  
chvalrous knyghtes of the worlde. As  
was Gawyn and Lancelotte and many  
other noble knyghtes as it is more plain  
ly conteyned in dyuers auneynt cronyc  
les. It is of trouthe that in the dayes in  
Bityayne there was a duke ryghte pru  
dente & aboue all other ryghte vertuous,  
ryche and pypsaunte bothe of haupour  
and frendes. who was come and exrau  
ghte of the noble hghlygnage of the ba  
lyasit knyght launcelot du lake who was  
in his dayes of right byghe & noble pro  
wesse as it is more at large comprised in  
the bokes makynge mencyon of his chy

ualte. This Duke had to name Iohan  
and was so endued wpyth sapprnce y the  
kynge who as than gouerned all fraun  
ce loued and honoured hym aboue all o  
ther in soo moche it was sayde where so  
euer he wente beholde yonder is the wy  
se man of bityaine. he was sworne of the  
kynge's preyre and straye counsaile so  
that the kynge was onely gouerned by  
his noble aduise because of the gret trou  
the and stedfastnesse y was euer founde in  
hym. this duke hadd a ryght noble lady  
to his wyfe of good & holy life who was  
doughter to the erle of Lyncester in En  
glande. & they loued togyder ryghte fer  
uently by cordpall loue al theyr lyfe. and  
in accompylyng betwene them the wer  
kes of maryage ordeyned by nature sp  
nallye it pleased the good Lorde to sende  
thepma fayre sonne. who in the remem  
braunce of good kynge Arthur and of his  
hye renoune was named Arthur. & his  
chylde was goodly & of ful greute beaute  
for afterward he grew to be the mooste  
fayre creature that than was founde in  
all crystendome and the dukes & duchess  
loued hym so well that they entended to  
no thyng but all onely to the prouffyte  
of theyr chylde. and specially to enhaun  
ce his honour and ryche.

**¶** How the duke of bityayne deliuered  
his sonne Arthur to the gouernaunce of  
a prudent knyghte named syr Gouvernax  
who dyd ensigne him in all goodlye ma  
ners & dedes of armes. so that afterwar  
de there was non lyke vnto him. Ca. ii.

**A**d whā this chylde Arthur was  
nyne yere of age than the Duke  
his fader deliuered hym to be kepte vn  
der the gouernaunce of a noble & a gen  
tyle mayster named Gouvernax who was

## The hystory of Arthur

ryght prudent, purflant & hardy, vertuous & vngouious of bodye & well proued, who amonge other thynges dydde teach this noble chyld Arthur the play of the chesse & tables so þat non was in cōtinge lyke vnto him. And whā he was of .xx. yere than his mayster taught hym the manere of skymyng so that wun a lytle season ther was none able to be cōpared w hym. Thus amended this chyld frome daye to daye & grew so goodly þat in al the world ther was none senelike him ne ther so fayre, so gracypous ne so courelyse in so muche þat the kyng of fraunce despyred of tēpynes þat he sholde haue be noryshed & brought vp wth his one chyldren. How be it þat duchesse his moder coude in no wyse suffer it ne scant to let him be oute of her presence neuer a daye she loued him so enterly. So longe thys chyld soourned w his moder þat it was grete noyful to his hert, in somoche that therby he became ryght pensyue & soze troubled in his mind. So that gouernat hys mayster demaunded of hi what was the cause of his sorowe. In good fayth mayster sayd Arthur this long solozning and abyding at home greatly noyeth me, for I wolde gladly go and play me in yōder fayre forest. And to hunt and chase after a grete harte. For it hath ben now a grete season sythe I went ony where forth. Her wylp sayde gouernat saye Arthur it pleaseth me ryght wel your noble mid. There go to my lord pour fader and desyre hys lycēce that ye may go chase in þat forest. Than arthur went forth to þat duk his fader and demaunded of hym lycēce. Whā the duke hard this tydyng and wyl of his son he had grete ioy & ryght swete dyd graunte hym his request & commaunded & despyred Gouernat that he shold take good hede to hym & not suffre hym to

renne ne to folowe to faste after his dytch poze. Gouernat answered that he wolde take good hede to him. Than arthur caused þat hūters to be warned & to make ready by his grethoude, houndes & other cates for he wolde go the nexte daye betymes to chase in the forest. And the nexte mornynge Arthur & Gouernat moued on theyr horses w grete ioye & .x. other gentylmen to kepe them company. And arthur was mounted on a grete courser his bar hangynge on his backe by a lace of sylke, his bonet on his head & the hunters wente befoze ledynge his grethoundes and houndes. Thus they ryde forth toward the forest in grete ioye.

How arthur founde in the forest a noble lady wout socour, and w her a fayre ponge mayde, her doughter named Jehannet befoze a lytle lodge the whiche they had made of þysshches of the trees, and how that arthur was amorous of the sayd Jehannet. Cap. iii.

**I**n this tyme there was in the realme of desert a knyght of grete power and right riche of haūour and frendes, and he was Lord of a castell called the ioure. This knyght was named wytiers and was of such vertue that he bought northige .x. knyghres armed, and was of so valiant corage that in the tyme that he coude fyrst beare armes he was neuer but there as he knew where as the fayte of armes were occupied, and employed himselfe cur in wyltes and toznames and in dedes of armes and dyd so to be alowed þat there was no spekyng of him but that he was the noblest knyght of the world, but finally he led so his lyf that he spended and wastest his goodes so largely to thē that to get hym laude and prayse that at the end he became thereby very poze and thā was

capne to sell and to make hyffe of all þ  
he had both of his owne & of the good la  
dy his wyfe. And so dyed in grete pouer  
te. And whan he was buryed suche per  
sones as he was better vnto, toke all the  
sondes & goodes that perteyned other to  
hym or to the lady his wyfe, so þ there by  
the good lady his wyfe fledde & departed  
puryly out of þ countree, so þ non of her  
frendes wyfte where she was become,  
for she thought she hadde rather to lyue  
poorely in a straunge countrey sette fro  
her frendes & acquaintance thā to endu  
re pouerte in her owne countrey where  
she had ben nobly broughte vp in befoze.  
So this lady went & her doughter with  
her, who was of the age of xiiii yere  
ryght beautifull, how be it she was poze  
ly arrayed & had to name I-hanner. And  
they traauyled so lōge by they Jorneyes  
þ by aduenture they came in to the fozeist  
where Arthur & Gouvernar were bled to  
chase & ro hunte. And in a desolate place  
of the fozeist sette from ony hye way the  
these two ladies dyd reste them and ma  
de them a lodge to abyde in of boughes  
and of suche thinges as they coude gette  
Thus they contynued the space of a mo  
neth. And this lady went eueri day right  
pozeily to the nexte bylage for to gette su  
che thinges as she & her doughter needed.  
And so it fortunyd þ the same day þ Ar  
thur & gouvernar departed fro the courte  
of his fader & was entred into the sayde  
fozeist anone his houndes had founde a  
grete harte. And a noble knyghte þ was  
in his cōpany named the lord Dyuier of  
Irpac folowed after this harte on a greet  
courser & all the other hūters after hym.  
And this ponge Arthur began to folowe  
after. how be it Gouvernar toke hede þ he  
sholde not folowe to faste, so þ this sayde  
lord Dyuier & al other were past forth

by hym & were gon so sette into the thie  
ke of þ fozeist þ Arthur & Gouvernar had  
eieue loste both sight and heringe of the  
and of they hōides. And so by ges they  
folowed saye and esply after, so lōg they  
folowed þ by aduenture they came to the  
same place where as the lodge was made  
for the lady & her doughter, who were  
bothe the same tyme syttinge Wythout  
the lodge doze. And as soone as Arthur  
sawe them he lyghed downe of his hoys  
and Gouvernar w hym. And whā this la  
dy sawe Arthur she was greetly abashed  
for she thought Well þ he sholde be some  
grete man & there w she rose and Arthur  
right swetely saluted her. And the lady in  
like wise agayne to him. And at þ tyme it  
was aboute thye of the clocke. And whan  
the lady sawe Arthur & Gouvernar dys  
cende from they hoyses, she remembered  
the state of her fader & of other gēlmen  
þ she had seene befoze in her owne coun  
tree where as she had ben nozysed by us  
wherof her herte was greetly ashamed &  
troubled. Than Arthur toke her by the  
hande & her moder also & set them doune  
all togyder. Than Arthur demaunded of  
the ponge mayde & sayd saye swete da  
moy sell what is your name. As our lord  
helpe me syz I am called I-hanner,  
I-hanner good loue where were ye bozne  
certayne syz I was not bozn in this cou  
ntree. Than her moder sayd syz truly my  
doughter sayth sothe, for truly she was  
bozne in the lōd of desarte in a castel cal  
led the tour. Cruly sayd Arthur to who  
me was she doughter. As God helpe me  
syz to a knyght right stronge & pur flait  
who in his tyme loued euer dedes of ar  
mes & was acquēted w many noble men  
how be it his fortune was such or he dy  
ed þ he lost away & wasted both his lons  
des and goodes and myne that was his

## The story of Arthur

poore wyfe. And were broughte so ferre vnder that lytell o: nothing was left vs. And after his death suche persones as he owed ony thyng to, and peradventure some other þe owed nothing to. They were thā so importune on me that I was fayne to sel al þ I had. And whan I saw that I was so ferre broughte vnder & þ I had nothing left me. Wherby to lyeue the occasion therof caused me to steale a wyfe by nyght. for I thought I had leuer go lyke a poore woman a beggyng in a straunge countre thā there where I was lady and gouernour. And therewith ryght piteously she wept and sayd a genryl knyghte now am I come in to this countre alonely accompanied w this pōg mayde my dere doughter. Who was wōt be brought by in sayre places and ryche halles and chambres, & to lye in the bed incorpned wth sylke. And now it becometh her to lye on the molle in this lodge couered wth grene boughes. Then Arthur answered and sayde a sayre lady why bidde not ye requyre youre frendes to helpe and socour you in your necessite. At leste to gyue you mete & drynke & clothe. In my myd that had be moze honorable for you thā th<sup>is</sup> desolate to come in to this straunge countre. As god helpe me for sayd this lady poze folkes hath but fewe frendes, howe be it I ought to haue many, but betwene the riche & the poore there wanteth frendes, for the ryche maketh his frendes of his money & the poore is euer put out in euery place. And as to me: sorrowfull creature who hath bene a grete lady & moche honoured & haue had moche people vnder my obysaunce, thoughte grete waine to requyre ony creature in my owne cōtre to helpe o: soccoute me. And specially for this pōg mayde my doughter, she is come of goodly lye,

nage. Alas as for me I am olde and alwayes she hath serued me ryght well, & now she is lyke to me to lese her tyme, & ther to she began agayne to wepe. And whan Jehānet sawe her moder so wepe she coude not abstayne her selfe from wepyng tenderly. And whan Arthur sawe th: in so full of sorowe, he had grete pite and sayd to the lady. My right dere lady wepe ye no moze but sette youre harte in rest for fro hēforth I wyl be in the stede of youre old lord, & in all good honours to lue & cherish you to the best of my power. And all this whyle Jehānet made sylly grete lamentaciō. So thē Arthur toke the pōg mayde in his armes, & ryght sweetly sayd. My right dere ladye & loue abandon youre herte to ioye and leue this sorowe for as god be my socoure I wyl cause you haue moze honoure & welth than as yet euer came to you, for I am and wyl be your owne good loun and wyl take you in to my handes to deliuer you fro all pōertye, faithfully assuring you to kepe the honour of you & of youre bodye as moche as youre owne popre broder wolde o: myght do.

Howe Arthur caused to be deliuered to Jehānet & her moder þ reuenues þ belonged to the stang o: ponde of the forest wherby there stode a sayre goodly place of pleasure, and afterward Arthur bidde often tymes resorte thider to passe the tyme with them. Capit. fin.

In this season þ Arthur had this comunyaciō w these ladyes, ther came to thē the mayster forrester named Pyre who was also receyuer the reuenues of the forest & he had al þ day soughte his mayster Arthur & by aduenture there he found him talking w these ladyes, And incōpment þ Arthur sawe th

he called hym by his name and demaunds  
 dyd of hi yf he had receyued at ymawode  
 leyn tyde yf reueneues of the forest, and  
 Wiers answered and said, yf I haue alre  
 dy at your comaundement to the sons of  
 syue. C. pounde, Well quod Arthur I co  
 maunde the incontynente to deliuer it to  
 this lady & to her doughter, Al so the ma  
 ner place pertainyng to the stang of this  
 forest wherein thou hast dwelt to this ty  
 me. It was so that in this stange of water  
 the wyld beasts of the forest dyd euer  
 thider resorte to drynke. and Joyngyng  
 to this water there were houses and ma  
 ners the which the duke had gyuen to ar  
 thur his son to playe hi in the forest, and  
 this piers was keeper thereof to Arthurs  
 behoure. Than sayde Arthur to Wiers I  
 deliuer to yf these ii ladies. And I char  
 ge the yf truly yf kepe & honour them and  
 bryng them to my maner and to deliuer to  
 them such as is apertenante to so good  
 by ladies as they be. And as such a man  
 as I am haue taken into my handes & ke  
 pyng. Therefore kepe the well & truly.  
 For by the fayth yf I owe to my lord my  
 fader yf I knowe yf yf entende to yma  
 gen agaynst this lady or her doughter a  
 ny dyspleasure. I shall cause the to suf  
 fre soule death. And I warne the lorde yf  
 they lacke no thyng. Syf sayd Wiers I  
 trust I shall so demaunde yf both you &  
 they shall be to me contente. And so whā  
 Arthur had ben there a grete season, he  
 toke his leue there of this lady and of her  
 doughter. So Wiers dyd conuertye them  
 to the said maner & bought for them aby  
 lementes & Jewelles. whiche & drynke of  
 the best yf coude be gotten, & all other thyng  
 ges yf was conuenient for noble ladyes to  
 haue. And gaue the every offyce in yf  
 house to place of stuer & wall other ne  
 cessary thynges. And whā Arthur and  
 Arthur.

Gouernar Wer departed fro these ladies  
 they rode after the tracke of syf. Wiers  
 of yrac and his compaigny, and at the  
 laste they mete togyder ferre in the forest  
 in a grete depe bailey where as syf. Wiers  
 uer hadde kyled thre grete hartes, and  
 wash kepnyng of them. And therewith Ar  
 thur came to hym & laughed ryght we  
 tely. Than resorted other of the hunters  
 fro all partyes. And so there Arthur com  
 maunded a seruaunt belongyng to the  
 sayd Wiers to take one of these hartes &  
 to bere it fro him to the sayd lady and to  
 her doughter. And the seconde Arthur  
 dyd gyue to an abbotte that was come  
 to them by aduenture. And the thirde he  
 commaunded that it shoulde be conuertyed  
 to the duke his fader, who hadde grete  
 ioye therof.

How with in. viii. dayes after Arthur  
 and Gouernar wente to the stange to se  
 the lady and Jehannet her doughter,  
 Capitulo. b.

The eyght daye after that Arthur  
 was come fro the forest he rose  
 early in a fayre mornynge and sayd to go  
 uernar, frende lette vs go leape bypon  
 our horscs and goo se our damoyzell in  
 the forest we two alone, gladly syf sayd  
 Gouernar. So Arthur toke a sparthakke  
 on his honde, and Gouernar a gersaw  
 con. And Arthur aparyled hym selfe all  
 in grene silke, and his harte suapled with  
 a freshe chaplet of Rouses on his heade.  
 And they rode so longe that by the sonne  
 ryfynge they came to the stang and found  
 the lady and Jehannet ready aparyled  
 ryght nobly. For Wiers the forestier had  
 purveyed them of all thynges nessesarye  
 to the ladies. And as than Jehannet  
 had donken good Wyne and taken her  
 A.iii

## The story of Arthur

sustenance of good meates, and had for-  
 gotte all her sorowes. Wherby her braute  
 Was newly renewed. And whan Arthur  
 sawe her, she pleased hym moche better  
 then she dyd whan he sawe her fyrst. And  
 so toke her by the sayre hande and sette  
 them downe togyder a parte. And in the  
 meane season the lady her moder and Go-  
 uernar were talkynge togyder. And the  
 moynynge was very sayre & clere. And  
 the earth all bedewed wyth clere syluer  
 droppes. And the byrddes sang melli-  
 ciously on euery braunche so that these. li.  
 yonge lusty louers greatly reioysed, and  
 had great myghte in theyr hartes bicause  
 of the swete season as it was meetely for  
 suche yonge people to playe & to laughe.  
 And they loued togyder with good herte  
 without thinkynge of bylanyng or shame e-  
 che to other. Than Arthur sayd to her al-  
 laughynge. My swete damorsell haue  
 ye ony manner of louer. And halfe smil-  
 ing and beholdynge Arthur ryghte sweetely  
 she answered, by the sayth that I owe to  
 you my owen dere lord, I haue one ry-  
 ghte sayre and gracious. And to here is  
 he my swete Jehannet. By my sayth sy-  
 he is of a countre wherof he is lord. And  
 sayre loue howe is he called, sy- you not  
 dyspleased, this that I haue sayde is suf-  
 fycent at this presente tyme. How be it  
 sy- I wolde ye knewe that king Arthur  
 was a noble knyght and of grete vertu.  
 And sy- I wolde my louer were so good  
 yf he be not better all redy. What one thyng  
 sy- I assure you he resembleth more to  
 you than to ony other vnder the sonne  
 luyng, bothe goynge, and in compynge  
 of bodie and all other thynges that one  
 person may be lykened to another. My  
 owne swete and sayre damorsell sayd Ar-  
 thur I wolde sayne it hym. And by the  
 sayth that ye owe to me if it be to you no

bylanyng I praye you shewe hym to me &  
 I promysse you saythfully I shall loue &  
 cherishe hym ryght dely. And for the  
 loue of you yf he wyll he shalbe one of  
 my house, yf he be no greater of lygnage  
 ne of rychesse than I am. My ight dere  
 lord sayd this damorsell hably I thanke  
 you howe be it he is no greater gentyl-  
 man than ye be, but hethynketh well to  
 haue as grete honour and frendes as ye  
 haue, but as now ye may not se him, but  
 it may well be that here after ye shall ha-  
 ue knowlege of hym. And soo thus they  
 comoned togyder of manye thynges tyll  
 it was tyme that Arthur sholde retorne  
 to the courte, for as than it was aboute  
 pyrme. Than Arthur toke his leue of the  
 lady and of Jehannet. And so he and go-  
 uernar mounted on theyr horses and ro-  
 de forth alwayes deuysing of the maner  
 of this damorsell Jehannet. And at the  
 last Arthur sayd. Mayster howe saye you  
 by the swetnesse of our damorsell and of  
 the frendes of her herte, and howe sagely &  
 graciously she answereth to euery dei-  
 maunde, remembryng also her gentyll  
 maner & noble countenance, her beaui-  
 tyfull facyon of body and of bysage. As  
 god helpe me mayster all these thynges  
 and manye other that sacmeth of her tyme  
 to be in her, causeth that I loue her hy-  
 stely. Sy- sayde Gouvernar as God helpe  
 me all that ye saye is of trouthe, howe be  
 it myne owne, dere lord take good hede  
 to your honour and remembre howe gre-  
 te a lord ye be, both of lygnage, honour  
 and of frendes. And thinke howe that she  
 is but a poore gentyl woman as to your  
 knowlege. And if ye do her ony bylanyng  
 to her body, as in takynge from her that  
 he can not render agayne, sy- it were to  
 you a grete synne. And ye oughte the less  
 to be more blamed than a nother means

persone. After sayd Arthur I praye to  
god neuer to helpe me yt I thynke to go  
aboute to dysshonoure her, but I will  
loue her & kepe her honoure faithfully  
in lyke case as she wete myne owen pro-  
per syster without euer despynging oner  
belany to her body. So they rode forth  
talking til they came to the courte, and  
than went to dyner for it was by that  
time nere vpon two of the cloke.

How that the duke and duchesse toke  
counsell to mary theyr sone Arthur and  
how they sente theyr stewarde to the la-  
dy Luke of ostrige for to demaunde her  
doughter for Arthur. Cap. vi

**I**n this wyse Arthur sourned a  
great longe space so þ there was  
no wease but that wyse of chylde he and  
Gouernar wolde ryde to the stange with  
out any other company. And it fortuined  
one day he taried there longer than he was  
a custumed to do, wherfore he was sou-  
ght all aboute by the commaundement of  
the duke his father how he is nor yd-  
ges coude be herde of hym but that he &  
Gouernar were gone togidre to spothe  
them, but no man wyte whycher. And  
than the duchesse sayd to the duke, sy I  
wote not what meaneth that our soone  
thus goth forth so pryuelly euer day &  
no man can tell whyr her, for he taketh  
none with him but Gouernar. veraylye  
I doubte me of our chylderkast that he  
sholde set his herte & loue on some persō  
wherby we shold haue any belony, sy  
he is now of peres sufficient to perceiue  
& to know the sayre perceyning to loue  
wherfore I wolde he were nobly married  
for it is tyme, helpe xxi. peres of age.  
Whosome quod the duke ye haue syght  
myself sayd. And I acorde well thereto,

but to whome thinke ye best it were to  
giue him in mariage. sy sayd the ladye  
in my minde it were wel doon: that we  
shold demaunde the sayre Perron of os-  
trige, & I trust my lady Luke her mo-  
der wyl be therof right glad, vntyl ma-  
dame sayd the duke I haue harde saye  
that this lady Perron hath not wylfully  
demauned her self, but hath had greace  
blame for her owle keepyng company w-  
a knyght of her countrey. and I wolde  
for no good þ we shold demaunde such  
a person as hath deserued blame. Al-  
sy sayd the lady beleue not ye the reportes  
of them that iustly to say yf, for as god  
helpe me she is flattered wrongfully.  
for I am sure she is not a better maide  
lyuyng, wherfore they are in greace sin  
that reporteth othir wyse of her. Dame  
sayd the duke yf it be so I am right sor-  
ful. Than let vs send chylder in at hest  
Than was called to them sy & syuer þ  
was seneschall. And the duke sayte to  
hym, sy & syuer I will ye go to ostrige  
to my lady Luke & desyre of her in my  
behalf Perron her doughter to be giue  
in matrimony to Arthur my sone. & sy  
sy & syuer prepayed him to ride forth  
And x. other knyghtes in his company.  
and so departed and rode forth so longe  
that the wednesday after Whawdeleyn  
they came to ostrige. And when sir  
Syuer was in the great hall where as  
the lady Luke was accompanied with  
many great barons ladyes and damoy-  
sels. He byd right reuerently salute her  
and all the other lordes and barons as  
a messenger sent fro the duke & duchesse  
of Briteayne. And this lady Luke right  
honourably byd receyue hym and all  
hys company. And demaunded what  
was the cause and the occasyon of this  
comynge.

## The story of Arthur

**H**ow the seneschall demaunded the daughter of ostrige for arthur of Brytayne, the which request with great Joy was graunted hym. Cap. vii.

**T**han say Oliver began his proposition & sayde. Righte hye and myghty prynces. My lord and ladye of brytayne hath led vs hither to publishe vnto you theyr entences for they are very desirous to haue loue and affinitie with you as it well appereth, for they haue harde suche bruce & fame of my ladye Perron your daughter. Wherefore they haue sent me hither to your presence to request you in theyr behalfe to geue your daughter pertron in marriage to arthur theyr sone, who is right gentyl, noble & valiaunt. Madame this is the effecte of our request. In the name of god sayde the lady luke humblye shewe the duke your lordship it wyl please him to haue with vs acquaintance, wherof I haue right great Joye. And with a good vert I geue freely to him my daughter Perron to be all holly at his commaundement. Madame sayd Oliver this dedeoughte greatly to be thanked. And how say you sayre lady pertron, do you assente to this marriage. Sayd Perron I shall euer fulfyl the pleasure of my lady my mother. Certaynly sayre lady than doo you wylle for I ensure you ye shall be coupled to him & is both sayre and goodly. Than this lady luke & her daughter did geue to sayd Oliver & to his companye manye noble Jewels & other thinges. And theyr apoyntment was to be at nantes within. viii. dayes of the middell of the next August.

**H**ow & arthur was sore displeased for his father wold marrye him to the

ghter of ostrige because it was sayde he was of pl gouernaunce. Ca. viii.

**A**than the seneschall toke leave of the lady luke and of the sayre Perron and retorne into brytayne. At whiche tyme he founde the duke than risen fro dinner and the duchesse with him And arthur and Gouvernour were playing at the chesse, & as sone as the duke saw sayd Oliver he made him good chere and the knight right humblye saluted them and thanked them greatly for the greute loue and gyftes that the Duchesse of ostrige had done to him for their sake, and he wedd them how the lady luke wolde be at nantes and bying with her Perron verye asprayed to be given to Arthur aboute the middell of August next ensuyng. And whan Arthur herde that his father wolde marrye him he stepped forth & left his playe. And sayd what is my right dere father, wyl ye marrye me. Ye sayre sone sayde the duke right nobly. And good father vnto whom wyl ye geue me, sayre sone vnto the gentyl pertron of ostrige. What sayd as it is nyled she hath crept into a nother knightes seepe so litle by me that ye wyl not geue me pertron who is of pl name and fame. Certaynly it is not your wylle hye honour so to do nor to none of my frendes. Therefore in no maner of wyse I wyl take her. Sayre sone sayde his mother be not displeased ne beleue no euill reportes & is sayd by this lady it is great sin to saye such thinges as cannot be proued for I am so certayne that she is a clene mayden. And therefore we will that ye shal haue her as ye shal greuouslye displease my lord your father & me.

also wel madame said Arthur shecheat  
it behoueth me to take her & that it is  
your pleasure & I so do I am content,  
how best ye shal be of such condicions  
as is sayd of her & shal neuer loue her.  
Then sayd gouernar to the duke, sp: ye  
wyl that Arthur shal haue this damo-  
sell. Aue: thellesse pleasech pou sp: to  
know that if this case be found true thā  
let Arthur leue and forsake her. And ye  
that she dyd neuer suche trespass thā let  
Arthur kepe her as he ought to doo hys  
wyfe, but how wyl this be knowen  
sayd the duke for where as wysedome  
is in the thinges are lightly done so co-  
uerly that it is harde to know, sp: sayd  
Gouernar let it be enquyred wylsel of  
such as to presume should know of the  
matter. Also let the damosell her self be  
wylsel examined, & ye shal be good she  
wyl kepe her selfe, ye shal be othertwylse  
picauenture it wyl be espyed. I am con-  
tent with this sayd Arthur. And for that  
time they left theyr comynge of that mar-  
tet. Then the duke sent out his coun-  
dementes to all his barons, knyghtes &  
damosells that they shoulde be al redy ac-  
naunces bi the myddes of august for that  
he wolde kepe open courte and make Ar-  
thur his sone knyght, and marie hym to  
the saye Derron of ostrage. The duke  
also dyd write to the erle of bloys bro-  
der getmayne to the duchesse his wyfe.  
And also sent for the erle of Antou who  
was nere of kinne to the duke, and also  
to the archebysshop of toures despyng  
them to be at n: untes at the sayd daye.

Howe that Arthur wente to se Jehan-  
ner and declared to her how ye duke his  
father shoulde marie hym wherof he was  
soe dyspleased for ye loue of her. Cap. ar

Arthur.



**A**th Arthur & gouernar toke theise  
hoyles & rode to the strage in the  
forest where as they founde Jehanner &  
her moder, who made greet Joy a greet  
and Jehanner behelde Arthur who was  
as than right pale for dyspleasure & de-  
maunded of hym what was the cause of  
his displeasure. Certaynly my loue said  
Arthur greater displeasure coulde neuer  
haue fallen. For my lord my father wyl  
now marie me the which I fortheinke wyl  
al mi herce be cause of the loue ye I haue  
to pou for I thinke verily ye wyl not be  
content therwith. And your displeasure per-  
seith myn herce. Al myn owne swete lord  
sayd Jehanner for gods sake trouble not  
your selfe for no cause for in certayne I  
am in like case fallen in a treaste to be  
married. A good loue sayd Arthur I pray  
pou to whome. sp: so god helpe me to  
him of whome I haue spoken to pou of  
here before is ye of a trouth faire damo-  
sell quod Arthur and I requyre you whā  
shal ye be married, in trouth the same pray-  
puday that ye shal maried, now saye  
damosell by the faith the ye on a to bi I  
desyre you let me se ye, sp: ye may not se

## The story of Arthur

hym as yet, but for certayne he shall be  
aperapled in þe same clothyng & sure as  
ye shall be the day of your wedding. In  
the name of god sayd arthur I haue of  
this great meruayle for ye haue sayde  
here before to me that he is as great of  
lignage as I am and as greetly endued  
wyth haupour and stendes, and how þe  
be resemblyth me in all pointes, and  
also howe that he hath a ryche & a prync-  
saunt vncle. I wote not whome I shold  
thynke without ye meane al this by my  
self, for I know wel the erle of Blois  
is my vncle by my moders side. Wel sir  
sayd Jehanet no; I wyl not lye w pou  
at this present tyme. So thus they com-  
myned together of þat and of other thi-  
ges till finally arthur tooke leue of her  
for that tyme and returned to the  
coure of his father. And thus dayly he  
rode to se this fayre daymopfel Jehan-  
et till it came to the next day before his  
wedding. And the erle of Arton and the  
archebishop of toures were come, and  
also the erle of Blois who brought with  
him Hector his son who was a gentil  
and a fayre creature & was extraught of  
the lineage of bytayne, & was cousin ger-  
maine to arthur & also of one age for thei  
were borne bothe in one yere. And as  
Arthur saw him he made him great joy  
and fest, and al wayes kepte compaignie  
together. And so there came to al parties  
lordes knyghtes ladies & damopfels by  
great flockes for to go mete the lady per-  
ron of ostryge. And than mounted the  
duke and al other barons & knyghtes to  
go lyke wyse to encounter Perron, who  
was as than come within the space of  
halfe a lege & brought with her a great  
cōpany of lordes knyghtes, ladies and  
damopfels.

How that Arthur & Hector his cousin  
germaine were made knyghtes for the  
loue of Arthur, who thā did enture per-  
ron daughter to þe lady Luke of ostryge.  
And of the great toynay that was there  
done at nauntes for the loue of arthur  
Cap. x.

**A**nd whan all these noble people  
were assibled together the duke  
and duchesse and all other lordes made  
great joy & fest at the meetyng of this  
lady Luke and Perron her daughter.  
And the duchesse took her in her armes,  
and sayd a myne owne swete daughter  
ye be into this countrey right welcome  
and kiled her oftentimes wepyng for  
joye for she was so fayre a creature þe  
duchesse coude not absteyne her self  
fro clypping & kissing her. And there  
called to her arthur & sayd fayre sone ar-  
thur beholde here this fayre lady who is  
& shall be yours. Whadame sayd arthur  
wyl it please you to suffer her to moue  
vpon her horse & we shal speke of this  
matter well ynoughe here after. So  
they went all to horse and rode forth to  
nauntes. And there lordes, knyghtes &  
other took vp thei lodgyngs in the cite  
and some were harboured in the palats  
with the duke. And whan it came to  
the tyme to speke of the maryage than  
arthur sayde in open audyence. My  
lord my father, and also my lady my  
mother ye wyl cause me here to take  
this damopfel. And yet I knowe not  
what name or fame that she is of. How  
be it so; I say surely bothe to you & also  
to you my Lady Luke who is mother  
vnto her that I take her agaynste my  
herte because of the suspicions, noyse  
and yll renomyes the whiche that I  
haue harde saye and rejoyced of her.

Nevertheless he sheweth me to take  
 herto exchequer the by the displeasure of  
 my lord my father. & of my lady my mo-  
 der & other of my frendes for I perceiue  
 wel it is theiur mindes. How be it I say  
 openly here to you all yf I finde such  
 noyse as renneth on her to be of trouth  
 I ensue you yf whyle I lyue she shal ne-  
 uer haue one good day with me in rest.  
 At my saye some sayd the duchesse what  
 a ye finde her good & true. And that all  
 such ill noyse as ye haue harde of her be  
 vntrewe and false. Well madame sayde  
 arthur: I han shal I loue her as I oughe  
 to do my wyfe. Than the duke called  
 forth the archbishop of nautes and  
 so caused arthur to be there openly tri-  
 ced to Bertou and on the next day to be  
 marryed. Thā began great fest and ioy  
 in the palays. And daunsyng of ladies &  
 damopelles, & scullhyng of speres & ba-  
 teryng of harnesys wth swerdes in euery  
 strete of the cite. Than the duke sayde  
 that who so ever wolde take the ordre  
 of chivalry wth his son Ithur the next  
 daye wth a good wyll he wolde gyue  
 him the ordre. Thā arthur sayd to hec-  
 tor his cosyn sy: I requyre you to mo-  
 row take the ordre of knighthode wth  
 me & fro henceforth let vs kepe cōpanye  
 togider in iustes & toynas & in al other  
 thinges as swoyne bycherne. Saye cos-  
 sin sayd Hector: I requyre you let vs go  
 know the pleasure of my lord my father  
 whether that he wil agre to this or not.  
 & c say well sayd arthur. Than arthur  
 cā before the duke his fader: and al other  
 lordes & helde his cosyn Hector by the  
 hād & sayd openly to the erle of Bloys,  
 my lord my vncle I requyre you my let  
 cosyn Hector be made knyght to morow  
 wth me for we shal loue togider the better  
 euer after certaynly sayd the erle saye

neww, hector hath as yet to lytle londe  
 to susteyne ther wyth the noble ordre of  
 knighthode. And yf he sayde because he  
 wold not & is lone shold be made knyght  
 so lone. Trulph sy: said arthur he hath ri-  
 chesse enough to be a knyght for as longe  
 as yelue he can not saye. And though  
 he saye of you yet god hath so provided  
 for him yf after your dayes he shal be erle  
 of Blois. He saye neww q the erle we  
 may both be disceined by that, for it may  
 so fortune that I may lese all my richte  
 in the erledome of bloys & his also. For  
 let not my sene Hector lōke to be lord o-  
 uer me for as longe as I liue one fote of  
 the lōde of the erledome of bloys geteth  
 he not, no sy: said arthur & touned to  
 Hector and said saye cosin it is old seme  
 wel by the saying of my lord your fader  
 how that he is very poore. How be it I  
 desire you to be knist wth me & I faithful-  
 lie promise you yf I shal giue you as  
 much lōve or more as my lord your fa-  
 der wil giue you. and I pray you fro hēf  
 forth let vs be togider as cōpanions in  
 horse, in abillmetes, in lāt, in house & in  
 euery thinge. And so I certayne you fro  
 this p̄sēt tyme forthward. & c god help  
 me saye so sayd the duke. Who had hard  
 what arthur had sayd to Hector: I am  
 wel cōent that ye thus retaine Hector  
 your cosin. Also I requyre him that he  
 wil be your cōpanion. and to the erle of  
 Bloys he said. Also sy: I desire you to  
 giue licence to your son Hector that he  
 may be knyght wth his cosyn arthur.  
 Thā the erle of Bloys byd laughe ther-  
 at and sayd to the duke. Sy: as god me  
 helme I am ryght wel content. But of  
 one thing let him be sure that as longe  
 as I liue he shal neuer be the Erle of  
 Bloys. Than arthur sayde to his cosyn  
 Hector. Well sy: we be yonge ynough.

## The history of Arthur

therefore we shall seeke to get our lyving  
for I trust god shal help vs. Than he  
sayd to the duke his father s<sup>r</sup> gouernour  
hath serued & nourished me by sweetelpe,  
therefore I requyre you let me make him  
knight and when I may I wyl do bet-  
ter to hym certaynly saye sonne it plea-  
seth me right well. So than they were  
made knightes with great triumphes  
there was made great Joye & fest both  
with lordes and ladies, and a great toz-  
nay was there ordeyned for the loue of  
these new knightes. And while this tri-  
umphe and tozmay endured Arthur sayd  
to hector. Saye cosyn come on with me  
a we wil go see the most swete and gen-  
tyl damoysele y<sup>e</sup> cuer ye saw. In the na-  
me of god q<sup>d</sup> hector. I am well content  
And so arthur, hector & gouernour moun-  
ted on theyr horses and rode forth to the  
manor of the st<sup>r</sup>ge where as they found  
Jehannet and her moder lentyng in a wynd-  
ow talkyng togyder, & when they saw  
arthur they came to hym & made great  
joye. And than Jehannet demaunded of  
Arthur, s<sup>r</sup> quod she what gentyl man  
is this that ye haue brought with you.  
Saye loue sayd Arthur he is sonne to  
the erle of bloys, and he is my cosyn ger-  
mayne. In y<sup>e</sup> name of god sayd she he is  
hyther welcome for your sake. Than  
Jehannet behelde well Arthur and she  
perceyued by his countenance y<sup>e</sup> he was  
troubled, therefore she despyed of hym to  
know what he cyled in good faith god  
loue this day haue I made a dolorous  
Joyney for I haue spawncd a woman  
agaynst my wil, y<sup>e</sup> whiche I soze repēt  
because it is grefull to me to leue your  
companye, certayne saye loue Arthur  
quod she take no dyspleasure though  
you haue stauced a lady for certayne  
in the same propre house that ye spawnc-

ed your ladye I was spawncd to my  
loue. And my dere loue quod Arthur I  
requyre you who is that and where is  
he. By the sayth y<sup>e</sup> I owe vnto you s<sup>r</sup>  
I knowe ful wel where he is. wel saye  
lady sayd arthur I pray you than she w<sup>th</sup>  
him to me. Surely s<sup>r</sup> that I wyl I not do  
as yet but I promise you to shew hym  
to you within these thre dayes next com-  
myng. And s<sup>r</sup> know you for certayne  
that he resemblith to you both in com-  
pyng in goyng, in hauiour, in frendes,  
gentylnes in facion of body and in al o-  
ther thinges. In the name of god sayd  
Arthur & meruaile greatly for by your  
wordes it shold appere y<sup>e</sup> it were my self  
for there cannot two persons be resem-  
bled togyder but they must be som faule  
& difference. I beleue ye deuise these wor-  
des for me, how be it I am troubled as  
gayne whā I thinke how ye saye that  
ye were stauced to day, and how that  
ye shall be married to morowe the same  
propre house that I shal be wedded in.  
As god helpe me s<sup>r</sup> sayd Jehannet it is  
of trouche he resemblith to you without say-  
yng of any popnte, verily sayde arthur  
I cannot thinke whom it shold be.  
And so they talked togyther so longe til  
it was tyme for arthur to departe for he  
doubted to be blamed of hys frendes.  
So he toke leue of the ladies and depar-  
ted & as they rode hector sayd to arthur  
s<sup>r</sup> vndouted this is a fayre yonge lady  
right gracions, swete & fayre behauyng  
as god help me saye cosyn sayde arthur  
she is mine owne howe bett she is a  
poore damoysele not half no thyng  
but y<sup>e</sup> she hath of me. But by the sayth  
that I owe vnto my lord and father the  
duke of byrreynne I loue her better al na-  
ked than she that I shal haue w<sup>th</sup> the  
riches of the world, for I must take her

agains my will. And therefore coyn I  
am verily purposed that as sone as the  
trumpete is passed, and all strangers  
be departed, and myne vncle your father  
and all gone, than I thynke to aske pce  
se of my father to goo seke adventures in  
some strange countries and to take with  
me alonsye Gouvernar and to abyde fro  
home the space of. v. or. vi. yeris. And so  
shall I leue her that troubleth me, for in  
her company in no wyse I can abyde.  
Cruelly sy sayd Hector and reseye wel  
thus good by the sayth that I owe to you  
I wyl d. parte with you, and neuer to  
leue you while that I lyue. A good co-  
syn Hector quod Arthur it pleaseth mee  
verily well to haue your companye and  
herely I thanke you thereof. How be it  
I beseeche you kepe this thyng secret that  
it be not knowen tyll the tyme of our de-  
partynge. And as sone as Arthur was  
departed from Jehanne, she dyd sende  
all aboute for mynstrelles and instrum-  
tes of musyke. And caused all the house  
to be hangen with sylke, and commaun-  
ded all her folkes to make as grette Joy  
and fest as they coude ymagyn. And so  
this Arthur rood forth al wayes till he ca-  
me to Flauntis where as the tables we-  
re redy couered to souper. And the duke  
sete hym doone and all other lordes e-  
uery man in his place, and then were ser-  
ued wyth chely wyth grete Joye, and  
after souper they played and sported till  
euery man as he beste liked till it was  
season to go to rest. For than it was past  
mydnighte. And so the duke charntred  
into his chambze. And Arthur, Hector  
and Gouvernar wet to se Jehanne, and  
whan they came nere to the place of the  
Gange they herde greete noyse & myrthe  
of instruments, and found all the house  
newly hangen. And the ladyes araped

in bestures of pleasure. And they founde  
as grete apparaple as though a kyng  
holde haue come thyder. And Jehanne  
was apparapled as though she shoulde  
haue be married in chynnet. And whā she  
harde that Arthur was come thyder she  
came goodly vnto hym. It was meruayle  
than to beholde her she was so fayre.

And as sone as Arthur saw her coming  
his herte smyled and sarde vnto hym  
selfe. A Jesu, a gentyll and a gracious  
metyng is this. As god helpe me I had  
rather to haue your company than to be  
encombyred with her that I muste haue  
And therfore he clepped her in his armes  
and sayd, My swete loue god that four-  
med all the worlde send you a better daye  
than I haue had a nygh. Sy sayde Je-  
hanne god gyue you as good a daye as  
he hath done to me. For this same nygh  
I shall be with my louer. And god send  
you to kepe wyth yours. Censyn-  
ly sayde Arthur I repute her not for my  
loue that I shall be with. But ye shal  
be as ye saye with your louer it shal be ne-  
xer to my herte than she shall be. But I  
praye you swete, Jehanne shew me your  
louer, for I haue all redy promysed you  
I shal se him within these thre dayes,  
therfore I beseeche you to abyde tyll that  
season. With a good will sayd arthur and  
forayed there so longe tyll it was sayre  
daye and than it behoued hym for to de-  
parte.

Cholpe that Arthur wedded sayre Per-  
ron daughter to the lady Duke of ostry-  
ge. And of the protestacion that he made  
before all the barony. Capitulo.

## The story of Arthur



**N**OW sheweth the history howe þat  
 roba arthur, Hector and Gower-  
 nar were departed frome Jehanne they  
 came to the court. And by that tyme we  
 re all lordes knyghtes and al other risen  
 fro they rest. And the archebyschop of  
 toures was ready to syng masse and so-  
 lempnyse the marrymony. And than the  
 duke and the duchesse and all the oþer  
 lordes, knyghtes ladies and damoyseles  
 dyd conuey Arthur and this lady Ber-  
 ron to the chyrche. And there in the sight  
 of all people & in open audyence Arthur  
 sayd. I wyll that it be knowen þat if ever  
 I fynde trewe suche wordes as I haue  
 herof sayed of this lady thoughte I were  
 wedded to her a hundred thousande ty-  
 mes yet I wyll leue and utterly forsake  
 her. And on that condempnacion I am now  
 contente to take her to my wyfe and  
 none other wyfe. And therto was wel a  
 corded hit moder and all other of theyre

landes. And so with grete solemnyte  
 they were wedded togðer, & grete was  
 the feste and Joye that than was made  
 in al the cyte, ladies & damoyseles dyd  
 daunce and made grete ioye and myrthe  
 and made chaplettes and rokys & dyd  
 gowse them to lordes and knyghtes in the  
 sygne of loue.

How this lady Luke of ostyge sente  
 to Jehanne and caused her secretly the  
 fyrst nyght to lye with Arthur by cause þat  
 Bertron was no mayde, to the entente þat  
 Arthur shold not perceyue it. Ca. xii.

**W**E must knowe howe that dame  
 Luke dursting all this season that  
 this grete Joye and myrth was  
 made, she was in grete thoughte in her  
 herte by cause she knew wel þat her dought-  
 ter, Bertron was no mayde, therfore she  
 doubted greatly to haue bylonge.

And therfore she wyfte nor what was  
beste for her to do. So at the laste she cal-  
led to her one of her owne knyghtes in  
whome she trusted beste in all her besy-  
nesse. And than she shewed vnto him all  
the demenoure of Perron, and desired  
hym to gyue her in that behalfe the beste  
counsaille þe he knewe, for she sawe wel  
howe that arthur wolde sayne fynde so-  
me cause by her to the criteinte that he my-  
ghte be departed fro her company. For  
sy quod she yf arthur fynde that she be  
no mayde, than I doubte me of vylany.  
Therfore I requyre you for goddes loue  
to counsaile me in this case. Than this  
knyghte who had to name sy Dunfell,  
answered & sayd, madame syth it is thus  
the case muste be suffered as easely as it  
may be. For whan the dede is done than  
it is tyme to take counsaile both sage and  
secrete. I shall tell you what we shall do,  
here is by dwellynge at the stange in the  
forest a poore damoyseil ryght fayre and  
yonge, who hath a moder a ryght good  
auncient lady. And I thinke verely she be  
a good mayde. Sende vnto her moder  
parte of your syluer and golde, and pro-  
myse to doo for her many other thynges  
so that she wyll lende you her daughter  
for this fyrste nyghte to lye wyth arthur  
till mydnyght be paste. And I thynke  
verely ye shall haue her yf she be wyfely  
entreted and secretly. And than yf ye ha-  
ue her whā Perron wolde be lapde in the  
bedde, she shal be in her stede tyl that ar-  
thur be a slepe and than she shal ryse.  
And so than Perron shal lye to lye by  
arthur. And sy sayd the lady for gods sake  
thynke on to brynge this mater aboute.  
Take my charpot & fyue hondred poun-  
des of golde and bere it huto her moder  
and shewe her how I shall gyue her la-  
ge londes and rentes, and shal mary her

doughter ryght hyghly soo that I maye  
haue her this nyght. So thā incontynent  
this knyghte lepe on his horse, and tooke  
wyth hym the golde and the charpot and  
caused it to be couered and rode vnto the  
stange where as he founde this fayre la-  
dy and her doughter, & dyde salute them  
ryght sweetely and dreyde them aparte,  
and sayde to the lady. Madame I am co-  
me hyther to you from my ladye Luke of  
ostrygge, who ryght tenderly sendeth gre-  
tyngge vnto you. As she that fro hēforth  
wyl be your enspereall louer and frende  
And aboute all other wyll loue & honour  
you. And in the sygne of loue she hath  
sente you fyue hondred poun-  
des of golde. And ferthermoze promyseth you to  
gyue you grete londes and goodes and  
to mary ryght hvely Jehanet your dou-  
ghter, so that ye wyll do her that bounte  
and pleasure now at this tyme as to sen-  
de your doughter to her to the entente to  
lye thys fyrst night wyth arthur of Bry-  
tayne tyl mydnyght. For the case is soo  
that Perron her doughter is not in soo  
good poynte as she wolde she were for  
we hath trespassed wyth another knyght  
Therfore good lady I humbly requyre  
you for to be her speciall louer and frende  
in this mater, grete charyte it is one  
lady for to saue þe woꝝshipp and honour  
of another. Than sayde the lady I than-  
ke my ladye Luke for the grete loue and  
honour that she presenteth to me, ff they  
were eyther loue or honour in this case,  
sy knyghte as me thynketh here lacketh  
loue whan she requyrez my name and  
dyshonoure, for she wolde that I shold  
sell to her my doughter for her moneye.  
Certaynly that I shall neuer do it to dre-  
therfore. I praye you bere her agayne  
this money, & god gyue her good aduen-  
ture. Than Jehanet sayd vnto her mo-  
der.

## The story of Arthur

der. Madame for goddes sake be ye not displeased wyth my wordes, for sayng your grace, this desire that this knyght maketh is no sellynge of me, for my lady Luke is a grete and noble a pryncesse. Therto; her belony sholde be more spoken than yf she were of a meene estate And all women oughte to put their payne to couer & to hyde suche matters. And also every woman to helpe & sustayn the blame and defame of other. And this lady requyeth not your vylonye for she dooth it to hyde her owne dishonoure. Cruelly daughter quod the lady, the mother y demeneth not wyself her chyldre is to be blamed, and yf my lady Luke haue not kept this lady Perron her daughter as curiously & as wysely as I haue doone you, and by the which neglygence now she is renne into foly & daunger, let her take it alwoth & thanke no body but her selfe. Madame sayde Jehanet it is a harde thyng to ouercome youthe, for yf this lady Perron haue doone amysse, yet remembre how hath be easely she & sweetly noryshed, and every creature desirous des sake madame beholde the myghte of loue by whome she was ouercome. For so setur her folyshyng yongth. For god she loued & was loued agayne, remembre also the grete ease wherin she hath all her yongth bene noryshed. The whyche one came & putte in to her herte amorous and loue. Madame yf I trespas I am mercy, for by the sayth yf I owe to you I wyll fullfyll y pleasure of my lady Luke. In sayng of her honour I shall put myne in Jeopardy. How be it yf knight take agayne your money, for yf I wold rake money I woulde sell my bodye the which I wyll nor do. For yf I do is freely for the loue of my lady Luke. And she shall do me good whan it shal please her

best. Than her moder sayd to her, syth ye wyll nedes to as relyst, and yf ye do so ly take the aduventure that wyll fall thereof. For moche better is woorth a woman to be poore and true, than to be folysh & riche. Ye shall not go for me nor by my wyll. For honour surmounteth al thynges Madame yf ye saye is of trouthe, how be it I requyre you suffer and let me alone. Syf knyght let vs departe, we tary very longe. Wyne owne saye damoyzell sayde the knyght I humbly thanke you and for certayne I ensure you ye shall be ryght helyp rewarde, & therto I wyll be pledge. Than the knyght lefte the golde there for ony thyng yf Jehanet coulde do the contrary. And so Jehanet mounred in to the chariot and rode forth, and whan they were come to the court the lady Luke receyued her ryghte pryncely & kepte her tyll it was tyme to go to bedde and than pryncely they ladye Jehanet in the bedde in the stede of Perron, and the courtaynes of the bed were hanged betwene the lyght and her. And than came Arthur and the duke his sater. And thā the duke sayde, sone Arthur ye shall grue to Perron your wyfe this nyght y charter of her endowry, wherein is comprysed the londe of the cyte of saintes and of Dors attaynyng to the boundes of galgoyne. And also ye shall grue her this ryng w this rche & peryous cintraude, this endowry mounteth well to the some of .x. thousande pounde by annuall rent, than it was tyme for Arthur to go to bedde & whan he was goyng therto the lady Luke sayde to hym good dere loue Arthur I requyre you that ye speke this nyght as lytle as ye maye doo to Perron my daughter, for she is somwhat shammast. Dearly madame quod Arthur with a ryght good wyll, and so wente he to bedde.

Howe that Jehannes who char was a  
dove with arthur in the stede of his wy-  
fe Perron, & by the wordes suffer hym to  
touche her she demaunded her endowpse.  
Capitulo.

**A**nd whā that Arthur was thus  
a bedde he beganne to draw nere  
to his wyfe as to his knowlege. Than  
Jehannes counterfayted her speche and  
sayd softly. Wyf it is so by pe touche me  
I wyl knowe what shall be myn endow-  
pse, I requyre you spz allygne it to me.  
And than shall I be readye to fulfill all  
your commandeunte. Than Arthur  
toke the charter and the rynge and deli-  
vered them to Jehannes. And sayde my  
loue Perron ye shall have a saye endow-  
pse, for it dwaweth nere to the some of .x.  
thousande pounds. And so bydde put the  
rynge upon one of her fyngers. Wyf ry-  
ghte dere wyfe sayde Jehannes I humb-  
ly thanke you. And so toke the charter  
and the rynge and layde theym by pry-  
ly under the beddes spde. So thus was  
Jehannes moost parte of the nyghte wyth  
Arthur in grete joye and myghte untill  
the tyme that Arthur fell a slepe, for he  
had not slepte of al nyghte before. And  
whyle that he thus slepe Jehannes pry-  
vely rose and tooke wyth her the charter  
of Perrons endowpse and came to the  
lady Luke. And ncontynent she was sch-  
ewyd agayne pryvely to the stange to her  
moder. And than was Perron put softly  
in to the bedde to Arthur, who woke  
not tyll it was saye daye. And whan he  
was waken he sawe where as Perron  
laye faste a slepe by hym, for she had not  
slepte of all the nyght tyll than.

Howe that Arthur, Hector and Gouver-  
nar Wentserly in the moynge to se Je-

hannes at the stange, who theyd bnt  
Arthur all the reason of his wyfe, and  
howe that she had layne with him at that  
nyghte in the stede of Perron, wherof he  
grately meruayled. Cap.

**A**nd whan Arthur sawe her so sle-  
pe, he lette her lye and rose saye  
and softly. And at that tyme there were  
none in all the palays oute of the bed-  
des for it was than about the of 9 clok  
he sawe all onely Hector and Gouvernar  
And whan Arthur sawe them goodlye he  
gave them good morowe. And sayd spz  
I praye you let us lye upon our horses  
and gose Jehannes, wherwyth they said  
they were well content & soo rode for the  
tyl they came to the stange at which tyme  
Jehannes was lade on her bedde in  
her clothes and were fallen a slepe & was  
covered wyth a mancell of grene. And  
therwyth she wooke and whan she harde  
that Arthur was come she rose by halfe  
slepyng and sette her upon her bedde sp-  
de and therwyth Arthur came in to the  
chambre and ncontynent that she sawe  
by the wayes greatly ashamed & blus-  
shed & de and calde doctore her lye to the  
erthe wherof Arthur had gette meruay-  
le and said what chere make you saye lo-  
ue Jehannes ye were wonte to come clip-  
pe and kysse me, and to make me grete  
tees, and nowe it semeth ye be halfe sle-  
pyng, what is the cause ye be rylen soo  
early and thus to slepe clothed on youre  
bedde, spz sayde Jehannes it behoueth me  
me so to doo, for I was nere to my lorde  
and lout whan it was convenient for  
me to ryl. And how saye lady was it  
your lorde and lout bydde not rylayne  
you tyll for I meruayle that he woulde  
suffre you to ryl fro the hym so early, cer-

carnely for toon. For he was a slepe.  
 Alas, I saye, why hadde ye not than ma-  
 ke hym; certainly for I thought not to  
 doo hym so moche trouble. Can it se-  
 meth saye Iehannet that ye loue hym,  
 Certainly for that it is true moze than al-  
 the woꝛlde. I saye loue Iehannet is that  
 he that ye haue sayde shoulde marie you,  
 Certainly for ye and this nyght. I haue  
 lven with me, wel saye lady I pray you  
 What hath he gyven you to your endow-  
 re, for as God helpen he hath endow-  
 wed me ryght ryche, for he hath gy-  
 uen me well x. thousand pounds by an-  
 nuall rente. Ten thousand pounds saye  
 loue sayd Arthur that is a grete gyfte.  
 Can it se meth he is a ryght good man  
 and a ryche, and hath ryght grete fren-  
 des. Daron my wyf both mo grete in-  
 dowre. For I cannot se what he  
 hath, but I am put in possession thereof  
 by a charter and by a saye ryng, by my  
 sayth quod Arthur that a lady possi-  
 haue I gyven unto Daron my wyf.  
 And I praye you here herte the me-  
 your charter and ryng for with a right  
 good will. Can he take a boxe I was  
 at her beddes syde and byde opene, and  
 deliuered it to Arthur. And whan he saw  
 it he knewe right well the scale of his fa-  
 der and so toke on the ryng and knewe  
 it ryght well, wherof he had grete mer-  
 uayle. And than he called unto hym her-  
 to; and Gouvernat and demanded of  
 theyn if they knewe that scale or not,  
 for without saye this is the scale of my  
 lord your fader. I mercy god of Arthur  
 were loue Iehannet where hadde you  
 you this ryng and charter, for ye deli-  
 uered it to me out of your owne handes  
 to to myn, of my deliustance quod Ar-  
 thur. I praye you saye lady Where was  
 that, certainly for in your bedde, In my

bed, saye lady and whan was that, as  
 god helpe me for this same nyght past.  
 And how saye lady maye I haue persi-  
 te knowlege therof, whyn quene dere lo-  
 de and loue maye it please you to tellyn  
 bye that whan ye were a bedde ye would  
 haue had me to haue fulfilled your pica-  
 sure, but first I desyred of you to knowe  
 what shoulde be my endowre. And ye an-  
 swered me that ye had gyven me the cy-  
 te of Exetres and of Dops and all the co-  
 stes attaynyng to the boundes of Gas-  
 con and this ryng ye hadde put on my  
 ryng and than deliuered me this char-  
 ter. In the name of god quod Arthur the-  
 se tokens bereith wytnes that all that ye  
 saye shoulde be of trouth, but I requyre  
 you firste loue tell me howe ye came into  
 my bedde, for knowe ye for trouth that  
 Daron your wife was no maye for be-  
 fore that tyme she hadde done a forsaye.  
 And so there she layed vnto hym howe  
 that dame Luke of offrye coubed gre-  
 tely to haue helyn, and sayd for the fore  
 she sent for Auol her trusty knyght vnto  
 as my moder and myr. And fyue hundred  
 poundes of golde, the whiche all ready  
 is here as ye maye see. And furthermore  
 she shewed to hym all the demenoure of  
 the knyght and of her moder. And howe  
 in conclusioun she went to the court, and  
 so by the lady Luke was brought into  
 his bedde in the strete of his wife Daron.  
 And howe aboute midnyght whan that  
 he was a slepe she prauely toke from hym  
 and than was Daron put in to the bed-  
 de. And whan that Arthur hadde heard  
 all this processe, he was wrothe grete  
 therof, howebeit he had grete joye ther-  
 of in his herte. And swetely clepyd and  
 called Iehannet and sayde, saye loue, ye  
 sayde full true to me whan ye shewed me  
 that you had bene all nyght with your lo-

der for to haue ye don / for I thinke  
 that you I know you: for I thinke, and  
 I am right glad of this aduenture, for  
 now that ye are all well, and the  
 ship hath wrought this aduenture to the  
 point of parts with London and home, I  
 thinke ye are happy in this thing & chere-  
 set. And now I sende for you to be not de-  
 mayd: but boldly come to my apparer  
 in the best manner that ye can be and  
 your moder also, for with a litle good  
 will sayd Iehanet. How be it I requyre  
 your noblenesse not to be misconcei-  
 ued in this orde, nor to thinke that  
 I do it for any wanton sensuall appe-  
 tite, for for I praye god to receiue I do  
 it for none entent but onely for the singu-  
 lar loue that I haue to you. And by that  
 meanes ye shoulde haue knowledg: of  
 the false demendite of your wyfe, for I  
 shoulde rather haue suffered to haue be-  
 drawen with wyld beasts than euer  
 I wolde haue consented to haue done  
 this dede with any other creature shewing  
 for other loue than ye be. For I nor haue  
 neuer had, & my right detesteth sayd ar-  
 chur: & pray to god I praye neuer longer  
 yet I should for this matter thinke any  
 pill in you, for of her right I ought to  
 thanke you as much as at my pleasure  
 in this world cometh to for now ye  
 had not ben my wyfe I should haue be-  
 continue wed with Dolours and Ielousy  
 wherof I am now discharged by your  
 meanes. for I thinke now wither I for sake  
 her company and so shall I free out of  
 doubt and trouble: me that ye haue as  
 faithful and true as euer ye had a wifed  
 if it might be. And so right wherelye he  
 took of her his litle and departed, & rode  
 forth ouerpassing and talking with Hector  
 and gouernour of this aduenture. And  
 Hector sayd to him as god help me forre

colli with this great treason I shal  
 to you shal surely be quail, for by y<sup>e</sup> grace  
 of god yet before Easter next coming I  
 shall oute renne her consistory with ba-  
 ners displayed & shal make her stand-  
 ing nether castel nor towre by ryght but I  
 shall brylle them downe to the erth. And  
 by the sayth y<sup>e</sup> I owe unto god almygh-  
 ty if she were a man as she is a woman  
 I wolde nether byrthe ne ease tyll I  
 had stricken her dead Ied her whitherso-  
 ever I wolde & Arthur this becometh that  
 myschance be demeaned. And to these gentle  
 knightes rode for the dreughth of this  
 matter tyll they came to Rannes. And  
 thar they went to the playys at which  
 tyme all so; des & knightes were redye  
 apparey led, and there was so great joy  
 and feust that it was maruayle to thinke  
 thereon. And whan the duke saw Arthur  
 his son he began to smile & demaund  
 of hym whether that his wyfe were de-  
 nayd. I prayd the reke of Enlon I thinke  
 she shal be call in her bed, well well I say  
 quod Arthur saye and espyce, there is  
 other thinges that ye knowe full wel  
 chetor, and sayd to his father, I prayd  
 please you it is of crouch ye have married  
 me and given me the charter of the dow-  
 rie of Decton my wyfe and also a ryng  
 wha standing tyme aude, I say I knowe not  
 whether there be in this charter any  
 chynge the whiche shal ought to be re-  
 mended. Therefore I wolde not though  
 other wyse come of me than wel has per-  
 son I should lose her endowte for lacke of  
 formall makinge. Therefore I requyre  
 pou let the charter be broughte forth  
 and redde openly in the presence of mine  
 uncles & of the archbishop. And if it  
 ought to be amended I beseeche you let  
 it be reformed by the, it is wel sayd some  
 quod the duke and where is it. Sayd the

## The History of Arthur

ron hath it for I deliuered it to her this  
nyght past. Let it be sente for saye ne-  
ueto saye the erle of Bloys. So than þ  
lady Luke and þerron were broughte  
forth to the duke, who sayd þerron saye  
doughter arthur your husbände chyn-  
beth wel on your profit, therefore bring  
for he your charter of your dowry that  
arthur gaue you this nyght, a it oughe  
to be retourned it shal be amended, for  
sayd þerron it suspeketh me ryght well  
as it is, for I am ther with ryght well  
content, Well doughter sayde the duke,  
yet for that it please me that it shal be  
seene a rede. For quod she in good truch  
I haue it not, Whye where is it than of  
the duke, for surely I haue sente it by a  
trusty messenger into my owne countrey  
Well saye doughter quod the duke hathe  
ly haue ye no doubt nofere therof, for  
here is none that wolde begyle you, and  
therfore hardly and boldly bring it forth  
before me. And therwith Gouernar step-  
ped forth for his herte was so grene and  
mightie for belonge that was doone to  
Arthur his maister that he coude not a  
kneyne ne forbere hymself no lenger, but  
in open audience he sayde to the Duke,  
for it is of trouthe ye haue maryed my  
loyde arthur your son to such a woman  
that the whiche oughe not to be receiued  
in matrimony with so grete a gentyl-  
man and of so his a lygnage as my loyd  
your son is, for he is a woman dispo-  
noured in euery noble mans coursee as  
she that hath abandoned her wyl vnto an  
other man than to my loyd Arthur, as  
it well appereth, for she hath defouled  
her body with another knight. And ther-  
fore this nyght she caused an other da-  
moyzell who was a true mayde to  
lye by my loyd arthur. And to proue  
that this is true that I say beholde here

this knyght for Ansell who conueyed  
this damoyzell, and leste with her moche  
gyue hundred pounde in golde the which  
came luke of ostyge do sende unto her  
And when she had brought this damoy-  
zell she was layde a bed with my loyd  
Arthur. Now be it she was not so falsly  
but of she wold suffre my lord to touche  
her she demanded of him her dowrye.  
And so my loyd arthur deliuered to her  
the charter and the ringe as he thought  
none ill. And in dede for to certefie this  
chynge sende for the damoyzell. And than  
shalpe know by her owne mouthe all  
the trouthe both my loyd was betrayed  
So than incontinēt this damoyzell was  
sent for and her moder also. And when  
that J. hanner was come there openly  
she declared all the matter and she wold  
forth the charter and the ringe. Than  
was the duke and duchesse greatly dis-  
mayed and all other lordes and frendes  
of arthur. Than steppe forth my ansell  
and cast his gloue agaynst this damoy-  
zell J. hanner, and sayde þ he neuer wold  
to fetch that mayde, ne brought neuer  
the forsayde money to her and that he  
proue agaynst any that wolde say the con-  
trary. Therwith the gentyl þerron came  
forth and cast his gloue agaynst the kny-  
ght in the damoyzell's quarel. And sayde  
how that he wolde proue þ he falsely  
lyed and deliued lyke a false traicour.  
And as to you dame Luke of ostyge I  
ensure you ye haue not in al your countrey  
castel nor countrey neuer so stronge but I  
shall breke them do wane to the earth, &  
fro henceforth repure me for your ene-  
mie surely for so am I and wyl be. And  
for duke I beseeche you receyue my gloue  
agaynst this knyght, who both falsly  
and traicourly deceyued my colyn ar-  
thur, for of Gouernar ye shall not do so

for it is agaynst reason that so hie a person as ye be shoulde do batayle with such a false traytour sythe there be other to take the quarrell in hande, this matter toucheth my lord and I am his man & haue no pylt to him vpon his poynt, therfore I ought to defende his right. And therewith he cast downe his gloue & said gentil and honourable knyght Duke receyue my guage and do right to my lord your son, for I say that this damopseil Jehannet sayth truth in euery thinge & this knyght falsly lieth. And thac I wyl p:oue my body agaynst his, and so therewith the knyght receyued Gouvernars guage. And also the knyghtes and the batayle was iudged to be done the next day ensuyng without leuger delay.

Howe þe Gouvernar daynquyshed in batayle sye Aysel & caused him to make knowledge of this treason & confessed how þhe brought Jehannet fro the stange for to lie all night w Arthur. Cap. xv.



Whan the batayle was thus determined to be the next day, hee for was not content in his mynde by cause bys guage was not receyued so in this maner as for that day they went to there restes. And the next morninge by tynes arthur and Gouvernar and all other lordes his frendes went to þe chiefto here masse. And there gouvernar byd syt offe, and after him all other. And whan the masse was ended Arthur ledd forth Gouvernar to his chambze to be armed. And whan he was surely armed he lepe on a mighty courser. And arthur and Hector were armed & mounted on theyr horses to kepe the feilde to the intent that there shoulde be no treaso and the crie of Bloys went to the place where as they shoulde fight. Than by þe tyme was armed sye aunsel & came in the place, so thā there was brought forth sayntes and bokes wheron Gouvernar did swere þe falsely & vnturly Jehannet the damopseil of the stange was brought by sye aunsel vnto the court & by his aduise she was put into the bed to arthur in the stede of Perron his wife. And whā he had thus sworne he kyssed the sayntes and rose like an hardy knight. and than sye aunsel did swere with great fere and trouble. How that gouvernar sayde by hym vnturly. And so here se with great trouble and payne, and all the people y saw him sayd that he had an euill countenance & be sempyng wold be in the wronge. And whā they were both mounted on theyr horses. Than was icried by an haraude of armes þeche of them shoulde do theyr best. Than sayde arthur to Gouvernar, now myn owne good frende quite you lyke a valiaunt knyght. And so these two dreywe aparte fro other and byssed their speers to the restes & dashed

## The story of Arthur

ther: spozres to the hoxses spores & met  
togidre so rudely þ they frusched they  
spores to they: sildes like hardye knigh-  
tes and ful of great valure, howbeit syz  
aunselles valure was not to be compa-  
red w Governar, so: Governar had ben  
a man greatly to be redoubted. And af-  
ter the bzeking of they: spores they past  
by. And in the retozninge they set they:  
hades to they: swerdes. And Governar  
stroke syz Aunsell so rudely that he byd  
ryue his shelde to the boche, and brake a  
great parte of his harnes, so that the  
swerde entred depe into the fleshe, and  
syz aunsel stroke agayne Governar on  
the helme and brake with the stroke ma-  
ny barres therof, and the stroke glenced  
downe on the lyfte syde and made a way  
a great parte of his harnes to the bare  
sabel, but god kept him that it entred  
not into the fleshe. Than Governar flo-  
cysched agayne his swerde & stroke syz  
aunsell on the heyghe on his helme and  
cut it to the harde sercle of stele, and the  
stroke glenced downe by the shelde so ru-  
dely that he claue it to the insides. And  
w the same stroke the swerde dlo lighte  
on the necke of the hoxse wher wpth the  
hoxse was so sore wounded that he fell  
downe to the erthe. and whan syz aun-  
sell sette his hoxse fallen vnder hym, he  
lep: on his feet with his swerde in hys  
hande. wherfore he was of some gnat-  
ly prayled. And some o her byd greately  
prays the stroke of Governar. And wh  
Governar saw him on the erthe he thou-  
ght þ he wolde not renne on his enemy  
with his hoxse, he being on fote. Ther-  
fore incontinent he byd a lyght dowlne  
on fote and putte his shelde before hym  
& wone schynge his enemy. And gaue  
hym such a stroke that he stroke a ware  
parte of his cheke & the stroke dyscended

to his sholder & wounded him to the harte  
bones wher w syz aunsel was constrey-  
ned to knele & right nere to haue fallen  
Than al the lordes sayd þ they: was no  
countenenge endure the strokes of gover-  
nar. Therewith arthur laughed with a  
good herte so that governar harde hym  
wherby his herte doubled in courage  
and whan syz Aunsel felt hymself thus  
hardly bestad, he swate in this mynde þ  
he wolde be auenged of that stroke, and  
therewith lyfte vp hys swerde to haue str-  
ken Governar. but whan he sawe the  
stroke coming he put his shelde before  
hym & aduysed wel how that syz aunsell  
had his arme vp a lott and whan nathe  
stroke he stroke at syz aunsell vnder the  
armour so rudely þ the arme & swerde &  
all flew into the felde. wherof syz aunsel  
had so much payne that he fel to the erth  
in a traunce. And than governar lepe to  
hym to haue stryken of hys head, but he  
cryed for gods sake mercy. Than came  
the duke and Arthur, Hector, and other  
lordes and knyghtes and there in the pre-  
sence of them al he recounted al the treu-  
sen, and how that he went for Jehanne  
and brought her to his lady Luke. And  
how that he was of counsaile that she  
shoulde be put a bedde with arthur in the  
stede of Berron. Than he had Jugemēt  
for his trespasse suche as he had deserued  
so than Governar was led home by ar-  
thur & Hector and caused to be vnrmed  
whome they founde wpthout any hurte  
wherof they thanked god. And than Jea-  
hanne had as great Joye as any crea-  
ture coulde haue, and she clypped and  
kysed Governar of entynes wth good  
herte. Than all the other erles and ba-  
rons came to governar and demaunded  
hi how he did. he answered & sayd right  
wel thanked be god and sette none hurte

the same popye hour the lady luke de-  
parted sodaynly out of the court a her  
doughter Perron with her great shame  
and soule rebuke. And whan they were  
in the felde in they way than this lady  
Luxe sayde vnto her doughter. This  
great shame that we haue had thou can-  
st see, for now we shal neuer haue honour  
nor be reputed honorable. And therewith  
herely she wept, wherof Perron tooke  
so great inward thought that she dyed  
within .xx. dayes after. And so therby  
Arthur was agayne at his liberte. And  
Jehanet so thenforth remayned still  
in the court with the duchesse and was

ryght well beloued with ellyer creature  
And the duke and duchesse were well  
reioyced that she shoulde kepe still the en-  
dowry that arthur had gyven her. And  
so she kept it tyll such a season as arthur  
caused her to be crowned a quene. And  
gave her Gouernour in marriage as it is  
more playnly conceyved in this present  
booke. **Cap. xvi.**



**A**fter the ende of .v. dayes Jehan-  
et came vnto the duke and to  
Arthur that the fayre Perron was de-  
ceased and passed out of this worlde, of  
the whiche tidings arthur hadde ry-  
ght greace Joye. And specially Johan-

et; howebeit the kynge for his honour  
and worshippe caused her obsequye to  
be done ryghte solemnly in the chirech.  
And whan after this the court depar-  
ted and every man repaired to in theyr  
owne countreys. **Sauynge all onelys**

## The story of Arthur

Hector who remained with Arthur  
 And so in great hope and mirth they co-  
 stinued with the duke. And Arthur toke  
 it pleased him to take his pastime with  
 the fayre Jehanne. So it fortuned on a  
 nyght that Arthur, Hector and gouver-  
 nar were all thre lodged in one chambze.  
 And on a night as that was soze trou-  
 bled in his slepe a tozned and sighed ma-  
 ny tymes. So þe Hector and gouvernar  
 harkt him, and sayde eche to other, Arthur  
 is not well at this case, let us go wake  
 him. And to þe Gouvernar was his speeche  
 what he spiled. A frende Gouvernar  
 sayd Arthur. I haue be soze troubled in  
 my slepe for I dremed that I was ferre  
 out of this countrey. A þe sayde Hector  
 We ought to go into strange countreys  
 for before this tyme we haue promysed so  
 to do. Therfore set your mynde no leger  
 to rary at home, but Joyeously lete vs de-  
 parte. As god helpe me cosyn sayde Ar-  
 thur the day is come, that for to haue the  
 cite of paris I wil rary no longer. For  
 to morow wil I take licence of my fader  
 and of my moder. And wil haue with me  
 no more copany but you and gouvernar  
 and Jaket my squyre. So þe sayd Gouver-  
 nar yf sayd well, for a yonge man whiche  
 payn is litle worth, how be it þe I doute  
 me greatly þe that get no leue. Merely  
 sayd Arthur I wil away to morow here  
 And so they lay still all that nyght tyll it  
 was daye. Than rose Arthur and his  
 company. And when the duke was by  
 Arthur came before him with his bonet  
 in his hande and knelled downe to the  
 eithe and humbly requyred both his fa-  
 der and moder þat wolde please them to  
 graunte licence to go play hym a season  
 out of the countrey wherewith in that  
 tyme his slepe was soze troubled. And  
 entysed him as muche as they myght to

leue his enterpryse, but in no wyse they  
 coude tozue his mynde. And at the laste  
 mirth soze weping they gaue him licence  
 and enquyred of him with whome he  
 wolde be accompanied. Right dere father  
 I wil haue none other company, but  
 alonely my cosyn Hector and Gouvernar  
 and Jaket my squyre. Welcere son seþe  
 ye wil not abyde take w you gold and  
 syluer at your pleasure. Than Gouver-  
 nar came to Arthur and demaunded of  
 hym what space he wolde be as he wolde  
 returne into his owne countrey. Merely  
 quod Arthur I he space of thre yeres. So  
 then anon these thre lordes were spyd a  
 byode in the court and all aboute the  
 countrey how that Arthur wolde departe  
 out of that countrey, and rary out syue  
 yeres, and at the last Jehanne her ther  
 of, wherewith al her bloubd trembled and  
 quake and ranne out of her chambze to  
 the palays wher as the duke and du-  
 chesse were together right soze weping.  
 And when she perceyued wel how that it  
 was of trouthe, wherewith she had  
 past, and cherish she fel downe in a readi-  
 lie reuence in the armes of her mother.  
 And when she reuised she cryed a sayd  
 a Arthur my swete loue with thes 30-  
 nyer I all his poore orphelyne lose her  
 good lord and chief father. A Arthur my  
 dere herte wil þe thus leue me. And  
 toke the duke sayd her make this great  
 lamentacion than opened his herte and  
 rended many a saile tere with his eyen.  
 And in this season Gouvernar receyved  
 all suche necessary thinges as was ne-  
 cessary for thes departing. Than Arthur  
 toke leue of his father and moder who  
 were right sorrowful of his departing.  
 And when he went to Jehanne to take  
 his leue of her, and as soone as she  
 sawe him she ranne and toke him in her

armes and sayd ryght piteously a right  
fwere by the ende of my herte and loue,  
how can you fynde in poure herte to leue  
this pooze o'pheline. And whan arthur  
harde her speke so swetely it touched ne  
re to his herte than of all the sorow both  
of fader and moder and of all his kynne.  
But fynally he commaunded her to god,  
and sayd saye swete loue I requyre you  
to praye to god for me, for I promysse  
you yf I lyue I wyl do you more good  
and honour than as yet euer ye had, a so  
kyste her swetely and departed & moun-  
ted on his hofse, & he was in a garmen-  
te couered al with grene, gyfte about w  
a rede lase, and baie he and Hector and  
Gouernar were al in a sute in scarlet ho-  
sen. And eche of them a chaplet on theyr  
hedes lyke ponge lusty lowers. And they  
roode so longe tyll they were oute of the  
towne. Whan Arthur entred in to a gre-  
re thought & rode musynge a grete spa-  
ce. And whan Hector sawe him in þe case  
he called Gouernar to hym & sayd fren-  
des se ye not howe arthur rideth musyng.  
I holde it beste we byke hym out of his  
thoughte, therwith Hector called Arthur  
and demaunded of hym what him ayled  
to ryde so sadly. And whan arthur harde  
hym he tourned his heade to hym warde  
and sayde, saye colyn I praye you come  
ryde here by my syde and Gouernar on  
the other syde. And whan arthur was  
betwene them he sayde, frendes I haue  
mused all this season of my dreame that  
I had this laste night whan ye woke me  
I tolde you parte but not all and surely  
it is the cheste cause wherfore I haue ta-  
ke on me this iorneye. Herken to me and  
I shal shewe you all my hole dreame for  
no thyng can I hyde fro you, this laste  
nyght whan I was in my fyrste slepe me  
thought I was in the moost sayest pla-

ce in all the worlde, tohere I sawe a fresshe  
fountayne and me thought the beautie  
therof caused me to syt do wne on the  
brym therof, and with the saye clere wa-  
ter therof washed my face and handes,  
and fynally I cast by myne eyes alofte,  
and on my ryght hand me thought I sa-  
we the richeste paultion pyghte that euer  
was sene, and in the hyght of this paup-  
lyon was an egle of golde the richest and  
thesayrest that coude be deuysed & pro-  
perly me thoughte I sawe this egle come  
downe & lyght on my bosome & shewed  
me so grete sygne of loue that it pleased  
me so muche that I coude not be sayd so  
fynd beholdynge therof, & me thought  
it flykered aboute me with her wynges  
in the sygne of grete loue, and at the last  
me thought I sawe where came to me  
warde a grete gryffon foule and horrible  
and he broughte with hym a great mul-  
titude of serpentes: wher to all the earth  
aboute me was couered, and me thought  
they wolde haue taken fro me myn egle  
xxho was ryght ferde and couered her e-  
uer by me and loked on me swetely. In  
maner as thoughe she wolde haue sayde  
arthur kepe me. And than me thoughte  
I toke my swerde in my hande and so  
fought with this gryffon & al these ser-  
pentes, by whome me thought I suffered  
moche payne in great peryll, but at the  
laste me thoughte there came a turtill to  
helpe me & broughte with her many dou-  
nes. And out of an other parte I sawe  
where came a sparhawk accompanied w  
many faucons. And all these dyde me sus-  
che socoure that we slewe þe gryffon and  
all the other serpentes. And sodaynly  
than me thoughte that the egle and þe tur-  
till and I were in a hysse toure, and bothe  
you Hector, & Gouernar with me. And to  
us me thoughte came people wout nom;

## The story of Arthur

bre and me thoughte there was a lyon & four grete leopardes. And all they bidde enclyue the ym selfe to me warde & bidde me grete honour. And they were all crowyhed w golde & me thought they gaue the egle frely to me. And he pleased me soo well that I woulde neuer haue departed by my will fro her company. And euer lpth I wote my herte and loue hath ben so set on þe egle that I can not draw my herte fro her. for I loue her so entyrlly þat as longe as I lyue I shall neuer cease to trauell & labour tyll I haue found her. And this is the verpe cause wherfore I am departed out of myn owne countree. Werly lpe; sayd Gouvernat this betokeneth þe grete honour shall come to you, for lpe; ye knowe wel the lyon, who as ye thoughte dyd geue you the egle is a beest exail. for the lyon is kyng of all bestes. And the egle is kyng of all foules. Soo the spynnylacpon therof is that a kyng shall geue you a quene, ho w be it grete payne shall ye lpe; suffer. And the griffon þe woulde haue taken fro you poure egle, betokeneth some grete man þe wolde haue

ue her that shall be gyuen to you. Therfore it shall behoue you to conquere her with the swerde, and lpe; I Gouvernat your seruaut am here þe neuer shall sayle you whyle I lyue, no more shall I saye recosyn sayd herto; by the sayeth that I owe vnto my lorde my father. frendes sayd Arthur I hartely thanke you. And so they rode forth on theyr waye. And because ye shall vnderstande the spynnylacpon of the egle and the lyon. Therfore we shall leaue for a season spekyng of arthur and his company rydng on theyr forney, & ye shall heare of this egle tyl tyme shall be that we retourne agayn to Arthur.

How the myghty kyng of sorolots called Emendus helde open courte in his realme where as was four purllachte kynges, who were all his subiectes & here ye shall here of thynges mercurious. Capitulo.



**I**n the seas that arthur thus rode as yehaue hir de here before there was in the realme of Babilon a kyng, the whiche realme is in Ind the more. Joyning to the greete see called Betse. And also to the rede see betwene Mesopotanyes perle. This kyng had to name Emendus, ryght puyssaunt of haupdur & frendes. And he had vnder him four kynges myghty and puyssaunt, who were vnder his obeyssaunce, & helde all thery realmes of hym. Wherof the fyrste was kyng of orquany, the whiche is on the syde of babilon, the whiche realme extendeth to the rede see, & this lande was full of gyauntres. The second was kyng of the realme of Bormalle the whiche is in the lond of Borne and gomorre, & it extendeth to the loyde Joppynge to the dead see. And this kyng myght well byynge in batayl better thā a hōdred. A. syghtrynge men. The thyrde hath the gouernance of the realme of Walefounde, a very obscure & dar he londe & the people therof as blacke as soote, and it extendeth into the oryent where as the son ryseth, the whiche people were greatly doubted in battayle or warre, for they were without pyte. And bynde eate raw fle she lyke dogges. The fourth kyng was of the realme of Jhadyte the whiche extendeth into egypt and vnto the land of femene. These.iiii. kynges were subiectes to the mighty kig of Babilon Emendus. Who hadde to wyfe a noble lady named fenpce by the reason of the countre þ she was borne in. For it was named fenyr bycause in that countre breedeth a byrde þ was called fenyr. And in all the worlde there is neuer but one, & as it is sayd when she is olde and duntreth there she maketh her nestes of wyte thornes on the heyghes of an hye

mountayne as nere the sonne as she can so þ by the here of the sonne the nest quic beneth a flamel on fyre, & the she in byrdeneth her selfe, & of her alwes there is as nother fenyr engendred. This sayde lady fenpce wyfe to kyng Emendus was quene by enherytaunce of the clere toure the whiche was a noble cyte. And by greete force she had subdued the cyte of compyne & of constantinople of comite of Macedonye, of Phesale, of Boeme & of all the countre of denmarche. She was a ryght hye & a myghty pynesse, & a right good & vertuous, so þ it was harde than to haue founde ony lady comperable to her. And so it fortyned in the fresshe mery moneth of maye, as at the feast of pentecost þ kyng Emendus helde open court at the cyte of compyte, at the whiche feast were these foure foresayd kynges and all the seven perres of his realme and thys feast was great, & the courtful of peple. And the fyrst day of this feast the kyng Emendus was in his palays lenyng on a roode of golde þ he helde in his hand & aboute hym stode these four kynges and his.iiij. perres accompanied also wryth theys & myghty duke of Alatre & cristleres. And his noble quene fenpce satte by hym greete with chylde, & nere to her tyme of deliuerance. And the kyng of orquany behelde her well, who was her nere colyn & sayde. Madam methynke it sholde be metelpe for youre grace fro hysforth to drawe to the place where as the kyng wyll þ ye shall take your chasbze, for I thynke youre tyme approcheth on fast. In dede sayde colyn said the quene ye saye ryght truly, how be it I knowe not as yet where as my lord wyll I shall lye. And therto the kig answered & sayd. In dede as yet I am not determined in what place she shall lye in. Than

## The story of Arthur

said the kyng of No:mall, who was a sage pryncce, for I wol couſaile pou let the queene ſpe at the porte No:re, & whan ſhe is deliuered let the chyld be bozne to the hyl of adventures. And ſp: yf ye do thus I thinke ye ſhall do wyſely. By my ſayth quod the kyng of Galetounde I wote not what to ſay in this mater whe ther it were better to bere the chyld thy ſer or not, for this is poure fyrſt chyld. And it is harde to tell what deſtynye the chyld wyl be of, yf it ſhall be good than were it well done þ it were bozne thyder. But peradventure þ adventures of this chyld maye be ſuche that it were better they were hydde & kepte ſecrete than to

be openly known. For in adventure lyeth often tymes as well yll as good. Well quod the kyng Emenous, Wada: me I wyl that ye go to the porte No:re And whan that ye be deliuered I wyl that the chyld be bozne up to the mount perplous, there to knowe what deſtynye that the chyld ſhall be of.

**¶** The deſcrypcion of the ſaycon and ſituacyon of the mount perplous the whiche was conquered by the prowess of Arthur. Capitulo, xviii



**I**n this moſte perplous there was a caſtell named the porte No:re. This caſtell was ryght ſtrong & of grete ſurete. And it was made & ordeyned by proſerpine, who was on of þ queenes of the ſayre & the cytuacyon of this caſtel

was ſuche that .x. legges of length there ranne a grete ruer about the cyrcumſce of this caſtell, the whiche was ſo depe fro the erth, and ſo hie that ſcarſe the water myghte be ſene runnyng underneth, & it ranne ſo rudely that who

So euer entred in to it was viterly per-  
 shed, it was blacker than smyth Water  
 & it smelled abhominably. Also it was  
 full of cutting and sharpe rocks & War-  
 mynge full of vermyen, this ryuer enuy-  
 ronned this castell ouer all spedes, & Joy-  
 nyng to this ryuer there was all aboute  
 the castell mountaynes so hye that no  
 creature coude mount vpon theym, nei-  
 ther on horse nor on fote, and they were  
 so bare and harde that the byrdes wyth  
 gret payne coude scant reple or get onpe  
 gresse or sustenance thereon. And among  
 these mountaynes there was a passage  
 of the largenesse of a charpor way, wher-  
 by one myght go and enter into the cas-  
 tell. And in certayne places there were  
 barbycans that defended the entre fro  
 al people. And vnder these mountaynes  
 there was a grete marys depe and foule  
 soo that none myght entre into it, but  
 incontynent he was losse and perished.  
 And there were pyttes of water in num-  
 merable yf it semed in a maner to be an  
 arme of the see, howe be it there was no  
 ther bakke ne hypp that myght abyde it,  
 And this mares was so depe yf it might  
 well be thought that it attayned downe  
 to the abyss and swalowe of the earth  
 the whiche mares endured well the lar-  
 genesse of .ii. legges, wherein there was  
 a passage of the bred of a spere length ma-  
 de by nygramantye, wheron there were  
 xxx. drawe byrdes. And so this mares  
 enuyronned the castell ouer all parties,  
 and the mountaynes caryed the mares.  
 And the ryuers, the mountaynes, so that  
 it was impossible to be assauted, besie-  
 ged or tohne. The castell also was closed  
 wdouble walles made of chalke stone &  
 sande, & grete barres and crampons of  
 yren and stele fyxed in lede. The walles  
 were .xv. fote thicke. & .xxv. of heyghte

enuyronned wyth there hondred toures  
 cramponed and knyt togder wyth gret  
 chaynes of yren, & the barbycans were  
 bended & bo:dyed wyth stele. To say the  
 trouth this castell of y porte No: doub-  
 ted not all the worlde. And in this castell  
 were halles of vchement aduentures whe-  
 re as no creature myght entre wythout  
 dethe, and manye knyghtes had be there  
 perished suche as toke on them to fo:do  
 the enchauntementes of that place. But  
 at the conclusyon all suche there dyed &  
 synghed there mortall spues. For none  
 coude nurr byng the aduentures to an  
 ende saue alonely Arthur of britayne as  
 ye shall after here. And before the gates  
 of this castell a lytle hyer on the hyll there  
 were palays halles and chambres wyth  
 grete & hye stronge batymentes, where  
 as four kynges myght well brue bene  
 harboured, and to these palays men my-  
 ght go surely wout ony peryll, for thider  
 came all such as passed through the cou-  
 ntre. And out of this palays men myght  
 go to the mount of aduentures, whereas  
 four quenes of the sayd Walked cuery  
 myght and did muche hurte to them that  
 came thider agensst theyr Wylls. And to  
 this hyll acustomable these ladyes came  
 nyghtly. The chyefe of them was called  
 prosperpyne a fre she yonge lady & a saye  
 wout coparison. For yf all the beauties  
 of al women in the worlde had ben assē-  
 bled togder in to one personne, yet she  
 woulde not haue had the fourth parte of  
 the beaute that prosperpyne was of, who  
 was quene and ladye of the other thre, &  
 was chref lady of this castell of the por-  
 te No: & of the mount perpillous. where  
 as she had pyght a ryche pauplyon wth  
 a splayed egle of golde in the toppethere  
 of, the whiche was the same egle that Ar-  
 thur sawe in his dreme, and in a nother

## The history of Artur

sent by Was the whyte shelde of the faire, and the good swerd named Clarence the whych shelde was of such force and mighte that it coude not be hurte nor enpayred, neyther for Iron nor stele nor for none other thyng. The which shelde was ordained too healepe no creature, but all onely hym that it was distenyed vnto, nor the swerde shold not be pulled out of the sheathe, nor healepe no man but alonely by hym that it was prestedynted vnto.

Howe it was determyned that the quene fenice shoulde take her chambere in the palays besyde the castel of p'p'orte Royre.

### Capitulo. xix.

**S**othus as ye haue hearde before the mighty kyng Emendus was agreed that fenice hys quene shoulde be a chyldebodde at the porte Royre, and that her chylde shold be borne vp to the moite of aduentures. And he ordayned that the kyng of Diquanye her cosyn germaine shoulde go wyth her, and the archebysshoppe of Cornyce, who was brother to the kyng Emendus. And also the quene of Ismaelyre, and manye other ladies e damoyelles, lordes and knyghtes shoulde accompayne thys quene fenice. And soo there they made to the kynges and the r'perres of the realme faithfull assurance that they woulde make true rep'orte of euery thyng that they shoulde here or see in the moante of aduentures. And also p' kyng Emendus and the twelue perres sware and made faithfull assurance that what so euer shold be distynied of that chylde, that they shoulde not wythstande in ony paynte the chylde's desteney but to kepe and to mayntayne the chylde lyke p'

sonne of a kyng. And of thys promyse there was made a charter sealed by kyng Emendus and by his twelue perres of hys realme, and was deliuered into the keepinge of the archebysshoppe of Cornyce. And soo by that tyme it was season to her masse. And when the masse was spynnyed the tables were layde, and ther they were serued ryght ryche as it apertayned too the honoure of suche a noble kyng. And thys feest and triumph endured the space of. x. dayes. Then the kyng Emendus byd grete plenty of golde and syluer, horse and harnays to lordes and knyghtes, and euery per sonne after theyr degre, and so euery man rep'ayed into there own countreis, and the quene fenice preparred al her besynesse for to remoue to the mounte perillous. And so she toke her leue of the kyng, and toke wyth her all suche compaigne as ye haue hearde distynied hearde before, and laboured so longe in her tojney that at the laste she arrived at the porte Royre, and went to the palays before the gate of the castel, and there she remayned tyll by proces of tyme that she was brought a chyldebodde with a fayre daughter. Then the archebysshoppe toke the chylde vp in hys armes and wente there wyth to the moite perillous. And with him was the kyng of Diquanye and the quene of Ismaelyre. And when they were aboue on the hyll they founde there a fayre and a goodly grounde, and sawe where there was a maynfull fayre fountayne rounde aboute the whyche there were sette foure ryche chayres, and on euery fountayne there was pyghte a pereon of stone where in there was ordayned a place for a chylde to lye in. In the whyche place they layd fayre and callid thys noble chylde. And

than they with bytween theym selfe into a  
pyper place there by her, & se what shold  
fortune after. Than anon it began to  
ware deere. And within a lytle space  
they sawe where there came foure the  
fayrest ladies of the world two and  
two together with greate torches and  
lyghtes before them, and where al crow  
ned with gold like noble quenes the first  
was so excellent fayre that the beauties  
of the other thre were nothing to be com  
pared to her, who was quene and lady  
ouer the other thre, and the castel of the  
porte Roy was perceyning to her. And  
also the fayre pauplyon with the Eggle  
of golde wherin was an ymage holding  
in her handes a chaplet made of paun  
ces, the whiche ymage in all popntes  
resembled to this faire quene proserpine  
wherin was also the whire welde and  
swerde enchaunted, the whiche paup  
lyon was not ferre pyghte to the foun  
tayne where as this childe was layd in  
the peregion. And so than these foure que  
nes wapped in mauntelles of silke let  
them downe in the sayde foure charyes,  
and the childe was in the middes be  
tweene them all foure.

Now that the daughter of the myghty  
kyng of Saindes, & of Venice his quene  
was despyned ouer the fountaine in the  
herber of the mounte perillous by foure  
quenes of the sayde the chiefe of theym  
was named proserpyne, who was the  
mooste fayrest creature than of all the  
world. Cap. xx.



Than this quene proserpyne be  
gan first and sayde. I perceyue  
wel here is the daughter of our dere fre  
des the kyng Emendus whome he hath  
sente hither to vs with greate triumphe  
therfore it is good reason that we doe  
hym some good and pleasure. Whadams  
sayd the other thre quenes begyn you.  
And we shall folow, certaynly sayd she  
with a right good wyll. First I wyll  
this childe be named florence, and that  
she shall be floure of beaute of all other  
creatures as long as euer she shall liue  
and properly I wyll she shall resemble to  
me both in face, in body, in countenance  
in goynge and commynge. And in all  
other thynges so lyke, that whoso euer  
se vs bothe together shall not consyder  
nor dyscerne the one fro the other. And  
also to her I gyue thys my castel of the  
porte Roy, and my pauplyon with the  
ymage holdynge the Chaplet. And  
also my whire welde and swerde.  
And therewith she helde her peace. And  
than the seconde quene sayde. Whadame  
syth that ye haue made her to be fayre w

## The story of Arthur

out comparison. I wyl also that she shall be gracious and amiable. wel quod the chyldre quene spth I see that she shall be exceedinge fayre and gracious withoute comparison. And madame seen she shall haue your semblaunt and your helde a swerde. I wyl that the best knight of the world shall haue her marriage. And I wyl that he shall bere the white shield and the swerde, and that they shall helpe none other creature but alonely hym. And I wyl that he shall achyue the aduentures of this castel, and shall put to death Walegrave the Monkour, and to him I gine the shield and the swerde as the chaplet & the ymage holdeth in the paupiton. And also I wyl that he shall haue this mayde florence in maryage. Than the fourth quene sayd, wel spth ye haue given this mayde to the best knight of the world. I wil that whatefyr any other be so bolde to take her, that incontinent he shall die or he haue power to touche her. And therewith all these quenes rose and wente there wayes. And than the quene of Ismaelste & the kyng of Orqueny and the archebysshop toke the childe and bare it to her mother and there openly recounted to her all that they had harde and seen of these quenes of the sayd. Than the archebysshop dyd charyte this childe, and gaue her to name florence. And than the quene of Ismaelste and the kyng of Orqueny helde her on the founte the which childe was kept by with foure noyses. And she grew and amended dayly so that she was towarde to be sayest creature of the world. And whan the quene was purged she wente to the cite of Sabba where as the kyng Emeus was accompanied with his kinges, and the seven petes of his realme. And this was at all halow

wentode where as he kept a great open court. And whan the quene was come the king met her with great triumphe. And she was led to the palays with a king and an archebysshop. And there openly recounted al the destiny of the childe, & how that she should be giuen in maryage to the best knight of al the world.

**H**ow the king of Wales founde sente his son to the cite of sabba to be brought by in the company of florence. ca. xxi

**I**n this tyme the king of Wales had a sone who was named steuen, and he was sent to sabba to be nourished by in the company of florence. And so these ii. chyldren were brought by together so longe til this childe seven yeres could go to scole, than the king Emeus sent hym to the scole of Athens there to learne. And by processe of tyme this childe there leined so well & profoundly that he became a scolarne clerke, specially in astronomy and nigromancy that in no parte there could be founde none like him in connyng. Than the kyng Emeus dyd sende to hym to be in his court. Than florence desired of her father that he myght be her clerke, and of her counsaile, and the king with a right good will dyd graunte her request, and florence loued him right wel to he serued her right nobly and true and she had after right great neede of him as ye shall here more playnly whan tyme shall be to speke therof.

**H**ow the quene sente moder to florence died, & how she made her testament giuinge to her doughter a kyng in parting her thereby in possession of the realme of blancheroure Cap. xxii.



**T**his quene fenice loved greatly her daughter florence, who was the mooste fayrest creature that as than coude be founde in al the world. For there was none that ever saw her, but incontinent they were ravished with her person: b. aune. And the quene her moder kept her so deryly that there were but fewe men that had any sight of her, for the kyng her owne father saw her not so oft as he wolde have done. In this maner she was kept till she was xviii. yere of age. Then it fortuneth on a season that this kyng Emendus helde open court at Bantopone. And to him were come al his other kynges and noble baronage at which time the quene his wyfe was ryght sore dysseased of the feust and cure day inpayred more, and more, and so the seconde day of this feast this noble quene fenice than as she lay in her bed she saw where as her daughter florence stood sore wepyng before her bedside wher with she began to make a pitiful lamentacion and sayd. Where daughter florence I have kept and cherished you unto this day with grete honour and

lofe. And now is the season come that I must needs leue you. And I trow me that after my deathe ye shal haue neede of me. And chere with she sente for the kyng Emendus her husbande, and for other foure kynges, and for al the seven pates of the rialmes. And whan they were all come into her presence she sayde to the kyng Emendus her husbande. Right pater lord I am sure it is not out of your remembraunce the destiny of our daughter florence, therfore say now in my last daies I humbly requyre you that ye wil kepe and vpholde the promise and other as ye haue made in that behalfe heretofore to the whiche ye are bounde to by your seale and wypringe. And suffice he neuer to be giuen to other lordes in marriage but to him that she is predestinate unto. In the name of god quod the kyng madame I faithfully assure you to vpholde al that I haue promised well than to you sayis quod the quene to the other kynges & vii. pates. So wyl say ye wyl ye all vpholde the same, & al they answered that they wolde neuer agre to the contrary. Whan the quene toke a ringe of her fingers

## The story of Arthur

and openly she sayd. Florence my fayre  
doughter I giue you my realme of blai-  
che toun. And put you in selenyng and  
possession thereof by this ringe. And so  
Florence toke the ringe & deliuered it to  
the archebysshop her uncle to kepe. Tha-  
the quene sayd to the king of ozouenp  
And to the archebysshop. I praye lordes I  
leue in your keepinge my dere doughter  
Florence praying you to kepe her well &  
true. For saye bysshop she is your owne  
nephew. And to you saye king of ozouenp she  
is colyn and goddoughter, therfore ye  
oughte to take good hede to her. And to  
you my owne dere lord and husbunde &  
to all other I humbly requyre paydō for  
any thinge that euery I haue trespassed  
gagnt any of you. beseeching you all to  
pray for my soule, and to the sauegarde  
of the blessed trinite I you commit. And  
therwith she marked her with the signe  
of the crosse and commended to god her  
spirite. And therwith lost her speche &  
mortall lyfe. Than began in the court  
so great sorow and lamentacion that it  
was pitie to beholde and here for the hig  
foundred all in teeres, and all other that  
was there present. Than Florence step-  
ped forth all in a rage and piteously cried  
and sayd. Alas I sorowfull and poore or-  
pheline of moder lyde. A herre why dost  
thou abyde any longer in my wofull bo-  
die. A dere lady & moder howe is it that  
ye be thus gone & leue behynde you your  
sorowfull doughter Florence, therewith  
she wange her lyp whyte handes and  
sayde. Alas I sorowfull & desolate crea-  
ture. And therewith she walde haue lepte  
and kyssed the dead coyle of her moder,  
but her herre sayled her and so fel downe  
to the erthe in a deadly traunce. And eu-  
ery body tooke so muche hede on there  
owne sorowes so that no body toke hede

of the wofull Florence. till at the last the  
archebysshop & maister Steuen toke her  
up in his armes, & so reuiued her & bare  
her out of the sight of the dead coyle, and  
than to her there came the abbes of our  
ladies monestery in that cite, and al her  
councel for to comforte her. And so these  
sorowfull tidinges anone ranne ouer al  
the cite, wherfore all the belles in euery  
chyrche began to sound. And euery crea-  
ture made great sorow for the deathe of  
the quene. And the king caused her bodi  
to be kept aboue the ground. xx. dayes for  
to abyde the barons and knightes of the  
realme of blainche toun for thencente  
that they shoulde be at the entierment of  
the quene and lady.

How that the quene Fenice moder to  
Florence was nobly entiered. Cap. xlii

**A**Boute the ende of. xx. dayes there  
came a knyght to kinge Emen-  
dus fro the emperour of Inde the moze.  
Who had heard tidinges howe that the  
quene Fenice was departed this transi-  
tozle life, and he desyred the kinge to pro-  
longe foure dayes longer the entierment  
of the quene, for he sente word that he  
wolde be with hym by that season wher  
of kinge Emendus was very glad that  
so hie a person as the Emperour was  
wolde take on him for to be at the bery-  
enge of the quene his wyfe. And when  
the day came of his comyng he was re-  
ceiued full right and honoureably and the  
cheynce was ministered to the deade  
bodie full right hie and solemne and  
so she was layd in the cathedra church  
of all the cite. And the Emperour a-  
bode there still a greatespace after.  
Wherewith the knyght to the entente  
to putte hym of his greatesorow. And

all other kinges eyles & barons departed every man into his owne countrey. And also the archebishop returned to coznte. And so toke his leue of the king his broder, and led with him florence his wese. And also florence toke leue of the king her father and of the Emperour who was as than all bedewed with weping, and not aialed as pertained to her estate, but after the maner of a sorowful mayner. How be it in suche state as she was in, she was of great beaute wherby this Emperour was stricken with so great ioy that he lost al his costenance. And fro hensforth he loued & despyed so muche florence that he thought on nothing but alonely on her. And thus departed florence w the archebishop her uncle, & traualled so longe til at the last she arrived at Coznte on a friday about the houre of euensong tyme, & there was receyued honourably, and there remained a great season. And mayster Secuen euer serued her wel and truly, and she trusted more in him than anye other after the death of the queene her moder.

¶ How that the Emperour of Indoe the more demaunded of kynge Smendus the saye florence his daughter in marriage. And of the answer that kynge Smendus made to hym. And also of the terme that was taken to mary florence, and how that mayster Secuen knewe by the regarding of the planettes that she was comynge out of the west a knight, who should aduenechures of the poore florence. And how he should haue and enlope the white sheide and the swerde and obtayne florence in marriage, wherof she was greatly comforted, for in no wise she loued the Emperour. Cap. xxi. l.

¶ Thus the Emperour abode wyl. Wyl the kynge Smendus, and departed together fro Pantopone and wente to maledone, but euer the emperour was in great trouble and thought for the loue that he had in florence too that the kynge Smendus demaunded of hym what he cyled to be so sad, and the Emperour answered and said sp; I shal tel you the trouthe. For I can not sende to you a moze certayne messenger than I am my selfe. for ye must beleue myne saying rather than anye other meane messenger. Sp; it is of trouthe how that ye be a great prynce and of righte grete power, and also sp; it is wel knownen how that my strength is not smal, for I thynke as now we two at in maner the greatest men that reygne in anye place of the worlde. Therfore it is a great welth to us to continue together as faithful frendes. And truly fro hensforth I wyll be your frende and your louer. Certaynly sp; it is so. I am a man to marie, and I thynke I cannot let my loue in no place so well and nobly as on florence your daughter, therefore sp; here with mine othmouth I desyre you to haue her in marriage. A sp; quod the king it may not be, for she maye haue none other marriage but suche as she is destyned vnto, for yf she anye other presume to take her she is but viterlye loste and dead. And also I haue woyn and set so my scale to hys holde her destynie, and neuer to breake it. Sp; sayde the Emperour beleue you them of suche fantasies as is the saye, surely sp; they haue no power nor might, but I requyre you gyue me your daughter, and soe we shal be togither as frendes: truly sp; said the king I will be glad therof: but I promysed to my queene to kepe saythfull the

## The history of Arthur

promys that I haue. In the name of god  
sayd the Emperour, for your queene is  
dead a yere, who shall neuer reioyne  
gayne, she shall neuer demaunde noz se  
you for the brekyng of anye couenaunce  
made to her, & chey is none ocher þat wil  
be so hard to requyte your dede. For yf  
they do they shall lese theiþ heades, wher  
fore say I requyte you fulfyll my desyre  
And than ye shall binde me to be your  
saythfull frende, wel say quod the kinge  
yf my doughter be content therewith it  
shall please me right wel, wherfore let  
ys ride to morowe towardes cornette, and  
speke wyth her and know her minde in  
this matere. So be it in the name of god  
quod the Emperour. And on the nexte  
day be tymes they lepe on theiþ horses &  
rode forth to Cornette, and rode so longe  
that on a Wednesday they arrived at the  
cittie of Cornette, & so went to the palays.  
Than the archebysshop came to the  
kinge, and brought with hym florence.  
And than they all together wente byn  
the palays & entred into a fayre cham  
ber. Than the Emperour and the king  
set them downe together, and betwene  
them the fayre florence. And at the laste  
the king Emendus sayd. Fayre dought  
er your moder is departed this lyfe, &  
it is now tyme that fro henceforth that I  
promysed for your noble estate, ye be a  
great lady and a ppyssaunt. Therfore I  
wyl marry you to this noble Emperour  
here present. And whan florence hard  
her father speke to her of mariage all her  
blode began to quake and tremble, for she  
hated the Emperour ever sith the begyn  
ning of her yowth, how be it she and we  
red ryght wylful and sayd. Dede I; and  
rather ye know wel that it is not yet. Al  
monethes sith the death of my lady my  
moder. And yf I should marry me so new

lye I should be greatly blamed. Therfore  
say I requyte you let this yere passe, and  
say I wil take consaile & tell you what  
I wil do. And whan the Emperour hard  
her speke so reasonably he coude not en  
dure to charge her any further as than.  
and accorded to abide the tyme of her de  
syre. And behelde wel how that she chag  
ged colours and soze trembled, & so dyd  
the kinges her father also. How be it he  
made no semblant. And so they were  
together a longe season, till at the laste  
she toke licence of them and departed in  
to her owne chambere soze amased and so  
abode tyll the archebysshop and may  
ster steuen were comen fro the court.  
And as sone as they were entred into the  
chamber of florence, they saw wel where  
as she was sitting soze sighing and we  
pinge. Than the bishop toke her by the  
hand & demaunded of her why she made  
that lamentacion. Is helpe me god vi  
cle sayde florence, my lord my father he  
peth not wel the couenauntes that he  
made to my lady my moder, for now he  
is in the mynde to marry me vnto this  
Emperour. And there is no thinge that  
I hate so muche as I do hym. Let saye  
ye I had rather to suffre death than to  
haue hym. And I haue no longer respyte  
than the ende of this yere, why madame  
quod mayster steuen haue ye purcha  
sed so longe a respyte. In sayth I sayth  
fully ensure you that I wyl gyue you  
two yeres longer, for I warant you that  
two yeres after your daye ye shall not be  
married to him. Mayster sayd florence  
I thanke you of your good cōsolace, wel  
quod the bishop the Emperour dothe  
folp to demaunde you agaynst your wyl.  
For perauenture there may fortune be  
the good come to hym thereby. Than the  
bysshop toke her by the hande and lede

her into a fayre gardyne to porte her.  
And so on a fayre grene benche she satte  
her downe betwene the bysshop & mas-  
ter Streuen, and soo passed the tyme w  
many goodli sportes. And than it began  
to wake late and the evenynge was ve-  
ry cleere, and the sterres shone ful bryght.  
Than master Streuen dyd beholde the  
a gretere space and at the last he said, ma-  
dame for certayn I knowe by the cour-  
se of the planetes that there is a knyght  
comynge in to this countre, and is now  
well on warde on his waye, who shall re-  
chuse the aduentures of the castell of the  
porte Royz or this yere be passed. And  
surely it is he that shall haue the whyte  
shypelde and the swerde Clarence, verely  
saith the bysshop yf this be of trouthe the  
Emperoure maye goo fyssh in an other  
place for here he hath the well sayed, for I  
am sure it is the same knyght that my la-  
dy Florence is predestynate vnto, there-  
fore I am ryghte Joyous of the hurte of  
the Emperour. And howe saye you mas-  
ter do you not hate hym yes sy thereof  
he may be as sure as that a nell of clothe  
will make his hede a hode, wherat the  
bysshop dyd laughe. And thus they we-  
re longe togyder in this talkynge till it  
was season to go to rest. Than they brou-  
ght Florence to her chambze and depart-  
ted to theyr owne lodgynges, and aboute  
midnyght this lady awoke. And tha  
fell into her remembraunce the dysplea-  
sure that she had to the Emperoure, and  
as she was thus thynkynge she behelde  
the fourte moortes of wake yf stode byen-  
nyng before her beddes fete, therewith  
she sawe where there came into the cham-  
bze a fayre lady whyte as the lilly with a  
mantell of grene, hangynge aboute her  
sholders w a lase of golde, and a crowne  
of golde on her hende, and she helde an

other lady by the hande, & sayde vnto her.  
Fayre syster sawe you not well the Leo-  
parde with the seuen heades all crowned  
w ith golde, who hath the loke of a brim-  
boze, and the herre of a lyon, the body of  
armes of lede, & the fote of a whyte harte  
And whan she had thus sayde the other  
lady demanded of her what all thys my-  
ghte meane. For herin are dyuerse thin-  
ges to be consydered. Than she answe-  
red and sayd, syster this Leopard shall  
haue the eagle of golde that is on my pa-  
uylion, & by hym shall the gates be ope-  
ned of my castell of the porte Royz. And  
than shall all the enchauntements sayd  
And therewith bothe these ladies banyf-  
shed a wake, so that Florence wiste not  
where they were sodaynly become, wher-  
ewith she was righte sore afrayed for she  
wist not what it myght meane. In lyke  
case the same byssop came the self night  
to the archbishop. And also to master  
Streuen where as they laye seuerally e-  
che fro other, wherof they had grete mer-  
uaile what they dreame myghte sygny-  
fyre. And within a lytle space after the ly-  
ghte of the daye began to apere. Than the  
archbishop rose and master Streuen.  
Also to do theyr attendaunce on theyr lady  
And whan it was tyme to synge masse.  
master Streuen wente fro Florence who  
was than redy apparayled and so wente  
to churche. And there the archbishop songe  
masse, and whan it was fynished  
the bysshop saluted Florence, & deman-  
ded what good rest she had taken that  
nyght past. As god helpe me dere vncle  
sayd Florence neuer as yet came to me su-  
che a fortune as byde this nyght, nor I  
was neuer soo afrayed, for aboute myd-  
nyght I awoke, and as I laye wakynge  
I sawe properly before my bedde the  
moost fayrest figure of a lady that euer

## The story of Arthur

I sawe, and she had a crowne of goulde on her heate, and be semynge there was an other quene in her companie crowned in lyke wyse, who was also as me thoughte a very fayre lady, but nothyng to the regarde of the other quene. And suche wordes me thought she sayd vnto her fellowe. And there florence recounted wordes for wordes as ye haue harde here before of all herre hyle byspon, and howe that they were sodaynely banysyd awayne fro her. And whan the byshoppe hearde thys he sayde. A fayre nefe florence by the faith that I owe vnto you euerm like case as ye saye it fortunyd to me thys samme nyght, & for certayne I thoughte properly it had ben you. For by my soule the quene that I sawe yf yee were bothe together I coude not dyscerne the one fro the other, ye resemble soo nere together. In the name of god sayde mayster hester uen thys byspon appered also properly to me in euery thyng as ye haue rehearsed, and verely also I thought it had ben my ladye florence heare present, verely sayde the byshop thys thyng is not thus fortunyd to vs all thre wythout some reason, mayster I requyre you go loke what significacion it may be of. Thā the mayster wente frome theym and entred in to hys chābre and toke his booke and looked on thys mater so longe tyl he perceyued fynally the mystery thereof. And so came agayne to florence, and sayd to the byshop hys let vs set our hertes in hope and rest for verely my ladye heare nedeth not to care for the Emperoure as in beyng of her husbonds for there is an other free knyght sweet and fayre, who is the souerayne of all chualry, for hys prowes surmounteth & shall do all other. Therefore know for certayne that where as the byshop shewyd vs howe that out of the best

shold come a Leopard which signifieth a gentyll knyght borne about the cowntree of fraunce. And where as this Leopard hath the loke of a boze, & the herte of a lion. In lyke wyse this knyght is the hardiest & neuer was boorne. And where his body shold be of stele, betokeneth that there is no knyght so stronge & harde to abyde a brounte as he is, and where it is sayd yf his armes be of lede the which is a heuy thyng, betokeneth the heuy strokes of this knyght the which canot be susteyned. And as for the fete of the hart the wyche is a lyght best & ampygher. In like case thys knyght is stronge & lyght & quicke to go to warde bys enemyes and where as he shall haue the egle yf hiche is souerayne & kyng of all foules. In like for me this knyght shall haue my ladye florence who is quene & souerayne of all beaute & rycheesse above all quenes of the worlde the which shall be the confusyon of the Emperour of Inde, & where as he beareth .vii. hedes crowned w gold & signifieth that this knyght shall bere the crownes of .vii. kingdōes the which he shall conquer wyth his sword. And where as that gates of the castel of the port noyre shall be opened by him. And that all the enchauementes shall than faile, representeth the hys prowes of hym that shall bere doun all the aduentures of the port noyre & surely thys is the significacion of our hole dreame or byspon. Therefore it is necessary yf I repayre to the palats of the port noyre to knowe whan this knyght cometh And too see by hys estate what maner a manne he is, verely sayd the byshoppe I alowe well that ye soo do as ye haue desired, & that ye remoue thirther warde as hastily as ye can. And whan florence herde ydrynge of thys knyght she was so daynely stricken w so loue grete that fro

that houre forwarde the game vnto him  
her herte. Thus he loued hym truely &  
wylt not hold, and Arthur loued the egre  
& as than had neuer seen it, so than this  
lady florence made grete feste and Jope  
at that daye. And the nexte daye betwix  
mayster Streuen arose & prepared for his  
departynge, and than he toke licence of  
kyng Emenbus to go to the castel of the  
porte Roye for maters perteynyng to  
his ladye florence, and the kyng gaue  
him leue. Than the maister came to flo-  
rence, and to the byshop and toke leue of  
them, and so than florence toke hym by  
ere and sayde, gentyll mayster if yonder  
knyght come to the porte Roye bynng  
him to me if it maye be possible, for ver-  
ly I haue grete wyl to se hym & know of  
his estate. Madaine sayde the mayster th-  
erghre a good wyl if I can bynng it a

houe. And so departed and foure other  
knyghtes wylth hym. And rode so longe  
that on a laterdaye he came to the porte  
Roye and toke his lodgynge at the pa-  
lais without the castle gate. For ther was  
none that entered into the castle without  
berth. And so in this palais this mayster  
Streuen remayned a grete season nye a  
hole yere. Now let vs leue too speake  
of the mayster and florence, and of the  
courte of kyng Emenbus, & of the empe-  
roure of Inde. And now let vs retorne  
to Arthur and his company.

How that Arthur slew twelve knigh-  
tes, who had taken a wyfe a yonge da-  
moyzell fro her father and mother, & had  
tyed her to a tree, there to haue defouled  
her byrginite, who was laued by Ar-  
thur. Capitulo: xxv.



**A** Arthur Hector & Gouvernar were  
repyng after they departed fro  
the court of the duke his fader. xv. daies  
without abiding in any place, or sydynge  
of onye adventures, wherof ony menti-  
on is made, And rode so long that at the

last they came in to the countre of 'nomac'  
the & entered into a grete thycke couerte  
the which endured a grete space, & at the  
last they founde a grete founte of water  
& a fayre grene medow. Fornyng ther-  
to the which conteyned the space of two

Ellis,

## The story of Arthur

myles & a halfe, and so they rode still by the syde of the medowe spally in the boi some of a grete valey. Than they espyed a stronge court closed w<sup>th</sup> myghty walles And arthur sa We wel howe the gates of the place were open and soo they lyghted of there horses and entred into the court and wente by into the hall, & all the way they founde no creature, wherof they had grete meruaile, & at the last Arthur harde the voyce of a woman in a lytle cham- bre besyde hym, who cryed ryghte ptes- oully and sayd. A lady byrgyn mary hel- pe me and send me som maner of socour And therewith arthur lepte into the cham- bre & there found a right saye lady who had ben drawen all aboute the chambre. And her yelow heere drawen and cutte of her head. And she was so sore bren y she had no power to helpe her selfe. And in this chambre there stode a table redy couered, wherreon there stode wyne and met greet plete, wherof arthur had grete meruaile and demaunded of the ladye who it was that had dohe so moch trou- ble and shame. And when the lady saw arthur & herde hym speake, she was sore abashed, and all ascrayde sayd. A gentyll knyght I requyre you doo me no more hurte so; I haue harme ynoughe all rea- dy. Saye lady sayd Arthur be nothinge ascrayde for I wyll warrant and defende you fro all enemyes, therfore she w<sup>th</sup> me vnto me who hath thus entreted you. Than wyth moche payne the lady rose bp<sup>o</sup> her feete and sayde. So; as god helpe me there departed fro hens ryghte now. xii. kny- ghtes all armed & they haue thus ptes- oully arayed me as ye se. And I thynke they haue slayne my lord, my husvonder. And haue away w<sup>th</sup> them my dere dought- ter to defoule her byrgynyte yf God doo not pourey some remedy for her. Well

saye lady quod arthur Where is the lord of this place, sy; I can not saye Whether he be alyue or dead. I beseeche you sche a- boute for him, for I thynke I shall finde hi other quicke or dead. Than Arthur sou- ghte ail aboute the place. And at the last in a lytle house he founde hym & his han- des bound behynde his backe soze wound- ed in the head & on the sholders. Than Hector dydde lose his handes, & Gout- nar dyd sette his woundes, & Arthur demaunded hym Why he was so delt w<sup>th</sup> sy; in good sayd quod the knyghte I knowe none other cause, but y the laste day there was a straunger dyd ouerthre- we the mayster of the sayd. xii. knyghtes wherfore thus they haue arayed me w<sup>th</sup> oute cause, & they haue ledde awaye my doughter to do her shame & belang, and as they thus talked toggyder the lord of the place came where his squier & clerke lay dead wherof he had grete ruth. Well quod Arthur this a grete outrage, come on frendis get vs our harnes, & when they were all armed, they folowed after these knyghtes and rode so longe tyll at the laste they found the chref mayster of them at the entreynge into a saye forest who was besy about this damoyzell to haue spled her. Than Arthur escred him and sayd. I yll & shameful knyght not so hardy y thou ones touche her, for I en- sure thou shalt come to her fader in the spyte of thy herte to thyntente y he shall take vengeance of thy trespas. And then soze I the despe, ther to be & all his com- pany lepte on they horses, & the capytay- ne of theym broched his horse agens Tro- thur & stroke him so rudely that he brake his spere to his spere, but Arthur stroke hym so pusauntly that his speare head e- ntered clene throughe his body, wher to he fell downe deade to the carthe. Than

Arthur drew out his swerde & smote the  
second so ferientely that he perced his  
ber. And the third he stroke so that he cut  
hym do vne to the sabel. And fro the iiii  
he roke his hed fro the holders. And hec  
to: for his parte stroke one of them so ru  
dely that he entred hys spere into hys bo  
dy more than a fot. And than he roke his  
swerde and stroke amonge them so rude  
ly that he made them al befoze him to kne  
le. And also Gouvernair made ii of they  
horses to flee into the felde. And whan  
there remaunt sawe that their compaignie  
were thus belate wythall they roke them  
to flyght for drede of derthe and as they  
fledde they sayde eche to other, let vs sa  
ue oure seife fro these dreghis of heil for  
they be none erthele creatures. And soo  
arthur folowed them no ferther but sa  
me to the damopseil where as shee was  
fast bounden to a tree and vnd lowse her  
and caused her too mounte on a horse of  
one of the knyghtes that was slaine. And  
than brought her agayne to her fader.  
And whan he sawe hys daughter his her  
te reuyed and kneled downe befoze Ar  
thur and rendred to him many gret than  
kynge. Than arthur toke him vp by the  
hande, and so remayned there all y daye  
and nyghte, and the nexte moynynge he  
and all hys compaignie roke leue of theyre  
hoost and of the damopseil, who loued Ar  
thur wyth all her herte. And so they de  
parted and entered in to theyre forney, &  
rode forth so longe tyll they cam in to the  
countrie of Alenne, where as they met  
a knyght haupynge by sempynge grette  
haste wyth a Jucyn in his hande a scot  
chen of arm: s on his breste, and a boget  
wyth leereys hangong at his sabel bow  
And there Arthur curteyly dydde salute  
hym, for sayde the verlet God gyue you  
tyght good aduentur, good frende quod

Arthur to whome to you pertayne. For  
I dwell With my lord the Erie of Be  
aune, gentyl frende quod Arthur can  
ye tell vs onye nouvelles, for I can not  
tell yf ye knowe ony thyng of the toney  
that my lord of Beaune hath taken  
agenst the marshal of Brytayne the whiche  
he shall be holden on the monday nexte  
after holy rode daye. Is it of a trouthe  
good frende quod Arthur that the erle of  
Beaune hath taken on hym this enter  
pryse. Ye for without fayle. And good fren  
de I praye you what maner of man is  
your lord, for as God helpe me he is a  
noble man. for the erle of Forres is his  
uncle. And the erle of mount Belyale is  
his cosyn germaine, and as of hym selfe  
he is as curteis, as gentyl, as free and  
as meke as a doue. But the marshal of  
Brytayne is contrary, for he is fiers and  
cruell, and a dyuel se man to dwell. Shall  
howebeit he is a good knight of his hand  
des, & is of that hardynesse, & of so ferys  
a courage that he fereth nothyng thre or  
foure knyghtes to fyght agenst them all  
wherefoze my lord dooth pursey him of  
the best knyghtes hat he can gette. ther  
foze he hath sente me to a knyght of his  
who is reputed tyghte valiant and sage  
& well proued in dedes of chyualtry, who  
is named for Delalaunde, good felowe  
I praye you howe fagte dwelleth the kni  
ghte hens for his house passeth not two  
leges fro this place, wherefoze fagte loz  
des yf yethynke to be wel harbored this  
nyght bo my counsaile gette you to a li  
tell castell here by the which is called ro  
chechyle, wherther there is a balaunt and  
a tyche auncyent knyghte therfore lieth  
the best that ye can do is to repayre thre  
der, for this forest is dangerous to passe  
throughe, the wayes be soo dryctes that  
it is harde to kepe the right way woute

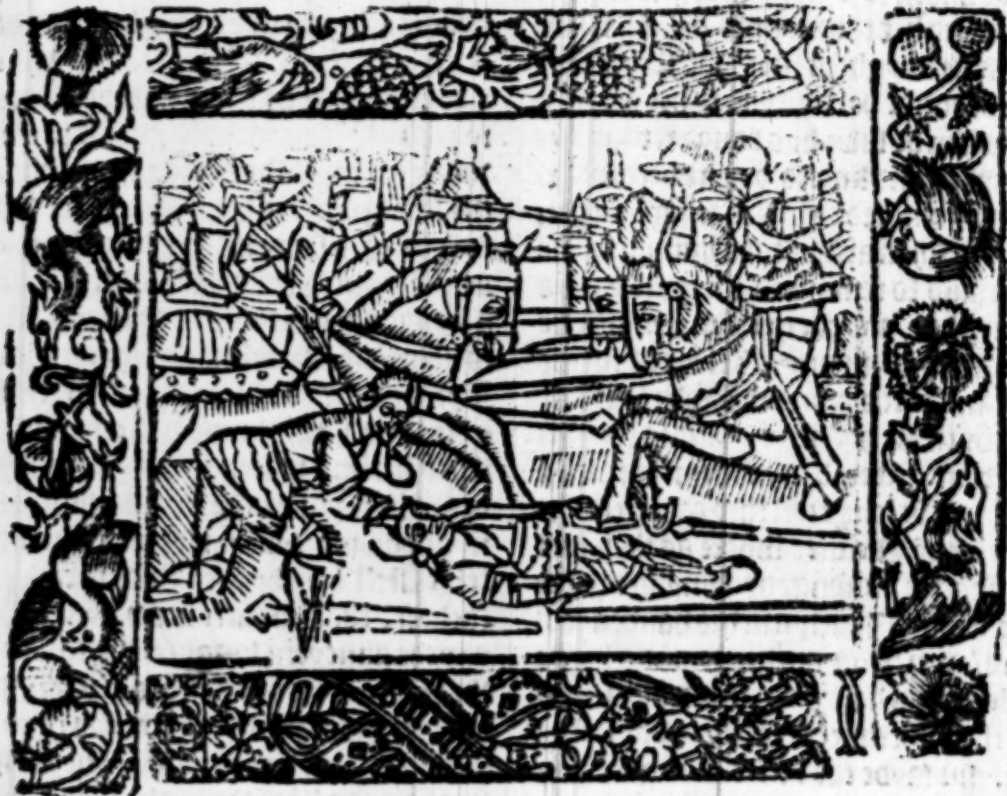
## The story of Arthur

a gyde, and specially be nyghte. And as now it begynnerh to wake very late. Well good frende quod Arthur I thanke you for your good wyl. kepe on your Jorneye and god sende you good aduerture. And we shal do as well as god wyl suffer vs. And so the barlet departed and wente to the knyghte for Deliaunde & byd his message, & deliuered hym his letters to the erle of Beaulieu.

How that Arthur Hector a gouernar of we. xii. theues in a grete forest the whiche was a grete wylth to all the countre, for they had pylled and wasted the countre all aboute. Capitulo. xxvi.

**A**nd when Arthur was departed fro the barlet he & his company rode so long tyl they entred into the same

forreste that the barlet had shewed theym of before. And rode all the daye & coude fynde no house nor meire nor dyneke for them nor for theyr horses, and than it began to wake late. And in this forrest a comtable there dydde repaire. xii. theues who dyd robbe all aboute where as they coude gette ony praye, so that no creature durst sterte nor passe through the countre, and specially throughe y forrest if it were ony thyng late. And so by fortune these theues encountred the stufte & carpages perteynyng to Arthur and hys company. And incontynent they toke all the stufte & byd bette and increte theym that were conductours therof, tyll at the laste Jakes Arthurs squyre drewe his swerde and to hys power dydde helpe & asped to defende his maysters stufte, but they were so many on hym that he was



foze wounded. And therewith Arthur & his company came to them. And when Arthur espied his seruant Jaker foze wounded and in great toperdy, he oze to his swerde and stroke so the fyfte that he claued: & he drowne to the chynne. And fro the seconde he stroke of the head and fro the thyrde he thare clene awaye the holders wth the arme. And than Jaker & gouernar ryght strongly layd on euery syde amonge these theues. And so by the helpe of Arthur they slewe and hyllid all that euer were before them. And they were all dead than Arthur commaunded to serche for his people where as they were wont to resoz into. And so thus by the prowes of these knyghtes these .xxx. theues were brought to oeth and confusion: & at the last they founde a sayre ancient man vnder a trellenge all naked bounde faste wth two chernes so that he could not help himself. Than Arthur dyd louse him and gaue hym all the abymentes that was on the dead bodies, of the sayde .xxx. theues wth foze the good man humbly thaked Arthur, and specially for sayng of his lyfe. Than Arthur and his company rode forth and trauayled so long till at the last they founde a stronge house, and knocked so longe at the gate tyll there came to them a varlet bare legged to go to bed, for all other in the place were as than gone to theyr restes, and than this foze sayre varlet demaunded of them who it was that knocked so fast at the gate that tyme of night. Good frende of Gouernar it is a knyght that wold faine this night haue lodgng for hym & his company. So sayd the varlet if it please you to saye I wyll go speake wth my lord and mayster, and shew hym your mynde, how be it I thinke he be now at

his rest for he is olde & anient, and hath ben in his dayes a very good knyght, & as yet he is glad to here speaking of good knyghtes, & touch them that haunterly noble dedes of armes, & therewith the varlet departed & went to his master & said. So there is at your gates, iii. knyghtes armed. And are be lempng goyng to vienne to the toznap. And they desyre by way of gentylne this one knyght to geunge. How saye ye sy hall I open to them: he gares hie the a pace quod the loze for I am not content that thou hast made them to tarp without so long. And wha they be entred come agayne to me and bring me worde what maner of it & if they be and what barneys and armes they bere, than the varlet went agayne to the gate & set it wide open, and suched Arthur & his company to entre, wherof they had great nede & misse. Than the varlet behelde Arthur & saw wel that he was like a gentylman, bing long & wel fomyllid & me maylously sayre at oue al his company. And next hym he sawe Hertoz, who was ryght sayre, hie & well made. And also he behelde Gouernar, who was in al poyntes like a ma bigge and browne of coloure. And also he perceived wel how all theyr barneys were sayre and ryche. Tha was there toz they brought forth & varlets tannet & a crys hozles. Than the first varlet retourned agayne to his lord and sayd. So syth I was bozne I neuer sawe so goodlye knyghtes as they be & specially the chiefe of us, & as for theyr armour it is both the sayre & pebe, for I ensue you it should seme that they be right grea men and comen of a noble hignage. Wel quod the loze loken that thou in al haste apparayle theyr lodgng. And se that they be seued right honourably. Well sy quod

## The story of Arthur

the barlet it shal be done incontinent.  
 Than the lordc sayd to the lady his wife  
 who was as than lyenge a bed by hym,  
 madame by reason of your honour and  
 gentylnesse ye should ryle and kepe com-  
 panie with yonder noble knyghtes, for  
 I thinke they be some greute men for it  
 shall greatly anoye them and they se not  
 the chye of the house to make the some  
 chere for as god helpe me I wolde haue  
 grete toye to speake w<sup>th</sup> them yf I might  
 a ryle and not hurt my self, therfore ma-  
 dame in myne absence I pray you go &  
 make to them the best chere that ye canne  
 for sayde the lady with a right good wil  
 yf it please you I shail so do. Than  
 this ladye rose and apparayled her selfe  
 ryghte resplendyng, who was a yonge ladye  
 yonge ladye of the age of .xii. yere. And  
 when Arthur and Hector saw her they  
 rose & curteysly eche of them dyd salute  
 othe and she sat her downe betwene  
 theym. Than arthur sayde madame ye  
 haue taken a grete payne to leue the com-  
 pany of your lordc to come to se vs, for  
 it pleasech my lordc that I shal do so.  
 And therfore I am come to you in the  
 stede of hym, for he wold wryth a right  
 good wyl haue come to you hym selfe yf  
 he myght so haue doone, but syes he is  
 anstent and it wolde soe anoye him to  
 haue broken his reste. And so thus they  
 talked of dyuerse thinges. And in the  
 meane season there was mete prouided  
 for them, and than the tables were spred  
 & couered, & so than they washed and sat  
 the downe arthur & the lady together, &  
 Hector & Gouvernat, but Hector had his  
 eyen on the lady and to nyether eate nor  
 drynke, the whiche Arthur & Gouvernat  
 sate wel espied. Than arthur sayd to hym  
 frende it is your selfe ye se, for sayde hec-  
 tor I haue seen some thinges of y<sup>e</sup> which

yf I might I wolde sayne be mayster.  
 A Hector quod Gouvernat a manes will  
 ought euer to folow the ordre of reason.  
 And so I beleue oughe yours to do. And  
 therewith they sette these wordes, howe  
 be it all that lytle or nothinge refrayned  
 Hector's looke, for alwayes shill he be  
 helde this ladye yll it was tyme for the  
 to go they restes, and so they toke their  
 leues of the lady and thanked her for the  
 great chere that she had made theym.  
 And on the next day betwix they de-  
 parted & entred into the forest the mor-  
 ninge was saye and clere and warme,  
 for it was as than aboute the ende of  
 apriyl. So these lordes rode forth in gret  
 joye yll at the last Gouvernat sayde to  
 Hector, for was your wyl accomplisshed  
 this last night, where as ye sayde ye wold  
 gladly fulfilled your wyl, to save the  
 trouche I thinke your wyl was on our  
 hostes, who was both saye and yonge.  
 By my sayth quod Hector I wold haue  
 ben right glad to haue fulfilled my wyl  
 with her, for vndoubted she is saye and  
 gracious and I loue her with all my  
 herte. And for what was your wil quod  
 Gouvernat, by my sayth sayde Hector, yf  
 she should haue ben all night in myn ar-  
 mes & I in hers, now truly for sayd go-  
 uernat yf wil was neyther good nor ho-  
 nest for it was against reaso, for yf good  
 lordc her husband did cause her to ryle fro  
 him to the entente to honour vs and to  
 kepe vs company, remembryng also how  
 honestly she receyued vs & so good chere  
 as we had of her. And for wold ye  
 haue than done belanpe to yf good lordc  
 as to haue hadde to bys wyfe vnto his  
 dishonoure in his owne house, by the  
 sayth that I owe vnto god it hadde not  
 ben well doone, nor yet it was none ho-  
 nest thoughte. A for Gouvernat quod

Hector: I am sure ye be so sage in science.  
 y pe wyl do no colp, wysdome is grete.  
 if the car neuier touched my like, as much  
 so say as whā loue toucheth, wysdome  
 is than of cencymes ouercome. Well as  
 for al that y gouernar it maketh no ma-  
 ter, but yet I say as I saye. y it wold  
 not haue ben wel done of a gentyl mā to  
 haue doone as ye saye for it were rather  
 treason for to do. wher w Hector began to  
 be soze chased a sayde, what Gouernar  
 sayst thou that I am a traytoure, thou is-  
 est falsly I was neuer none and dre w  
 here to gouernour and layd his hand on  
 his swerde, than sayd Gouernar stryke  
 me not. I saye not that ye be a traytoure  
 nor ye be not so great a man that youre  
 noblenesse forthynkerh me for I wolde  
 ye were greater than ye are, yet for all y  
 I say that this dede accordinge to youre  
 wyshe had ben treason, remembryng y  
 trust and confidence that the good lord  
 had in ys, and in the colour thereof to  
 haue taken his wyse to hys dishonour,  
 surely I say it is no thought of a noble  
 mā wth the which wordes Hector was  
 so chased and drewe his swerde a stroke  
 Gouernar on the helme so rudely that  
 he was ther wth soze a stoned, wher  
 wth arthur was soze dyspleased and  
 blamed greacli Hector therfore. And thā  
 Gouernar sayde sy stryke me no more  
 for by the sayth that I owe to our lord  
 ye pe doo I wyl not pardon you, for ye  
 shall haue as good as ye bynge how be  
 it as for that ye haue done I wyl suffre  
 it for the honoure here of my lord arthur  
 and for the great ygnage that ye be of,  
 why good sy quod Hector what wolde  
 ye do elles any great hurte that shall be  
 soone seene, and so stroke Gouernar a-  
 gayne on the helme a grent blowe, wher  
 w Gouernar drewe his swerde a rudely

stroke Hector on the helme for he was a  
 good knight, and so thre began a grent  
 a a soze bacaple betwene these two kni-  
 ghtes. And arthur dyd his payne wth  
 sayzenesse to dyspart them, but they were  
 so soze dyspleased and chased eche wth  
 other that arthur could in no wyse cause  
 them to leue: And whā arthur saw that  
 he dre we his swerde a stroke Hector so  
 rudely that he made him to stoupe down  
 to y necke of his hourse, a wth an other  
 stroke he stroke Gouernar so soze that he  
 was soze astonted therewith a he had  
 fallen fro his hourse, a than arthur wolde  
 haue reconered on him a nother stroke,  
 but Gouernar went from hym. Than  
 arthur came to Hector and wolde haue  
 stryken at him agayne, but than Hector  
 sayd colyn what wyl ye doo, aie ye dys-  
 pleased wth me ye weryly sayd arthur  
 updr soze for gouernar shewid to you  
 your colpe, and ye ther soze haue stryken  
 hym here in my presence, wherof I am  
 not content. For sayde Hector I repent  
 me but he dyspleased me soze y I coude  
 not refrayne my selfe as at that tyme,  
 well quod arthur nowe than fro hens  
 forth be in pece, or by the sayth that I  
 owe to my lord my father the spyl of  
 you that beginnech this tesc my cōpany  
 And also my good wyl for euer, ther  
 fore come on Gouernar and make amē-  
 des vnto my colyn Hector in y ye haue  
 stryken hym sy sayde Gouernar wth  
 a ygh good wyl. Than he pur of hys  
 helme a desyred Hector's good wyl, now  
 colyn Hector quod arthur make ye hym  
 amendes sy sayd Hector right gladly,  
 for it forthynkerh me greacli the displea-  
 sure y hath ben betwene us a so he pry-  
 aiso of his helme. And there eche of the  
 byssed echer and so entred forth the thre  
 there Jorney, a rode forth so longe tyl

## The story of Arthur

the were passed the forest. And then they  
sodaynly encountred the knight s<sup>r</sup> De-  
lalaunde and the messenger that they  
had met with the day before, and there  
eche of them did salute other. Then s<sup>r</sup>  
Delalaunde demaunded of Arthur into  
what parties he wolde dwelle hym in  
co. Certaynly sayd Arthur it hath ben  
shewed me that at holt rode t<sup>y</sup>de nexte  
commynge there shoulde be at vicenne a  
greate assemble of noble men and good  
knightes. Therfore I am ridynge th<sup>y</sup>  
etherwarde to se that noblenesse. And to  
be acquainted w<sup>y</sup>th some of the good  
knightes that wyl be there, truly sayde  
s<sup>r</sup> Delalaunde it is of trouth that there  
shall be a greate assemble of noble knight-  
tes, for there shall be a greate toynay. I  
pray you s<sup>r</sup> sayd Arthur, for whome is  
for what cause was it s<sup>r</sup> taken, s<sup>r</sup> y<sup>e</sup>  
I shoulde shew quod s<sup>r</sup> Delalaunde, ye  
shoulde than know something sounding  
to my belany, neuerthelesse it semeth y<sup>e</sup>  
ye be a noble man and the ch<sup>y</sup>ef of your  
company. Therfore I shal shew you as  
I know.

How that s<sup>r</sup> Delalaunde shewed to  
Arthur the occasion wh<sup>y</sup> this toynay  
was s<sup>r</sup> taken by the lord Beaulieu.  
Cap. xxviii.

**S** s<sup>r</sup> it is of trouth my lord p<sup>r</sup>le  
of Beaulieu hath alwayes loved  
me s<sup>y</sup>th the beginning of my youth and  
so it fortuneth whan I was yonge and  
lusty. I thought to go playe me oute of  
myne owne countrey accompanied alone  
ly w<sup>y</sup> my squyre, hoping to baynquyssh  
all the valoure of the worlde. And so at  
the last I came into the land of my p<sup>r</sup>ois

and fell therin acq<sup>y</sup>ntaunce w<sup>y</sup> two  
noble lordes of greate l<sup>y</sup>gnage, who byd  
me greate honour. And one of them had  
a right fayre lady to his wyfe named the  
fayre lady of Rossillon, for whome this  
toynay was s<sup>r</sup> take. And she had such  
fauoure in me and loue that within a y<sup>e</sup>  
ele wyyle I was made ch<sup>y</sup>efe ruler and  
seneschall of all her countrey, and was  
of her stryght counsaile. And nothinge  
done without it had be done by me. For  
she trusted moze in me than in any other  
person of the worlde. And in like case I  
was w<sup>y</sup>th the good lord her husbunde  
And so I continued in th<sup>y</sup>s loue and fa-  
uour well the space of syxe yeres and  
moze and it fortuneth one yere y<sup>e</sup> for my  
take they kept a ch<sup>y</sup>istmas w<sup>y</sup>th open  
courte: wher to came many knightes of  
the countrey. And whan the s<sup>r</sup> daye  
of this began this lady of Rossillon wille  
to my sayd lord, she was as than freshly  
l<sup>y</sup>e apparayled as it aperteyned to the  
fest and to her estate. At whiche time to  
me she semed so fayre so gentil, and so  
proper that I thought I had neuer seen  
her half so fayre before. And as than her  
beaute stroke so inwardely to my harte  
that I lost therby both meace and synke  
y<sup>e</sup> every day I began to w<sup>y</sup>re so lene of  
body that every m<sup>a</sup> had meruaile what  
I y<sup>e</sup>led. And demaunded often tymes of  
me what was the cause that I so enpay-  
red, but ever I dw<sup>y</sup>as p<sup>r</sup>iuely as I could  
but at the ende it shapled me nothinge.  
For at the last loue constrained me to  
shew vnto my loue & lady all the dolour  
and payne of myne inward herte. And  
on a day as it happened I tose very ery  
for the thoughtes of the nyght kyled  
me. And ryght as than I founde th<sup>y</sup>s  
lady leapyng in a window. And so

boldely I lene me doWne by her a chan  
she gaue me good morowe, and desired  
that god should sende me helth, wel ma  
dame quod I. Than the kinge that all  
hath formed giue you a better day than I  
haue had a night. And also better helthe,  
for my helth is very ferre of, the whiche  
right sore troubleth me. Than this lady  
comed her to warde me and sayde, for  
how is it that your health is so ferre fro  
you might it not be brought nere to you  
for gold nor for siluer. Madame quod  
I peradventure yf I shewed you ye wold  
pue therto no payne nor counsaile, how  
be it ye myght right wel do it, so than it  
were better that I kept it still secrete  
than to shewe it, and than to be neu-  
er here. For sayd she I requyre you I  
wyl with all my herte be glad to pue  
my payne to byng you to ease and helth  
wherfore it is a great shame for you, for  
whan ye may haue counsaile and reme-  
die and wil not seke for it, but thus to  
suffre payne and vnhertes ease, the whi-  
che I ensure you greuetht right sore both  
my lord and me. Therfore good frende  
by the sayth that ye owe vnto me shewe  
me your greefe. And there with she came  
nere to me and embraced me in her ar-  
mes and shewed me great sygne of loue  
and care as these women be a-  
customed to do whan they wyl draw  
out of a mans mouth that is enclosed  
in the herte. And whan I sawe her gen-  
tlynesse and swete behauiour, my herte  
was rauished and brought into y case  
that of a great season I coulde speke no  
worde for wepyng. But for quod this  
knight to Arthur though I shewe this  
vnto you my mysenes I pray you think  
no folie in it, but take it in gree, for in  
deed for yongth doth many thinges.  
By my sayth for no more I wyl. And

therfore procede forth in your tale. For  
than I sayd vnto this lady. Madame  
what so euer fortune fall therof I wyl  
shewe you all my besyde. Madame it is  
of trouthe I haue set my herte and al my  
thought on you more than on all the re-  
menaunt of the worlde. Whose saythfull  
profounde loue in myne herte as it wel  
appereth, and shall do by me, for nother  
person I loue nor can loue, but alonlye  
you. And therewith my herte sayled me  
I coulde speke no worde more, therewith  
I sat me downe and she by me. Than  
she answered and sayd, what for Guy de  
lalaunde it is that thus a ye say ye mad  
sayd I without sayle, wyl for quod she  
say ye these wordes other to assaye me or  
els for very loue. I requyre you tel me  
trouthe by my soule madame quod I this  
that I haue sayd is for the great myschance  
that I am in without your helpe. Ther-  
fore lady for gods sake haue pite on me  
And therewith I forned regre my han-  
des with great vncase of hert. Than she  
beheld me wel and sayde, for ye be a right  
wyle and sage knight, therfore beholde  
wel yf you desyre to be not yficial to  
any person, madame quod I for trouthe  
I se and know well that I desyre agayn  
my lordes treason and falschewe. Who so  
wyl and honoureth me so muche aboue  
all other, how be it madame I se and know  
well that yongth and loue byngeth me  
to this, so that mesure and reason sayleth  
in me. Therfore I hadde rather to dye  
than to lyue. And this lady wote that was  
ryght wyle and sage sayd, for be in rest  
and let your encrease in your herte for we  
wyl speake more of this matter at a  
better leasur, this she sayd to giue me co-  
forte, and not to the entente that she wolde  
in any maner wyle trespass agaynste

## The story of Arthur

her husbände, so this in thus maner I  
 dyae of the yme a great season, but as  
 sone as I coulde get her at a good leafe  
 and conuenient place I was euer reso-  
 ning with her of this mater, & lay impo-  
 tunably daily requyring her to haue pi-  
 tie of my mortall distres, and so it fortu-  
 ned on a day that we were togeder le-  
 nyng in a window looking out toward  
 a fayre forest. Than I spake to her so  
 fayre and in so rufull maner that she  
 coulde no longer dyue of my request.  
 And sayd sye your suite is so impo-  
 tunate that it behoueth me to assente to full-  
 fill your desyre & wil, howe be it sye se ye not  
 ponder great oke standinge in the forest  
 yes madame sayd I right well, well q-  
 the I am content to fullfill your minde  
 on this condicion, looke that this same  
 daye welue moneth & this same p-  
 p- houre that ye sayle not to be vnder pon-  
 der oke & without fayle chyder to you  
 wyl I come redy apparayled to accomplis-  
 your entente and before that daye loke ne-  
 uer for to haue it. I myne owne dere la-  
 die humblye I thanke you of your good  
 wyl syth I cannot haue it no soner, at  
 the least I shall passe the yme more for-  
 oully in helyng of that fortunate daye.  
 Wherefore I wyl take my leue no we of  
 you, for ye shall not se me agayne till y-  
 yme be come, for yf I shoulde abyde in  
 your daily p- sence, your beauful eyes  
 shoulde see me to abide so longe, for that  
 chynge that I desyre. And so than I toke  
 leue praying her to kepe couenaunte w-  
 me. And so she ensured me she wolde.  
 Than I toke licence of my lord her hus-  
 bande, thewng hi how I wolde departe  
 into myne owne countre for a season, &  
 he was lothe to gyue me leaue, but whā  
 he saw that I wolde needes departe he  
 offered me to haue forsaiken his owne

countrey, and to haue gone with me, he  
 loued me so entperly. And so at the laste  
 with much sorow I gat leue and depart-  
 ed pruely on a night and dysguysed my  
 selfe and went wandring aboute the cou-  
 trey tyl the yere was past. And thā thys  
 same day and houre that myne apoynte-  
 ment was I came to the sayd oke in the  
 forest before the castel wyndowe, and in-  
 continēt I perceyved where this lady  
 stode talking w- my lord her husbände  
 in the same window where as she and I  
 made our apoyntement togeder. And  
 than I made so many tokens & sygnes  
 that at the last she perceyued me, & than  
 she began to smile, and whan her lord  
 saw her laughe he demaunded the cause  
 why. And she answered & sayde, sye for  
 nothyng, for nothyng quod the lord. I  
 am sure ye wyl not laughe for nought  
 therfore she we me the cause, for surely  
 I wyl know it therfore I commaunde  
 you to shewe it, sye quod she syth it p-  
 lech you I am content to shewe you, but  
 sye sye I requyre you tell me whā that  
 ye saw or harde of sye Guy delalaunde.  
 In good fayth madame not of a greate  
 seasō wherof I am tui soye, for yf I had  
 knowen that he wolde haue taried so  
 longe a space I wolde haue sought hi m-  
 out at this time, wel sye quod thys lady  
 he is not no w- set hēre, sye it is of trouth  
 he hath before this time desyred me of  
 loue, and in a maner his suite was im-  
 p- tunate. And the loue that he bare me  
 was so seruent that he was right soye  
 dyspleased therby. the whiche was right  
 well seen by hym whye he was here w-  
 us, and so there this lady tolde the lord  
 her husbände al the mater that was be-  
 e- uene her & me into that same p- sence  
 day. And than she shewed him and sayd  
 sye this is the same day that I promised

hym to haue fulfilled his desyre, to the  
entente I thought þ by this day he wold  
haue forgotten this mater, but soo spz  
ye maye se hym vnder yonder great oke  
where as he is al a naced by cause he sm-  
deth me not there as I promysed hym.  
And spz ye maye se by hym how þ these  
folp the louers are ouercome wth loue  
And this is þ cause that he departed f. o  
you, for he myghte not endure no longer  
the great tourment þ he was in. Pe ma-  
dame quod the loide is it thus, than I  
commaunde you on þ loue that ye beare  
vnto me that ye god and apparayle you  
in the fresthest maner that ye can do and  
than come agayne hyther to me. Than  
the lady byd his commaundement & came  
agayne to hym. And than he sayd. Ma-  
dame I wyl and also desyre you as dere  
ly as ye thynke to kepe my loue that ye  
go to yonder knyght vnder the oke and  
suffre hym to do what so euer he wyl w  
you, and recōmaunde me hartely to hym  
I spz sayd the lady for nothyng wyl I  
do that, for yf I had euer thought to ha  
ue fulfilled his folp the desyre, ye wold  
neuer haue knowen it by my wyl. And  
spz yf I should now do it, it were to me  
great bylany, bothe tofore god & all the  
worlde. Madame sayd the loide I wyl  
take at the synne on me, and I swere to  
you faithfully on my troubr that I wil  
loue you and kepe you more dely cūce  
after, therfore I wyl that ye do thus in  
contpnt. Well spz sayd the lady it beho  
ueth me thus to do for it is your ples-  
sure, yf honoure cometh thereby take it to  
you, and yf shame come thereby ye muste  
take it of worth. And soo than this lady  
came in to the forst to me, and as soone  
as I sawe her I was inuer for ioyfall  
before. For I thought I wold quyte al  
the woyle for her, than I came to her &

Arthur.

embraced her in myne arme ryghte swet-  
tely, and sayde. My ryghte dere ladye my  
hartes desyre ye be to me ryghte hartely  
welcome. Spz delalaunde quod she, God  
put in to your harte that ye do no wrog  
nor trespass aynst ony persone. Spz my  
loide my hussonde hartly recommaunde  
hym vnto you as to his own good fere de  
I was so madame q. I, where is my loide.  
Certainly said she he is here by in his ca-  
stle. But madame sayde I howe is it,  
doeth he know that ye be come hyther to  
me. Pe spz sayd she as God helpe me, for  
he hath caused me to be apparayled in  
the fresthest maner to the entente I shold  
please you the better, and so he hath sent  
me hyther to you to the entente to fulfill  
all your wyl and desyre, and therfore be  
holde me here all readye for to accom-  
plysh your wyl, as for hurte or yll shal  
none come to you, therby neither by my  
loide, nor yet by none other for hym, and  
so my loide dooth faithfully assure you,  
and sendeth you worde by me that he lo-  
ueth you in a maner better than he doo-  
eth hym selfe. And whan I harde the  
great courtesy of my loide, and how that  
he loued me as well as hym selfe, and  
how that he sent me the thyng that he lo-  
ued best in all the world to fulfill my de-  
syre therwith, and how that he woulde  
suffre that bylany for my sake, therby th  
fel awaye clene all my folp and vnresona-  
ble desyre. For than I thoughte it was  
better to leue my sensuall appetyte than  
to haue done that I had enterprysed in  
my harte, for I thoughte than it shoulde  
haue bene to great shame for me to do vi-  
lany to so noble a gentyll lordes harte  
Than I kneled downe before the lady re-  
quyryng her of pardon of the great cut-  
tage and folp that I thoughte aynst her,  
desyryng her for Goddes sake to helpe

E.1.

to

## The story of Arthur

to make my peace again w<sup>th</sup> the good  
 lord her husbonde. Than he toke me by  
 the hande and brought me into the ca-  
 stell before the presence of her lord. And  
 as soone as he sawe me embraced and  
 kyssed me. Than I kneled downe be-  
 fore hym and cryed hym mercy, and ther  
 the peace was made bytwene vs, and e-  
 uer s<sup>th</sup> he hath loued me as wel as euer  
 he dyd before or better. Now saye s<sup>r</sup> I  
 haue shewed you al myne aduenture, the  
 whiche is righte well known of ma-  
 ny folkes, and so it fortuneth y<sup>t</sup> but now  
 of late my lord Beamen was at a fest  
 w<sup>th</sup> the erle of Forest, and ther my sayd  
 lord toke this lady Mollion by the  
 hande to daunce, and the marshal of our  
 p<sup>ar</sup>t was ther present, who is right ca-  
 uious. And whan he sawe this my lord  
 and lady daunce togyther, he sayd how  
 that my lord of Beamen shoulde be the  
 seconde. Than the lord of Beamen w<sup>th</sup>  
 wel p<sup>ro</sup>uoghe what he mente and sayde.  
 S<sup>r</sup> marshal as for s<sup>r</sup> Guy de la lan-  
 de is a righte good knyght bothe wyse  
 and true. The marshal aunsw<sup>er</sup>ed and  
 sayd, his hounte aperced wel whā he sawe  
 his owne lordes wyfe. S<sup>r</sup> sayd the erle  
 of Beamen, though he despyred her loue,  
 yet I dare well saye that he neuer trespa-  
 sed ney<sup>th</sup> her agaynste his lord nor yet a-  
 gaynst her, for he dyd not dysguise hym  
 selfe lyke a rybaude for to come vnto the  
 toste of hys foire as some hath done y<sup>t</sup>  
 I knowe right well. Toherw<sup>th</sup> the mar-  
 shall was sore chafed, for it touched his  
 owne helyng and sayde. S<sup>r</sup> ye be but a  
 fol to saye these wordes to me. And thus  
 sh<sup>e</sup> multiplied in language so fer that  
 the erle of Forest and the erle of Beuern  
 had moche ado to appease them, and so  
 for this entent was the tourney take of  
 bothe parties whiche shalbe this Wed-

nesdaye next comyng, and there wyl be  
 many greet lordes of the marshalles par-  
 ty, as the erle of Foy, the erle of mou-  
 belyall, and the dolyphyn of bycnes, and  
 many other knyghtes, and also Alxan-  
 der the yonge kyng of malogre. And of  
 my lordes partye wyl be s<sup>r</sup> Iakes earle  
 of Forest, the erle of Beuern, a viuers  
 other, therefore s<sup>r</sup> I doubte me gretely  
 of my lord the erle of Beamen, for I wot  
 he be right so: y<sup>t</sup> he has not the honour  
 therfore I praye you and al your com-  
 pany to be at this tourney on my lordes  
 party, for whan ye se hym ye wyl saye  
 it were pite but he shold haue the victo-  
 ry. S<sup>r</sup> thus I haue shewed you all the  
 trowth of the mater. W<sup>th</sup> s<sup>r</sup> sayd Ar-  
 thur w<sup>th</sup> a good wyl I shal be w<sup>th</sup> your  
 lord. But s<sup>r</sup> I praye you shal this lady  
 of Mollion be at this tourney. S<sup>r</sup> as  
 god helpe me she shal be there and many  
 other great ladies a damoyelles, a also  
 it is ordeyned by comyn accorde that he  
 that dooth best shal be made like a king  
 ouer al other erles, barons, a knyghtes,  
 that shal be there assembled, a shal be  
 crowned w<sup>th</sup> golde as a kyng, and al  
 they w<sup>th</sup> all y<sup>e</sup> power that thei can make  
 shalbe content to go to hym in battayle  
 whether so euer he wyl haue them, and  
 so for thens forth he shal be called kyng  
 of the company, a this marshal entenderth  
 to haue this honour y<sup>f</sup> he may. For sure-  
 ly he is a good knyght of hys handes, a  
 moche goodnes is in hym y<sup>f</sup> his tongue  
 were not, but that spile more shameth  
 all the remenaunt, as it dooth to all them  
 that god hath giuen an yll tongue vnto.

How that Arthur had the honoure in  
 the tourney that was made at byen by-  
 twene the Marshal of my p<sup>ar</sup>t and the  
 erle of Beamen, where as was dyuerse  
 greates

great knynges, earles, barons, and many  
other good knyghtes ryght balaunte,  
whereby Arthur gate him great thanke

and prayse and was greatly honoured  
of all ladyes and damoyelles there as  
sembled.

Capitulo. xxvii



**A**nd after that sy: Guy de la  
launde had the wed al this p:ro  
celle to Arthur & to his com-  
pany they rode forth togder  
& so came to Lyon sur le rone  
and so passed ouer the bypge and rode  
through the towne, & in a fayre medowe  
vnder y towries syde they espyed where  
tentes & pavilions were ryghely pyghte  
at whych tyme there were assembled ma-  
ny grete and noble knynges, earles, barons,  
and other knyghtes, as well of the one  
party as of the other. And than sy: Guy  
de la launde sende a messenger to the erle  
of Beamen cerryfrengh bym ho W he had  
brought in balaunt knyghtes wih him  
and that in omy wyshe he shoulde retayne  
Arthur.

them to be of his company. And Whan  
the erle of Beamen and the erle of forest  
and the Erle of Fleuers harde these ry-  
dynges they came out of theyr tentes, &  
saw where sy: Guy de la launde and Ar-  
thur & his company came rydyng. And  
soo Whan they came nere they loughed &  
saied these earles, who dyd beholde  
Arthur, and perceyued well howe that he  
was a meruaylous fayre knyghte great  
and bygge and well furnyshed, and ses-  
med wel to be of great syerthes and of  
grete estate, and also they saw Hector  
a bygge knight & a wel made both of bo-  
dy armes and legges, & also the i behelde  
gouernar who was a great and a bigge  
man and wel made thereto, and that the so

E.ii.

erles

erles prayesd moche these knyghtes in their hartes. Than the earle of Beamen toke Arthur by the hande & sayd Spz ye be ryght hartely Welcome into the countre of byennes. prayenge you hartely to take your lodging With me & wyth these other two erles here presente. Than Arthur sayd, sy: with a ryght good Wylle, & so thei ledde hym into theyr tentes, and there Arthur, Hector, & Gouvernar were barmed. And whan they Were oute of theyr barnes euery man beheld Arthur for he was meruaylous fayre, so that rydinges came into y lades tentes bo We that sy: Sup de la laude was come and had brought wyth him thre goodly knyghtes, & specially one of them who was the fayrest and goodpest that cuer was seen, so that there was no bryte nor al king throughtout al the hoost but of the se thre knyghtes. Some said of whence be they, who kno Weth them, thus was the comynge of them in euery place. Thā Arthur & his company yssued out of the tentes & behelde the freshe baners and standardes & streamers waucyng in the Wynde, prght before euery tente & pavilion, & harde also the trompettes tabouryns, hornes blowinge in euery corner of the felde, and great coursers bryngge and knyghtes renning assayenge of horses, castyng of speres, thynnyng of Welles ayenst the sonne & glysteryng of helmes & knyghtes by great company ralyngge togidre also they espyed the great tente of the lades, in the heygth thereof prght a great thynnyng apple all of burned golde, & lades & damoyelles there in syngyng and dauncyng. Than Arthur's harte began to smile and sayde to Hector. Cousyn how saye ye, is it not better to be here and to se all this noblenesse than to crepe into our moders lappes,

Yes verily sayde Hector, for here nows shill appere who be noble men. Ye saye trouth sayde Arthur, & therwith retourned in to the erle of Beamens tente and wente to souper, and sythe sare dovne the earle of Nevers & Arthur neyghyn and than the erle of Forest and Hector & the earle of Beamens and Gouvernar, & there they were rythely serued. And after souper thei plaied and sported thetyll it was tyme to goo to theyr restes, and so than Wente to theyr lodgynges tyll the nexte mornyng, at whiche tyme they rose and harde masse, and than walken & talked togidre withoute theyr tentes, & therwith there came to them a knyght for the marshall of my poyes, and sayde to the erle of Beamens. Spz whan shal we be wyll begyn this tournay my lord the marshall is al redy. Now as god helpe me sayde the erle of Nevers let vs go to it incontinent. But sy knight I pray you tell me what company dooth your lord tournay w hall. Spz sayde the knyght he hath in his company Well to the nombre of ix. C. redy apparayled to tournay. In the name of god said the earle of Forest that is an yll factye, for I thinke our company passeth not. b. C. well sy sayd Arthur what than, care not for the nombre of people, therfore let vs shortly goo and se these noble men and I trust god wyll helpe vs. well sy sayde the earle of Beamen as god wyll so be it. But sy wyll ye than helpe vs and be of our partye. With a ryght good Wylle sy sayd Arthur, Hector & Gouvernar also. And than this knyght of the marshall's praied moche Arthur in his harte, and soo retourned to his mayster, who as than was in the company of the ponge kynge of mlogre, and with them the erle of mount helyal, and the erle of foyes, and the dolyphyn

phyn who was a lytle dysleasid, & there-  
fore he would not as that day tournay.  
Then the knyght sayd to the Marshall.  
Say the erle of Beame demaundeth of  
you the tournay incontynent. But say  
one thyng I tell you, syth ye were boz-  
ne ye sawe neuer thys so goodly knygh-  
tes as say de la launde hath brought wryth  
him, but I can not knowe of whens thei  
be, but one of them surmounteth the o-  
ther two bothe in beaute and goodlynes.  
Thei sayd the kynge of malogre what  
knyghtes be thei. In good sayth sayd  
the knyghte there can no man tell. Wyl  
they tournay this daye sayd the kynge.  
Ye say verily sayd the knyght, for right  
now whan perle of Beamen fered that  
he had not copany sufficient to answer  
your power I hard of these of these. iiii.  
knyghtes say unto hym. Say care not  
for god shal helpe vs, let vs shortly  
go se them. Than it semeth sayd the kin-  
ge that he hath a good harte. Ye sayd  
the Marshall he belongeth to there is not  
in all the world his pere in dedes of chy-  
ualry, therefore let vs go shortly se what  
he can do, he sayde trulper than he was  
ware of. For Arthur coude ryght wel ge-  
ne great strokes, as was ryght well pro-  
ued after by his noble dedes. Than was  
it comyned that compettes, & hornes  
shoulde be blowen, and than knyghtes in  
every part went to thei harness, than  
the Marshall and the erle of mountbelial  
and the erle of Fops a well to the nom-  
be of. x. hundred knyghtes were anon  
redy armed, and the yonge kynge of ma-  
logres was mounted on a great courser  
and the dolyphyn wryth him to the entent  
to se this tournay, for they woulde not  
turnay as a day. And incontynent as the  
ladyes and damoyelles harde the soun-  
nyng of the compettes & hornes, they

Arthur.

issued out of thei pauprons, and there  
was together in company the countesse  
of Favers, and the countesse of Forest,  
and the countesse of mountbelial, and  
the lady of Rosslyn, & a lady who was  
the Marshalls syster named dame blaun-  
che. And than the countesse of Favers  
sayd, let vs now take good hede of this  
knyght that is come wryth say de la  
launde and se what he can do. In the na-  
me of god said the lady of Rosslyn, there  
be thei as I vnderstande, but I wote  
not what they be, and all this season Ar-  
thur was in company wryth perle of Fo-  
rest, and wryth the erle of Favers, & the  
erle of Beamen, and whan they were re-  
dy armed they mounted on thei horses  
and the erle of Favers and Arthur rode  
first together, and after them the erle of  
Forest and Hector, and the erle of Bea-  
men and Gouvernar, and after them all  
the other of thei copany, and in ryght  
good ordynance they rode forth to the  
tournay. And than the lady of Rosslyn  
said to the other ladyes that were in her  
company, beholde poudre is one of the  
straunge knyghtes that cometh riding  
wryth the erle of Favers, & another wryth  
the erle of Forest. In the name of god  
sayd the Marshalls syster the thyde co-  
meth wryth the erle of Beamen, it semeth  
that the erles maketh moche of these. iii.  
straunge knyghtes, but they knowe not  
as yet the force of the Marshall my bro-  
der, but whan they mete here in the tour-  
nay than shal they have of hym suche  
acquaintance that they wil wythe that  
they had not come here this daye. Noo  
saye lady sayd the lady of Rosslyn. I  
praye you than shewe them some courte-  
sy, sende some worde to them that they  
flee awaye before they se the Marshall  
your broder, for I am sure of thei se him

E.iii.

they

## The story of Arthur

they are but lost for ever. At which wordes all the other ladies dyde laughe and had great spozte. So thus the erle of Aenens and Arthur rode forth the tyll it was tyme to begyn the tourney. And than the erle of Aenens saw the marshall on the other parte redy apparayled to Just, and shewed him to Arthur. Then Arthur sayd Spz he cometh very hastily, wherfore I requyre you let me encounter hym fyrst. So your wape in goddes name sayde the erle. Than Arthur rusht forth so rudelye as thonder had fallen fro heauen, & al the other knyghtes of the turnay beheld him wel, and praysed him moche in theyr heartes. Than the lady of Rosslyn sayd to þe Marshalls syster. Saye ladye I trowde ponder knyght hath espyed youre broder for ye may se howe faste he flyeth. And at that course the marshall hytte Arthur in the myddes of hys shelde and brake hys spere, and Arthur strake him so rudely on the helme that he shenered hys speare all to peces, Wyth the which stroke he sente both knyght and horse to the erth, and at an other course Arthur strake an other knyght so sore that he brake a grete pece of hys helme and shelde and ouerthrewe hym flatte to the earth in a grete traunce soze wounded. And whan the pong king of malogres sawe that he sayd to the dolphin. Saint mary who is ponder knyght he semeth too be the beste knyghte of the worlde. Wexye spz sayde the dolphin I neuer sawe suche strokes gyven of anye knyght here befoze. Than sayde the lady of Rosslyn to the marshalls syster. Madame behold howe ponder straunge knyghte flyeth, but your brother the marshall holdeth agayne, I hadde wende he durst haue gone no ferder for feare of your brother. At which tyme Hector also for his parte strake a knight with so great force

that he ouerthrewe hym playne too the erth, & Gouvernar strake an other downe horse and man, and put hym selfe in the thickest of the prese and dyd maruaples in armes, soo that all that behelde hym praysed hym greatlye. Than the ladye of Rosslyn sayd, saye ladye blaunche how saye ye are not these straunge knyghtes ryghte valyaunte, threfore madame for goddes sake cause the marshall your broder to absente hym selfe out of their syghetes, and in your soo doyng I thynke verely you shall do a grete almes dede. Than Arthur rusht into the gretest prese, and strake on the ryght hance and on the left so grete strokes and so heauy that it was maruaple, for there was none that euer abode hym but he auoyded the arson of hys sabel and fell to the earth. At the last Arthur espyed where there was a squer holdyng in hys hande a spoke or a grete pece of an olde broken charyot, the which he pulled out of his hande wyth suche a myghte that he cast downe the squer flatte too the earth, whereat the ladies and damopelles dyde laughe. And than Arthur put by hys sworde to the entente þe he should mayme or hurte no man, but with that pece of the charyot he thurst to the prese and gaue there with so grete and heuy strokes that all that he touched wente flatte to the earth. For he was of that condycyon that the more he hadde to do, the more grew he strength and vertue, he vnbarred helmes and clausounes der helmes and maruapiously bet downe knyghtes, for whome somer he touched were so astonyed that eyther he auoyded the sabel, or elles hys horse bare hym in a traunce all aboute the felde. And also Hector and Gouvernar dyde as well for theyr partes as anye knyghtes ought or myghte doo. Soo it fortunede as Arthur

wente

wente searchynge the renches and pre-  
 ses he encountered the erle of Fops, who  
 had nigh vnhoied one of the knyghtes  
 of the erle of Beaucous partye, than Ar-  
 thur pyched forth his horse and strake  
 the erle so rudely that he lay all downe  
 both horse and man flatte to the erthe  
 than Arthur turne agayne to hym, and  
 whyche he wolde or nor he caused hym  
 to be yeld. n. p. p. oner to the erle of Bea-  
 ucou who was iorde of that tourney on  
 his partye. Than the knyghtes of his  
 turnay assembled them together by plu-  
 pes here. x. and there. xv. and yonder. xx.  
 and so fought egerly together, so that  
 within one was fallen another byd. rle  
 to hym. Some laughed and some play-  
 ned; but Arthur was euer in the mood  
 cheyest of the pise, and fared so among  
 gerhem as the wolfe doth among shepe  
 and layd on wyth so grete and heauye  
 strokes that he crushyd downe all that  
 euer he touched. Than the erle of Bea-  
 cou sayd, and so byd all other knyghtes  
 how that they neuer sawe knyghte of so  
 grete vertue, nor in balure in dedes of ar-  
 mes. The ladies and damoselles also  
 grete maruylled at hym, and sayde that  
 better than he is was there neuer none.  
 And they concluded amonge them that  
 he was lykely to be a kynge to wynt the  
 crowne of this countrey, if he continued  
 his prowes accordynge to his begyn-  
 nyng. So than it fortuned that a great  
 parte of the Marchals company ranne  
 all at ones on the erle of Fievers and on  
 his company, who were farr overma-  
 ched bye: for he was soye bestridde and  
 lost many horses and many of his knygh-  
 tes soye bestridde, and hym selfe byerthwey  
 bowne from his horse and was helpe to  
 be taken & yelded to the Marchall.  
 But than another aide of Armes v. gante

cyte and sayd. Ha Arthur of Brytayne  
 where art thou now the erle of Fievers  
 is bestridde & nere taken prisoner. And Ar-  
 thur when he heard that, who as than  
 had by the helpe of Hector & Gouvernair  
 dyscompted a great rout of knyghtes  
 And when he elyped the erle of Fievers  
 on the ground, he spozed forth his horse  
 and ranne into the thickest of the pise  
 and strake so the fyist that he encountered  
 that he fell downe to the erthe both horse  
 and man than he strake on the right sy-  
 de and on the lefte wyth so myght pestro-  
 kes and heauy that he bet downe all that  
 was before hym, so that none durst aby-  
 de hym. And also Hector and Gouvernair  
 layde on so on all sydes that all that wer-  
 re before theym trembled for feare. And  
 so by cleue force in the spite of all his ene-  
 mies he hozed agayne the erle of Fie-  
 uers, and when he was thus remoun-  
 ced Arthur than lepe agayne into the  
 pise and byd maruyles. With his handes  
 for he claued asunder helmes and vn-  
 barred helmes, and beste downe knygh-  
 tes by great heapes. Thus was Arthur  
 regarded of all people who sayde eche to  
 other. Ihesu what a Wonders good kny-  
 ghte is yonder, god defende & kepe hym.  
 And the yonge kynge of Malogres had  
 his eyen euer vpon hym, and sayd to the  
 dolphyn. I thynke yonder knyghte be no  
 ne earthly man. I wene he be some spy-  
 rite of the ayre, for he all consenteith.  
 Than the ladye of Rossillon sayd to the  
 marchals spyt. O adame ye haue done  
 ryght well, for I beleue surely ye haue  
 payed your brother that he shoulde be  
 hurt to these straunge knyghtes, and all  
 the other ladies had ryght grete sperte  
 at the metyng of these six ladies.  
 And thus alwayes Arthur was fighting  
 and at last there were all knyghtes an

## The story of Arthur

at at ones on the erle of forest and bet hym downe to the earth and wold haue taken hym prisoner. But when Arthur sawe the erle at that myschefe he spozed hym to his chylder ward, and the first that he encountered he dyaue downe flatte to the earth, and the seconde he toke in hym armes and rasched hym out of the saddle and cast hym downe on hym that he had before ouerthyn. Then, the whych greued hym ryght so, so, the knyght was grete and heauy because of the harmes that was on hym, than he that laye vnderneathe sayde. A sye be but yll welcome to me now he that sendeth you hyther, I praye god he maye haue some yll aduenture, for ye haue all too abused me wyth youre fallynge. Then Arthur toke the knyghtes hoise and caused the erle of forest to mount thereon. And Arthur put hym selfe agayne into the chycheft pise and began agayne to ryghte as freshly as though he had done nothyng before of all thys daye, so that he was dyadore in every place, for there was none durst abyde hym but al fledde fro hym, so that the last he came where as the chiefe standard was, where as he found the Marshal, who dyd hym payne to bete downe all that was afoze hym, at whiche time he had stryken fro Gouernat his wyelde. And therewith Arthur strake hym on the helme so rudely that he dyaue him downe to the earth all astonyed, and Arthur toke hym hoise and gaue it to Hector for hym hoise sayled hym he was so soze wounded, and than Hector mounced on hym. And this stroke was scene of the kynge and of the dolphyn, and of all the ladies and damoyells, and they all sayde that the Marshal had bene the best knyght of all the world, but now he hath merite hym mayster, so certaynly ponder saye

anyghte surmounteth in pswelle all other knyghtes of the world. Then the lady of Bostion sayd vnto the Marshalles syster. Madame poure brother is not so yll and myscheuous as ye spake of before. so ye may behold these straunge knyghtes howe they are before hym, and yet he dooth no thyng to them, I thynke he slepeth. so ye maye se ponder howe still he lyeth on the grounde, for at that season he laye styll on the earth soze astonyed in a grete traunce. And when all the knyghtes of hym partye sawe hym lye so styll vpon the grounde they feared least he had bene dead, and sayde that one vnto that other. Ponder is the deuyll, I thynke he wyll confounde vs all, therefore let vs depart out of thys feilde, and therewith they al went they wayes. And so there remayned styll Arthur, Hector, and Gouernat. And when that the pouer kynge and the Dolphyn and manye other sawe Arthur alone in the feilde they came to hym and salewed hym and sayd. For god kepe you the best knyght of the world, and encrease your noble honoure and valure. For lord sayde Arthur, god that al thyng hath fourmed of noughte maye encrease your bounte and be your safeguard, and sye saynge youre grace I am none suche knyght worthy for to haue suche prayse as ye geue me. Well sye sayde the kynge we haue sene ryghte well howe it is, therfore myne owne I wote frende I requyre you that ye wyl be one of my house, and ye shall be my companion. For sayde Arthur I am ryghte well yours where so euer I be, howebeit I haue a lord already, who hath nourysshed me lyke hym owne chyld. And in good trouthe sayde the erle of forest, it is good ryghte than that ye loue hym. And as they were thus talking together

the Marshal rose from the grounde, and  
whan he sawe that the tourney was do-  
ne and synnished and that he hadde done  
nothyng to hym that had beaten hym  
downe, he was ryght soze dyspleased,  
and than he sente a knyght to the erle of  
Beamen desyryng hym soz to have the  
tourney to begyn agayne the nexte daye  
and so that he wolde encountre yet a-  
gayne wyth Arthur. This knyght founde  
the Erle of Beamen in the compaignye  
of the pryncer kynge and of Arthur. And  
than he sayde. Sir my lord the marshal  
saileweth you, and desyreth you agayne  
to have a tourney to morowe. wyth the  
good lord quod the pryncer kynge your  
mayster oughte soz to suffyse and be con-  
science of that whiche hath bene done here  
thys daye, wherfore it is reason that he  
now resteth hym selfe, for the kynge ful-  
well thought that the Marshal wolde  
not be in case yf that he were reuenged  
of Arthur. And sayde Arthur the Marshal  
is not yet wearp, and he wolde thynke  
my lord of Beamen soz recreaunt yf  
he wolde refuse his request, therfore say-  
de goddes sake graunt hym. Sir sayde  
the erle wyth a ryght good wyll sythe it  
pleaseth you, but sayd he requyre you than  
to helpe our party. Where sayde the  
marshal wyth all my heart to the baste of my  
lyfe and power. So than there was graun-  
ted to be an other tourney on the nexte  
daye. Than sayd Guy de la lounde came  
vnto Arthur and ledde hym to be vnar-  
med. So than Arthur toke hys leue of  
the kynge, who wolde ryght gladly have  
had hym in hys compaignye. And than all  
the people came to beholde Arthur and  
sayd wyth a comen voyce, beholde hym  
that all hath vanquished. Than whan  
Arthur was vnarmed the Erle of Beamen  
kept hym compaignye, and also Hector and

Gouernar were vnarmed. Than the la-  
dyes and damoyelles retourned into  
theyr pauryons alwayes speakyng of  
Arthur, and than they assembled them  
togedre by plumpes, here ten and there  
twelue, and all the countesses were to-  
gedre in one parte, and wyth them in the  
Marshall's sytter dame blaunche and  
the lady Rosyllon speakyng cur of Ar-  
thur. Where sayde the countess of Foze-  
sich I was fyrst bozne I neuer sawe so  
good a knyght nor so valyaunte, nor so  
well doynge in armes as he is. It is of  
a trouthe sayde the lady Fleurs, I sawe  
not howe that he brake the great compa-  
nyes of knyghtes and tourneys and ouer-  
threw all that euer he touchyd. By my  
soule sayde the countess of Foze, I sawe  
hym whan he embraced a knyght in hys  
armes al armed and caste hym downe  
vpon an other knyght and bysed hym  
ryght soze there wyth, and also sawe ye  
not howe he brake the Marshal downe  
to the grounde, to save the trouthe he  
is the best knyght of the world and the  
mooste hardyest. And more ouer all the  
beauty of the world that can be compari-  
sed in a man is in hym. Also he is reple-  
te wyth all grace and vertue, for he is  
free, meke, and gentle as a lambe. By  
the sayde that I owe vnto god sayde the  
lady Rosyllon, my lady the countess of  
Foze I wolde he were your knyght  
I beleue you wel sayde the lady blaunche  
for than I thynke verely ye wold  
speke with him ofrentimes whan other  
ladies were abeddefaste on slepe wyth-  
as fewe a compaignye as ye myghte wyth  
oute makyng of anye noyse but than  
haue ye that wyll forsaye wyth an other  
that is not her owne. Certaynly an-  
swered the lady Rosyllon I thynke there be  
but fewe in this world bozne that puerly  
deng

## The story of Arthur

clene bothe in thought and in dede, how be it I am not the closest priuely knyghtes in her chaumbre by nyghte tymes wythoute the presence of my lord. nor kepe none vnder my couerture. howe saye you saye lady know you any other wyse by mee, yf ye doo spare not but speake it here openly, yf ye be of that condicions or haue done soo, ye oughite than the rather too be the moze secrete, yf ye knowe that malady to be in an other. Whan you knowe your owne estate true the enuytyng of any farther than needeth of any other, for I am in certayn that ye be some tyme in the shadowe oftener than I am in the sonne, with company oftener than I am alone. Than al the ladies and damoyelles began to laugh, and tourned all the matter intoo Japes and sportes. And all this while Arthur was in the care of women's care, and there was wyth hym sy Guy de la launde, and there he was well serued and much honoured of euery man. And after souper they passed for the tyme in grent ioy and miche myght till it was conuenient tyme to go to theyr restes.

Howe that Arthur the second day had the honoure of the tourney, and too wyth hym abode the pryce of the felde. Capitulo. xxx.



The next day betwix Arthur arose and all the other knyghtes, barons and knyghtes, to heare masse and after they arined them all of bothe parties, and soo than came intoo the pyche there as they shoulde turney, and as soon as Arthur and the Marshal sawe the other they apparyed them to仁neto gyder, and dashed too theyr hoyses and

encountred so rudely that they all to by he theyr speeres the whiche were greute and bygge as though they had bene but reues, and so passed for the wythoute hurtynge of eche other, and whan that Arthur hadde perfourmed hys course he encountered an other knyghte, and strake hym soo with the stonehon of his speere that he was therewith soze wounded and fell downe to the erth. Than Hector and Gouvernour began to crye and to beate downe knyghtes byggydously and byd enforce theym to doo noble dedes of armes. Than Arthur fought soo amonge them wyth suche vertue that he caused al the rankethes and please of knyghtes to auoyde and geue hi place, euery thing fell too hym as he woulde wyll it, for he felled sheldes and beite downe knyghtes, and wante hoyses and enforced pylsoners to yelde them as hys pleasure, so that al fledde before hym, for none durste encountre his mighty strokes. Than the lady of Boleyn who was as then nere to the countes of Forst, sayd to the marshalles syster. Madame yet I sayde truly yester day whan that I sayde howe that this knyght was merely too beretayned with a greas lady, wherfore I wolde he were parraining with my lady the countes of Forst here presente, for he is now knyghte to be compn to all ladies, such as wheleth aboute the chymney, as I chynke some suche ye knowe right well for there be many that choseth not by the wyll one all onely, but are glad to takee suche as they maye get. for elles peradventure they myght tarpe very longe or they founde suche a knyghte as this is. Than the countesse of Fleury sayde to the countesse of Forst. Darre madame this lady payeth wythout anye gage sellyng. Truly sayd the countes of Forst they

they that speaketh saye, saye that here  
 agayne, but this marshals spker spake  
 yesterday bylance to my lady Rossion,  
 & therfore now he remembereþ her ther  
 of. And so it fortuneth that in this season  
 the lord of the castel yllembart, and they  
 nold of pierreple and wel, & other knygh  
 tes of theyr countre take theyr counsaile to  
 renne al as ones agens Arthur too then  
 tent to bynge hym to the grounde. And  
 whan they sawe that Arthur hadde bene  
 wel traunpled and that they thought he  
 had bene weary, than they al togther ran  
 at hym and strake him on all sydes, and  
 charged him with so many strokes that  
 his hors enfolded vnder hym, howe be  
 it as his hors fel he toke sy. Yllembart  
 that was before hym in his armes and  
 cast hym downe to the earth in the spyre  
 of his herte. And whan they were booth  
 at the grounde, than Arthur lepte vpon  
 his feete and layde handes on sy. Yllem  
 bartes hors, and moued it then agens  
 the wyll of al his enemyes. And whan  
 Reynolde of pperrele sawe that he wente  
 wyth suche good aydes he had and en  
 braced Arthur wyth boith his handes,  
 and soo eche of them helde other righte  
 soze, and therwith ocher knyghtes came  
 soo sprecely on them that they were by  
 ren downe to the earth boith hors and man.  
 Than Arthur lepte on his feete agayne,  
 and as he that was righte soze dysplea  
 sed ran to the ryle of hors and toke hym  
 in his armes with a grete force and pul  
 led hym soo rudely that the gythes and  
 paytrell and harness all too brake, and  
 so the ryle ouerthrew wyth the sadel by  
 twene his legges, than Arthur lepte on  
 the horse bare backed and tooke from a  
 squier a mace of steele that he bare in his  
 hande and layd on wyth boith his han  
 des, and strake the first that he encount

red soo rudely that he touned his leg  
 ges vponward, and than he wente to an  
 ocher knyghte and strake hym soo soze,  
 that he was so astonped ther wyth that  
 his horse bare hym halfe a myle or that  
 he wyll where he was. And so myghte ca  
 ge here Arthur vpon colone. & knygh  
 tes or euer he rested, and layde on euer  
 boith on the righte syde and on the left  
 wyth so grete force that he confounded al  
 that euer he toched, he was in such a  
 furour that he wyll not well whether he  
 was on horsebacke or on fote, wyth sa  
 dell or withoute sadell, and comed soo at  
 the mouth that al chose that than sawe  
 hym sayd that he was out of his wyse,  
 soo that all fledde before hym and gaue  
 hym waye where so euer that he wente.  
 And spede so muche that he escaped cle  
 ne from all the knyghtes whiche were  
 in the thought for to haue put hym to re  
 buke and shame, so that the place where  
 as he stode was cleene asped. Than ran  
 me there to hym Hector and Gouvernar,  
 whan they sawe hym withoute a sadell  
 they were greatlye marayled therof,  
 and forther wyth Hector rode toward a  
 knyght so sprecely that he bare hym downe  
 to the grounde, and Gouvernar toke  
 his hors and broughte hym vnto Arthur.  
 And whan Arthur apperceyued that he  
 hadde no sadell vnder hym he marayled  
 grete, so he was soo soze traunpled be  
 soze that he toke no heed therof. Than  
 he wred of Hector and of Gouvernar how  
 he hadde loste his sadell, and whether he  
 hadde any fall or not, and than they lye  
 wed hym althow it was, whereat they  
 bydlaugh. And whan that Arthur was  
 moued into the sadell he sawe before  
 hym where as there stode all the coun  
 trelles and byuerle other ladyes and da  
 mpselles withoute theyr tentes for to  
 beholde

## The story of Arthur

behold the courney than he spurred his  
 hors and came to the and alighted down  
 to the erth, and humbly saluted the myn-  
 lady. Fayre ladies god that al fourme  
 guntop and honoures al poure noble  
 compaignie the wyche is ryght fayre and  
 gentyl. Spz sayde they, all ye be hyther  
 ryght welcome. Well fayre ladies sayde  
 Arthur for goddes sake be not dysple-  
 sed that I am soo bolde to come to you,  
 for it shoulde haue bene greates bypasse to  
 me sayng that I was to nere your pre-  
 sence yf I had not done my duty in sa-  
 lewynge of your noblenesse. And in the  
 meane tyme as they thus talked to gy-  
 ther the erle of foyr and his countesse  
 on the erle of foyr and his compaignie a  
 helde hym soo hard and shorte that he  
 brake all the coure of his compaignie, and  
 nye had taken pryncer the erle of foyr  
 for he was beten downe to the erth. And  
 whan the countesse his wife saw her lord  
 so nye ouercome, she sayde vnto Arthur.  
 Spz knyght, of what compaignie be ye of  
 in this courney. Fayre lady said Arthur  
 I am of the compaignie perryng to the  
 erle of foyr. Acrenny spz sayde the lady  
 I beleue not that, for yf ye were of this  
 compaignie ye wold not suffre hym to be  
 delyt wylly as he is now, but I thinke ye  
 loue better ease and rest than to tourney  
 and in so poure payng ye do wel and wyse-  
 ly. It is better to be in the shadow than  
 in the sonne light. Whan Arthur heard  
 her saye so, he was grete abashyd, and  
 couged his bysage to ward the turney  
 and so in where the erle of foyr was be-  
 ten fro his horse and stode defendyng of  
 hym self on fote. And whan he sayd so the  
 countesse of foyr, she aduise for goddes  
 sake. I al upon mynere for I thought  
 ful my self that my lord your husband  
 had bene in this case, but by the grace of

god I shal sone helpe and socoure hym.  
 Ye sayd the lady I trow ye be very certeyn  
 ye se him now almost as a gret myschete  
 and yet ye stande here styll preachyng to  
 vs. And whan Arthur herd that he was  
 soze dyspleased and so moued on his hors  
 and without any longer delay he rylde  
 into the cheke of the coure soo rudely  
 that his hors went like the thundir, and  
 al the ladies behelde him right well, and  
 sayde god kepe and defende the from mys-  
 chere of shame. And Arthur rylde into  
 the prese and strake the first so rudely  
 he ouerthrewothe hors and man, than  
 the ladies began to laughe, than Arthur  
 toke another with his hands by the hol-  
 ders and cast him rudely to the erth, wher  
 he toke his mase of stele hanging at his  
 face, how and strake so fierly therewith  
 rounde aboute hym in euery place that  
 he brake the prese and bet downe knygh-  
 tes, soo that there were none that durste  
 appoche vnto hym but they all fledde  
 before hym as the fle to wylles dooth  
 afore the saloon. Than Arthur came to  
 the erle of foyr and brought him a new  
 hors and helpe hym to mount thereon.  
 Than Arthur roode to the erle of foyr, &  
 the erle gaue hym a gret stroke on the  
 helme, but Arthur moued noo moze for  
 al the stroke than though he had styken  
 a grete coure, but Arthur strake hym so  
 gayne so tyercely that he caused hym to  
 moue the acion of his sabel, and faret  
 Arthurs squyer toke the horse, than Ar-  
 thur sayde to hym. faret I wille thou go  
 with this hors and present it to me to-  
 my lady the countesse of foyr, who right  
 now blame me for soze. Spz quod faret  
 with a right good wyl, and so wende  
 faret with the hors. And Arthur al this  
 season helde vnder hym the erle of foyr  
 in such wyse tyll at the last the erle of

foyr

Forrest came to them, and so there to him  
 the rle of foyr was sayne to yelde hym  
 selfe. Than Arthur put him selfe againe  
 into the pzease, and strake so on all par-  
 res, that synally every man fledde from  
 hym, and left him in the place all alone.  
 Than Arthur cried openly and sayde, yf  
 there be any knyght that dare come, let  
 hym appere, but he myghte haue tarped  
 there long ynough or any that was ther  
 wold haue comen to him. Than sy: Guy  
 de lalaunde came to him and sayde. Sy:  
 I haue promysed you that I shuld shew  
 vnto you the ladye of Rossylon, please th  
 it you now therefore to come With me. &  
 ye shal se her by the sayth that I owe to  
 God, I wil go With you gladly. And tha  
 their two, and Hector: a Gouvernar rode  
 forth to the ladies tente, and by the way  
 they encountred Jaket, who had done his  
 message. And he shewed to Arthur how  
 that the countes of Forrest ryght hartly  
 did thanke him. And whan they were be-  
 fore the tente they lyghted. And thange-  
 nerallye all the ladies and damoyelles  
 came to them warde Wyth greate kisse  
 and ioye. And whan Arthur was within  
 the tente wyth the ladies, who affectu-  
 ally behelde him. Than the countesse of  
 Fleuers, and the countes of Forrest right  
 hartely dyd welcome hym. And he an-  
 swered & said. Fayre ladies, great Welth  
 and honoures god maye sende vnto you  
 all. Than the countesse of foyr dyd sa-  
 le We hym, & said. Sy: yet I oughte not  
 thus to salewe you, syth ye hane soyl en-  
 trected my lord my husbände this daye.  
 A my ryghte dere ladye sayde Arthur, ye  
 ought not therefore to blame mee. For it  
 was but the fortune of that play. Truly  
 sy: sayd she, ye say nothing but trouthe,  
 no: I bere not to you therefore any euil  
 Wyll. Than the countesse of Forrest said

Arthur,

who had spoken to hym before ryght ru-  
 dely. Sy: I humbly requyre of you par-  
 don, and I wyll make you amendes in y  
 I haue soo rudely spoken to you before  
 this tyme, wherefore noble and gentyll  
 knyghte take noo regarde to the bayne  
 wordes of a woman, Whoo lightly ope-  
 neth her mowthe to speake, but beholde  
 your great bounte and noblenes. where  
 wyth ye be gretly endued, but sy: that I  
 said was because I sawe my lord at a  
 great mischefe. Than came to them sy:  
 Guy de lalaunde holdynge the ladye of  
 Rossylon by the hande, & said to Arthur  
 Sy: I haue before thys tyme promysed  
 you that I shuld shew you my ladye of  
 Rossylon, sy: beholde her for here she is  
 nowe present before you. And whan Ar-  
 thur sa We her, he made great ioye of her  
 and promysed her faithfully to be alway  
 her owne knyght. And she agayne right  
 highely thanked hym, & all other ladies  
 & damoyelles affectuouly beheld hym,  
 and requyred him that he would take the  
 payne to bname him amonge them, for  
 they said that they woulde sayne se hym  
 bnamed, and somewhat for curtesye, he  
 with said their desyre. But synally they  
 desyred hym soo affectuouly, that nedes  
 he was sayne to agre to their requeste, &  
 whan he was bnamed he was of bodye  
 right maruailous fayre and gentyl to be  
 holde. For he was bygge, longe, and  
 streyght. Than these ladies behelde him  
 maruaylously and said eche to other how  
 that they shoulde be right happy myghte  
 haue suche a knight to her loue. And all  
 these countesses, & great ladies wysshed  
 eche of them that he might haue ben par-  
 tynge to theyr lordes. Than a ladye  
 brought to him warme water in a basyn  
 of syluer to washe his nethe and visage  
 because of the sweating in his harnays.

f.i.

And

## The story of Arthur

And the lady of Boffylon put a mantell of scarlet aboute hym the whiche was pertaining to the countesse of Flanders to the intent he shuld take no colde after his labour, and so he remayned a good space amonge them and finally toke his leue. Then the ladies desired him that he wold be their knight, and that he wold suffer his harneis to remayne styl amonge them tyl he had neede thereof, and that he wold vouchesaue to were the mantell of scarlet styl on him. And Arthur dyd graunte them



they desired, and so mounted on his horse and all his company, and rode forth tyl at the laste he mette with all the hole assemble of bothe parties, and there was the ponge king of Malogres and all the other foure cries, and the dolphyn, and fye hundred other knyghtes. Then the ponge kynge sayde to Arthur. Say ye be ryght hartely welcome, as he that is the floure of all chualtry, & the best knyghte of all the worlde, & there he desired hym greatly to abyde with him, and that they myghte be companions togyder ever after, & secundes. But arthur excused hym as well as he myght. And all this season he had on the reshe mantell of scarlet, wherein he semed bygge and longe and meruaylously strenght and fayre, & geue rally all the knyghtes behelde hym & sayde how that he was hely rewarded of god for he was fayre & hardy, & of his chualtry surmounted all other, for they all sayde that the valure of al other knyghtes was as nothing to the regard of his noblesse.

**C** How that the Marshall of myrpopys for crui that he had because that Arthur

had the honoure of the tournay, and by he had beten him downe, for he had wode hymselfe to haue ben the best knyghte of the worlde, therefore he desired Arthur and chalenged hym to Juste. And howe that Arthur vanquished hym, & brake one of his armes, and two rybbes in hys syde.

Capitulo xxx



Then the Marshall who had his hart enflamed w greate pye because that Arthur had put hym to the worlde, and also because he herde so moche good and honour spoken of hym, where of he had so great enuy in his harte, and so great despyte, that he could not holde hym selfe in rest, for he believed hym selfe to be the best knyght of the worlde, than openly he spake so hygh and lowde that every knyght mighte here hym, and Arthur also, sayeng in this maner of wyse. Certainly this straunge knyght can not swourne, when he is ledde by the hande with fayre ladies and damoyelles: and clothed with their mantelles, he lacketh noo thyng but a softe pelowe to playe thereon

theron with some of these damoyelles  
 And whan Arthur herde hym he answere  
 and sayd. Syr yf these ladyes take  
 me by the hande I thanke them the more  
 for it is by thei courtseye and not by  
 my deseruyng therfore I loue thei the  
 better and wyll be the gladder for  
 to serue them and to be a faythfull knyght  
 to thei al in general. For as god  
 helpe me so moche is a knyghte worth  
 as he can deserue prayse of ladyes and  
 damoyelles. And the Marhall full of  
 yre answered. In sayth as for you ye be  
 but lytell worth and that semeth well  
 whan ye are faine to take the reuerfion  
 of these ladyes olde clothyng. well syr  
 sayd Arthur as for all that loke what so  
 euer they do to me I am ryght well content  
 therewith I thynke I haue no thyng  
 of yours yf I haue take it frome yf  
 ye dare. Certaynly sayd the Marhall yf  
 ye had ony thyng of myn soo wolde I  
 do thynke not the contrary for I wolde  
 not spare neyther for you nor for none  
 othir to take it grudge therat who wolde.  
 Than Arthur all simplige sayd. Well  
 syr than I am ryght happy that I haue  
 noo thyng of yours for yf I had me  
 thynketh I sholde not kepe it longe by  
 your wyl. And whā the Marhall saide  
 hym simple he thought he dyde it for des  
 syre of hym and sayd. Syr Wyll ye do  
 so moche for all these ladyes sake that  
 ye and I may playe togider with the Wo  
 layre spere. Syr sayd Arthur ye be so  
 halpaunt a man that ye ought not to be  
 refused nor denied for so litell a request.  
 Than the Marhall was blamed of the  
 kige and of all the other knyghtes and  
 they wolde full sayne haue letted these  
 Justes because they thoughte that Ar  
 thur was wery of the labour which he  
 had in the tourney before. But the Mar  
 Arthur.

shall sayd he hath promysed it me, and  
 therfore yf it please hym, I trust he wyl  
 not sayle me, yf he doo I wyll say that  
 he is recreaunte. Hays sayd Arthur by  
 the sayth that I owe vnto God I wyll  
 not sayle you. And so euerp man prayd  
 god that the same might fall vpo the  
 Marhall, bita is of his proude disda  
 nefull mynde. Than Arthur demaun  
 ded incontinent for his harnays. Cha  
 lyz Guy de la launce wente vnto the la  
 dyes tence, and shewed thei how that  
 the Marhall had chalenged Arthur to  
 Juste with him againe. And then rendred  
 the ladyes to him all hys harnays, and  
 prayd god for to giue vnto Arthur the  
 honour of those Justes. For thei said  
 how that the marshall was a cole, and  
 of an outragious wilfull minde, wher  
 fore thei prayd vnto god that he sholde  
 spede the worse. Than dame blanchke  
 sayd to the lady of Bofflon. Madame I  
 beleue now that your straunge knyght  
 shall haue yet or it be nighte grete neede  
 of some soft bedde to lye in pour cham  
 brye, by that tyme thei brother had be  
 wed a caudel for his heed, for I ensure  
 you he neuer as yet encountered so dere  
 a physicien. well madame sayd the las  
 dy of Bofflon. saye and easely, as the  
 ende shall be seen who shall wyne the  
 wager, as yet ye can make no boost for  
 ye haue wonne nothing. Cha Arthur  
 and the Marhall both dyde arme them  
 and whan thei were bothe in the feilde  
 ther was brought to hem grete spere  
 and than thei spurred thei horses with  
 so great randowne that the blode daryt  
 oute of thei sydes, for thei were bothe  
 good and redoubted knyghtes, but the  
 Marhall was not to be compared vnto  
 Arthur for such Arthur was fyrst made  
 knyghte he fered no man lpyng,

## The story of Arthur

wherefore the Marshall dyde selpe to enterpryse ony thyng agaynst hym, but pryde dooth oftentimes many harmes to his mayster, the Marshall at the fyrst course strake Arthur and brake his speere to his spete, but Arthur for all that moued no more than though there had ben but a rede broken upon hym. But he strake the Marshall soo rudely that he bare downe horse and man to the erth. Than began to laugh al the ladies and damopelles, knyghtes, and squyers.

Than the lady of Rosslyn sayd to dame blainche. Madame poure broder is not so fell and so outrageous as I had wende that he had bene, for he taketh no more of the erth but his owne length, I thynke he slepeth, beholde howe pruely he lyeth still. And whan the Marshall awoke out of hys traunce he was soze a shamed in that he was so ouerthrowen and demaunded yf he had ouerthrowen Arthur, than it was shewed hym naye, wherwith he was ryght soze displeased yet than agayne he prayed Arthur on his knyghthode that he wolde Just with hym an other course. But all that euer herde hym thought he played the proude sole and counseled hym the contraery, but all that auayled not, for he sayde he wolde nedes yet Juste ones agayne. And whan y Arthur herde hym of that mynde, he had greates by dayne therat & wexed angry in his herte to consyde his folysh presumptuous mynde, and sayde well if he wyll nedes abyde the seconde I thynke he wyll gladly let the thyde passe. So than they roke muche greater speares than they had before, and in grete yre ranne togyther so egerly that it seemed the earth enfoundred vnder them, and the Marshall strake Arthur ryghte rudely, so; he was a good knyghte, and

shewered his spere all to peces, But Arthur hte him with his spere the which was great and bygge, so that the sadell payrell, girthes and all brast, and hors and man wente to the grounde so rudely that wored the fall that the Marshall had one of his armes broken, and also two of his rybbes, and his body soze brused so that he laye styl a greate season with out mounge, and whan all the knyghtes that sawe the stroke, were greely a bashed and sayde che to other how that the Marshall was beten downe to the erth both horse and man, and in greate feopardy of his lyfe.

Howe that Arthur was crowned to be kynge of all the knyghtes of the tounay. And they promysed hym sayth and crouth to setue hi in dedes of armes alwayes and in euery place where as it seemed him best, and the yonge kynge of malogres to crowne hi. Capit. xxi.



Than whā the Marshall was thus ouerthrowen the ladies dyd laughe, & sayde. Blessed be god pryde alwayes ouerthrowen his maister. Than the lady of Rosslyn sayd vnto the lady blainche. Madame now it seemeth that your brother hath lusse the wager it had bene better for hym that he had bene in your chambze, he speketh no mo words he hath yf tell care now for the tipes beholde howe that he waketh his legges. Than al the other couctesses and ladies that were there present. to laughe, and sayd the pryde of hym is no w wel abated. god kepe & defende suche a knyghte that can yue suche valyaunte strokes. As god helpe me said the lady Rosslyn



the Marshall is now in good rest. I trowe he hath lytell lust to remount againe let him be well apayed, for now he hath that he sought for. And so eche of them spake they verely. Then the ponge kynge and the other Barres came to the Marshall and demaunded of hym howe he dyd. And he answered and saide ryght yll, for I haue two of my rybbes broken and one of my armes. I praye you howe dooth Arthur. In gooderouth sayde the erle of Beaucieu, he is yet in the fælde, Where as he entendeth yf ye wyll goo to hym and breke the thyrde spere. As sayd the Marshall, I beleued this daye in the mornynge that I had bene the best knyght of y world, for I thoughte that there was none that had ony power in comparison vnto me, but nowe I haue founde my mapstar. therfore I requyre you cause hym to come to me. Then the erle of Beaucieu toke Arthur by the hande and sayd. Syr the Marshall woulde fayne speake wyth you. In the name of god sayd Arthur let vs goo to hym. By that tyme the Marshall was layde on a lytell couche that was broughte to hym,

And Whan he sawe Arthur he sayde that all myghte here hym Syr ye be to me ryghte hertely welcome as he that is the chiefe floure of all chyualrye, and syr I crye you mercy of the greates pryde that I was in, the hyeche moued me to Juste wyth suche a knyght as ye be, verely I was enuious and sorowfull of the noblenes that I herte spoken of you, and therfore I toke on me to Juste wyth you, to the entent to abate your praise and renowne, but suchethere be that thynketh to geue other

and the hurte and grefe tourneth vnto them selfe, god hath done to me ryghte accordynge to my thoughte, for he hath broughte me in to the same case that I had thought for to haue you in, therfore gentyll knyghte, I requyre you to pardon my folp that I haue thought agensst you. And Whan Arthur herde hym speake so louyngly, he had greates pryde of his hurte and sayde. A syr I thoughte to crye you mercy bycause that I haue hurte you so roze, Wherfore it forthynketh me, Wherfore syr I pray you to pardon me. Certaynly syr sayde the Marshall, with all my herte, and I geue you my voyce of the crownynge of this tournay as vnto hym that is the best knyghte of al the worlde. Then the kynge sayde syr Marshall than ye be accorded that he shall be crowned as the best knight of this tournay. Syr sayde the Marshall as god helpe me wyth all my herte. And the kynge sayd by the sayth that I owe vnto god, he shall haue my voyce and good wyll. And all the other Barres sayde that they were all agreed thereto, for he was worthy and none other. Then came to them

## The story of Arthur

all the Ladies and damoysels, and they were all of the accorde that he sholde be crowned as the best knyght of all other. And than þe crowne was brought forth and the ponge knyge of malogres didde set it on Arthurs head by the comyn accorde of all the hole assemble, and they were al content that he shoulde be knyge of all those knyghtes that were there assembled, & they all profred hym succour and ayde in all places and agens al people and as often as he wolde commaunde them. Thus they remayned in great feest and Joye well the space of fyftene dayes, with al maner of pastauce for mynge to noblenes.

Howe that Arthur after his crow-  
narpon toke leue of the ponge knyge  
and of all the other lordes and knygh-  
tes ladies and damoyselles, who con-  
uayed hym on hys Journeywarde,  
and had great sorow to leue his com-  
pany.

Capit. xxii.



At the end of the. x. dayes  
Arthur toke leue of the kny-  
ge and of all the erles & la-  
dies who were not wil con-  
tent of his departing. And  
the knyge sayd, ryght dere sýr and frend  
I requyre you as hartelye as I can that  
ye wyl go with me into my countre, and  
I promyse you faithfully as a knyge þe  
ye and I shalbe in in all thynges as co-  
panions and frendes, and I shal loue  
you ryght dere, & will gyue you londe  
soo great and good that ye shal be ryght  
wel content therewith, mine owne sýre  
frende I requyre you graunt me my de-  
syre, and therewith he embraced and kys-  
sed hym. And whan Arthur hearde hym  
he smyled & sayde, myn owne dere Lord

I thanke you, and wolde to god mooste  
pyschaunt that I might do as ye desyre  
me, for it were grete Joye to me to aby-  
de in your noble company, if it were not  
for one thyng that I haue enterprysed  
and as yet I wote not well what it is,  
nor where to fynde it, but as mine ad-  
uenture happeneth. I haue tarpid here  
very longe, therfore now it is tyme that  
I departe. And whan they herde that  
he wolde nedes go, they were ryght so-  
rowfull, and the knyge and all other of-  
fresd hym to go in his company to helpe  
and ayde hym to attayne his enqueste,  
but Arthur wolde not consente thereto,  
and said that he wold haue no company  
but suche as came wythin hym. Yes sýr  
sayde the knyge ye shal haue with you  
Bawdelwyn my squyer, and I wyl de-  
liver hym to you for good and true, for  
I wyl vnder take he woulde rather dye  
than his mayster sholde take ony hurte  
or dooage in his defeaute, & also he kno-  
weth the vertues of all herbes, for he is  
a fourayne surgyon. In the name of  
god sayd Arthur, I am contente to take  
hym of you, and for his connyng I wyl  
loue him better than two thousande pound  
of yercly londe. Than Arthur, Hector  
Gouernar, Bawdelwyn and Jaket, to-  
ke of euery mā counyng and leue, and de-  
parted and entred in to theyr Journey,  
and Bawdelwyn and Jaket rode befoze,  
Hector and Gouernar rode togider, and  
Arthur betwene them. And as they rode  
they comoned of the grete balure of the  
ponge knyge of malogres, & of the other  
erles and knyghtes ladies and damoy-  
selles, and of the grele honour that they  
had amonge them. In this maner they  
rode euery daye the space of thre weekes  
wout fyndynge of ony aduenture wher  
of any mencyon is made.

How Arthur and his company arrived in the erledome of Brewe, marriage agent the londe of Dorolous entered into the cyte of Brewe, the whiche was bespiced by the duke of Orgoule named Galaquis bycause the erle wold not let him have his daughter in maryage, wherfore by false reason he slew the erle. Cap. xxxii.



At the ende of the. iii. weekes Arthur and his company entered into the Erledome of Brewe agent the londe of Dorolous, and of this erledome there was an Erle a noble of haubour and of frendes, and reputed ryghte wyse, and had to wyfe a noble Ladye and a vertuous, who hadde to name the gentyl Isabella, and had betwene them two a fayre and a gracypous daughter named Alyce. Jorneyng to this Erledome there marched a duchy wherein there was a Duke whiche was named Galaquis, a cruel man and an enuyous. And this Duchy was called Orgoule, and this duke had often and manye tymes demaunded of this erle, his daughter dame Alyce to have in maryage, but the erle nor the good lady his wyfe wolde in no maner of wyse graunte therto, bycause of the cruel condycions that were wythin this Duke. And whan that the Duke sawe that he coude not gette this fayre lady Alyce he bare than in his herte grete heate and enuy to the erle her father, in soo muche that at the last, this duke had knowlege upon a daye howe that the Erle was gone to chase in the forest. And therby his prepensed malice caused this Erle shamefully for to be slayne and murdered. And whan that the Erle was thus miserably slayne, he was brought home

to his wyfe whiche was ryght sorowful for his deeth, and made hym to be honourably buried. But this sorowfull lady in noo wyse coude be plyteli how that he was slayne, but she had grete suspicte to the duke. And soo with in halfe a yere after the duke came vnto this countre and demaunded of her Dame Alyce her daughter, but the countesse bycause she had hym in suspicte of the deeth of her erle her husbonde wolde in no maner of wyse graunte therto, nor also this fayre mayden Alyce wolde in noo wyse have hym to dye therfore. And whan the duke perceiued that he might not have her at his pleasure he had grete despight therof, and soo despyed the countesse and assembled a grete host and beleyed the cyte of Brewe, and wasted all the countre rounde aboute a grete trespasse, and made his swowe that he woulde not departe thens till that he had wonne her by force. And in this meane season Arthur and his company arrived in that countre, and the Duke had layen at the syege as than the space of a yere before the cyte accompanied with foure hundred knyghtes besydes other servantes. And thus Arthur and his company rode thynge thes Countre the whiche he founde all exyled and put to wast, and mette with much people fleyng out of the lande, whereof he was gretly amazed, and demaunded of two byrayers that he mette, ledyng of byrayers to the host what was the cause of the exile and wasting of that countre. And they answered hym how that the duke of Orgoule hadde wasted it in suche wyse. Ye frendes sayd Arthur, and I pray you for what cause. They sayd they that wil not we tell you, for we haue nede to sel our byrtable to wyne thereby our sustenance and

## The story of Arthur

and therfore it behoueth vs not to save  
 yll nor to accuse ony per. one, but yf we  
 knowe we may wete of this people  
 that ye se sleynge oure of the countree.  
 Than Arthur demaunded of theym the  
 cause, and they shewed hym howe that  
 the duke of orgoule demaunded in ma-  
 rpage the erles daughter, and how that  
 he caused the erle to be slayne by treason  
 because he wolde not agree to his des-  
 yre, and as now hath besyged the coun-  
 teile in her cyte of brewle and hath wa-  
 kee all the countree. And whan Arthur  
 herde all this he sayd. Sprs god speke  
 and helpe you all. And whan he was ri-  
 den ferre from theym he sayd to Hector  
 his colyn. Colyn how saye you what is  
 best that we shall doo, Spr sayd Hector  
 in the name of god let vs enter into this  
 warre. I allowe it wel sayd Arthur but  
 we wyll not ayde this duke who is in  
 the wronge and hath the better hande.  
 Nay said Hector that is not myn entent  
 let vs ayde them that be within the cy-  
 te, who be in grete Jeopardye, and nye  
 put vnder, wherfore they are in so grete  
 grete fere, and this in my mynde is best  
 for vs to doo, for they ben in the ryght,  
 wherfore god wyll helpe and socour vs.  
 By the good lord sayd Arthur it is wel  
 sayd, and so wyll we do. But how shall  
 we enter in. the cyte syth that this du-  
 ke hath besyged it rounde aboute, well  
 quod Gouverner we muste enter by one  
 waye or other. And thus they rode forch  
 tyll at the laste they espyed the Cyte of  
 Brewle the which was ryght hye and  
 stronge with hygh walles and myghty  
 toures, and rounde aboute the cyte they  
 saw tentes and paupryngs prght and  
 glystetige of standerdes, and streamers  
 watterynge with the wynde and moche  
 people wel arrayed for the warre. Than

sayde Arthur. Frenches this duke dese-  
 mynge hath moche people, I wyll goo  
 and speke with hym or I entre in to the  
 cyte. He saye ryght well sayd Hector, to  
 the entente that ye may hym the better au-  
 oider tyme yf it fortune you to encoun-  
 ter with hym in the felde. So they rode  
 forth streyght vnto the great tent of the  
 dukes, and there they founde hym stan-  
 dyng wythout the sayd tente, commaun-  
 dyng to his Seneschall that the nexte  
 daye betwix he should make assaute to  
 the Cyte with thre hundred halbardes.  
 And with those wordes Arthur and his  
 company lychted of theyr horses, and sa-  
 lewed the duke full goodly. And whan  
 the Duke sawe theym, he prayed theym  
 gretly in his herte, and courteously dyde  
 salewe them agayne. Spr sayde Arthur  
 we are departed from our countrey, for  
 we herde spekyng of this warre that ye  
 haue moued. And Wethre knyghtes of  
 Fraunce wolde gladly serue some noble  
 man, and be retayned to him for his wa-  
 ges. In the name of god sayde the duke,  
 ye be hyder ryghte hertely welcome, and  
 thonghe it be so that I haue people suf-  
 fycient, yet wyll I be ryghte gladd to  
 retayne you all to be of my house, and to  
 haue wages mete and dyrke, hors and  
 harneys, and ali that ye can conquere of  
 youre enemyes shalbe youre owne. Spr  
 sayd Arthur I thanke you, of this ma-  
 ter I shall speke with my company and  
 knowe theyr myndes. But spr I requy-  
 re you agaynst Whome shall we haue to  
 doo. As god be my helpe sayde the Duke  
 agaynst the cyte, wherein there is a lady  
 who hath refused to grue me her dought-  
 er in marpage, wherfore I wyll wyne  
 her by force. Aspr said Arthur, how long  
 hath it bene that ye haue assyged this  
 cyte. Merely sayd the duke it is now more

than a pere, but I will abyde here this  
seuen pere but I will bypne it. Well sit  
sayd Arthur herde ye ony thyng of late  
from this lady wheder she will agre to  
your desyre or not. As in good trowth  
sayd the duke I herde not from them a  
grette season. Well sayd Arthur per-  
adventure this lady repenteth her that  
she hath not fulfilled your wyl, for now  
at the ende she knoweth better her own  
folp than she dyde in the begynnyng  
and ever the longer the better shall she  
know how that her londe is wasted, &  
she may wel se how that she is enclosed  
wyllyn the cyte and wasteth her goodes  
and her people also by all lykelyhod are  
gretely noyed with so longe beyng in a  
maner in pryson, soo all these thynges  
ought to moue her to fulfill your desyre  
sayd the duke it is of a trowth  
all ye say, how be it I thynke there is  
none of her counsaile that sheweth her  
so moche reason, or elles they will not  
shew it her. For sayd she haue sayde  
so moche as ye haue done I will desyre  
and praye you to doo soo moche as to  
shew her as muche as ye haue done to  
me, for ye be as yett indifferēt for ye are  
of neyther partye, therfore ye maye spe-  
ke to her the moze boldly, and if that  
she will nor agree, let her be incertaïne  
I will take her by force and brenne her  
in my spyght. Sayd ye haue ryghte soo to  
do sayd Arthur, and sayd it pleaseth you  
that I shall goo in thys message I am  
ryghte well content to doo. Than Ar-  
thur and his felawshyp mounted vpon  
their hortes and rode towarde the cite  
Than Hector sayd, sayd where is your  
scutcheon of armes on your brest, for ye  
be a good pursuauant. I thinke to fornysh  
well your message. Ye sayd Bour-  
nart this duke hath a riche messenger he

ought to gyue hym good wages for  
they rode forth talkyng and sportyng  
them tyll they came to one of the gates  
of the cite and knocked thereat so longe  
tyll at the last the porter opened a lytle  
wyndowe and there he saw thre knygh-  
tes all armed and well horsed, and he  
maunded of them what they sought.  
Arthur answered and sayd, we be mes-  
sengers, sent from the duke for to speke  
with the lady gouernour of this cite.  
Sayd the porter suffre a lytle space  
and I will go and speke with her, than  
the porter wente to the lady, who was  
as than among her barons and knygh-  
tes and Alyce her saye doughter in her  
company. Than the porter sayd, Madam  
me pleaseth it you to knowe howe that  
theres at the gate thre goodly knygh-  
tes armed the sayest that euer I sawe  
and they saye that they ben messengers  
come to speke with you from the duke,  
therfore loke what it shall please you to  
commaunde me to answer them. Than  
sayd Othes who was colyn germayn to  
the lady sayd, Madame me thynke they  
were well done to let them come in sayd  
they be messengers. In the name of god  
sayd the lady, open the gates to cheym  
& let them enter. Than the porter cou-  
ned agayne to the gate and sufferd the  
to enter. Than when Arthur was with  
in the cyte he sawe grete plence of hel-  
des and spere horte & harnays, knygh-  
tes and squyers, and gret and myghty  
straunge houses full of grete richesse,  
than in his herte he prayed moche this  
cyte. And all the knyghes of the cyte be-  
held these thre knyghes as they rode,  
and saydeche to other, what knyghes  
be these, or from whens cometh they, & some  
answered and sayd how that they could  
not tell, and some sayd they were messen-

## The story of Arthur

gers sente from the duke, but what so  
euer thei be thei are meruaylous sayre  
knightes. And thus thei rode for the  
to the palays, and there lyghted fro their  
horses and wence vp in to the hall, and  
there thei founde the counsell and her  
barony aboute her. Than the counsell  
and her doughter Alyce, and all her ba-  
rons arose against Arthur, and welco-  
med hym and caused him to syt downe  
by her, and the sayre lady Alyce and her  
102, a sye Dthes and Gouvernar. Than  
Arthur said, Madame we be comen hi-  
ther from the duke of orgoule, who de-  
maundeth of you that ye shuld gyue to  
hym in marriage my ladye Alyce your  
doughter, & madame me thinketh that  
diuerse reasons ought for to moue you  
thus to do. fyrste ye ought to consyder  
howe ye shall let her in a ryght hye and  
honourable place. Also ye se wel þe grete  
number of people, & the strength whiche  
he hath, and howe that your londe is  
destroyed and wasted, and al the people  
therof put to exple. Also ye ought for to  
consyder how that ye be locked and en-  
closed here in this cite, and al your no-  
ble knightes & gentylmen are in grete  
peryll of their lyues, and lesch they  
tyme & substance, the whiche is righte  
grete damage vnto them, so madame  
all these chinges, and many other wise  
ly considered, ought for to moue you to  
accomplishe this his desyre, for this  
desyre is but for your honoure, and no  
shame, therfore madame may it please  
you to gyue an answer what is your  
wyl in this behalfe. Sye said the lady  
I wyl geue to you an answer woorthy  
without taking of any other counseyle  
rather than I would geue my dought-  
er to a false murderer and specially to  
hym that by false treason hath slayne

her father, as god helpe me I wolde ra-  
ther suffre to be hient to powder. For  
gladder wolde I be to gyue her to the  
pooresst grome or page in all my house  
than to hym. But sye I requyre you tel  
me wheder ye be any of the knightes re-  
taining with the duke or not. Madame  
sayde Arthur I am not retaining as  
yet with him, nor with none other, for  
I and my compaigne are knightes ex-  
traunces, who haue forsaken our owne  
countreies to seeke aduentures, and by  
fortune we are arryued into this dukes  
hoost, who wolde gladly haue vs retay-  
ned in this his warre against you. Sir  
said the counsell I wote not what ye  
be nor of what lynage or counce ye be  
of, but it semeth to me that ye be ex-  
traught out of some noble house and li-  
gnage. Therfore sye if it wold please  
you to helpe to deliuer vs out of this  
thraldome, and defende vs from our ene-  
mies, I wil giue you my doughter for  
to do with her what it shall please you,  
sauiug her honoure. Ye madame sayde  
Arthur, and is that your mynde wyl  
ye put her into my handes to marrye  
where soeuer it shall please me, and  
to put all your trust into me in that be-  
halfe. Ye sye trulye with all my herce  
sayde the counsell. And how say ye saire  
lady Alyce wyl ye agree to this. Than  
Alyce beheld arthur, & perceiued right  
wel how he was sayre and gracious &  
said. Sye I wyl accomplishe the wyl  
of my moder. Well madame quod Ar-  
thur, than wyl it please you to knowe  
of all your noble barons and knightes  
whether thei wyl accordethat I shall  
haue your noble doughter in marriage,  
or elles for to marrye her where soeuer  
it shall please me. Sye Dthes sayde the  
lady, ye be nere of her lynage, call toge-  
ther

der al my barons and my knyghtes and  
speke with them of this mater to know  
thyng mides. Than they all entred in to  
a grete hall and there they comoned of  
this mater and dyuerse oppynions the-  
re were amonge them, but finally they  
were all agreed and put theyr sayenge  
on syr Wythes, the whiche sayenge they  
all promysed to kepe ferme and stable.  
Than they all came be fore the lady and  
Arthur. And there syr Wythes sayd Ma-  
dame we perceyue it is your wyl to gy-  
ue my lady Alyce your doughter to this  
knyght, ether for hymselfe, or elles to  
gyue her where so euer as it shall please  
hym best. Madame we be all accorded  
vnto your mynde that he shall haue her  
hymselfe, if it pleasech hym in marpage  
or elles to gyue her vnto an other where  
as he thynketh beste, soo that she be not  
thereby abbated of her noblenesse, and es-  
tate. Wherely syr sayde Arthur I shall be-  
stow her in as grete a place and lignage  
or greter than she is of her selfe. Than  
they all answered and sayde. We desyre  
nothyng elles. Well madame sayd Ar-  
thur are ye than agreed a my ladye your  
doughter also. And they answered bothe  
that they were bothe well contente. In  
the name of God sayd Arthur, howe sape  
you all my lordes are ye agreed thereto al-  
so. And thei all answered with one voice  
and sayde. Syr we be ryght well con-  
tente, and promyse you faythfullye, that  
ye shall haue helpe and ayde of vs, and  
of ours to the uttermost of our powers.  
Well syr sayd Arthur I thanke you as  
hertely as I can for your good wyl, and  
as God helpe me, I shall bestowe her in  
suche a place, where as she shall be more  
better content than with the Duke of or-  
goule, who would full gladly haue her,  
therefore saye ladye Alyce come hyder to

me. Than the mayden rose and came to  
hym. And he ryghte louingly toke her in  
his armes and said vnto her. Saye ladye  
Alyce from hence forth ye shall be my  
doughter, my cosyn, and my loue. Co-  
syn Hector aryse and come hyder to me.  
Then Hector came to hym. And Arthur  
sayd to hym, myne own good cosyn Hec-  
tor, I put you in possession of this saye  
mayden. And with grete honoure and  
ioye, I freely gyue her to you, to haue in  
marpage, and all suche rychesse as we  
may gete of the duke of orgoule, if it be  
our fortune for to dyscomfyte hym as I  
trust to god we shall, and I gyue it fre-  
ly vnto you. And as vnto you saye ladye  
Alyce, syth he hath claymed your fader by  
false treason I promyse to you, therfore  
his head for a recompence. Syr said the  
damoyzell, humbly I thanke you of that  
gyfte, for I had rather haue that than to  
be made a Queene. But syr I requyer  
you tell me what is this gentyll man, to  
whych ye haue gyuen me vnto. Mad-  
ame sayd Arthur as god helpe me he is of  
nysse lignage, and of great blode. For I  
ensure you he is sone and heyre vnto the  
erle of Bloys, who is a grete Lord and  
a moche redoubted. And whan that the  
countesse and her doughter, and all her  
lordes herde that they were ryght gladd  
and sayd howe that God hadde bysyded  
them. Than Hector ryght hartely than-  
ked Arthur of hys gyfte of the saye la-  
dye Alyce. And in the same houre  
they were spawncd togyder. And than  
began there a great feest and great ioye  
was made throughtout all the cite. Than  
the tables were set to goo to dner. And  
whan they were set thei were ryghte ry-  
chely serued. And after dner they spor-  
ted them togidre tyl it was time to goo  
to theyr restes. In the nexte morning  
Arthur

## The story of Arthur

Arthur rose betwix his and herde masse, & than wente by to the palays. where he founde all the barons redy apparayled, and there was Hector and Gouvernat & sye Orthes. Than Arthur sayd, fayne lozdes I promysed yesterdave too the duke whan I departed fro hym that I shoulde haue retourned to hym agayne the same nyght to shewe hym the wyll and ement of my lady the countres, therefore I will go now to hym al alone, and shewe hym his answer. For all ye shall abyde here still tyl I come agayne, therefore get me my harneys, & so anone it was broughte to him, and there he armed hym. Than

Hector sayd playnly he would go w hym But Arthur had him neuer speke therof yt he wold haue hys loue and fauour.

¶ Howe that Arthur wente alone to the duke of Orgoule & gaue him his answer & bade him abyde no longer for the fayne Myce. For he shewed hym how y he had giuen her to Hector his cosyn. And how that he had promysed to her hys head by cause he slewe her sader by treason, with the whiche answer the duke was so dyspleased, so muche that there was bitwene them a great batayle, Cap. xxxiii.



han whan Arthur was mounted on his horse, he issued oute of the Citie all alone. Than Hector said to Gouvernat and sye Orthes. freres let vs take

oure harneys, for I fere me lest Arthur shall haue somwhat to do or he com agayne. Ye haue ryghte well sayde quod Gouvernat, and thei armed them, and so dyde all the men of warre y were in the  
Cys

cyte. And whā they were all armed they wente to the battymentes of the walles to behold the demenour of Arthur. Who as than had rode so ferre that he descended fro his horse at the dukes tent. And there he sayd to the duke. Syr verely I answer you how ye nede not to tary here any longer for y saye lady Alce, for certaynely I ensure you I haue gyuen her to my cosyn Hector, and al the lond that belongeth to her boch by fader and mother, therfore sy in saye meanes I requyre you to depart hastily out of this counce. and yf ye wyll not I haue promised to y saye demoysele Alce to redye to her poure heed in recompence because ye slewe her fader by false treason. Than the duke was so sorowful and replete with displeasure for a grete space he coude speke no worde. Than the duke had by hym a cosyn germayne, who sayd to Arthur. Sir knyght ye do grete outrage to demaunde the head of my lord the duke, but by the sayth that I owe vnto hym in the fyrste place that euer I mete you in I shall make hym a present of your heed. Ye sir sayd Arthur, a why wil ye abyde so longe syth ye may do it now yf ye can, wherfore beholde me I am here present, mounte dy hastily on your horse and ye shall soone mete with me. Ye say ryght well sayd the knyght. Get me my harnes, and so armed hym. And Arthur than mounted on hys horse and he espyed wel where there stode before the dukes tent a grete spere the which he toke in his hande, and withdrew hym from the tente to abyde the knight. And so when the knyght was armed he lepte on his horse, a sawe where Arthur was abyding for hym. And Hector as he was vpon the wal of the cyte said to Gouvernar. Syr it semeth my cosyn Ar-

thur shal not come agayne withoute Jureges. Than the knyght ranne to Arthur and he to him, and they mette so rudely that the knyght brake his spere. but Arthur hyt hym so impercouly y the spere heed entred into his herre, wherwith he fell downe dead to the erth. And whan the dukes knyghtes being in theyr tentes sawe him tal downe dead they were sore displeased. And also thys knyght had. v. knyghtes to his brethren in the dukes hooft, and they armed cheym all at ones to renne at Arthur.

How Hector a Gouvernar a sir Othes rode out of the cyte well accompanied to rescowe Arthur, who al alone assailed the duke of Orgoule and all his armye.

Capit. xxxv.

**A**nd whan Hector saw them of the dukes hooft ranne to theyr harnes he sayde vnto Gouvernar, frede let vs issue out shortly, And sy Othes deliuered the chefe standarde of the cyte to syr Aponet his newe we, a so pilled out of the cite in good order a well reinged in battayle. And whan Arthur saw the rosesayd spere knyghtes cominge to himward, he dallye his spertes into his horse a encountered so with the fyrst that he thrust his spere thurgh his body and so he fell downe deade. Than he set his hand to his sword and strake the twyth so the seconde that he claue his head aye to hys chynne. And fro the thyrde he bestrake his holder with the arme, for all toggyder flew into the felde. And whan syr Othes sawe suche meruaylous strokes as he gaue, he sayd. Saynte marie what knyght is this, he is the best of al the world god defende hym from onye

G. I, vilany

## The story of Arthur

bylany, verely hys strokes are greatly to be doubted, for they are ryght heuy. And whan y duke saw his knyghtes so slayne all onely by one man, he was righte soe dyspleased & cried fast to his knyghtes & to harners. Than the moost parte of the hoste woold moued vpon theyr horses and ranne all vpon Arthur by plumpes here & there. And whan Hector saw that he pycked forth his horse as rudely as though y choller had dyscuen hym. And whan sye Dthes saw y he ran so hastily he saide. By my faith it semeth he wyl not recule backe agayne sith he seeketh for his enemyes so hastily. And Hector encountred the fyrst so veruouly y he ran him through out with his spere, and so he fell downe dead, and than he dyed w hys sworde and strake of the head of an other, and layde aboute hym in the thickest of the pyele & gaue such strokes that he slewe knyghtes and draue down horses that it was meruayle to beholde. And whan Arthur saw hym he smiled and sayd. A good companye folowe ryght well after your lygnage. And Gouvernar at hys comyng bet downe all aboute hym what soo euer he atayned to, that it was wonder to beholde. And whan Arthur sawe them, he said. I thought neuer to saye these knyghtes sith they take such payne to rescouer me verely by the grace of god, I wyl be p an d apde them. And by that tyme they were agaynst them many of the dukes knyghtes, and Arthur strake amonge them that the first that he encountred he slawe his bysage downe to hys necke, & layde on so rounde aboute hym that he made to flye into the feilde handes, armes, and heades and heucted sheldes, and vnbarred helmes, and maymed many knyghtes and bette them downe on

euerye syde so that he made all to tremble that were befoze hym, for there was non that abode his stroke withoute death or greuous woundes. Than sye Dthes had grete maruayle of the noblenesse of these knyghtes, and specially of the chyualry of Arthur, and sayd to his newe slye Lyncoln. As god helpe me these knyghtes are able to discomfyte the duke & all his hoste wout ony more helpe, and al this season the countesse and the fayre lady Alyce her daughter were mounted on the wailes of the cyte to beholde the noble dedes of these knyghtes. Than the lady sayde to her daughter Alyce, behold your lord and his companions, I trowe there be noo moore suche in all the world, behold how they dyscuer aonder the grete pyeles, and how the knyghtes flye befoze them for feare, but specially beholde Arthur, who I thynke be cheefe floure of all chyualry, God of his grace hath well prouyded for vs whan he sente them into this countrey. Ryght dere lady a moder sayde Alyce, me thynketh Hector is wel armed and demeneth hymselfe ryght goodly. Well daughter sayd the lady both he please you. Ye verily madame sayde she. Ye haue a good cause dougheer so to be, for among our enemyes he is a good bocher of his handes. And by that tyme the duke hymselfe was come to that scarmyshe accompanied with v. hundred men of warre. And than sye Dthes and all the hoste of the cyte assembled togther and foughte woth the duke, there began a great mortall batayle betwene bothe parties but the dukes company of the cyte & therfore they suffred muche payne in so moche that sye Dthes was overthowen & taken prysoner. And whan that sye Lyncoln

net his newe sawe that, he let fall the  
chefe baner whiche he bare. And whan  
Arthur espyed that, he was neuer so soz  
And came to sy: Lponet and demaund  
ded of hym Why he dyd let fall the baner.  
And he answered and sayde. Sir becau  
se myne vncle sy: Othes was taken pry  
soner. Saint mary sayde arthur defende  
that, but Where is he. As God helpe me  
sy: he is ledde forth in yonder gret pree  
that ye se yonder. Well saide arthur lifte  
bp agayne the baner, for by the grace of  
god he shall be shortly rescowed. Than  
Arthur blessed hym thysward, and  
mette wyth Hector and Gouvernar, and  
sayd. Sy: let vs go rescowe sy: Othes  
who is taken prisoner. Than rusht they  
all in to the pree, and arthur mette so  
wyth the fyrst that he caste hym downe  
to the erth starke dead, & layde so on eue  
ry syde that they made hym a large way  
Where so euer he went. And Hector and  
Gouvernar dyd greatly to be reboubted  
for they made greete plenty of sabels to  
be auoyded, so that all that sawe Arthur  
and his company sayd, these be noo men  
they be frenedes of helle, let vs flee frome  
them, for shame haue he y: sy: brought  
them into this countrey. And whan the  
duke sawe these thre knyghtes do suche  
wonders metuayles in armes and slew  
so greete plenty of his knyghtes, he was  
so soze dyspleased that he was nye ther  
wyth fro him selfe, and therwyth dalyte  
to Hector and strake hym so rudely that  
he perced both his shelde and hys helme  
And whan arthur felte that rude stroke  
he was not wel content and lifte bp his  
swerde and strake the Duke so fyrstlye  
therwyth that the swerde sanke thrygh  
out hauberte, myche, and helme, and en  
tered depe into the fleshe. In the meane  
tyme Arthur came to theym, and there

he sawe the duke & Hector spersly sygh  
tyng togyder. Than Arthur strake the  
duke so soze that the arson of his sabel  
coude not kepe hym but that he wene  
to the groude. Than Gouvernar toke the  
dukes horse and delyuered it to Hector,  
for his owne was soze wounded and ve  
ry sayne for bledynge and so Hector for  
soke his owne and mounted therō haste  
ly. Than the Dukes company came to  
rescove hym, and so there began a soze  
and a terrefle batayle for there was ma  
ny slayne and soze wounded, but final  
ly y: duke with muche payne was resco  
wed and ight soze hurte, bozne he was  
into his tent. Than the night dreyne on  
so that both parties withowte ech fro  
other, the duke and hys company went  
into they: tentes, and Arthur and hys  
felow wyth repayred towarde the Cyte.  
And as they wente they sawe betwene  
the wood and the cyte the dukys Senes  
hall goynge to make assaute to the cyte  
wyth lit. hondred men in harneys. And  
whan sy: Othes perceyued the Senes  
hall, he shewed him to arthur and sayde  
sy: se yonder Where as is sy: Claren  
baulte Seneshall to the duke goynge to  
assayle the. Delyve sayde Arthur me  
thynke hit is very late, yet I wyl ryde  
to hym. A gentyl knight said sy: Othes  
dele not to hardly with hym, for he is a  
good knyght & as gentel as ony lych  
therfore it were grete hurte yf he were  
slayne, and sy: your strokes are very he  
vy, for there is none that can endure the  
therfore sy: for Goddes sake let sy: Hec  
tor sy: encounter hym. Wyth a ryghte  
good wyl sayde Hector, & so he spurred  
his horse & escrepede the Seneshall. And  
whan he hethe hym lyke a good knyght  
he came at Hector and mette so rudely  
that Hector overthrewe hym horse and

## The story of Arthur

man at the fyrst course. Than hys scrup-  
toure ranne to haue rescowed hym, but  
than Arthur and Gouvernar were there  
present and delte amonge theym suche  
aimes that it was wonder to beholde, &  
wyth cleue force Arthur toke sy: Clare-  
bault prisoner, and byde incontynente  
send hym to the cyte vnto the countesse  
who was ryght gladde of suche a pris-  
oner, and caused hym to be vnaimed in  
all haste and made hym to mount vpon  
the wall wyth her for to beholde how her  
knyghtes byde demeaned them selfe amon-  
ge there enemyes, and here sy: Clarembault  
saue how Arthur byde meruayles  
for he claue aloder sheldes, & brake dow-  
ne knyghtes and cut of armes, handes  
and heades Also Hector and Gouvernar  
for they: partes byde meruaylously Well  
so that nothinge endured before them.  
Sayncte marie sayde Clarembaulte to  
the countesse. Madame Where gete you  
these knyghtes, for as god helpe me they  
are the best of all the world, for if ye had  
but these thre knyghtes they were able  
to chase out of your countre the duke and  
all his hoost. Sy: sayd the lady god hath  
puraued me of theym. And finally Ar-  
thur, Hector, Gouvernar, and sy: Othes  
bydde suche meruayles of armes that all  
the dukes company that were wyth sy:  
Clarembaulte were cleue dyscomfited,  
and there Arthur toke .xl. prisoners and  
bydde send them into the cyte, and other  
xl. fledde and ranne to the duke & all the  
menaunt of .iiii. hondred were slayne.  
And whan they were before the duke &  
many of theym soe hurte sayde. A sy: it  
gooth yll wyth you and vs, for sy: Cla-  
rebault poure seneschall is taken pris-  
oner, and .xl. other knyghtes wyth hym, &  
all the remnaunt slayne, sayynge who  
be ryghte yll delte wythall as ye may se.

And the duke demaunded of theym who  
it was that had done that dede. As God  
helpe vs sy: it was thre knyghtes that  
was in y company wyth sy: Othes, but  
we trow they be sendes and none erthes-  
ly men. And whan the duke herd this he  
waxed nye madde for anger, and there  
swore how that he wolde neuer departe  
thens fro spege tyll he had hanged those  
thre knyghtes, and byente the countesse  
and her doughter. Than incontynent he  
sent messengers our to his baylyues pro-  
uostes, and sent for his brother peter the  
cornu, who shortly came to hymwarde  
and brought wyth hym .iiii. hondred men  
of warre, & the Dukes grart courser mai-  
ned assule, & thys horse was suche that  
there was none lyke hym in al the world  
for he was named felatolyke to buryfal  
the horse of Alexander the greute, there  
was none that coude moue on this horse  
but al only the duke and the varlet that  
kepte hym, and both daye and nyght he  
was euertied wyth foure grete chappes  
of yren.

How Arthur, Hector, Gouvernar, & sy:  
Othes dyscomfited Peter y cornu, bro-  
der to the duke who was comen to him  
wyth .iiii. knyghtes, & there this cornu  
was slayne, & all hys people slayne and  
taken prisoners. And how Arthur toke  
the dukes horse named assule, y best horse  
as than of the world. Capit. xxxvi.

**W**han that Arthur had taken sy:  
Clarebault the Dukes seneschall  
and dyscomfited all hys people  
than he entred into the cite, where as the  
people ran to welcome hym & said. God  
kepe the in thy strength and vertus, and  
blessed be the houre that euer thou were  
boyne. So thus he camme to the palays

Where as the coueſſe and her doughter merre hym and demaunded of hym how he dyd. And he ſayde ryght well thanked be good and ſyce toke Hector her lord and unarmed hym. Than Arthur cauſed all ſuche as were hurt of the pyſſoners to be broughte into the palays, and cauſed ſurgens to ſerche theyr woundes, & euerye daye he wolde viſyte them theſe or foure times, wherby he gat him ſuche loue of euerye creature that they promyſed neuer to ſayle him as long as they lyued. Than when Arthur was unarmed, there was in his company Hector, Gouvernar and ſyr Othes. Than Arthur toke ſyr Clarembault by the hande, and ſayd. Syr make good chere, for ye ſhall haue here no hurte yf I may leſſe you therfro, and verely ye ſhall haue here but a good pyſſon. So ſyr ſayde the coueſſe he ſhall haue no hurte here ſith it pleaſe you the contrarye, whereof he thanked them greatly, and all that ſer herde Arthurs wordes praiſed him moche, and loued hym therefore the better. Than they wente to nyght and Arthur and ſyr Clarembault ſate bothe togidre. Thus Arthur and the hole army toſoured ſyll without doinge of anye thyng the ſpace of a moneth, and by that tyme ſuche as were hurt were recouered to helth. And the duke and all his hoost in lyke wyſe laye ſyll, for he abode for more company. So it fortuneth that on a weeneſday Arthur was ryſen beſynges and had herde maſſe, and ſode leanyng in a wyndowe and loked into the dukes hoost for to ſe the demenyng of his enemies, and in his company was Hector Gouvernar, and ſyr Othes and Clarembault. At the laſte Arthur behelde ouer the foreſte and eſpyed where there came moche people in harneys downe from a

grette mountayne, he ſawe ſpyeldes and helmes ſhynne agaynſt the ſonne & ſaw a grette baner waueyng wyth the wynde, and Arthur than ſhewed this to his company. And at the laſte ſyr Clarembault knewe the baner & ſayde. Syr theſe people that yonder cometh, are not for your profyte, for it is Bettr the Count, the dukes brother who is come to helpe hym. Well ſayde Arthur. he is welcome it may fortune he cometh to ſoone, therfor Hector frende. yf we abyde and ſuffre hym to aſſemble his company with the dukes hoost, we ſhall haue chan moche to doo, therefore by my counſayle let vs go wyte with them befoze in this foreſt and let vs ſhewe them what maner of people we be. Syr as God helpe me ſayd ſyr Othes ye haue ryght wel denyed, therfore let vs go arme vs ſpyely. Syr ſayd Arthur cauſe all your people to arme them as pryuelly as they can to cheſent that they without maye knowe nothyng therof, and let vs enter as pryuelly as we can in to this foreſt that we be not eſpyed of them that be comyng, and ſoo ſhall we be in hande wyth them or they be ware, and as he had deuyſed ſo it was ordeyned and done, and ſo rode forth ryghte pryuelly in to this foreſt and there departed theyr companies in buſhmentes tyll at the laſte theyr enemies were amonge them. Than eſpyed ſyr Othes the dukes horſe aſſyle, who was ledde in hand with his keper, and ſhewed him to Arthur and ſayde. Syr beholde yonder is the beſt horſe of all the world. for he was neuer as yet wyte for no labour, for who ſo euer ſpreath on hym can take no hurte, he is ſo myghty and ſtrong. In the name of god ſayd Arthur, the duke hath done ryghte well to kepe hym ſoo well for me ſo longe as

## The story of Arthur

he hath done. for by the sayth that I owe  
to god. I will go seke hym incontynent.  
Then Arthur dressed hym toward the  
battel that ledde the horse and othe to  
ke any hede. Arthur toke hym by the shol-  
ders and cast hym flatte to the grounde,  
than he toke the horse by the byddell and  
lyghlylpyde lepe on hym, than Arthur  
assayed hym in the fildes and foudde hym  
ryght stronge and lyght, wherof he was  
wonderfully gladd, and wolde not forgo  
hym for moche golde and silver, and as  
Arthur thus proued his horse. Peter the  
cousyn the dukes brother espyed hym and  
ranne and strake hym behinde vpon his  
backe o that he was wate. And whan  
Hector sawe that he pyked forth toward  
de hym, and so eche of them ran at other  
and mette so rudely that Peter the cou-  
syn brake his spere, but Hector marked  
hym so well that he put his spere thugh  
dur the body and soo fell downe dede in  
the same place. And whan that Peter the  
cousyns men sawe that they assailed the  
cousyn on all sydes & enclosed hym amonge  
them and wounded so his horse that  
he fell downe vnder hym, but he anone  
lepte vpon his fete and nobly defended  
hym soo that none durst approche nere  
hym, but than they yped cast at hym kny-  
ues and swordes and other wepens and  
soo wounded hym in dyuerse places. At  
the last Gouvernat espyed hym and sayd  
to Arthur. Syr for goddes sake go and  
sokour Hector your cosyn who is nyw at  
a gret myschance. And whan Arthur her-  
de that he spurred his noble horse asyle  
and lepte furth. xv. fote of playne grounde,  
and soo rusht in amonge them that  
were in hande with Hector, and encoun-  
tered so the fyrst that he claued hym downe  
to the chyrrne, and than other he caried  
his heed to his tethe, and made hede

armes, and handes slype into the feldes, &  
ether Wich all the hole company dalyte to  
gyder, wher as there was than a terri-  
ble battelle. At the last Gouvernat gave a  
good hors and broughte hym streyght to  
Hector who moued wyllly theron and  
dalyte in to the pise and there dyd mer-  
uayles of armes, for he confounded all  
that cutt he arrayned vnto. And Arthur  
and Gouvernat did manye ples for they  
parte, and sye Wyche and his compaignye  
were not behynde, but they dyd full nob-  
ly and so spynally Arthur and his com-  
pany bate theym so well that all theyre  
enemyes were dyscomfyred, and there  
were taken prysones beyonde. iiii. score  
the whiche were ledde in to the Cytte of  
Exwile, & many fildes awayne soze woun-  
ded and a gret nombr of theym were  
slayne. And than Arthur and his felow  
Wych retourned to the cytte, and there the  
countesse receyued them ryght conreys-  
ly with grette Joye and triumphe. And  
whan she knewe howe the dukes brother  
was slayne, and asyle the good horse  
wonne, she had grette Joye derof, and  
sayd to Arthur. A swete frende ye ouer-  
come myne enemyes one after another.  
Then sye Claribault was ryght sorow-  
ful when he knewe of the death of sye Pe-  
ter the cosyn, & sayd a duke ye haue had  
but an yll acquayntance with this won-  
but lytle therby, and I sere me ye are ly-  
ke to lese moze. A good Peter the cosyn  
god haue mercy on thy soule. And thus  
he demeaned grette sorowe, and Arthur  
dydde as moche as he coude for to com-  
ferte hym. And suche as were escaped  
from the battelle fledde to the duke and  
shewd him howe that his brother Peter  
the cosyn was slayne, & his men slayne  
and taken, and his good horse asyle ta-  
ken and ledde into the cytte of Exwile.

Wher wyth the duke was so sorowfull  
that he coude not sustayne hym selfe but  
fel downe in a tennace, and whan he re-  
uyned he sayde. A swete brother deryn, ha-  
ue ye bought the sekynge of this Coun-  
tesse lyth ye haue lost your lyfe for her,  
than he commaunded that the body of his  
broder shoulde be sette and caried to the  
cye of oygoule, and so it was done, and  
there he was solempny buried. and the  
duke beweped the dech of his brother the  
space of viii. dayes continually.

Howe that Arthur and his compa-  
ny betterly dyscomitted the duke and  
strake of his head, and dyde sende it  
by Gouvernar to the sayde lady Alce  
and to her mother as he had promysed  
before.

Cap. l. xxiij.



**A**t the ende of. lviij. dayes the  
duke commaunded that all his  
people shoulde be armed and  
ready apparayled to fyghe to  
thentente to make assaure to  
the cye wherat he sayd he wolde be him  
selfe. And whan Arthur he. de all that  
noyle without in the Dukes hoost, a saw

euery man in barneys, heane we rygh-  
well cherch how they entended to assa-  
le the cye. Than he calico to li. h. i. i. o. z.  
Gouvernar and sy. Dichea sayd. Fie-  
des let vs arme vs and al our compans  
and let vs go for to encounter the Duke  
who is comynge to assaile this cye. A  
my lord Arthur sayd sy. Dichea for god  
des sake be well aduysed whar ye do, for  
they be a great myltitud of people, and  
a great part of our men be soze woun-  
ded and as yet not thugly hole, therfore  
sy. by myne aduise we shall not yssue  
out but let vs defende this cye within.  
A sy. sayd Arthur yt god be pleased, we  
will haue none such reproche. therfore  
let vs yssue out, and go into his greace  
woode Jopnyng to the dyche of our  
towne tyll our enemyes be come to the

walles, than let vs assen-  
ble and fyghe wyth them.  
And whan we shall se our  
cyme we maynt ned be w-  
draw vs agayne into this  
cye in the spye of them all.  
Sy. sayd Dichea. I say sy-  
ghe well, soo let it be done.  
Than there was souned a  
greate hoze. a by the noyle  
therof euery man in the cy-  
te ranne to ch. p. hermayes  
suche as was able, and soo  
they all yssued out, and all  
they passed not the nomtre  
of two hondred. And whan

they were yssued out they wente betwe-  
ne the forrest and the dyches so that they  
were not spyed of none of the Dukes  
hoost. And anon Arthur apperayled  
wher they came four hondred haubre-  
des well araped for the warre and. x. iij.  
crossbowes, also he take a meynapous  
grete baner wauerynge wyth the wyne

## The story of Arthur

de, and byde she we it to s<sup>r</sup> Dithes. And whan he sawe it he knewe it ryght well and sayde. Now gentyl knyghtes be myrror, for this baner is pertaynyng to s<sup>r</sup> Gace broder. To my lady the countesse, who is come out of the londe of newcastell to see my lady. well good frende sayd Arthur, ryde on afore & knowe the trouthe whether it be he or not. And than s<sup>r</sup> Dithes rode forthe agreat pace and appoyched nere vnto s<sup>r</sup> Gace, and made a token of peas. And whan they sawe eche other, they put of theyr helmes and made to eche other grete feest and Joye. Than s<sup>r</sup> Gace demaunded how it wente with the warre of hys syster and of the duke, and who as than hadt the better. As god helpe me sayd s<sup>r</sup> Dithes as yet we haue the better and the ouerhande, thank'd be god, and that is by the reason and ayde of thre knyghtes that god Icrowe hath sente vnto vs, for aboue al other knyghtes they are full stryde and myghty and poudre knyght that ye may se s<sup>r</sup>ying on assyle whyche was the dukes good horse is the cheste souerayne knyght of all the worlde, for hys chualer surmounteth all other, for thys is he that one day byd dyscomfyte the duke, and also he hath taken s<sup>r</sup> Larembault prysoner and dyscomfytid all hys route and also hath wonne the dukes horse assyle as ye may se, for he is mounted on hys backe, and that other knyght that is by hym is hys cosyn, and he slewe on a day Deter the sone the dukes broder. Also this knyght that s<sup>r</sup>treth on assyle the good horse hath promysed to my lady your syster and to her daughter the head of the duke by cause he slewe by false treason my lord her husbonde. God & all thyrge formed sayde s<sup>r</sup> Gace geue hym power to accomplishe his p<sup>r</sup>o

uise let vs ryde to them. So than they rode forthe and all his route. And whan Arthur sawe them he offode of his helme and spured forthe assyle his horse and came to s<sup>r</sup> Gace, and eche of other made grete ioye & feast. Than s<sup>r</sup> Gace thanned Arthur ryght hartely of the payne & he hath take in his s<sup>r</sup>lets warres. s<sup>r</sup> sayde Arthur, I truste this day we shall persourne all the matter, for I knowe wel the duke is gone to assyle the c<sup>r</sup>te. therfore me thynketh it were good that he were nobly withstonde, therfore after my mynde let vs departe our company in thre p<sup>r</sup>te, therfore s<sup>r</sup> if it please you ye shall haue in your company my cosyn Hector, Gouvernar, and s<sup>r</sup> Dithes, and ye shall goo along vpon these dyches & so encounter our enemyes face to face, & I and my company shall come in behynde theyr tentes, so that whan ye be in hande with them I will be at theyr backes, wherby ye shall se them so abashed that therby they shall lese the best halfe of theyr hardines. s<sup>r</sup> ye haue ryght well deuysed the mater sayd s<sup>r</sup> Gace, and so they departed eche fro other, & s<sup>r</sup> Gace Hector gouvernar & s<sup>r</sup> Dithes rode forthe togider so couertly & the duke nor none of his knewe nothing therof. And so the duke whan he came to the fortunes of the c<sup>r</sup>te he apparayled him selfe and all his men to begin the assaute & therwith s<sup>r</sup> Gace & his company fel on them frendly. Than Hector spured his horse & encountered the goffer, who was a great offpeer of the dukes and strake hym so rudely that he perced hys herte, and soo he fell downe dead to the earth before the duke than Hector set his hande to his swerde and gaue the duke such a stroke that he was faynt for to stoupe downe vnto the necke of his horse. Than the dukes men

fell on Arthur on all sydes, but he defen-  
ded hym lyke a noble man. Than Go-  
uernar for hys parte bette downe knigh-  
tes on all sydes. And whan syr Gace saw  
hym doo so well he praysed him greatly  
in his herte, than he and all hys compa-  
ny frely ranne vpon the dukes hooft,  
howe be it the dukes company were set  
aboue his, wherfore he endured muche  
payne. And whan Hector sawe that he  
was ryght sorrowfull, and spurred hys  
horse and habandoned hymselfe amonge  
his enemyes, and Gouvernar in lyke  
wyse, who gaue such strokes that he co-  
uld vnder all that euer he attained vnto  
till at the last his horse layed vnderneath  
hym and fell to the grounde, and than  
his enemyes fell vpon hym on all sydes  
but he fought so fyerly that none durst  
approche to hym, for he confounded all  
that euer he attained vnto, and syr Ga-  
ce folowed hym as nere as euer he cou-  
de, but for all that Gouvernar was so  
ouermatched that he was taken prys-  
oner, and x. other knightes pertaynyng  
to the company of syr Gace, and so they  
were ledde toward the dukes tent, and  
at that tyme Arthur was among the ten-  
tes cuttingge of ropes, betyngge downe  
of paylons, and at the laste, he espyed  
Gouvernar where as he was ledde forth  
lyke a prysoner, wherwith Arthur was  
ryght soze displeased, & rushte in amonge  
them, and the fyrst that he encountred  
with he departed lyfe and body asunder  
and he smote the heed from an other, and  
soothen by the helpe of syr Gace they  
brought to deth all those that ledde forth  
syr Gouvernar, and soo remounted hym  
agayne vpon another horse. Than Ar-  
thur strake so in the pyse that he dyaue  
asunder helmes, and frusted to death all  
that euer he touchyd, soo that all fledde

before hym, for there was none whiche  
durst abyde hym without that he wolde  
receyue his deth, and that syr Gace sawe  
ryght well and sayd: A good lorde what  
knyght is this, I thynke there is not his  
pere in all the worlde. Than syr Gace  
and Gouvernar and theyr company lay-  
de on with so grette and so bruy strokes  
that they myght well be haide a grette  
space and the dukes people were soze a-  
frayed whan they perceyued ho they  
were assayled on all partes bothe before  
and behynde and Hector by fortune en-  
countered the duke and strake hym soo  
soze that he strake away a grette pece  
of hys harnys and caused hym to recu-  
le nye to his horse trope, and whan the  
duke felte that stroke, he strake agayne  
Hector so fyerly that he claue his welte  
and perced thugh his harnys but as  
his fortune was it orde not enere into  
the fleshe, and so there was a grette ba-  
tyle betwene them, but the grette pyse  
of bothe parties dyd departe theym, and  
as Arthur went serchinge the gret and  
thynke pyses he founde where syr Gace  
was on fote defendyng hym selfe right  
valyauntly, and Gouvernar was there  
doryng hys payne to rescouer hym, but  
the pyse was so grette that they endured  
moche payne, but Arthur strake yn the  
thynkest amonge them so fyerly that he  
ouertrowe knyghtes by hepas, & orde  
suche noblenesse in armes that it was  
wonder to consyder and so he remoun-  
ted agayne syr Gace yn the spyte of all  
his enemyes. Than the dukes compa-  
ny began to were feble, and whan the  
duke perceyued y he was ryght sorow-  
ful, and so it fortunyd hym to encountre  
with syr Hector, who had bere downe in  
his syghts two of his knyghtes, and they  
with he strake Hector so fyerly that no

## The story of Arthur

With the same stroke he was sore annoyed, but Hector strake hym agayne so verruoussly on the helme þ he strake in to it. iiii. fngers depe and ryght sore wounded him on the head where With he Was brought in to a traunce, & his horse bare hym all aboute he wost not where. And at last he came before the sight of arthur and as sone as he sawe him he wost wel it was the duke, and strake hym so rudely betwene the necke and the heade, that his head fell on his horse necke, and Gouvernar toke and receyued it. Then Arthur sayd. Gouvernar I wyll ye go bere this dukes head to the countesse, and to her doughter Alyce, & shewe them how I do sende it to them in accomplishing of my promys made to them, Spz sayde Gouvernar wth a ryght good wyll, & so departed to the host & entered into the cyte. And anone the tydynges ranne all about the cyte how that Gouvernar had

brought the dukes head to the countesse fro arthur, & so al the people ranne to se the dukes head, and range all the belles in the cyte for ioye of þ byctozp that god had sente them. And whan Gouvernar hadde made his present to the countesse, she receyued it with great ioye & sayd to gouvernar. Spz I thanke hartely this knight for his present, and you for your labour, & for this message I grue you doze my castell for ever. Adamar

Gouvernar, and god wyl I shall not take house nor londe of no creature withoute the consente of my lord Arthur. And whan sy Clarembaulte sawe the heade of the duke bys myster, he made ryghte

greate sorow, and soo entered into his chambze, and there he demened ryghte greate doloure. Then gouvernar retourned agayne to arthur, and thanked hym muche from the countesse and from her doughter. And by that tyme Arthur had done so muche that all the Dukes company Were cleane byscorned as suche people that had no souerayne, wherfore they fledde on all sydes, and Hector and Gouvernar dyd chase them, & so brought many of them to theyr death.

¶ How Arthur and his company wente to the cyte of orgoule for to take it by force, but the Bourgeses thereof broughte vnto hym the keys, and diide vnto hym homage and so dyde all the nobles of that countrey as vnto theyr chefe souerayne lord.

Capit. xxxviii.



**A**d whan the battaile was ended Arthur came vnto syz Gace & sayd. Spz let as god to the tentes of the duke and cause all that we finde there

to be brought into the Cytie & therewith  
 we may paye all oure people for I am  
 sure we shall fynde there ryght grete ry-  
 chesse. In the name of god sayd sir gace  
 so let vs do. And so than euery chynge  
 that was fount there, was brought into  
 the cyte. And than they all entered in to  
 the towne with all their pay. Than all  
 the dwellers in the cite ranne to Arthur  
 and sayd with one voyce, welcome be ye  
 the best knyghte of al the worlde, who  
 hath deliuered vs from our enemyes,  
 therfore god that all chynge hath the four-  
 med encrease to you bothe honour and  
 valure. Than the gates of the cyte wer  
 sette open. euery man to go & come who  
 wold. And whan Arthur was come in  
 to the palays the countesse encountered  
 and embraced hym and kyssed hym and  
 sayd. Sir ye haue deliuered this cyte &  
 erledome fro their enemyes, and haue  
 ryght well reuenged the deeth of my lord  
 de, therfore blessed be y<sup>e</sup> houre that euer  
 ye were bgyne. Than she made greet che-  
 re to syr Gace her broder. And the fayre  
 mayden Alyce made muche of her lord  
 Hector. Than Arthur demaunded for syr  
 Clarembault. Syr sayde the countesse he  
 is in his chymbre, where as he maketh  
 the gretest sorowe of al the worlde for  
 the deeth of the duke his lord. As god hel-  
 pe me sayd Arthur he dothe therein lyke  
 a noble wyse man. I loue hym herfore  
 the better. Than he toke syr Gace by the  
 hande and sayde. Syr let vs goo se and  
 comforte him. So they went and  
 found him weping and makinge greace  
 sorow. Than arthur sayde to hi. A gen-  
 tyl knyght wherfore do ye thus sle your  
 selfe for y<sup>e</sup> duke who was but a fals tra-  
 coure and a shamefull murtherer, ther-  
 fore gentyll frende appeale your minde  
 I requyre you, for as God helpe me ye

shal haue an other Lorde good and true  
 who shall loue you and set you in grete  
 honoure. Than he called to hym Hector  
 and sayd. Good cosyn, kepe chy my here  
 with syr Clarembault and comforte hym  
 and here after thynke on hym, whan ye  
 shal lye in your power so to doo. Than  
 Arthur and all the other wente and vi-  
 armed them, and than they all wente in  
 to the hille, and there Arthur behelde  
 syr Gace whome he lyked ryghte well,  
 for he was a meruailous fayre knyght.  
 Than Hector came thyder and brought  
 with hym syr Clarembault. And whan  
 Arthur sawe hym he cleped and kyssed  
 hym and made to hym ryght grete che-  
 re. Than Arthur toke the countesse aparte  
 and syr Clarembault, and syr Dives, &  
 syr Gace, Hector, and Gouvernar, & sayd  
 to syr Gace. ye be broder here to my las-  
 dy auncle to the fayre Alyce her dought-  
 ter, therfore I wyl ye knowe certaynly  
 that by the free wyll of my lady the coun-  
 tesse here present, and also by the assent  
 of her Doughter, and of all her Barons  
 this fayre lady Alyce ys freely gyuen to  
 my cosyn Hector, how be yt I wyl that  
 ye knowe that he ys a Gentell man, and  
 sone and ayre vnto a ryght myghty and  
 purffaunt lorde the erle of bloys, therfore  
 I shewe you this to knowe your mynde  
 wheder ye wyl agre to this maryage or  
 not. In the name of god sayd syr Gace,  
 yf there were no more in hi but all onely  
 his noble chyualry he is worthy to haue  
 a moche better than she is, & therfore I  
 accorde therto with my herte. well syr  
 saide Arthur syth that ye bee agreed the  
 mater is y<sup>e</sup> better. Syr it is so now this  
 duke hath his reward for his trespass. &  
 ye haue here moche people, and also my  
 lady hath grete plente of men of warre  
 now here yn this cyte, and in the coun

## The story of Arthur

tre aboute, and so wythpoures wyll coine to  
us dayly yf we nede, therfore by myn ad  
uise we shall go in to the dukes countre  
for I wyll conquere all that londe, for I  
haue promysed it to Hector my cosyn, &  
yf yf we nede of ony socour or ayde, I  
promyse you I shall cause to come to us  
a king and .iii. grete cytes with al theyr  
myghtes, so that it wyll be harde to nom  
bre them. Than syr Gace sayd, noble Ar  
thur beholde me here I wyll be the fyrst  
and all that I can make is and shall be  
at your commaundement, and I shall fol  
lowe you with all my herte. And all that  
I can make sayd the countesse shall bee  
redy to attende on my ryght dere sone in  
la we noble Hector your cosyn, & he shall  
haue all my power to folowe your com  
maundement. Adame sayd Arthur I  
thanke you. Than they lefte theyr coun  
seyle and wente to the cite, where as they  
were ryche ly serued. And after mere Ar  
thur dyde byspte all them that were hur  
te. Than Arthur and the countesse and  
all other barons and knyghes wente in  
to the halle, and there Arthur departed  
all suche trespour that was wonne at the  
batayle agens the duke, & gaue to euery  
body so largely yf euery man was ryght  
well content. Than the countesse sent out  
her commaundement to all her subgettes  
suche as myght bere harneys, eyther on  
horsebacke or on fote to come to her in all  
the haste possible. And syr Gace dyde in  
lyke wyse on his parte, and so theyder ca  
me so wythpoures on euery syde, and there  
they all assembled togpyder the mondaye  
before in wydelayne ryde vnder the cyte  
of Wyke. And by that tyme suche as  
were hurte were recouered to helthe, &  
al thyng necessary was redy to仁eue.  
And a moneth after that the duke was  
slayne Arthur and Hector toke leaue of

the countesse and of Alice her doughter  
and commaunded that all the hoost should  
take the next way to the cyte of Orgoule.  
And than Arthur mustred his people,  
and found how there were two, .viii. hors  
men and .viii. hondred on fote, so they  
rode forth toward the countre of Orgoule.  
But whan the gentylmen of that coun  
tre vnderstode howe that Arthur came  
on them with baners displayed, & sawe  
well howe they had no capayne, syne  
the Duke and his byetherne and colyns  
were all slayne at the spege of Wyke,  
and they knewe well howe Arthur had  
don: al this. Than they assembled them  
togpyder in the cyte of Orgoule and there  
toke counseyle what they might best do.  
At the last they concludid and said how  
that they were werpand hurte and lost  
all that euer they had in the last batall  
of Wyke bothe theyr goodes, their fa  
ders, thei sonnes, theyr newwes, theyr  
frendes, and all theyr lpygnage, and ther  
fore they sayd they hadde losse ynough,  
wherfore they were of purpose to for  
parde no fender, and fynally concluded  
not to defende theyr countre fro Arthur  
but vnto to pelde all vnto hi for they  
sayd they knewe well though they wold  
they were not of that power to resist a  
gens his noble chualty. And of this ac  
corde was al the bourgeois of the cyte  
and so by comyn accorde they sente cer  
tayne messengers vnto Arthur desiryn  
ge hym if it were his wyll that he shold  
doo noo hurte to theyr countre for they  
were in mynde to pelde all to hym, and  
to receyue him as theyr chefe lord. And  
whan Arthur herde that he was right  
forfull and commaunded incontynent  
thryghout al his hoost yf no man vpon  
payne of death be so hardy to hurte any  
creature of that countre. And so longe

they rode yll at the laste they arrived at  
the cite of Digoule. And all the gentyll  
men of that cite burgeyses & other whā  
they perceyved that he was nere to the  
cite they all yssued out unarmed and re-  
ceyved hym with great Joye, and yeldd  
to hym the keys of the cite, & gaue hym  
full possession of all the countrey. Than  
all the host lodged withoute, Arthur  
and a certayne with hym entered into the  
cite, and so remayned there thre dayes.

Howe Arthur made his cosyn Hector  
duke of Digoule by the assente of all the  
lordes of that countrey. Cap. xxxix.



Then arthur called before hym  
all the Lordes and Barons of  
that realme and sayde. Syr  
ye haue rendred here to me  
this cite and all the hole coun-  
tre, therefore it is right and necessite that  
ye haue a lorde and gouernour ouer you  
there. o: I wyl gyue you one I ensue  
you ryght ppyssant bothe of hauoye &  
of frendes, who is Hector here my dere  
cosyn, therefore make hym Duke of all  
this countrey, and I wyl ye do hym ho-  
mage, and sy: Clarembault I wyl that  
ye begyn sy:ste, and here I releas you of  
your ppysonynge. Merely sy: sayde he I  
am ryghte well content so to do syth my  
lorde is dead and hauynge none cryes to  
Whome his londe shoulde succede, and so  
he rose and dydde homage to Hector, and  
after hym so dyd all other, and toke hym  
for theyr duke & souerayne lorde. Than  
Arthur sent to Brewele for the countesse  
and Alyce her doughter contentent that  
Hector and she shoulde be maryed toge-  
der within the cite of Digoule, & Whan  
she was come the maryage was made  
bytwene them with great triumphe and

ioye the whiche endured. xv. dayes, and  
at the ende of the xv. dayes all the hoste  
departed euery man into his owne coun-  
tre. And than Arthur called to hym  
sy: 101, sy: Gace, sy: Clarembault, sy: Othes  
and Gouenar and sayd. Sy: Gace be-  
holde hereditour Hector my cosyn, who  
hath wedded your nece, therefore oughte  
ye to loue him fro hys souerayn. And ye sy:  
Othes he is your cosyn, therefore I be-  
sech you loue Hector, & bere to him faith-  
full trouthe, & if so be his people happen  
to rebell agaynst hym for ouer & helpe him  
for now fro hens forwarde ye are bothe  
thereto. And cosyn Hector if ony warre  
fall vnto you sende for me into the coun-  
tre of Scycolours wheter I am purposed  
to goo, and I shall incontynent come to  
you. And sy: Clarembault I put my co-  
syn Hector into your handes, therfore I  
desyre you kepe to hym your faith and  
trouthe as ye haue p:myssed, and you shal  
loue you & put his chere truste alwayes  
in your wysdome. Sy: I shall sayd sy:  
Clarembault bere to hym faithful ay-  
sauce and loue as to my souerayne lord  
and so be dydde euery after, for he was a  
true knyght. Than Arthur sayd to Hector,  
cosyn dele xpsely amonge your lordes  
and subiectes, and than shall ye doo  
ryght wel, and now to god I commend  
you And whā Hector herde that he sayde  
sy: God not displeased there is neyther  
londe nor wyfe shal holde me but I wil  
go with you ye shall not do so sayde Ar-  
thur, herfore kepe well your londe, and  
acquaynt you with your barons & whā  
I retourne agayne I wyl come by you  
And so arthur toke leue of the countesse  
and of Alyce her doughter duchesse of or-  
goule, and of al other knyghtes who of-  
fered to goo with hym, but in no wyse he  
wolde none, and so toke with hym dug  
H.

## The story of Arthur

all onely Gouvernar. Jaker and Bawd-  
Wyn, and duke Hector; & sye Gace & ma-  
ny other conuayed hym. ii. dayes on hys  
Journay, than Arthur toke leue of them  
and they returned ryght so; owfull so;  
his departynge & went to Orgoule wher  
of Hector was than duke, & erle of Breu-  
le by his wyfe, & he demeried him selfe so  
nobly that he gate the loue of all his loz-  
des, & kepte his londe in grete peas and  
tranquylite, & greute loue there was by  
twene hym and the saye lady Alce hys  
wyfe. Now let vs leue to speke of He-  
ctor; til another season, & let vs speake of  
Arthur.

Howe that Arthur & Gouvernar depar-  
ted asonder, and of the terryble aduen-  
tures that eche of theym founde o; they  
mette agayne. Cap. xl.

**W**hen Arthur was thus departed  
fro Hector hys cosyn, who was  
as than duke o; Orgoule, he and  
his company rode so longe tyll they had  
passed in my stron ge countres right wil-  
de and sauage, & amonge other they pass  
the londe of constantinoble, & of armice.  
And at last entred in amonge the greute  
mountaynes the whiche were byt wene  
the empyre of ynde the more and the re-  
almie of So;loys, there they arpued in  
to a moche sauage & wyde place where  
as there wote many grete wyde bestes  
of byuers kyndes, & the laste they yllued  
out of that forrest and entred into a saye  
grene meadowe, where as they saw stan-  
dyng a great tour. & thyder they wente  
and founde a pong squer who was lord  
of that place: who receyued them that  
pyght and made them ryght good chere  
& after souper they stode in a Wyndowe  
than the squer demaunded of Arthur

Wheder he was gorynge. I wyll goe euer  
so;warde sayd Arthur tyll I se my tyme  
to retourne agayne. Sye sayde the squier  
I demaunded it of you so; none yll, sye  
beholde ponder before you wher as the  
lyeth a forked waye, the pathe that lieth  
on the ryght hande is moztall, so; there  
is none that entereth into that waye but  
shortely he receyued death, & I knowe  
wel, so; as yet there was neuer none  
euer wente that waye I retourned agay-  
ne, & sye as so; the other waye that lyeth  
on the lyfte hande is good ynoughe, and  
withoute Jeopardye, so; that is the redy  
passage in to the countre of ynde the more.  
Than arthur demaunded of hym what  
was the cause that the other way was so  
moztall and Jeopardous. Sye sayde the  
squier I can not tell you the trowth, but  
as it is sayd it is the waye to a castel the  
whiche is so stron ge and aduenturous,  
that none scapeth there wout deth, how  
beit, it is sayd that a knyght shall at the  
last achue it & so; doo all the aduentures  
of that place, the whiche are ryght grete  
and metuapulous, but it is thought that  
knyght is not yet borne. sye I wote not  
what I shoulde say, but I know wel that  
all such as hath gone thyder neuer ca-  
me agayne, wherfore I know wel that  
they be all dead, and this sayde stronge  
castell is named the nyre nyre. Wele  
good frende sayde Arthur, is there none  
other passage to this castell but by this  
Jeopardous Waye. Yes sye sayd I squier  
so; this grete waye that ye se on the lyfte  
hande, the whiche goeth to ynde the mo-  
re, and whan ye come thyder than there  
is another waye the whiche wyll byrys  
ge rou streyght to the castel of blaunche  
floure, and from thens ye shall haue a re-  
dy passage to the cyte of argence, & than  
whan ye be there euerpe man can the we

you chere way to the castell of the po-  
re nore, but I will way somer a  
man goa rhyde he neuer cometh agay  
ne well shyde arthur all must be as god  
will haue it. And therwith he called go-  
uernar and sayd. frende it is conuenient  
now that we departe asoder. for ye shal  
go the waye thurgh pnder the moze, and  
so repaize the nyse waye that ye can to  
the porte nore, & I will go by the way  
charlyeth on the right hand all onely sa-  
uyng I will haue with me Bawdewyn  
and ye shal haue with you Jaker, chan  
Gouernar and said. Syr and god wil ye  
shal not go to your dechward, but & ye  
nye I will in lyke wyse suffre dechth  
you. And sayd the squyer for Gods sa-  
ke go ye not that way, noz thinke it not  
for it is a grene folp, for Jenture you ye  
shal dye or ye shal obtaine to passe thurgh  
that passage. for there is as it is sayde a  
fell gryffon gretely to be rebouted that  
kepeth wythe an egle of golde. And whā  
arthur herd spekyng of the egle of gol-  
de and of the gryffon he remembred his  
bysson that he had or he went out of his  
owne countre, wherfore there was none  
that coude tourne his purpose, yet Go-  
uernar dyd as moche as he coude for to  
change his mynde but fynally he sayd  
frende Gouernar if ye loue me speke no  
moze of the matter, for as I haue deuy-  
sed so shall it be wythout fayle. And whā  
Gouernar herd that he was in his min-  
de righte sore displeased and sayde. Syr  
I haue noutfled and serued you sythe  
the begynnyng of youre tender yowthe,  
and wil ye than defenue me now from  
your company, also I haue for your sa-  
ke lost myn owne countre, & all my fren-  
des, sy; in good treuth ye dele wyth me  
tygher hardy and ye do as ye saye. howe  
shal I retourne agayne to my lord your

fader yf ye dye in this aduerture, certayn-  
ly nay for I will neuer retourne home  
agayne for all þe golde of the world, but  
I shal lea my seife yf I may know any  
other wyse of you than good. Well sayd  
arthur speke no moze therof, for I will  
yf it shal be thus. And whā Gouernar  
perceyued þe his mind was so treuenly  
fxyed he durste moue him no moze of the  
mater for fere of his dyspleasure, and so  
as for þe nyght they went to theyr restes  
and in the moynnyng earlye lepte on theyr  
horses & so departed, & þe squyer brough-  
t them parte of theyr waye, & then beque-  
thed them to god, & so retourned agayne;  
and chan arthurs sayde forzed waye ar-  
thur and Bawdewyn departed fro Go-  
uernar and Jaker and toke the way on  
the ryght hande, and Gouernar and Ja-  
ker rode forth the waye on the lyfte han-  
de. Nowe as for a reason let vs leue ar-  
thur ridyng forth on his good horse as  
fyle and Bawdewyn with him, and let vs  
a while speke of Gouernar & Jaker.

How gouernar after that he was de-  
parted fro arthur found in a grene for-  
est two knyghtes armed who had been  
and wounded an other knyght and wol-  
de hane rauyshed his spier, and howe  
he rescued her and dydde vanquyshe  
all her enemyes. Capit. xli

**G**ouernar after he was depar-  
ted fro arthur rode .ii. dayes  
without fynding of any ad-  
uerture & on the thirde daye  
he entred into a grete forest. by the tyme  
that he had ryden two leges he founde a  
knyght lyeng on the erach, & one of his  
handes styken of, & sore wounded in the  
backe & greynge tyght ppreously. And  
whā Gouernar sawe hym he demaund-  
ed.

## The story of Arthur

hed what he myght and who had so hurte hym. A knyght sayd he thus hath arayed me two armed knyghtes who are bether ne and it is now but a yere passe syn they slewe my fader and my broder by false treason because of a syster of myn & they wolde haue had by force, and as now I was conueyng her to her vnckles place where as she hath bene euer syn the birth of her father, & I had thought now to haue brought her to my place, but syn these .ii. knyghtes unhappely had knowledge thereof, and so lay in wayte for me and for her, and so thus as yese they haue arayed me, for they were armed, and I was without harnys, and also they haue lede awaye my syster to thence to defoule her byrgynite, whereof I am more sorowfull than of myne owne hurte therfore gentyll knyghte I requyre you yf ye may kepe her from bylanyng do it for goddes sake. Whiche waye are they gon sayd Gouvernar and how ferre by lykely hode are they past. Syn sayd the knyght they are ryden ponder way & are not as yett past the mountenaunce of a lege. Jaker good frende sayd Gouvernar stop the woundes of this knyght and tary here syl with him tyl I come agayne to you, and so rode forth as fast as he coude tyl at the laste he espyed them in a fayre valley, & herde well the damoyzell how she cryed for helpe and made grete lamentacyon, for one of the knyghtes helde her to the entent to haue had his pleasure of her, and whan Gouvernar herde the crye so he sayd. A false knyghte I charge the touche her not, for I wyl defend her in the dede of her broder, than one of these knyghtes lepte on his horse, & wpychouce speking of ony word ran speelly at Gouvernar & brake his spere, but Gouvernar hit hym so egerly wth his dallyng spere in

to his body more than a fote, & so he fell downe dead. & wha the other knyght helde the damoyzell saw his broder slayne & perceyued wel that Gouvernar was cominge toward him wyth his sword drawn in his hand, he had than so grete fere & he kneeled down to the erth and cryed him mercy. Certaynly said gouvernar thou geist no mercy, but as this damoyzell wyl commaunde so shal it be that syn sayd the damoyzell he shal lose his hed, for he slewe my fader, & as they thus talhed togider there came to them the wounded knyght & Jaker with him, than this knyght sayd vnto gouvernar. A gentyll knyght I requyre you geue me this fals knyght a traitour & murtherer who hath slayne my fader & my broder & hath mapmed me. Take him to you sayde Gouvernar, for it pleseth me ryght well. Than the wounded knyght sayd to his seruautes, who as than were come to hym to his own hous I charge you take this traitour & lede hym to my coure, & there I shal do rightfull iudgemente on hym. Than Gouvernar toke leue of them & commaunded them to god. And the wounded knyght wolde sayne haue had him to haue taryed all that nyght with him in his hous, but in no wyse he coude make hym to abyde, but so they departed eche from other, and the wounded knyght wente to his owne place, and there wydde right full iudgemente on his prysoner accordyng to his deservynge.

How that Gouvernar came to a strong castell called the brylle, & banquyshed the knyght that kepte it. And howe that afterwarde he was kepte in that castell agensst his wyl in grete daunger of death tyl at the last Arthur deliuered him as ye shal here hereafter. Ca. xlii.



Thus whan Gouvernar was departed from the wounded knyght & fro the damoyzell he rode forth the same daye so longe tyll it was full none than he yssued out of the wyld forest & founde a fayre middowe and sawe before hym a merueylous fayre castell, rounde aboute & whiche he well perceyued how that there were pyght frethe tentes and goodly pauplyons, and also he sawe many bright helmes shynynge agaynst the sonne, also he well behelde how & there was pyght in the myddes of the felde a grete petron wheron there was hangynge a riche and a goodly shelde than Gouvernar rested hymselfe a good space to regarde al these forsayde thynges. And whā the knyghtes that were within the tentes and pauplyons sawe hym so standynge in a muse, a, xii. of them well armed moued on theyr hores and wente to hym where as he stode & right goodly dyd saluce hym and sayde. Sir it beho- ueth you to rendre your treuge the whiche is due & accustomed to be had in this place. wherfor sayde Gouvernar & what is that. Syr said they ther is no knight that passeth by this place but oz that he departe he must strike at this fayre shelde and also must Just agaynst him that is owner therof and syr the maner is suche of this place that yf the knight with in ouercome him withoute, than he that is so ouercomen shall lese his horse and his harnays, and shall be led on fote to the iuge lymyted for this case, who shall cause to be openlye proclaimed and to be sayde, behold the knyghte that is bayn- quished, & yf the knyght straunger ouer- come him that is within than it shall be done by hym as we haue deuyd to you here before, & than the knyghte straunger

that so hath ouercome hym shall be lord of this castell, and of the sayre larp that is within it and than all we shall be his seruauntes to loue and to kepe hym ag our thes lord. In the name of god sayd Gouvernar this sayde Justyce I wyl not refuse, but as for the signozys of this ca- stel and the abidynge therein I relese fre ly yf god sende me the vyctory. Than all those that were in the pauplyons moun- ted on theyr hores all armed, who were twel to the nombze of two hundred, and al thei came aboute Gouvernar and said Sir ye must Juste at this shelde. Than Gouvernar spurred his horse & gaue the shelde such a stroke that it myght well be herde a grete dyssaunce of, and ther- with the knyght within the castell yssued out al armed, and whā Gouvernar sawe hym come they ranne ech at other, and the knyght gaue Gouvernar a grete stro- ke and brake his spere, but Gouvernar strake hym soo rudely that he bare hym to the erth ouer his horse sayle and brus- sed soze with the fall his lyfte arme, so that he coude not remounte agayne on his horse without helpe, & whan all the other knyghtes sawe that they toke and bnamed hym, and ledde hym forth on fote to a cyte there by, and there he was rendred to the Justyce, and incontynent it was proclaimed throughout al the stre- tes in the towne, behold here the knyght that is vanquished. And so than they toke Gouvernar and brought him with grete ioye into the castell, and than there encountred hym a fayre Damoyzell, who was lady of the castell, who sayd. Syr ye be welcome to this place, and I requyre you be nothyng dysmayed, for syr here shall you be serued and be plo- ued as thes lord of all this place and syr one thyng I ensure you ye shall be

in as good surety of your body as euert  
I shall be of myn owne body; but sye ye  
must abyde still wyth me here the space  
of two yeres, wythoute soo be that an o-  
ther knyghte ouercome you, as ye haue  
done hym whiche was lord here laste.  
A fayre lady sayd Gouvernar yf god wyll  
I shall not abyde here the space of tyeue  
dayes. Well sye sayde the lady it wyll be  
none other wyse, ther oye be content ther-  
wyth. Well madame sayde Gouvernar my  
trust is better. But for al that it was not  
accoydinge to his wyll, for as soone as  
he was entered into the castell, the byp-  
oges were drawen by and kepte wyth. xl.  
knyghtes, to the intent that he shoulde not  
escape, but alwayes he was serued ry-  
chely wyth many goodly squyers, who  
byd nothing elles but pleasauntely ser-  
ued hym alwayes, but for all that they  
coude doo, in no wyse they coude please  
hym, for he myght not goo seke for hys  
lord Arthur, how be it he wolde not for  
wyme suffer any other knyght to bayn-  
quish hym, yet many knyghtes came  
thyder, but euert he ouercame them all.  
Thus Gouvernar abode there a long spa-  
ce, tyll at the last Arthur deliuered hym  
Now let vs lene to speke of Gouvernar, &  
gourne agayne to Arthur.

How that Arthur conquered the ca-  
stell of the porte noye by his prowes  
and slewe all them that kepte it, and  
how after that he entered into the hal-  
les of the palays, wher he was assay-  
led of two grete and horrible Lyons  
and of a grete graunt, & how he ouer-  
came them all wyth grete payne, and  
achieved all the meruailous aduen-  
tures of the castell the which are right  
monderous to reherse. Cap. xlii.

When that Arthur was departed  
fro Gouvernar he toke the waye  
on the righte hande, and so rode  
forth. iij. dayes without landinge of ony  
adventure or ony maner of hous or place  
how be it by the counseyle of his host he  
toke wyth hym sustenance for hym selfe  
and for his horse for the space of thre or  
four dayes, and thus he passed by many  
vales and monntaynes, so that he had  
his horse were right wey, & on y fourth  
daye he founde an hydcous ryuer depe &  
perfound, the banks were so hye fro the  
water y he coude not se it ren, y whiche  
water roied and brayed & ran so wyf-  
ly that none myghte passe woute drow-  
ning, and in certayne places it was full  
of grete and myghty rocks, the whiche  
were of suche heygth, that fro the valey  
byneth the toppe of them myght vnc-  
thes be seene, the whiche rocks were so  
full of vermy, that all the ryuer thereby  
stank abhominably. At the last Arthur  
founde a lytle way alonge by the ryue. &  
spede on the lyfte hande, in the whiche he  
rode so long tyl it was hie none, & than  
he spied a lytel streyght waye bryd-  
le wo mountaynes the whiche were of a  
meruailous heygth, than he founde a ly-  
tell natow brydge ouer this ryuer the  
whiche w moche payne he passed ouer,  
than he entered in to a streyght causwaye  
made of stone wher he rode forth, and on  
euery hāde of hym all was but grete ma-  
rshes and foule springe waters, the  
whiche waye brought hym streyght vnto  
the porte noye, the whiche was the  
strongest castell of all the worlde, and so  
whan he came to the brydge & gate ther-  
of, there he founde. xii. knyghtes all ar-  
med on hors backe by at the one ende of  
the brydge, and. v. at the other ende and  
At the gate there were. xii. other knygh

tes on fote holdyng hatches and mafes  
of stele in theyr handes to the intent to  
kepe that none shoulde entre in to the ca-  
stell & about on the battayles & bowle-  
werkes there stode men of warre with  
crof bowes and other wapens to defend  
the place. And at this season in the most  
perpillous was master Steuen clerke  
to the ladye Florence brought vnto the  
myghty kynge of Morolops emendus  
who had lien there nye the space of a ye-  
re to abyde the compynge of that knyght  
that shoulde achue al the aduentures of  
that castel and in his company was the  
costable & kepte the palayes & halles w-  
out the castel of the porte noyre, & than  
master Steuen knewe by his boxes &  
conynge of astronomy that þe knyght  
shoulde come the same daye, therfore he &  
his company mounted on the walles of  
the palays to se how the knyght shoulde  
do that was as they come to gate þe of the  
castel of the porte noyre. And when the  
first of knyghtes sawe Arthur they to-  
ke theyr sheldes & speeres. Than Arthur  
sayd to Balowyn frende I haue nede  
now to take good hede therfore tary pou  
here without, & let me alone with them,  
Than these vii knyghtes ran all at ones  
en Arthur on the byrde and strake him  
with speeres & swordes, but for all that  
he felte no hurte, but he encountered soo  
wiche the firste that his spere dyd glyde  
thruogh his body, & so he fell downe dead  
and the spere brenke, and with the cron-  
che thereof he strake the seconde so cur-  
rely that he ouerthrewe both horse and  
man & fell be the byrde into the wa-  
ter, and when he had thought to haue re-  
leued him selfe agayne out of the water  
than Balowyn cast him downe agay-  
ne into the riuier, so there he was drow-  
ned, than Balowyn toke his spere and

brought to Arthur, where with he strake  
an other knyght so rudely that the heade  
of the spere perced his herte and so fell  
downe dead, & when the xii. other knygh-  
tes saw þe theyr xii. felowes were slayne  
they fledde backe agayne ouer the byrde  
and went to theyr felawes at the byrde  
fote, & Arthur folowed them & his swer-  
de in his hande, & strake one of them that  
he claued hym to the holdys, than al the  
remenaunt ran at ones at him, but he de-  
fended hym selfe valyauntly as he that  
nood thyng feared, for such was his ma-  
ner, the more he hadde to do, the greater  
grew his strength and courage, & so he  
put hym selfe betwene them and the ga-  
te, because of them that were on the wal-  
les, for they dyd hym muche trouble and  
assayled hym on all sydes, & eueryght  
noblye he defended hym selfe and gaue  
such strokes that he made to flye into the  
felow heades armes and handes, & who  
so euery he felled to the erth, neuer rose a-  
gayne, for Balowyn toke them by the  
legges & dyd caste them ouer the byrde  
downe into the riuier, when in they were  
drowned, than Arthur begane to chase  
and was angry, and layde on soo faste  
rounde about hym that finally he slewe  
them all saue who, who stode in at the  
gate and thought so for to haue escaped  
But Arthur hasted hym soo faste after  
theym, that he strake of one of theyr hea-  
des, and as the other couped to haue en-  
tered in at the gate Arthur strake hym so  
fiersly on the backe that he claued hym  
nye a sonder, than they that were on the  
boullewerkes & on the walles dyd caste  
at hym many grete stones and other we-  
pens, but they coude do hym none hurte  
because that he was so nere to the gate  
Than wyl a the other xii. knyghtes whi-  
che were in fore within the gate sawe  
the

## The story of Arthur

the dyscomfytur of the. xii. felowes that were on horsbacke done al onely by one man, they were ryght sorowful and so ran out all at ones at hym with grete hatches in theyr handes & whan arthur sawe them he fered gretly all le his good horse, therfore he alpyghed & deliuered hym to Bawdewyn & badde hym go wpe hym wythout the byge fore, than arthur encountered so with the fyrst that he made his head to flye in to the feld, and the seconde he gaue suche a stroke that he claue his head nye to the teth. And whan mayster Streue who was on the walles of the palays sawe the noble prowes of Arthur & the great strokes that he gaue sayd to his company, verely behold yonder is the noblest knyght of the Worlde, it is he that shall achewe the adventures of this place, it is the same knyght that we haue tarped here for so longe, & euer Arthur fyrstly fought amonge this people and bette them downe one after another, and among them there was one so grete & bygas though he had bene a graunt, who ran at Arthur, & or he was ware toke hym by the legges and pulled hym so fyrstly that they fell downe both togidre to the erth but Arthur fel vnder nerth the grete churle, and than one of þ orther knyghtes whā he sawe Arthur lye on the erth he lyste vp his axe & thoughte to haue striken Arthur on the hed but in chet hurte linge to gide the stroke lyght on the grete deupill, so that hys hugged and soule heed flew to the earth. Than Arthur lepte on his fete and sayde. Syr I thanke thee, for thou haste deliuered me fro n muche payne and I opardye, and syth thou hast deliuered me of this grete soule dwelne I wil paye the anone the wages, and therewith lyste vppe his sword and gaue him suche a stroke that

he claue his head asonder, than Arthur abandoned hym selfe amonge the remenant so fyrstly that he made grear plenty of helmes and armes to sal to the grof and to make shorte processe he dydde so moche that none of the. xii. were left on lue but al were slayne and chysened in the water by Bawdewyn, for he was to theyr a good god fader. Than Arthur slepte in at the wycket of the gate than al those that were on the walles did shote and caste at hym, & euer he bare of wyth his shelde as well as he myght tyl at the laste he came to them, and the fyrste that he mette wyth loste his lyfe, & there dyde such meruayles that it was wounder to thynke thereof, for some he threwe ouer the walles, and some lepte into the water so that ynally they were slayne & browened, & none left on lue in all the castell that he coude find or here, & Bawdewyn was right sore trauayled wyth castynge of them into the water that were slayne. Than Arthur sayde to, Bawdewyn, stende I will go entre into the grete palays of adventures, the which he sawe before hym in the castel, therfore Bawdewyn I will þ ye abyde me here in this court, & kepe well my horse asyle tyl I come agayne to you. Syr said Bawdewyn for goddes sake put not your selfe noo more in ony place where as ye thynke is ony grear peryll. Well said Arthur, care not for þ, but I praye you do as I say, & lokeno wyse ye come to me wythout I cal you, thā Arthur mooued by certane greces to entre into the hall of the palays þ which was þ war to þ mount peryllous and there he found the moost fayre hous that euer was sene, sette all aboute with ymages of fyne gode, & the wyddowes were all of fyne ambre, wyth many byclete Wyndowes, and out of this hall he

entred in to a chambze the moſte rycheſt  
 that euer was ſeen. for ſyth god firſt ma-  
 de mankynde there was no maner of hy-  
 ſtoze nor bataille but in that chambze it  
 was portrayed with golde and aſure, &  
 other freſhe coloures ſo quykely ſour-  
 ned that it was wonder to behold, there  
 was portrayed how god dyde create the  
 ſonne and the mone, & in the roſe were  
 al the vii. planettes wrought with ſyne  
 golde and ſyluer, and all the ſynaſpous  
 of the heuens wherein were pyght many  
 carbuncles & other precyous ſtones, the  
 whiche dyde caſt grete clerenes bothe by  
 daye and by nyght, to ſaye the trouthe it  
 was the moſt rycheſt chambze and the  
 wonderfullſt that euer was ſeen in all  
 the worlde. Proſerpyne quene of the ſayr  
 ry caused it thus to be made. Alſo there  
 were dyuerſe beddes wonderfull ryche,  
 but ſpecyally one the whiche ſtoode in the  
 myddes of the chambze ſurmounted in  
 beaute all other, for yvorie braſſes ther-  
 of were of grene Jaſper with grete bar-  
 res of golde ſet full of precyous ſtones  
 and the crāpons were of ſyne ſyluer en-  
 bordered with golde, the poſtes of puerp  
 with pomelles of corall, and the ſtaues  
 cloſed in bokeram couered with cryme-  
 ſyn ſatyn & ſheres of ſylke with a ryche  
 couerynge of ermyns, and other clothes  
 of cloth of golde, and foure ſquare pyllo-  
 wes wrought amonge the ſarasyms, the  
 curtaynes were of grene ſendall byzoned  
 with golde & aſure, and rounde aboure  
 this bedde there laye on the four carpet-  
 tes of ſylke poynted & embrowdyed with  
 pinages of golde, & all the foure corners  
 of this bedde there were foure condytes  
 meruaploſſy wrought by ſubtyll entay-  
 le, out of the whiche there pſued ſo ſweet  
 an odour & ſo delectable p al other ſweet-  
 neſſe of the worlde were as no thyng to

the regarde therof, & at the head of thys  
 bedde there ſtoode an ymage of golde and  
 had in hys lyfte hande a bowe of puerp  
 and in his right hande an arrowe of ſyne  
 ſyluer, in the myddes of his bzelt there  
 were lettres that ſayd thus. Whan thys  
 ymage ſhoreth than all this palais ſhall  
 tourne like a whele, & than who ſo euer  
 lyeth in this bedde ſhall dye, without it  
 be that knyghte to whome this bedde is  
 deſtenped vnto. And whan Arthur ſaw  
 the nobleneſſe of thys chambze, and ſpe-  
 cially of this bedde he had great pleaſu-  
 re to behold it and ſayd to him ſelfe how  
 that at all aduentures he wolde lye downe  
 on the bedde, and not to ferre for anye  
 drede of death, & as he was lyeng downe  
 on this bedde he eſpyed in euerie corner  
 of the chambze a gret ymage of ſyne gol-  
 de ſtandynge eche of theym holdynge in  
 theyr handes a gret horne of ſyluer, & by  
 theyr countenance redy to blow. Than  
 Arthur herde a gret voyce whiche was  
 ſo loude and hoꝝryble that maſter Steuē  
 who was in the playes about the caſtell  
 myght ryght wel here it, the which voyce  
 ſayd, behold now the ende. Than may-  
 ſter Steuē ſayd to hys company. I am  
 ſure y knyght is entred into y palais wh-  
 in the caſtell god defend hym from all yll  
 encōbzaunce, than al the palais begā to  
 tremble & ſhake wonderſly ſo moche that  
 at the laſt one of the.iiii. ymages begā to  
 blow his horne ſo loud that it might wel  
 be herde the ſpace of a myle, than the pa-  
 lais trembled ſo ſore y all ſhold haue fal-  
 len in peeces, the doores & windowes of ſe-  
 tynges dyd open & cloſe agayne by theyr  
 owne accord, than Arthur heard aboute  
 him gret noyſe of people as though there  
 had bene a thouſandemen togyder, but  
 he coulde ſe no creature, at the laſt he per-  
 ceuyed greate lyyghte of torches, & euer he  
 byde

## The story of Arthur

herde still the noyse of people Comynge  
and goynge aboute þe bedde, & also herde  
the byapenge of an hydeous ryuer so þe  
semed to hym that it had ben the soynge  
of the wyldes see, therewith he felte suche  
a terribil wynde that he had moche pay-  
ne to sustayne hym on his fete. Than Ar-  
thur assayed agayne to haue layne downe  
on the bedde, than the voyce began to  
crysse agayne & sayd, beholde now the ende  
than the seconde ymage began to blowe  
than came there in to the chambere suche  
noyse & tourment that Arthur was nye  
deceyde with þe terribil dyngne, & the palays  
than began sover to tremble than it dyde  
before, so that Arthur thought surely þe  
all þe palays shoulde haue fallen, than Ar-  
thur drew hym toward the bedde & as  
he wold haue layne hym downe he sawe  
on his ryght hande a grette lyon spers &  
fell comynge to hym toward gayse and  
rampynge to deuour hym, & so assailed  
hym ryght rudely, & with his pawes sto-  
ke Arthur so by the sholder that his har-  
neys coude not kepe hym, but þe sharpe  
clawes entred in to his fleshe, and as  
the lyon wolde haue taken hys by þe  
he cleft his helme before hym, & the lyon  
dashed it with his pawes all to peces and  
myght ouerthrewen hym to þe erth, but  
than Arthur toke his strength to hym  
as the lyon was rampynge before hym he  
put his sworde cleue through his body, &  
so the lyon fell downe deed to the erthe, &  
Arthur was ryght sore hurt in the shol-  
der and bleedde faste, than he approached  
agayne to the bedde to haue layne hym  
downe, than þe thyrde ymage spersly dyd  
blow his horn & out of the ende therof  
by semynge to Arthur there issued out  
another lyon grette & stronger than the  
other was. Whan Arthur sawe hym he  
cryed to god & to our blessyd lady to hel-

pe & socour hym from yll deth and soules  
encombraunce, & so the lyon dysseid hym  
to warde Arthur, & strake at hym with  
his brode pawes, & Arthur helde before  
hym the remenaunt that was left of his  
shelde, but the lyon wyrtly brake it all to  
peces as though it had bene but glasse, &  
with one of his fete he toke Arthur by þe  
lyfte syde and rased fro him a grette parte  
of his harneys & his doublet and shert,  
and a grette pice of his fleshe to the bare  
rybbes, & if god had not there helped hi  
he had renoued his mortall lyfe, than Ar-  
thur with his swerde strake of the lions  
fore that was vnder his syde, & therewith  
the lyon fell to the erth & oþer tole agayne  
Arthur recovered another stroke and  
strake of his heade by the shuldres, than  
Arthur toke a saye cloth of sendal that  
laye on the bedde, & therewith wrapped  
his woundes & stanchethem frome ble-  
dyng, than he approached agayne to the  
bedde to lye downe to rest hym and than  
sodenly the fourth ymage began terri-  
bly to blowe his horn, therewith Arthur  
looked behind hi & espyed a grette gylant  
comynge to bi warde, who was .xv. fote  
of length, betynge togeder his tethes as  
though they had bene hammer & stynge  
on a styth who had in his hand a grette  
axe, wherof the blade was wel the fote  
longe, the whiche was so longe & sharpe  
that it would cutte cleue a sonder euery  
thyng that it touched. And whan this  
gylant sawe these lions nere he was so  
sore dyspleased that he was all in a rage  
and so rowled by his eyen and dashed to-  
geder his tethes, and ran fersely at Ar-  
thur thynkyng to haue styken of his  
head, but Arthur feared moche the stroke  
and lepte asyde, wherby þe stroke wente  
besyde hym and dashed in to panement so  
rudely þe blade of the weapon entred

therin iust to the heade, & than Arthur  
 strake him with his swerde but the stro-  
 ke mounted vp agayne and wold in no  
 wyse enter, for he was harnepled with  
 the skynne of a serpent, the whiche was  
 so hard that no wepen coude empyre it  
 And whan Arthur saw þe he was ryght  
 soze displeased and lyfte vp his swerde  
 agayne & strake the gyaunt on the heade  
 moze rudely than he dyde befoze, but all  
 that aualed not, for it semed to him that  
 he strake on a steky of stele. Than Ar-  
 thur fered hym selfe greter, than the gy-  
 aunt strake many strokes at arthur, but  
 alwayes he watched so the strokes that  
 he dyde lett hym passe by hym wi-  
 out ony hurte oz damage, for he perceyved  
 ryght well that if the gyaunt dyd lyght  
 on hym with a full stroke there was no  
 ne other way with him but deach. Thus  
 this gyaunt euer pursued Arthur to ha-  
 ue stricken him, but alwayes arthur wat-  
 ched the strokes and voyded them wyse-  
 ly and often tymes strake the gyaunt a  
 gayne but he coude doo hym no hurte,  
 thus they fought a grete space not ferre  
 fro the ryche bedde in the myddes of the  
 chambze than the gyaunt with grete yze  
 lyfte vp his sauchon to haue stryken Ar-  
 thur vpon the head and the stroke came  
 brayng & dalyt into the erch lyke thou-  
 der for Arthur auoyded craftely the stro-  
 ke, the whiche entred and cut asonder a  
 grete brase of a benche that stode befoze  
 the bedde of white purp, & so the stroke  
 descended downe into the erch thughout  
 all the pauement, for the gyaunt was so  
 soze displeased that his wepen entred  
 thugh bothe wode & stone and into the  
 erch to the hard head and ther with the  
 brase of his sauchon brast cleue asonder  
 in the myddes, & whan the gyaunt sawe  
 that he fared lyke a fende of hell, and so

take the handlyng therof and cast it at  
 Arthur, but wysely he dyde auoyde it &  
 so it lyghted on the wall of the chambze  
 wherin the stroke entred well a fete and  
 an halfe than the gyaunt lepte to the  
 brase of the benche that he had cut ason-  
 der befoze, and wold haue rashed it out  
 of the benche, but it was so soze bounde  
 with crampons of stele to þe benche that  
 he coude not remoue it, & as he stouped  
 to pull therat Arthur espyed hym & how  
 the serpent skynne was but wyte bes-  
 hynde his backe, & so vnder the skynne  
 he dalyt his swerde in to his hely to the  
 croffe, than the gyaunt fell downe & ma-  
 de a terryble brayng the whiche myght  
 well be herde a grete waye of, than Ar-  
 thur recovered on hym an oþer stroke &  
 so dalyt his swerde in to his herte, than  
 he made a greter crye than he did befoze  
 and ther with his soule passed auaile to  
 the deul of hell, than þe nople was hearde  
 agayne that sayde, beholde thende, than  
 was Arthur so wey & so soze trauayled  
 and his woundes bledde so fast þe had  
 much payne to sustaine himselfe on his  
 fere, howe be it as wel as he might he re-  
 payed downe the ryche bed & alwayes  
 his swerde in his hand & ther with layd  
 hym down on the bed, than the pynage of  
 gold at the beddes head with his bow &  
 arowe dyd shote & hyre one of the wynd-  
 dowes so soze þe fletwe was open with  
 the stroke, out of whiche windowe there  
 puffed suche a smoke & fume so blacke þe  
 it made the hous so darke that arthur  
 coude se nothing, the whiche fume stoke  
 so abominably that arthur ther by was  
 nyte dead, than there rose suche a wynde  
 so grete & feruent that it brast the glasse  
 windowes & latesses so that the styes &  
 stones flew all about the hous lyke hay-  
 le, and it thodged so terryfly that all the  
 erch

## The story of Arthur

erth shoke and the palays trembled like  
 to haue goue all to peeces, and at the last  
 he perceyued a byenynge spere al of fyre  
 the whiche was comynge to hymwarde  
 therwith he lepte fro the bedde & fledde  
 fro the stroke, and saue where yt wote  
 in at an other lytell chambze by a sell on  
 a knyght as he lay a bedde and so byente  
 hym clene thugh, and the fyre descended  
 thynghout bedde and chambze and al  
 sank depe in to the erth, than sobeynly  
 blast a sonder two pylles whiche susteyn  
 the couerynge ouer the bedde, and  
 than al the hole palays began to tourne  
 aboute lyke a whele, than Arthur ranne  
 to the ymage of golde that stode at the  
 beddes heade & embraced it in his armes  
 for the ymage remoued noo thynge, and  
 this tournynge of the palays endured a  
 grete space. And Baudewyn Arthurs  
 squyer who was wythout in the courte  
 ppeuously wepte & demened ryght grete  
 sorow for yfere that he had of his may  
 ster for he thought verily how that he  
 was out dreed, and sayd. a my lord ar  
 thur the best knyght the moost noble and  
 hatop the moost sage and curteyse crea  
 ture that euer was fourmed by nature,  
 alas why shouldest thou enter in to this unhap  
 py castell, for I thynke surely ye are but  
 dede. And so than at ylast yfournynge  
 of this palays began to sece, and the de  
 kenys began to auoyde & to wate sap  
 re and clere and the ayte peaslye than  
 arthur fare hym do wne vpon the ryche  
 beddes syde ryghte feble & faynt bycause  
 of the grete trouble that he had endured  
 and for the ferefull boz pylenes yf he had  
 been and herde han whan he was thus  
 wated sapre & clere, than the wyper sayd  
 agayne wylle, it ys ended it ys ended, &  
 whan mayster Baudewyn herde that voyce  
 he sayd vnto his compani. verily the ad

uentures of the palays in y castell of the  
 porte noyze are achened, therefore I am  
 sure it can be none other wyse but that y  
 knyght that is there, eyther he is dead or  
 ellys ryght sore wounded & than he wote  
 & gadzed herbes suche as he knewe we  
 re ryght pceyous for all maner of woun  
 des and made of them to grue vnto Ar  
 thur if it were his fortune to fynde hym  
 alyue, & Baudewyn who al o had herde  
 the voyce thoughte verily than that Ar  
 thur had ben dead, and sayde to him selfe  
 that neyther for yf dyspleasure of his lo  
 de, nor yf for feare of any other thynge  
 he wolde abyde no longer but yf he wolde  
 mount by into the palays to se if he cou  
 de knowe howe his lord was dreed, & so he  
 by yf stappes whiche swerde in his hande  
 and passed thugh the hall and entered in  
 to the chambze where as arthur was sit  
 tyng on the beddes side, than was Bau  
 dewyn glad whan he sawe his mayster  
 alyue and demaunded him howe he oorde  
 And arthur answered and said howe that  
 he was ryght wery and sore wounded.  
 Than Baudewyn was ryght sorowfull  
 at his herte, for he fered grete lyke that  
 he had some mortall wounde, and sayde  
 wyf may it please you to shewe me your  
 woundes. It pleaseh me right well sayd  
 Arthur. Than Baudewyn vnarmed hi  
 and serched all his woundes, for he was  
 a ryght good surgen, and wasshed and  
 staunched his woundes, and softly byd  
 anoynt hem, the whiche did him righte  
 grete ease. Than Arthur armed hym a  
 gayne and sayd that he wolde go serche  
 ferdor ouer all the palays to knowe yf  
 there were any mo aduenturers acher  
 whiche entered in to y chambze a yon  
 ge barlet, who accuson ab yf before ap  
 parayled the mete and dyne that serued  
 for the knyghtes that were lead at the

gate of the castel, & whan he came before  
Arthur he kneled downe & sayde, A gen-  
tyll knight I crie pou mercy, for goddes  
sake saue my lyfe, for I am a poze ber-  
let that serued for my lyving the knyghtes  
that ye haue slayne. Thou shalte ha-  
ue noo hurte sayde Arthur on the condy-  
cyon that thou wylest tell me the trouthe  
Whether there be in this castell any moo  
men or women. For sayde the berlet here  
in this place there be noo moore creatures  
but all onely two prysoners Who were  
deliuered to my maysters whom ye ha-  
ue slayne to be kepte here in prison to the  
entente that it shoulde neuer be knownen  
where as they were become, & they were  
sente hyther by the comaundemen of the  
duke of brygo. Well good fronde sayd ar-  
thur bryng me to them, than the barlet  
conuayed him streyght to the prison wher  
as they were closed in, and the barlet  
diode bulocks at the doores whiche were  
meruelously wrought, and at the laste  
they came to a grete cofer all of yren whi-  
che was surely made fast to the wall w-  
th grete bondes & barres of stele, than Ar-  
thur didd so muche by his strength that  
he brast open the cofer & toke out the pry-  
soners with much payne, for they were  
soze charged with boltes of yren, so that  
they coude fere no maner of waye, and  
whā they were loused one of them sayde  
I seee loide, I wote not what ye be nor  
Whether ye haue taken vs out of prison  
for our welthe or for our hurte, but for  
goddes sake rather than ye shold put vs  
agayne into this cofer yf strike of our  
heedes. Certaynly sayde Arthur we haue  
non entent to do you any maner of hurt  
therfore tel me of whens ye be & Where  
ye were bound. A for sayde they, we are  
so nyte ouer come for lack of mete, and so  
soze bzused withal p we can scant speake

our Worde, therfore for goddes sake  
gyue vs some mete. Frides sayd Arthur  
I can not tel Whether there be any mete  
& drynke in this hous or no. Yes for sayd  
the barlet here in this hous there is suf-  
feyent and it were to receyue the myghty  
Emendus kynge of soroloy. Well  
sayd Arthur than go fetche theym some  
parre therof, than the barlet set vp the  
tables, & dyd set on them bryede and wyne  
and other mete sufficient, and than they  
all dydeate and drynke as muche as dyd  
please them, and whan they had done, the  
barlet demaunded of the prysoners if they  
wolde be shauen, & they answered. Yes  
Wich a right good wyl. Than the barlet  
apparayled all thinge redy, for he was a  
good harbour, and whan they were sha-  
uen than the barlet brought the gownes  
of the knyghtes that were slayne & whā  
they were apparayled, they seemed wel to  
be extraught of a noble knyng, and so  
they were in dede as ye shall here after.

¶ How Arthur after p he had achieved p  
adventures of the palays & deliuered the  
prysoners, & after how p he achieved the  
adventure p was in the galary goyng in  
to the garden of the most perillous, & by  
his might With a grete barre bet do wne  
in manye images of coppe eche of them  
holding a staple pons of such wyght p  
x men myght scant lyfte one of them fro  
the earth, wherwith they were euer beting  
wpyd grete strokes made by enchaunt-  
ment, to the entent that none shoulde passe  
in to the gardyns of the most perillous  
& so than sayled & ended all the enchan-  
tements of that place. Cap. xliiii.

¶ After that Arthur had deliuered  
these prysoners and achieved the  
foresayd adventures, than the barlet ca-  
p. i. me to

## The story of Arthur

meto hym and sayd. Syr it is of trouth  
that pe haue fordone & overcome all the  
adventures of this place saupnge one, &  
that is in y galery goynge in to y gardyn  
and syz pf that were fordone than every  
body myght goo & come in to this castell  
as surely as in to any other place. Well  
good frende q Arthur I praye you byng  
me thider. Syr with a ryght good wyl  
sayd y barlet, but syz we must haue fyrst  
some fyre with vs, for y galery is so de-  
ke that we can se no thyng there, and so  
than they lyghted torches & wente forth  
so sette that at the laste in a lytell strypte  
way Arthur fonde two pyrges of coppe  
one on the one syde, & an other on y other  
syde, & they had eche of them a grete flay-  
le in theyr handes, wherwith they cony-  
nuallly bete downe ryght, y whiche was  
made by enchauntment, so that no crea-  
ture coude passe by them without deth,  
and whan Arthur sawe them he toke his  
lyberde in his hande & sayde on woth all  
his myght on these macomettes, in such  
wyse that his strokes might wel be herd  
of a great waye, but for all that he coude  
not enpayre them, thā he perceyued wel  
that hys lyberde coude do hym but lytel  
helpe. wherfoze he toke in his hād agre-  
bar of a doze that he fonde there, & there-  
with he laid on so fast that finally he bet  
do wne both these macomettes, than all  
the enchauntment began to faile, for than  
he myght se clerely al aboute hym, & woth  
strayndng of him selfe in this bataille his  
woundes breste out agayne on bledynge  
wherfoze he was fayne to brynne hy in  
the same place, & than sawe he byn dyde  
stallych al his woundes agayne and dres-  
sed them newly wth swere and soft opnye-  
mentes. than he wold haue armed hym  
agayne but than the barlet sayde. Syr  
your harners shall but hurt your too-

des, hardely leue it here sylly and arme  
you no moze, for surely syz ye be nowe in  
as good sauegarde as though ye wer by  
your fader that engendred you. Fonde  
sayd Arthur loke that here be no treson  
Syr I waraunt you on payne of my heed,  
syz boldly now ye may enter into the gar-  
dyn, & there ye shall fynde a noble clerke  
who is son to a king who is pertayning  
to a ryghte hre and myghty pryncesse the  
noble florence daughter and eyre to the  
puyssant king Emeus, who hath bene  
there moze than this halfe pere to abyde  
for your cominge. For me sayde Arthur  
thou wottst not what thou saist, for how  
shold he haue any knowlege of me. Syr  
sayd y barlet I can not tell you, but sure-  
ly it is as I saye, therfoze let vs go thy-  
der. So they wente forth & entred in the  
gardyn wher in was all the pleasure that  
coude be thought, and as they went forth  
thyn playenge there came to Arthur a  
fapys poange barlet & goodly dō salute  
hym and sayd. Syr ye be ryght hertely  
welcome into the londe of Borsloys as  
the most desyred knyght that euer was  
gyde wthwerde. Why good frende sayde  
Arthur Where is that place that I am so  
soze desyred in Syr sayd he in all the lōde  
of Argence. Fapys frende sayd he & why  
I am so soze there desyred. Syr p cā the  
pysoners that pe haue deliuered shewe  
you full well. Why q Arthur how knowe  
they what I am. Syr as god helpe me ye  
are better knowne here thā ye are ware  
of. for here is in this gardyn a noble cler-  
ke son to a kyng who hath tarped here a  
grete sealon, who knoweth you wel, and  
all the demerour that hath ben betwene  
you & the fapys damopel Jehannet o: ye  
departed out of your owne countre, & also  
he knoweth ryght well howe that ye dōd  
at byn in the tournay, and also wat ye

dyd at the Wile, and how ye made your  
 colyn Hector; duke of orgoyle. In the na  
 me of god sayd Arthur I haue great mer  
 uayle howe ye can tel me all this. And as  
 they were thus talkynge there came to  
 them a grete flocke of knyghtes, than p  
 barles sayd, sy; ponder is my sayde lord  
 who is coming to you. Ray said Arthur  
 I shall go vnto him, at whiche tyme this  
 sayd maister Steuen was apparyled in  
 a matell of byolet chamlet, & in a sircote  
 of grene sayn furred with ermyns, & as  
 soone as he sawe Arthur he auapled hys  
 bonet & dyd salute hym. Than Arthur  
 sayd, a gentyll maister it is to me a grete  
 rebuke that so noble a man as ye be shol  
 de do to me so greate reuerence, than the  
 maister dothe simple and toke hym by the  
 hande and sayd. Sy; we haue longe tru  
 sted for the welth & honour that is now  
 come to you; therfore now ye be welco  
 me as the chiefe souerayne knyght of all  
 the wyde worlde, sy; now I thinke to go  
 se this palays in to the which neuer man  
 entred before saue onelye you, for ye are  
 the fyrste that euer entred therto, & that  
 is by your noble valure, sy; I know wel  
 ye be fore wounded, therfore I haue made  
 for you a lytle dysynke, and than he sente  
 for it incontynent, & whan it was come  
 he sayd, sy; dysynke therof hardelye, seare  
 for nothyng in the name of God, for I  
 desyre more your health and hono, tha  
 of ony other creature luyng. Than Ar  
 thur toke it and dranke wel thereof, and  
 as soone as it was spredd abrode in his  
 vynes, he was thereby sodenly all hole  
 & more lusty than euer he was before,  
 for than he thought p his strength was  
 doubled, & truely in a maner so it was,  
 for by the vertue of these herbes he had p  
 grace p to thens forth there was neuer  
 man p coude drawe out of his body ony

blode but onely the foule monster of the  
 byolle to whome he fought at great Tre  
 parde, as ye shall here after warde.

How mayster Steuen went with Ar  
 thur in the palays whin the castell to pen  
 tet to see the wonderfull adventures that  
 Arthur had there acheued. Cap. xlv.

Whan that Arthur had receyued the  
 sayde dysynke and recouered there  
 by his helth, than mayster Steuen  
 toke hym by the hande and sayde. Sy;  
 I haue grete desyre to go se this palays  
 I praye you let vs go thyder, & so they  
 went forth toggyder, before all other fo  
 llowed them who wolde, & at the last they  
 came into the same narrow entre whiche  
 as Arthur had bene downe these .ii. ma  
 ges of coppe with they; grete flayles, &  
 there a grete season they stode & behelde  
 them, and euery man assayed to rime  
 one of they; flayles, but it wolde not be  
 they were so heuie, than euery man had  
 grete meruayle how p they might be so  
 muche myghte in one knyght as to beate  
 downe so myghty and heuy a thing, & tha  
 they entred in to the palays the whiche  
 was the moost fayrest & rycheest that euer  
 was sene with mannes eye, & at the last  
 they entred in to the ryche chambere wher  
 as the goodly bedde was, than mayster  
 Steuen had grete meruayle of p inest  
 mable rycheesse of that chambere & bedde,  
 Than came to them the .ii. prysoners, &  
 dyd salute mayster Steuen, and whan the  
 maister sawe them he knewe one ryght  
 wel and made to hy good chere and sayd,  
 What sy; markes haue ye bene here pry  
 ner. Ye sy; said he truly, and for p murd  
 of the duke of bygon, wha he had slayne  
 my lord and murdered my bytherne by  
 false treason, than he toke me and thys

## The story of Arthur

either knyght and dyd sende vs into this place as pryely as he coude, and dyd deliuer vs to the knyghtes that kepe this place who be now al dead by the prowes of this knyghte, who hath deliuered vs out of pryson & thraldome, & thanked be god & his noblenesse now we be escaped to all daunger. In the name of god sayde the mayster, it was greiued he shulde com in to this countre, and than he sayd to Arthur. & yf it draweth fast to night warde, wherfore it is hys tyme to go to souper & yf I wyll soupe w<sup>th</sup> you here in this chambere. & yf I thanke you sayd Arthur, but I can not tell whether there be any thing coueni<sup>ent</sup> to receyue suche a person as ye be. & yf sayd the mayster by the fayth that I owe to you I am pertayning to so hye and puissant a ryche lady who hath sufficient both for you and for vs all, than I mayster commaunded to make redy the souper, than anon the tables were layd, & the maysters seruantes ran to his tent on the mounte peryllous, and anon they brought all maner of chynge necessary, vessel & plate of gold & silver grete plenty, than the clothes were layde & water brought forth, than Arthur refused to w<sup>th</sup> the wyth I mayster because he was lon vnto a chynge. Wel & yf sayde the mayster I praye you fulfill my desyre for truly I know better your estate & honour thā ye wene I do, than Arthur dyd as he was requyred, than the mayster sat downe & Arthur by hym, & the markes before them, & all other sate downe at o<sup>ther</sup> syde tables, where as they were as ryche as secured as though they had ben in the hous of the noble floz<sup>ers</sup>, but though they were not there, yet they payed for all they expences. Thus Arthur sat at souper, who seemed to all they in that he hym to be ryghte sayre & gracious aboute all

other that euer they sawe, & so they pray<sup>sed</sup> hym moche in theyr hertes, and whā they had souped at good leysure and the tables taken away, than they set them downe on collyres of sylke, and I mayster sayd to Arthur. & yf behold here my lord the markes, who is & shal be your knyght, for ye haue deliuered him out of pryson. That is trouthe sayde the markes, & therfore I thanke hym. Well & yf sayd Arthur, I herderou say as I remembrehow that the newe of the duke of begoz caused you to be put here in pryson, and also how he slew your brother by treason, wherfore if it may please you I requyre you shew me how it dyd fortune. And whā mayster Steven herd hym enquire for the mater, he had grete Joye, for than he knewe wel that Arthur wolde rememb<sup>re</sup> that case, than the markes answered and sayd. & yf the mater is very longe to rehearse, therfore I feare me the reporte therof shal annoy you. & yf truly sayd Arthur it shal be no paine to me to here it. Than the markes sayde, & yf it is of trouthe how that the lord of Argenton was my broder, who was in his tyme a ryght good knyght. I saye it not because he was my broder, but of very trouthe he was so grete a lord that the renowne of hym was spredde a brode all the londes of soroloy, for there he was reputed to be the moost souerayne knyght of al I wo<sup>ld</sup>de, and so it fortuneth I the duke of bygoz who is a myghty lord in his countre made on a daye a iournaye to be holden at his cyte of bygoz because of a newe of his who was maried the same daye vnto a ryght hye lynnage, and this dukes newewas a yet is ryghte spers and orgyllous, and is a ryght grete redoubted knyght of his handes, and in euery place he was reputed nexte to my

broder to be the best knight of the world and at this forsayde turnay was my brother, and this dukes newew had gret enuy at him by cause of the great noblesse that he herde reputed of hym and so toke counsaile with some of his affinite and determined to fust against my lord my brother, to thertent to abate his renowne, & so he toke to his company, & other knightes: & whā the tournay was begon, he and his company ran at ones at my brother, who as than was not ware of their malicious purpose, nor had no mo in his company but me and his squier, wherfore we suffred muche payne, but finally my brother deliuered vs all fro them & bette do wone the dukes newew to the erth, but than my brother by his gentylneesse did that I wold not haue done, for whan he saw him at the erth he lighted & brought him an other good horse, and helped him to mounie thereon, and than my brother lepe againe on his horse and went to the courney & there dyd suche meruayles of armes y all that behelde him meruayled therat, and generally they all sayd how that in all the world there was none lyke him And whan the dukes newew herde all that prayse be giuen to my brother, his herte swelled for anger and enuy, & for despice he wolde no moze tust y dape. And whā all was ended, the price was giuen to my brother by the cōset of both parties and so than all the companie went to the courte to the duke, & there they began greatly to praise my brother. And whā his newew herde that he was right sore dyspleased by cause he was beten downe by hym the same day, therfore openly befoze the duke for pure malice he appeled my brother of reason, and sayd how that he had beten him downe

in the tournay by crafte and false cressō  
 Than my brother coulde no lenger endu re his wezors, but sayd. In fayth sye say vntreuly, for I neuer thought treason in all my lyfe, neyther to you nor to non other creature, and therewith in the quartell he dyd caste downe his gloue at the fote of the duke. And whan this dukes newew saw that he had cast his gloue, he was nie enraged for anger & despice and stept on his fere & toke a grece mace of stele from a barlet that stode beside, & therewith he strake my brother on y head so that the blode fell to the erth, & whan I saw my brother so stroken I toke my swerde in my hande & thought to haue slayne hym, but than other knightes keppe vs asonder, so than my brothers company began to draw togyther, & his company in likewyse, wherby it was likely there to haue ben a great fray, but wylfely the duke appeled bothe parties and was right sore dyspleased with the outrage of his newew. Thā my brother sayd to the duke. sye your newew hath appeled me of treason, and therfore behold here lieth my gloue to defend my self in the quartell, that by treason wout any desfaunce, & oz I was ware he hath stricken me like a false traytour as he is and that wyl I proue my body agaynst his, and therfore sye duke lette me haue ryght accordyng to the law of armes. Thā was this dukes newew greatly blamed of euery knight. Who sayd generally yf he had right he shoulde be for this dede right sore punished. Thā the duke was right sorrowful, & did much labour to appele my brother, but in no wise he wolde be content of a great reason, how be it fynally the duke required hi so muche, & so did all other knightes that my brother who had a gentyll horse did for

## The story of Arthur

grue all þ matter, & where the pras was made & eche of them bounde to other in two. 49. ponde to kepe & obserue suche discrecions as the duke wold take in þ matter, wherw they said they were well content. Than the duke sayd, þis spirit ech of you shal pardon other of al thyng wylles that hath ben betwene you. And thereto they answe:ed & said þ they were pleased so to do. & in knowlege therof they embraced eche other and kissed togyther. Than the duke determined forder, how that his neww shuld deliuer to my brother. & possion of p:ely land to haue to hym and his ayres for evermore the whiche discrecion his neww there confirmed & there my brother was put in full possellion therof both by the duke & also by hi neww, who the wedd sayet semblaunt our warde to my brother thā he thought inward in his h:ce. Than my brother tokelene of the duke & bys neww vnder the false colour of loue cōrased my brother parte of the towp, but faily and like a traytour he had layde a bulwark in a lytle wode of thre score men in harness & so there as we were w:re they d:lyt in b:thade vs, & thre flym: fully slew my brother and two of his l:mes of the age of xii. or. xiii. yeres. And so there they slew a. xl. knyghtes þ were in our company and there he tokelene and my f:lo w: prisoners out of the whiche ye haue deliuered vs. And þis is to my boiher hath no moche to left on lyue sayyng a doughter, who is enheritour to alle the lande of Argeron, & the dukes neww hath taken fro her all the heritauce that she is bozne vnto and hath her in keepyng, and is purposed to marry her to a boy who is his barbour, who by reason ought to be married to a great eie: or els a lord, both for her

noblene, & riches, and frendes: but as now she is in a case that there is none þ wyl maintaine her right & manye of her frendes ben dead & I haue ben here in prison spych the deach of my lord my brother her sader and also her men & subiectes dare do nothing for lacke of a captyuene, & this duke is greatly redoubted for he is mighty bothe of hauorze & of frendes, & therfore my nycce is lykely to be lost, for she shal be giuen at this next mayde layne tyme to a lewde boy & she is likely to be dishonoured for euer. For she hath no h:pe nor confort, & therfor this markes pyecously begā to wepe for the great sorow that he had at his heart. Than mayster Siemur sayde, þis I knowe you it is of a trouthe al þ this markes hath shewed you. Certaynly saye that þif god wyl sende me the grace I may here of a knyght of min that shoud come hither to me, thā wyl I saych that ensue you to do my payne to help & socour this noble damorsel. And þis mayster Siemur I wyl knowe to morow whom your knyght doth be: now it is to late, and þis ye al lyf al night in his p:ais which is p:eraynyng to my lare & toze, for it was geuen her w:th she was but ii. dayes olde, howe be it she was neuer here, nor yet none other but you all only, therfore þis hope it for my laue wyl the season that ye maye h:re to her noble grace for ye haue made it quide to al maner of enchaute:mentes, and þis I wyl go this night into my tent where as I haue layne al this season, & to morowe betymes I wyl come to you again and bypnyge all my stuf to this place but þis I loke that ye lyf all this night in this t:all bed, and there I shal p:omysed to do so. Thā the mayster & his & paup departed fro hym as to that night.

Howe Prosperynn quene of the fayre aboute in pnyght appered to Arthur w grete lpyght of torches, and howe that she shewed him that wythin the mounte peryllous there was the whyte sheld and the good swerde enchaunted called clarence, and howe that he shuld haue them w moche honour p his her e durst serue hym. And howe the nexte daye mayster Steuen led Arthur into the herber where as the white sheld was, the which coude neuer be remeued fro the tree whercon it hanged, and how that Arthur toke it at his ease and clarence the swerd also, the whiche coude neuer befoze that tyme be drawe out of the sheeth, nor it wold helpe no body but all onely Arthur who drew it out lpyghtly, and after that it did hi moche helpe as ye shall here after. Ca. xvi.

**W**han the mayster Steuen was departed, than Arthur layde hym downe in the ryal tyeche bedde and slepte well all his fyrst slepe tyll it was about in pnyght, than he awoke and saw grete clerenes of torches lpyght afore hym, and percepued standing befoze his bedde a quene crowned w gold, who was the most fayre creature p cuer was sene, and he thought she spake to him & sayde Arthur frend here is in this place the whyte sheld & clarence the goode swerde of the fayre, therfore thou shalt haue moche honour p thy herte be good. And therewith she vanished away, wherof Arthur had grete meruayle, both of her beaute & also of there sodayne departing, thus remained Arthur tyll it was clere daye than he rose, & mayster Steuen came to hym and they went and herd masse, & after masse Arthur sayde to the mayster, sy I ca not tel what quene it was p this nyght was wth me in the chambr where as I laye

but it was the goodlyest fygure of a woman that euer I sawe. & she sayde to me how p ther was in this place the whyte sheld and the good swerde clarence. And whan mayster Steuen herd that he smiled and sayd. Sy I see well it is you to whome the swerde and sheld is bestowed vnto, opuerse knyghes hath assayed to take them, but they coude neuer remeue them fro the place where as they be, therfore now I thike they haue founde they mayster. sy let vs goe thider & see what wyll fortune. Than they pssued out of palays and went into the gardyn where as was the tyeche pauplyon pertayning to the noble florece, the which was the best of the rycheest werke of the world of grene satyn & crimse, bozded w golde & asure, & the post that bare it was of fyne yuery, and the cordes of grene sylke, and in the toppe therof stode an egle of bozned golde, and at the two corners there stode two grete gryffons shyning agens the sonne. Than Arthur remembered his bysson that he had o he departed out of his owne counre, & so he behelde the egle a grete reason, and at the last he came to the pauplyon, than Arthur sawe befoze hym in the front therof the personage of a quene crowned wth gold, the whiche crowne hadde .vi. braunches, the whyche signified .vi. realmes, and in euery braunch there were wyrtten letters, and in p fyrst was wyrtten Emendus the myghty kynge of Sczolors, & this braunch was cheste and highest of all other, and in p seconde was wyrtten florece quene of the realme of blauche tour, & in the thirde was giue the kig of orqueny, and in the fourth was wyrtten Diuernous kynge of balefounde father to mayster Steuen And in the .v. king of mormal, & in the .vi. Jsmacite the gret. This crown was

## The story of Arthur

set full of p[re]cious stones, and this image was fayre and gentyl to behold, With her forehead playne and whyte, and her hert like the colour of gold, her browes small and p[ro]p[er], somewhat drauyng to the browne colour, and her visage plain neyther to longe nor to rounde, colour lyk as roses and lilies togider had ben imbled, her nose long and streight, and her ruddy mouth somewhat simplunge, her eyen lowly, and al her body and other members made without ony reprehencion by the ordynance of nature who had set in her all beaute, and she was bestured with a samyte of grene strepte gyrd to her w[ith] a lace of golde, so that somwhat her lypel rounde and lily whyte brestes might be sene, the whiche became her wonderfyll wel, and ouer al this we had on a fircote of crymsen lined w[ith] byolet sendall, & her wide sleues were of grene enbordred w[ith] floures of golde and w[ith] ryche pearles And this ymage helde bytwene her handes a chaplet of spike wrought subtylly full of freshe floures, and aboute the border therof were letters wrought of p[re]cious stones that sayd. He shal kepe me for his owne that shall haue this chaplet And whan Arthur had red wel at length these letters, and sawe the freshe beaute of this ymage, than his herte opened for grete love, & With grete and feruent desire he loued the presentacyon of that ymage, and therewith stode before it in a grete study. Than mayster Steuē sayd s[ir] I ensure you my lady is suche as this ymage representeth. S[ir] sayde Arthur than in her is all the beaute of the world. He s[ir] sayde the mayster there be two persones that resēbleth this ymage. First the quene y[ou] sawe this last night appere to you who is called proserpyne quene of s[pr]ayre, who dyd gyue to my lady flores,

this castell & this p[er]uillon, & bestenyed on her how y[ou] sholde neuer be married but to the best knyght of the world, & to hym this ymage sholde gyue her chaplet y[ou] sholdeth in her handes, & s[ir] I trust it be you. Sechely also my lady flores in all thinges relembleth to this ymage And so the quene Proserpyne & my lady florence & this ymage are in al poyntes so like y[ou] can not knowe the one fro the other, & the bye draughte y[ou] is in the crown of this ymage betokeneth y[ou] might i king Emendons fader to my lady florens, and the seconde signifieth my ladies realme, and the other. iiii. represente. iiii. other kiges who are subiectes to my lady flores & to her fader, therefore s[ir] & it please you let vs enter into this p[er]uillon & se wheder y[ou] may haue the sheld and swerd that all other haue sayled of, and so they entered into the p[er]uillon, and in the myddes therof Arthur sawe where there hangid on a perche the sheld and the swerd. Than Arthur wente thereto boldly, and toke it as easely as thoughe it had bene his owne before, than he sette his hande to the swerde and so drew it out of the shethe, and the blade therof was so clere that it dyd cast meruayllously grete clerenesse, and therfore it was called clarence, and before that tyme it was neuer drawn out of the shethe nor sene w[ith] any mans eye, and Arthur delte as easely therewith as he dyd w[ith] his owne. And whan mayster Steuē sawe this he had grete Joye and sayd. S[ir] I se Well y[ou] are the same knyght that it was deliuered vnto therfore now I haue grete Joye and I trust that god shall cause you to attayne to muche honour and noblenesse. Than Arthur sayde, s[ir] y[ou] promysed to tell me some thinges of my knyght that sholde come hyther, s[ir] I requyre you to tell me

of pe knowe any thinke of him. & it said  
 the maister I know wel how ye promi  
 sed to come & seke this adventure which  
 ye haue aduered, but in no wise ye wold  
 suffer him to come w you, & therfore ye  
 sent hym by the great hie way throug  
 out ynde the more to chentant he shold  
 not se your deeth, nor that he wold by w  
 you, & so he is not as yet come for in  
 dede he cannot, for he is in the castel cal  
 led the brosse, & syt it is by al likelihode  
 impossible y ener he shall depart thes  
 wout deeth though he were made of yre  
 & stele, for al the remedy of the world ca  
 not kepe him fro deeth, therfore Arthur  
 comforte your selfe, & of a thyng that is  
 lost without recover never thinke ther  
 on more. Truly syt sayde Arthur but yf  
 I haue my knight I shall neuer haue  
 cofort therfore speke to me neuer ther  
 of, but syt I requyre you howe he is so  
 lost & in such scoperd as ye speke of.  
 With a right good wyl sayd the maister  
 But I fere me it wyl annoy you, for it is a  
 longe processe to reherse. wel sayd Arthur  
 as for yf I fere not, tel on I requyre you

How maister Secus shewed Arthur  
 how yf Gouvernour his knyght was in the  
 castell of brosse, & how yf the custome of  
 that castell was first begon. Ca. xlviii.

**S**ayd the maister sayde syt it is of  
 a trouche yf the castell of the brosse  
 is a right strong & a noble place, &  
 is yf cheche hed of al yf coultre, for there is  
 wel a v. C. gentylmen yf holde thes lord  
 therby & they are al subiectes to hym  
 that is lord of yf place syt it passeth not  
 & wo yere ago that there was a lord of  
 this castell, who was called syt Secus to  
 le cour, & ful good and a gentyl knyght  
 who was right sage reputed and greet

rpehe, & right soze bedad, & wel beloued  
 of all people & syt it is of a trouche that  
 forning to this castell within ii. leges  
 ther of there is a forest in the which ther  
 is a maruailous great depe pit, & the  
 entre therof is. iiii. square, & it is well.  
 iiii. spere length brode, & it is so black and  
 stinking yf no creature can abide nere it  
 & into this abhominable pit there doth  
 repayze a meruailous & a right horrible  
 monster, the foulest figure þeuer was se  
 oz herde of, for he is wel. xxx. fote long  
 & his head thre tymes more larger tha  
 is the heed of an ore, & his eyes bigger  
 than a mans spst, and some of his teth  
 standing out his mouth more than a  
 fore & an halfe, wherwith he wyl bite  
 both yren & stele, & his armes bys and  
 longe without any mesure, his naples  
 oz clothes longer then a fote, so harde &  
 sharpe yf there is nothyng but that he wil  
 perceite, & all his body as blacke as a p  
 cole, and as hard as stele, for ther is no  
 thing yf can perceyue or payze him & also  
 he is of that strengthe that he is able to  
 carry away at ones. iiii. knyghtes armed  
 And he eateth neuer other mete but i. and  
 flethe of mankinde, & also he is so lighe  
 and swifte that an horse cannot ten to  
 hym, & oftentimes he hath ben assayed  
 w greathostes of men, but al that coude  
 neuer do him any manner of hurte ney  
 ther w swerde, spere, nor crosewe, nor  
 any other wapen & thus he doth grete  
 trouble to al the holt countre. And so syt  
 it fortuneth yf a tro pte pass aboute  
 Laurence ride, yf this sayd lord syt Sec  
 uelon was comig out of ynde the more  
 fro the emperour who loued him right  
 wel, & so he had thought to haue gone  
 home to his owne castell of the brosse, &  
 a wē yf of his seruantes in his company  
 & he passed by this forest were as it is  
 grete

## The story of Arthur

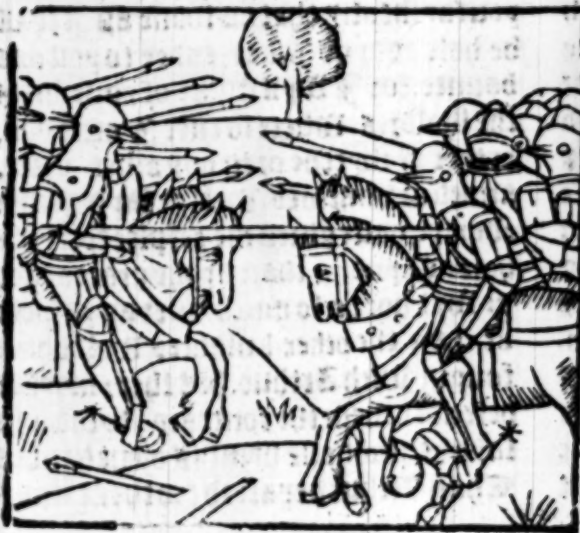
great pit is & so vnware to him be & his  
 squier dyd rest the moe farr fro the pit  
 & suffred his other cōpany to ryde forth  
 on afoze, & so it fortuneth that this foule  
 monster was the same morning yssued  
 out of his p t, & so as soone as he espied  
 this lord Acuelon he ran on hym & so  
 strangled & bare him into his great pye  
 and so there he was viterly lost, & whā  
 this was knowen there was made for  
 hi right great sorow, & spz this lord hath  
 a daughter who is named blaūche fleu  
 re, who was then of the age of .xv. yere  
 & whan she herde the tidiges of the deeth  
 of the lord her father she made ful grene  
 sorow & so she entred into a litle chaprell  
 and there she abode .xv. dayes contynuu  
 ally demening wonderfull sorow for her  
 father, and euer she prayd to god that she  
 might haue some vengeaunce of this  
 foule monster, so longe thus she prayde  
 that at last on a night she herde a voyce  
 that sayd to her how p the knight p  
 ouer cometh the lord of this castel at the  
 ende of two yeres shal fight against this  
 monster, how be it the voyce thewed not  
 whether he shold ouercome the monster  
 or els be ouercomen himself, than the pōge  
 damoysele reportyd al this that she herde  
 the voyce say to her brethren and to her  
 vncle, & so than they ordeyned amonge  
 them that her vncle shold abide in the  
 castel & Just with al knyghtes p passed  
 by p way, vnto the tyme p he were ouer  
 comen with a strong knight, & so it was  
 ordeyned that if the knyght of the castel  
 ouercome the knight without than he  
 shold lese his horse & harnes, & also be  
 led to the Justice, that it shold be cryd  
 throughout al the countre behold the kni  
 ght p is vanyquished, & p the straunge  
 knight without ouercome him of the ca  
 stel, than the knight stranger shold go

to the castel & there be receyued as the  
 lord thereof & be serued honourably, and  
 thā he shold kepe the castel & that vslage  
 til he were ouercome w an other knyght  
 & it is fortuneth your knyght Gouvernair  
 to passe by this castel and there did iuste  
 agaynst the lord thereof, & so ouerca h m  
 and many mo sith that tyme that he was  
 sayne to kepe the sayd vslage, & so spz he  
 is in this castel, & it passeth not now ro  
 come. vii. Weekes of the full seaso of two  
 yere sith the vslage begā, and sir J this  
 verily there shal come no knyght thider  
 betwene this & that by whome he shold  
 be ouercome, & as soone as the two yere  
 be full cōplet than shal he be led to fight  
 with this terribil monster, & I am sure  
 as soone as he cometh to hym he is but  
 dead and it were a. C. such as he is, and  
 spz the e is mo chan. CC. knyghtes cōp  
 nuall lodged aboute this castel to then  
 tene p he shold not stie a wal therfore I  
 repute him but a dead man, for there is  
 no succour cā help him. wel maister sayd  
 Arthur sith it is thus as ye saye as god  
 helpe me. there is nothing shal holde me  
 but I wyl go thither and put my body  
 in leoperdy for his, for it were a greates  
 shame for me thus to leese my knyght,  
 therfore Walde wyne fynde make redy  
 al my gere for I wyl remeue to morow  
 betymes, for certaynly I wyl abyde no  
 lenger for al the wolde, & whā the mai  
 ster herd him he knew wel p there was  
 none myghtier hym of hys enteryse,  
 how be it he sayde. & it ye cught not to  
 be reputed neither for sage nor wise that  
 wyl take on hym suche a thyng that he  
 cannot achewe and to go there as perill  
 is wout remedy it is no hardnes thus  
 to do. but a ful gret foly, therfore spz for  
 goddes sake abyde. Mayster of Arthur  
 speke no more to me therof, for I will be

3 wyl go thyder & loke ones on that fou  
le monsther though he be the deupl of hell  
wel sy: sayde the mayster as god wyl so  
be it, but sy: spth ye be he to whom it is  
destyned to achue all the aduētūres of  
this countre of Dozolois, wherof this  
aduēture is one of the grettest, the whe  
che 3 p: ay to god that ye maye subdowe  
it. chetfore sy: take with you this whys  
shelde for there is nothyng that can en  
paye it. 3 this swerde clarence for there  
was neuer per a better, 3 thus sy: spth ye  
wyl nedes go. I trust ye may go y moze  
surely. 3 I pray god to sende you good  
fortune & spede, & laufe to come agayne  
& so for y night they went to thet restes.

How that Arthur whan he was depar  
ted fro the porte norze for to go to hely  
uer Gouvernour oute of the castell of the  
brosse, & also for to spygh the mon  
ster, he founde in a fayne medowe the ne  
we of the duke of brygo: accompanied  
with .xiii. other knyghtes, who assayed  
hym rlyght sperryll, but defended hym sel  
fe so valyauntly that he flew. ii. of them  
and wounded so the dukas newe that  
he was fayne to be carped awaye in an  
horse lyster.

Ca. xlviii.



**I**n the morninge betwix Arthur  
chui rose and toke leue of the  
mayster, who sayde to hym.  
sy: for goddes sake retorne  
agayne as woxtly as ye may, for I haue  
many thynges to speke with you of, & sit  
3 this maketh that hepe this palatys  
the meane season, & Arthur promised so  
to do. & so departed he. & Satowd Wyn  
& rode forth. ii. dayes without synnyng of any  
aduēture tyll at last on a frydaye aboute  
none they entered into a fayne forst & ro  
de a longe season & founde no creature, as  
last he came in to a fayne medow lusty  
& grene, & Arthur was in a gret thoghte  
remembryng on his shelde y coude not  
be enpayed, & also of clarence his swer  
de the which wold cut auyr thyng, and  
he had gret desyre to se them proued, so  
thentred y he might knowe wheder they  
were of y vertue or no, also he was mou  
ted on his good horse asple, & as he rode  
thus thynkyng, he mette sodenly wyth  
xiii. knyghtes all armed, & .iiii. of them  
were on horsebacke, and the other .x. were  
lyghted on fote & were styng vnder an  
oke because of the lade we therof for y  
weber was than very hote, & whan these  
iiii. knyghtes on horsebacke saw Arthur  
one of them dyscargid hym selfe and  
wythout speakyng of any worde he  
ran at Arthur and strake hym on the  
shelden grete stroke and passed for he  
wythoute breakinge of his spere, and  
therewith Arthur looked aboute hym  
and at the last the knyght that had str  
ken hym was ready apparayled to  
haue retourned agayne. it an Arthur  
rannet hym, and the knyght brake  
hys spere, but Arthur gaue hym  
suche a stroke that he frustled downe  
bothe horse and manne all on an he  
pe, soo rudely that wyth the fallye

make one of his legs and his hoys fell on hym, than Arthur sayd to hym. Spye her traptour thus to stryke me without defiance, but I thinke ye haue not a great mede of a carpenter to make you some spites & croches, for I wene ye can not speke without a lonyng stroke. Than an other of these knyghtes came on Arthur and he wente shortly to the esch and his helms forward; & when his other two fellows sawe that they can bothe at ones on Arthur and hys wyth both thur; speas at ones in the myddes of his sheld but they remeued hym no more than yf they had stryken agens a grece coure, & so they passed forth, and than recouered a gayne wyth they; swerdes to their hands and all aplid spertly Arthur on his sydes than Arthur waxed angry & toke in his hand his good swerde clarence & strake therewith so the tryll that he cleue his head down to the sholdres; & when his felawes sawe that he felle to his fellows yf were on foot. And than Sir Jhesu barde newe to the duke of burgoy who was speke a fell, and capayne of al a company when he sawe one of his knyghtes slayne who was his colynger mayn he launfed in the nose and bette togyther his esch, & bended his bowes as though he had ben wode, & called for his helme and for his hoys, & wold suffer none of his capayn to go wyth him, for he sayd he wold alone requenge the deeth of his colyn, therewith he mounted on his horse and toke a grete spere & a myghty, than Arthur espyed where a spere stode lanting agaynst a tre, and toke it in his hand & rode agaynst the knyght that came requenge at hym, and they mette so rudely that they al to shewered they; spers & so passed forth without ony hurte ne courtse, and when Sir Jhesu barde sawe that

he had not been downe his felawes, he wente to Arthur and strake hym on the shelde wyth his swerde, but the stroke rebotind agayne, and when the knyght sawe that he was ryght sorrowful & sore displeased, and than agayne with al his myght he strake Arthur in the myddes of his shelde so rudely that his swerde brake & stonde in the myddes. And when Arthur sawe that he sayd, Syr knyght ye haue made of one two, for ye haue made a myghty swerde of a longe, now ye shall se how I can werke, than Arthur strake his sheld clere his good swerde on his helme so rudely that the stroke bove glens downe on his atme and did cut stonde all his barnes & entred in to the flesche so that the stroke bare a way agens the oth of his arme, the which stroke was so heuy that it defenched downe to the croupe of the horse and cleaf stonde the atlon of the tadel & gaue the horse a grete wounde, & the horse bot the horse and man fell downe to the erde. Than the knyghtes seruantes ran to helpe hym, but he laye wyth wythle in a traunce & when he reuyned he sayd to Arthur, Syr knyght ye haue so wounded me & slayne my colynger mayne, but syr I promysse you faythfully that as soone as I shall be hole agayne I shall render to you this bounte, for I wyll stryke of your heed the sholdres where so euer I mete you, whether in chyrche or in any other place, armed or vnarmed, wel syr sayd Arthur than ye haue giuen me respit till ye be hole agayne, & than by the grace of god ye wyll not do so much hurt as ye speke of than the other knyghtes wolde haue fought wyth Arthur, but they mayster defende them the contrary, because he sayd he wolde sle hym his owne handes. Than Arthur departed fro them, and

knichtes put theyr lord in a horse lytter  
and so caried him to a castel of his own,  
where as he remayned tyll he had reco-  
uered his helth And Arthur after that he  
was departed fro them rode so longe til  
he pssued out of the forrest, & rode vnto a  
great hye hyl, and at the descēding ther  
of he saw where a knight alarmed cam  
right rudely to himwarde, and a greate  
spear in his hande, and when he came  
to hym he sayde. *Syz* are ye of the com-  
pany of the. xiiii. knightes y went this  
way but late. *Hay* certaynly sayde Ar-  
thur for they did their payne to haue tro-  
bied me, but I thanke god they myst of  
theyr purpose, but *syz* I pray you wher  
foze do you are the questio. As god help  
me *syz* bicause ye were ony of them I  
wolde se you myne owne handes or e-  
uer ye pass any ferdre if I coude, & also  
theyr mayster for he is the most shames-  
fullest knyght p lousch, & falsest traytore  
that euer was, for he & his copany had  
nye slayne a brother of mine this mor-  
ning by this riuer's side bycause he wold  
not giue hym a sawcon that he bare on  
his fist, therfoze he ran at him with hys  
swerde in his hande and hath wounded  
him in. xv. places of his body, as he that  
was dnamed, & the traytore & all hys  
company be in barnes, & therfoze I am  
come after him to see him & I myght  
how be it I thinke it could not lie in my  
power, for he is a knight greatly redou-  
ted, neuertheles I had rather to be dead  
than my brother shuld be vntreued.  
*Syz* sayd Arthur take no thought for y  
matter, nor follow hym no ferdher thys  
day, for surely he is in no good poynte  
as now to fight with you nor yet with  
none other, for he is right soze wounded  
& *syz* sayd he knight blessed be god who  
kepe & pserue him that hath doone y

dede. Tha the knight returned agayne  
With Arthur talking of that matter. As  
the last Arthur demaunded of him in hat  
maner knightes they were & of whers.  
*Syz* as god helpe me it was *syz* I sems  
barte newe to the duke of Byggoz, the  
moste falsest traytore in all the worlde,  
for he hath murdred by treason the lord  
of argenton falsly withouth any cause. ye  
*syz* q Arthur sth it is he than his tross-  
ble pleaseth me so much the better, & by  
the grace of god he shal haue more ancy-  
aunce within shor space. So than they  
approched to y place where as this kni-  
ghtes brother lay soze wounded. Than  
Arthur called to him Sawdebyn who  
was a good surgeon, & comaunded it at  
he shuld do his diligence as shouldest  
myght be to hele that knight. And so ar-  
thur lay there al y night, & the night  
demaunded of hym whether he was ipe-  
sing and he answered and sayd to the  
castell of the bysse. wel *syz* said y knight  
and ye will beleue me ye shal not come  
there, for the goinge thider is much pe-  
ryllous. As for all that I care not sayd  
Arthur, for I wil go thider & Just with  
the knight that is within. wel *syz* sayde  
the knight in the name of god so be it, &  
*syth* ye wyll nedes go I shal bring you  
thider, for I am one of the knightes of  
the same company that are lodged with  
out to the nent that the knight that is  
within the castell shold not sle awake  
*Syz* q Arthur know you wel the knight  
that is withi the castell or what is his  
name. Merly *syz* he is a knight straun-  
ger & his name is *syz* Gouvernat a bigge  
knight and a strōg and a browne of co-  
lour, & there is no knight that Justly  
with him but he goth to the ground, &  
therfoze who so euer wyll Just with  
hath nede to be of great vertu & strength

## The story of Arthur

Well sayd arthur I wyl assay him, and so they wnt to rest, and in the mornynge aroose. and the sayde knyght woo was named Jolleran the almayne, and they rode forth the next way to the castell of the byosse, and arthur left Gawdewyn behinde hym at the castell to take hede to the wounded knyght. Thus arthur and Jolleran the almaynerode forth so longe togeder þ on a Wednesday aboute none they entered into a fayr medow before the castell of the byosse. And whan the knyghtes þ were without keeping the fences sawe Jolleran theyr felow and arthur, wyth hym, than they wente to theyr barneys and cam vnto them and made right greet chere to Jolleran theyr companion, and they sayd to Arthur, knyghte ye must furnishe that is belonging to you to do and þ is surely ye must arise this shelde and than ye must iust with the knyght that ye shall se yssue out of this castell. Well sayd Arthur in the name of god al this shall I do with a right good will. And these knyghtes behelde him well and perceyued that he was a goodly knyght and praysed hym moche in their herres. Therw arthur spured forth his good horse and ran at the shelde with his speere and gaue ite such a stroke þ he claued it asonder in the myddes. Than Jolleran sayd to his felowes, certaynly if he gyue such strokes to his enemies there may none endure him. Than Gouvernar in the castell was sone armed, and yssued out. And than the damoysele was moued on the wales to beholde the batayle. And whan Gouvernar sawe Arthur he knew him not because of his white sheld but Arthur knew hym right well, and behelde the countenance of Gouvernar how he stretched himself in hys sadell, and plunged his shelde, and dyessed his

speere and made hym redy. wherfore Arthur loued him much: he better, and so they ran eche at other, and mette so rudely þ Gouvernar brake hys speere, but Arthur strake hym so fierdly that Gouvernars horse enfor dyed and fel vnder hym, and so horse and man all went to the earth, and than Arthur tourned and layde his hande on his swerde and was coming agayne to gouvernar, and al that behelde his valyauntnesse praysed hym moche, and Gouvernar did nothing but was fayne to get hym on his feete. Than all the knyghtes went to hym and wolde haue vnarmed hym and led hym to the Justice. And whan Arthur sawe that, he coude not suffre that he shoulde haue so muche shame and sayd. Syng it is no right nor reason that ye shold lede him forth to the Justice, for hys horse fell vnder hym, and therfore though he fel it was the faute of the horse and not of þ knyght. for he hath done right well his deuoyre, and also he is my man, for I am his lord, wherfore he is bounde vnto to withstande hys mayster, so than he is not to blame syth he hath done wel his deuour. And whan Gouvernar herde his lord speke he knew him right well by his speche, than he tyd of his helme and ranne to hym, than Arthur lyghted of his horse and so they clipped and kissed and made greet Joye eche to other and whan Jaker saw his olde mayster arthur he kneeled downe and dyd hym greet reuerence. and whan al the other knyghtes saw þ great honour that Gouvernar and Jaker made to arthur, and how that he was theyr lord and maister they thought that wel that he was some noble man and of some great lygnage, and therfore they wolde not displesa him, but let Gouvernar alone in prayse,

so they broughte bothe Arthur & Gouver-  
nar in to the castell to the lady, and the da-  
moyzell receyued them with grete Joye.  
There Arthur remayned in grete Joye  
till it came to .iii. dayes space befoze the  
season prespced that he wolde go fyghte  
wpyth the terribyle monster. Chan all the  
knyghtes that were without cam to ar-  
thur to speke wpyth him, and whan they  
were in his presence and seynge hym so  
fayre & gentyl, wherfoze they loued him  
wpyth all theyr hertes, and sayde amonge  
themselve, it is grete domage to sende to

with me here this night and let vs make  
good chere and to mo. owe betymes we  
wyl remeue whan it shal please you. And  
soo they graunted hym and ratyed there  
all nyghte till it was tyme in the moyn-  
nyng to ryse.

How that Arthur foughte wpyth the mon-  
ster, the moost foulest & horryble fygure  
that euer was sene wpyth mannes eyen &  
so daynquyshed hym by his ballaunt pro-  
wesse & strak of his head and byd sende  
it to the sayre florence; Cap. xlii.



foze s<sup>r</sup> make you ready and all your har-  
neyes, for we fere greteley ye shall fynd it  
a Jeopardous aduenture to bryng to a  
good ende. Well s<sup>r</sup> sayde Arthur I am  
content to remeue whan so euer ye wyl  
haue me. And whan they herde hym saye  
so, they had of him grete pyte, soo that  
dmytse of thym pryncely wepte for hys  
fate. Wrys sayde Arthur I am here alo-  
ne, therfoze I praye you kepe companye



At the moynnyng Arthur arose  
and herde masse, & al the other  
knyghtes wpyth hym, and after  
masse the mete was made redi  
and whan they hadde earen at theyr ley-  
fer, than the knyghtes wente to theyr  
tentres and armed thym, and so dyd Ar-  
thur & Gouvernar. Chan lady broughte  
to Arthur a fayre swerde, the which was  
her faders, and soo he tooke and gpyte it

## The history of Arthur

aboute hym by his other swerde clarence  
than they called hym the knyghte wyth  
the two swerdes. So he toke his leue of  
the ladye, and she commaunded hym to god.  
And whan he was departed she said all  
wepyng. A gentyl knyght it is grete do-  
mage to sende suche a personne as ye be  
to your death. And whan arthur was out  
of the castell, than there were in his com-  
pany .v. hondred to conduye hym to the  
other castell, and so longe they rode that  
at last they aryued therat, and the same  
daye the monster had taken a bocher and  
deuoured him in the presence of them all.  
Without the castell gate, but whan the  
porter of this castell sawe al these knigh-  
tes comynge, he knewe well they were  
the knyghtes of the blosse that broughte  
wyth them the knyght that sholde fyghte  
wyth the monster, therfore he opened the  
gates, & than all the people of the castell  
canne to beholde Arthur, who was de-  
ne couered wyth his whyte shelde, & hol-  
ding his hand on the pomel of his swerde  
haupnge a ryghte goodlye chere and a  
hardy semblaunt, than euery persone that  
beholde him sayde eche vnto other. Alas  
What damage is it to sende suche a per-  
sone to his death. A gentyl knyght god  
haue mercy on thy soule, for thy body can  
not longe endure, & this was the comyn  
voyce, and so they conuayed hym on the  
degrees in to the hall, & that nyght there  
they rested thym, and in the mornyng  
they all arose and herd masse. And arthur  
receyued the holy sacrament of the bles-  
sed body of our lord Iesu christ in four  
me of brede, & after masse they all assen-  
bled them in the hall, and there talked to-  
gyder of dyuers maters, & as they were  
thus comynge they herde the monster  
rore and braye out for lacke of mete, and  
was pssued out of his den, & made grea-

ter noyse than .x. bulles had brayed all to-  
gyder, than all they of the towne and cas-  
tell had grente fere, wherfore they closed  
them selfe in theyr houses, & wythe faste  
they closed a windowes, for they knewe  
well that the monster rather than he wolde  
deye for hunger wolde come to that ca-  
stell and deuoure them all. And as soone  
as Arthur herde hym he demaunded for  
his harneys, and Gouernour dyd bypnyge  
it to hym wyth muche grete payne & fere.  
And all the other knyghtes were ryghte  
delem for his sake, for they doubted grete-  
ly of hym lest he sholde be slayne. And  
whan he was armed all the people of the  
castell folowed hym. Than the proces-  
sions went throughout all the towne and  
castell, and all prayed to our lord to ke-  
pe and defende theyr champrion. Than  
was Arthur mounted on his good horse  
and a grete spere wel headed wyth stele in  
his hande, and the whyte wynde aboute  
his necke, and clarence his good swerde  
about hym, and also the swerde that the  
lady of the blosse had gyven hym, and so  
he pssued out of the castell, than they shet  
faste the gates after hym, and so they all  
mounted vp to the battymetes of the wal-  
les to beholde the aduenture of Arthur,  
and so Arthur rode forth tyll he came to  
the entre of this pytte, & the monster the  
same tyme was styngynge on the bynke  
therof, & whan he espyed Arthur he rose  
vp on his fere, and bette so to gyder bys  
teeth that it was herde a grete waye of,  
& came to Arthur wyth his armes abo-  
de to thence that he wolde haue borne  
hym to his pytte, but wysely Arthur set  
his spere before hym & which was grete  
and bygge and well headed wyth fyne  
stele, and the monster who feared nothing  
canne so rudely agens the spere popyte,  
that the spere shreuered all to peces, but

it did no maner of hurte to the monster  
 & so he approached to Arthur, & thought  
 to haue embraced him in his armes, but  
 than Arthur put before him his wyte  
 shelde, & the monster dalyt with his nay-  
 les therat thinkinge to haue perced it  
 thugh, but in nowise he coude enpyre  
 the shelde, for the propertie therof was  
 such y nothing shold enter no; enpaye  
 it. And whan the monster saw y he had  
 done no hurte to the shelde he began to  
 enrage and fere like a fend of hell, and  
 than he toke Arthur by the helme with his  
 longe teth, the whiche were as sharp as  
 stele. And whā Arthur saw his mouth  
 so wyde open, he toke y swerde that the  
 lady of the brosse gaue hym and dalyt  
 it into his mouth. And whan the mon-  
 ster felte the swerde in his mouth, he let  
 go his hold of y helme & toke the swerd  
 byt wene his teth and al to brake it, as  
 though it had ben but glasse. And whan  
 Arthur saw that he kne w well that yf  
 clarence his good swerde byd not help  
 him his life was but lost, and so toke the  
 good swerde in his hand. And than the  
 monster toke him by the helme with one  
 of his handes, and by the sheld with the  
 other hande, & al his nayles perced bys  
 helme as lightly as though he had felte  
 nothing, & dalyt Arthur so soze with the  
 other hand on the shelde that nye he had  
 fallen with the stroke but he coude not  
 perce the shelde. Than arthur lyfte by  
 clarence his good swerde and strake the  
 monster therewith on the head so rudely  
 that the swerde entred therein moze thā  
 an handefull. And whan the monster  
 felte him selfe wounded, for anger, he  
 bette his teth together, and rouled bys  
 eyen the which glemed like brondes of  
 fyre, and bette togider his fistes & made  
 a terrible noyse.

How that the kinge Emendus sente  
 a knight named Bysebar accompanied  
 with a thousand men of warre to then-  
 tent that he and his company shold go  
 fight with the monster. And he with the sayde  
 knight arrived at the monsters place the  
 same season whyle that arthur and the  
 monster were fighting togider, & there  
 he and all his company dyd se how that  
 arthur slewe the monster withoute  
 helpe. Cap. I.

So it was aboute the season that  
 arthur shold thus fyght with  
 the monster, the myghty king Emendus  
 held open courte in his citie of Sabar,  
 and with him there was the emperour  
 of inde y moze, for this citie was right  
 nere adioyning to his empyre, and also  
 he was glad to be with king Emendus  
 because of his daughter Florence, whā  
 he wolde gladly haue had to his wyfe  
 and thereon he trusted whan the years  
 were ones expyred. And at this tyme  
 were all the other foure kinges, and the  
 princes of the realme of Morolois and  
 many other erles and barons, knygh-  
 tes and squyers, quenes, ladies and dai-  
 moyselles. Than there came to the  
 kynge many greute complayntes for  
 the hurte that the monster of the brosse  
 had done in all the countrey, than the  
 kynge tooke counseyler for this matter,  
 and so he was aduised and concluded  
 thereon to sende a. M. knyghtes armed  
 to go fyght with the monster. Than  
 there was chosen a ryght balpaunce  
 knyght to be thei capitayne, who was  
 called syrandell Bysebar, who was  
 one of the knyghtes perryng to Flo-  
 rence, & he toke with him such knyghtes  
 and men of warre as he wolde chose, &  
 so toke his leue of the sayde Florence, &

## The story of Arthur

she desired him that if he coude bringe  
 it aboute he should go to her castel of the  
 portenoyze, and commaunded her to her  
 clerke mayster Seiden, and enquire of  
 hym whether he haue herde any tryd-  
 ges of that mater & he went thider for  
 and commaunded hym & he should she we  
 vnto her clerke that the emperour wolde  
 haue her to his wyfe by force agaynst  
 her wyll. And so for Bysebat promised  
 to accomplyshe her commaundement if it  
 were to him possible, than he went fro  
 her, and toke his leue of the kinge and  
 of the emperour and of all the hole route,  
 and so departed and had well in his co-  
 pany a thousande armed knyghtes and  
 they rode forth so longe till at the laste  
 they arriued nere to the place where as  
 the monster was the same propre day &  
 houre that Arthur was fightinge with  
 hym, than Bysebat and al his compa-  
 nie did light downe on fote, & the mon-  
 ster who as than felte himself hurte on  
 the head with the stroke that Arthur had  
 giuen him as it hath ben shewed before  
 wherefore he brayed and rored so longe  
 that he myghte herde a great space of  
 And whan Bysebat sawe a fere of a  
 knyghte alone fygheing with this mon-  
 ster in right great perill, wherof he had  
 greates pite, and so had thought to haue  
 set on the monster with all his hole host  
 for to haue holpen Arthur, how be it he  
 thought he wolde se som what more of  
 the beling of the knyght, than the mon-  
 ster ranne to a tree that stood by the pyt  
 and toke it so rudely in his handes & he  
 tare it by roote and rinde, & therwith stroke  
 at Arthur, who for fere of the stroke  
 caste before him his whyte sheeld, & the  
 stroke did light thereon so rudely that it  
 ronge al the place ouer the which stroke  
 was so heuy that Arthur was fayne to

knele downe on one of his knees, & ther  
 with the tree brake a sonder in the mids.  
 Than the monster for anger was rie out  
 of his minde, & did caste at Arthur the  
 tronchon of the tree so rudely & it brake  
 in the ayre as it wente, but Arthur dou-  
 ted the stroke and stepte asyde, & let the  
 stroke glene by, and therewith he was  
 rie to the monster, & therewith the mon-  
 ster lste by his armes to haue embraced  
 hym but therwith Arthur stroke him be-  
 der the owne arme with his swerde cla-  
 rence so that his arme flew clene into &  
 felde, than the monster lepte forth and  
 with great pyre toke Arthur by the head with  
 his longe teth, & with his other hande  
 he toke him by the shoulde & tare awaye  
 all his harnays to the bare fleshe, and  
 thought to haue russed him on his backe  
 and haue borne him to his pyt but than  
 Arthur put his swerde clarence into his  
 bely vp to the harde crosse, and scrup it  
 was greenede that Arthur has as that  
 that good swerde, for there was none  
 othet in all the world shold haue holpe  
 him. And than whan Arthur had thus  
 put his swerde into his body, he there-  
 with rusht to the monster so verthoull  
 that he rombled him to the erth, & with  
 his falle he pulled of Arthurs helme fro  
 his head with his longe teth that were  
 so fastened therein that the helme coulde  
 not be gotten out of his mouth, for whan  
 he felte his death, he forned his teache  
 throughe the helme fast together, &  
 Arthur stroke at him agayne with his  
 swerde, wherwith his foule horrible head  
 flew into the felde, than Arthur sat him  
 downe for he was right sore laboured.  
 Than for Bysebat and all his compa-  
 ny lepte on theyr horses, & praised mo-  
 che Arthur for sleinge of the monster,  
 wherof they sayd he was & best knyght

of the world, and whan Byssebar came  
nye to Arthur than he lyghted. And whā  
Arthur sawe hym comynge he put hys  
shelde afoze hym and toke his swerde in  
his hande to defende him yf nede requy-  
red, and yet he had as than no helme, for  
it was styll in the mouth of the monster.  
But than Byssebar dyde of his helme a  
ryght curteysly dyd salure hym and sayd  
Syr god that all thinge fourmed kepe  
and saue you sir gentyll knyghte as the  
chefe floure of all chyualry, for ye alone  
haue acheued that enterpryse yf we thou-  
sande knyghtes were sente to do. Ha syr  
sayd Arthur saupnge your pleasure it is  
no suche dede as that ye and suche com-  
pany as ye speke of wolde nede to enter-  
pryse, nor I haue done noo thyng that  
ought sogretly to be praysed, for you or  
ony other knyght myghte as well haue  
done it better or worstelyer than I haue  
done, therfore this dede nedelytle to be  
spoken of, for it is to small of reputacion  
to be recounted for ony noblenesse. Well  
syr sayd Byssebar we knowe & se ryghte  
well what it is syr ye haue deliuered fro  
grete peryll of death the best parte of all  
this my companye, wherefore I requyre  
you that besyde this bounte that ye haue  
shewed vs as in slayinge of this monster  
that it wolde please you to shewe to me  
yet another bouite. Syr sayde Arthur de-  
maunde of me what it please you, and if  
I can or may do it I shall not fayle you  
Well syr than ye shall here what ye haue  
graunted me, syr it is of trouth that I  
am pertayning to the moost honourable  
quene that now liueth, & that is the saye  
Florence doughter to the myghty kynge  
Emendus kynge of the noble lande of  
Soyoloy, & as for me I am the mooste  
in sufficient knyght that he hath of a. W  
in his house. And home he it syr his no-

ble grace did send me accompanied with  
these other thousand knyghtes to them-  
tent that we wolde do to this monster as  
ye haue done alone god be thanked, for  
ye by your prowesse haue acheued that  
thyng that all other haue fayled of, syr  
this is the ende of my desyre that it wol-  
de please you to go with vs to the courte  
of the noble kynge Emendus, and so I  
shall be our companion and knyght to  
the noble Florence, and syr I ensue you  
it shall be youre true and faythfull com-  
panyon for I shall neuer haue any ma-  
ner of thyng but your parte shalbe ther-  
in. And whan Arthur herde his request  
he smyled a lytle & sayde. Syr I hartely  
thake you, but as now it wyl not be, for  
it behoueth me to go to the port noyre to  
mayster Steuen, for I haue promysed  
hym so to do, therfore syr I pray you be  
not myscontent though I can not at this  
tyme accomplissh your wyll and whan  
Byssebar herde him speke of the port noyre  
he sayd. Syr haue ye ben at the castell  
of the porte noyre. Ye truly sayd Arthur  
And syr I requyre you how dyd ye enter  
into the castel. Syr I dyd there so moche  
that thanke be god there I entred. And  
syr were ye on hye in the palays or dyd  
ye lye in the ryche bed. Ye truly syr said  
Arthur there I was & laye in yfrych bed,  
and tarped there, ii. dayes & ii. nyghtes.  
Well syr sayde Byssebar, I se well that  
ye haue acheued all the aduētures of that  
place, wherefore ye be the chefe souerayne  
knygh of al the world, syr I wyl ryde w  
you to the port noyre yf it please you for  
it behoueth me to speke w mayster Ste-  
uen my ladyes clerke, for I haue to him  
a message fro her noble grace, & syr I wyl  
sende home all this people w a newe of  
myn, who shal ber with him this mosters  
heed with your helme in his mouth, and  
he

## The story of Arthur

he shall present it fro you to my lady Florence. I sayd Arthur þ lady is ryght excellent and noble as I haue herd say, & I am to simple a person to sende onye thing to her grace, no; also I neuer saw her, no; she knoweth not who I am & al sochys present is of to final a reputaciō therfore me thinketh it were foly to me to send it to her grace, therefore say I requyre you let it alone. Certaynly q Wysebar þ wyl I not do, for the present is such þ I am sure it shal be receyued wth gladder chere than though ye had won a grete cyrc. Well sayd Arthur do as it shal please you best, how be it I had rather þ ye wolde let it alone. Than Wysebar called to him his neuewe, and sayde. Saye neuewe ye shal retourne vnto the courte and humbly comaund me to the kinges grace, and al so ye shall bere with you this monsters head and present it to my lady Florence fro a knyghte of hers, Whome she neuer sawe, no; he her, the whiche knyghte ye maye shewe vnto her grace hath aqupted the porte noye, and achened all alone the aduentures of that place & al so shew her how þ I am gone with the sayd knight to þ porte noye, to speke w her clerke mapster Steuen, for the mater þ she comaunded me at my departinge. Sayd his neuewe all this shal be done, & so toke the head & comaunded them all to god, and so departed, and all the other knyghtes ech of them wente home to theyr owne houses. Than all the people of the castell set op the gates and yssued oute and came before Arthur both Gouvernar & Jofferan the almayne and all other. and Jofferan made grete chere to Wysebar, and so al the people of the coultre came thyder to se the monster & Arthur theyr champpon, & sayde Sayd knyghte blessyd be the tyme that ener ye

were borne, and the moder that bare you for ye haue deliuered all this coultre fro deth. Than al the processions of the coultre came thyder & receyued Arthur with grete triumphe, & brought him in to the churche within the castell, & ther Wysebar, Jofferan, Gouvernar, & Jaket dydde bnameli. Than the lady blauche flour came thyder fro her castell of the brosse & descended downe fro her chayre, & so moued by the saydes into the palays & there she found Arthur bnamed, & Wysebar with him who dyd beholde Arthur meruayllously, for they were all a bashed of the grete beaute & grace that they sawe in hym. And whan they sawe this lady coming, they al arose and met her, and Arthur Wysebar and she sat downe al togider, and so talked of diuers thynges tyll theyr mete was redy, & than they wente therto & were rychely serued, & the nexte daye the lady went agayne to her castell of the brosse, & in this castell Arthur sojourned thre dayes, & than departed & Wysebar with him, & toke leue of al the knyghtes of that countre, & so they came to the castell of the brosse, where as the lady blauche flour receyued them wyth grete honour. & she made right grete chere to Gouvernar bycause he was w her all the season þ Arthur fought w the monster. & so Arthur sojourned in this castell. iiii. days and than he & Wysebar with him departed, & this lady blauche flour conueyed them a grete space & than she toke her leue and retourned agayne to her castell of the brosse. & than Arthur Wysebar Gouvernar & Jofferan rode forth tyl they arrived at the castell where Jofferans broder laye wounded. & Bardewyn had hi in healing, and as sone as Bardewyn knew that his lord was come, he was neuer so Joyfull before, and anne and encoun

med arthur and embraced him for tope:  
and y night they were there with le-  
ued. Now let vs leue to speke of arthur:  
for a season, & let vs speke of s<sup>r</sup> symon:  
hate newe to the duke of bygon who  
was borne to the castel of the roche soze  
wounded by arthur as ye haue herde here  
before. Now to s<sup>r</sup> symon. **C**how s<sup>r</sup> symon barles colyn entu-  
shed him in a great foell with a greate  
multitude of men of warre to thent to  
de arthur by treason, & there arthur dyd  
wpeh his handes. Suche dedes y in a ma-  
ner it was incredible. And how that go-  
uernar and byplebat were taken pris-  
oners & led forth to a toure, & there Ar-  
thur slew of his enemyes. v. honzred &  
moued into the toure, and so rescolued  
the prisoners in the spite of al the town  
and there wayue the palays. Cap. ii.



**I**s of a trouth how that ar-  
thur soze wounded s<sup>r</sup> symon  
barles the duke of bygons ne-  
uill vnder the castell of the  
roche, & thider his seruantes brought  
him, & there he lay a greate season at le-  
che crafte & so the ridinges ran all ouer  
the countrey how that the duke of By-  
gons newew lay soze wounded, and how  
that this was done by a straunge knight  
& at last these wordes came to the herig  
of a knyght of greate power. Who was  
called sir symon rescouer to the duke  
of bygon, and he had one of his sholozes  
hier than the other, & this s<sup>r</sup> symon  
was a right good knight and greatly  
redoubted, and he was colyn getmayn  
to s<sup>r</sup> symon barles, & broder to the knyght  
y was slayne by arthur and whan he  
herde the deeth of his broder, & how that  
his colyn was soze wounded, & lieng at  
the castell of the roche, he was therewith  
soze dyspleased & lepr on hys backe ac-

panied w. x. of her knyghtes, & so wente  
to the castell of the roche to se his colyn, w. o  
as thā coude not lere out of his bed, thet  
they to saluie eche other, than s<sup>r</sup> symon  
demaunded him how he did. And he  
answered & said y he was right soze hurt  
well colyn I pray you who hath doone  
this dede to you & also slayne my broder.  
S<sup>r</sup> symon I cannot tell you, for it was a kni-  
ght sleaunger. Whu is gone towarde the  
castell of the bylle as it hath ben liexed  
me, & also it is sayd y he purpothe to re-  
tourne againe to folle the almanac y  
came wat y he came, therfore I am right  
soze dyspleased that I am nor as yet hole  
for if I were recoured I wolde wree to  
him agayne. Wel s<sup>r</sup> said s<sup>r</sup> symon take  
ye no thought, for yf he come that way a  
gayne he shall be right wel encountered  
for ych he had done me one displeasure  
I shall quite hi agayne w. two. A good  
colyn q<sup>d</sup> s<sup>r</sup> symon barles for goddes sake  
abide tyll I be hole, for verily he is a  
knyght of great valur. it is I as yet that  
hereth the hurt, therfore I pray you let  
me beat the quical therof, for I fere me  
lest he wyl do you moze damage than  
he hath done to me. Ye saye well quod  
s<sup>r</sup> symon I wil do as you say, & that  
he sayd to apese his colyn but in certē tē  
after as soon as he might pryncely sente  
a varlet to espie which way that arthur  
recourmed fro the castell of the bylle, and  
thus arthur & byplebat was w. folle-  
ran in his broders castell, & there they de-  
termined y they wolde not remene thys  
tyll the wednesdai next after, thā the var-  
let returned againe to s<sup>r</sup> symon & the  
wed htm to here as arthur was & how y  
he wolde depart thens the wednesdai  
next after, & sayd. S<sup>r</sup> now yf ye wyl  
ye may be reuenged of the injury that  
hath ben done to your broder, & also to

## The story of Arthur

your cousin, for the knight that hath done  
it, on Wednesday next betime will pass  
by the same place where as your cousin  
was hurte and your brother slaine. And  
Whan spz ffermont herde that he hadde  
great Joye. Than he sente messengers  
to al the men of warre that belonged to  
the towne & castell of the roche & al the  
countrey aboute, commaunding them  
al to be in harneys redy the Wednesday  
next insowyng in the forest at a certayn  
place as couerly as they myght. With  
out any noyse. And also he commaunded  
that none should be so hardy that mas-  
ter to shew to spz ffermont his colyn.  
And arthur all this season was in the  
castell with ffolerans brother, and there  
he had ryght great chere and Wyplebar  
also, & there they were richely served &  
honoured, & the wounded knight was  
as than through hole and was amonge  
them. And the next day betymes they  
herde masse and thā arthur went to his  
hoyle and with him Wyplebar, ffoleran  
and his broder, and Gouvernar, Sawdes  
Wyn, & faket and. viii. other knyghtes  
so that they were in all to the nombere of  
xiiii. persons, and so they rode forth til  
they came to the same moorayne where  
as Arthur mette with ffoleran. Who  
than sayd. Spz in this place ye made  
me to retourne agayn whan I pursued  
after spz ffermont. What is trouthe sayd  
Arthur well spz sayde ffoleran I had  
wende it had ben you verely but than ye  
shew me how that ye had wounded  
hym, but spz I know well he had rather  
die than he wolde be vntreued his hert  
is so fel, & spz I know wel that there is  
not a more traytoure in al the wolde, for  
he doth all his dedes by false treaso, ther-  
fore spz I doubte greatly of hym least  
that he haue falsly laide some wayte on

your retourne and so thinke to be vtuen-  
ged on you, therfore after myne oppynio-  
ne shal take out harneys what so euer  
fortune. In the name of god sayde Ar-  
thur I agre wel thereto, thā they al took  
they harneys & rode forth saye & so-  
ly til they came to the same place where  
as the busshemence of theyr enemyes  
were. And there was spz ffermont &  
xi. other knyghtes with him on hoysback  
and. xiiii. on fote, and whan they sawe  
arthur and his company they mounted  
on theyr hoyses and slownd a great hoym  
and therewith all they came forth into  
the playne. And whan arthur saw them  
he demaunded of ffermont what people  
they were, and whether he knew them  
or not. And he answered and sayd. Spz  
it is spz ffermont & all his power who  
is colyn germane vnto the duke of by-  
goys neww, and broder to the knyght  
that ys slaw, therfore he cometh on you  
for your ill, therfore there is no nothig  
to do now but let eche of vs do our de-  
uoye to defende our liues. Well sayde  
Wyplebar and I shall do my part. And  
by my fathers soule sayd Gouvernar &  
I shall not be behynde, and therewithall  
the busshemence brake out of the woode,  
and ranne all at ones enaithys com-  
pany, and Wyplebar encountred so rade-  
ly with the first y he put his spere cleue  
through his body, and so he fell downe  
dead in the place, than he dreynd out his  
swerde and stroke so an other that his  
head flew into the felde. Than Gover-  
nar stroke one so with his spere that he  
ouerthrew bothe hoyle and man, to the  
erth, and than with his swerde he stroke  
so an other that he claue his head to the  
tether, and so dashed into the pyse and  
layde on with such strokes that he slew  
and brake downe all that he attayned

And than came Jofferan & at this first  
meeting he overthrewetwo downe to the  
erth. And whan Arthur sawe his compa-  
ny do so valayuntly he had great ioye.  
And at last he espyed syz firmont whe-  
re as he had beten downe to the erth syz  
Bysebar, than he dasyt his horse wth hys  
spurres and couched hys spere, & strake  
syz firmont so rudely that he sent bothe  
knyght and horse flatte to the erth ryght  
soze astonyed, and so lape a greate space,  
and at the last his people remounted him  
agayne. Than Arthur thurst into the  
prese with his good swerde clarece in hys  
hande, and the syzste that he encounterd  
he strake hym wth such vertue that he  
claued hym to the holdres, & fro an other  
he toke of the head, and lapyd on amonge  
his enemyes on euery syde wth such stro-  
kes that he confounded all that euer he  
touched, for he cut of armes, legges, han-  
des and heades, and bydmeruaylouslye  
with his hande, for he made as greate  
waye asfoze hym as though his enemyes  
had ben vnarmed, for theyr armure cou-  
de not withstand the weyght of hys stro-  
kes, how be it he and his company were  
but. xliii. in nombre, & his enemyes were  
well to the nombre of. ccc. and also euer  
they encreased in the nombre, for syz firmont  
had sent his commaundement to the  
castell of the roche, and to the marches  
there about. And so it fortuneth that wth  
syz firmont was remoued he was mo-  
che soztowfull because of hys people that  
he sawe so soze overloden, & therwyth he  
dasyt to his horse and strake Jofferan so  
rudely that he overthrewet hym cleane fro  
his horse and by cleane force toke hym pri-  
soner. And whā Gouvernar sawe that he  
lyfted by his swerde & strake syz firmont  
so rudely on the helme that he cut of cleane a  
large hande byede therof, and the stroke

descendedde wne on his helme & claued se-  
afonder in þe myt des, & fliothus þe flioth  
he dyde lyght on the horse necke & strake  
of the horse heed cleane for the body, and  
ther wth syz firmont fell downe to the  
erth, & than tho that helde fast Jofferan  
dyde let hym goo at large, because they  
went to helpe theyr mayster, who as it  
was soze handeled by Gouvernar, & than  
Bysebar brought to Jofferan an other  
horse that he had wonne fro a knyght, & so  
quykly Jofferan lepte by the roche, & dasyt  
agayne in to þe prese, & than syz firmont  
was remoued agayne on his horse, than  
he caused a grete horne to be soured, &  
than his people rapled theym toggyther &  
xl. of theym in a flocke toggyder ran all at  
ones on Bysebar and on Gouvernar and  
on Jofferan and so closed them aboute  
and strake them on euery syde. And whā  
Arthur sawe that he rusht in the thickest  
of that prese and brake downe and ouer-  
toured all that euer was befoze hym, &  
bette downe knyghtes meruaylously  
of that al fledde befoze hym as lumbes  
doth fro the wolfe. But than there fell,  
on Arthur. vii. score at ones, who came  
fro the castel, wherfoze Arthur was sayn  
to drawe backe and could not as than so  
cour his knyghtes that were nere taken.  
And so than syz firmontes company kyl-  
led Gouvernars horse vnder hym. Than  
Gouvernar layde on wth hys swerde on  
all sydes and mayned and slewe manye  
knyghtes, and Bysebar and Jofferan  
dyd helpe hym full manly with all theyr  
power. And at the last Gouvernar aduyn-  
sed wel a knyght who al the daye befoze  
had doone hym moche trouble, and stra-  
ke hym so rudely wth hys swerde that  
he dasyt it cleane thughe hys body, and  
soo he toke hys horse and mounted ther-  
on in the sytte of all his enemyes, than  
he

## The story of Arthur

your cousin, for the knight that hath don  
it, on Wednesday next betime well pass  
by the same place where as your cousin  
was hurte and your brother slaine. And  
whan spz ffermont herde that he hadde  
great Joye. Than he sent messengers  
to al the men of warre that belonged to  
the towne & castell of the roche & al the  
countrey aboute, commaunding them  
al to be in harnays redy the Wednesday  
next ensowyng in the foreste at a certayn  
place as couerly as they myght wyth  
out any noyse. And also he commaunded  
that none should be so hardy that ma-  
ker to shew to spz ffermont his colyn.  
And arthur all this season was in the  
castell with Joffranys brother, and there  
he had ryght great chere and Wyplebar  
also, & there they were richely served &  
honoured, & the wounded knight was  
as than through hole and was amonge  
them. And the next day betymes they  
herde masse and then arthur went to his  
horse and with him Wyplebar, Joffran  
and his brother, and Gouvernar, Bawbe,  
Wyn, & Jaket and. viii. other knyghtes  
so that they were in all to the nombre of  
xiii. persons, and so they rode forth til  
they came to the same moitayne where  
as Arthur mette with Joffran. Who  
than sayd. Spz in this place ye made  
me to retourne agayn whan I pursued  
after spz ffermont. That is trouth sayd  
Arthur well spz sayde Joffran I had  
wende it had ben you verely but than ye  
shew me how that ye had wounded  
hym, but spz I know well he had rather  
die than he wolde be vntreued his hert  
is so fel, & spz I know wel that there is  
not a more traytour in al the wolde, for  
he doth all his dedes by fals treachery, ther-  
fore spz I doubte greatly of hym least  
that he haue falsly laidef. me waye on

your retourne and so thinke to be retri-  
ged on you, therfore after myne oppynio-  
ne shal take out harnays what so ever  
fortune. In the name of god sayde Ar-  
thur I agre wel thereto, then they al took  
they harnays & rode forth saye & soft-  
ly til they came to the same place where  
as the busshement of they enemyes  
were. And there was spz ffermont &  
xl. other knyghtes with him on horseback  
and. xxi. on fote, and whan they sawe  
arthur and his company they mounted  
on they horses and sowned a great horn  
and therewith all they came to the inco-  
the playne. And whan arthur saw them  
he demaunded of Joffran what people  
they were, and whether he knew them  
or not. And he answered and sayd. Spz  
it is spz ffermont & all his power who  
is colyn germaine unto the duke of by-  
gors newew, and brother to the knyght  
that pillew, therfore he cometh on you  
for your yll, therfore there is no nothig  
to do now but let eche of vs do our de-  
uoye to defende our liues. Well sayde  
Wyplebar and I shall do my part. And  
by my fathers soule sayd Gouvernar &  
I shall not be behynde, and therewithall  
the busshement brake out of the woode,  
and ranne all at ones enaithurs com-  
pany, and Wyplebar encountred so rade-  
ly with the first y he put his spere cleue  
through his body, and so he fell downe  
dead in the place, than he drew out his  
swerde and stroke so an other that his  
head flew into the felde. Than Gover-  
nar stroke one so with his spere that he  
ouerthrew bothe horse and man, to the  
erth, and than with his swerde he stroke  
so an other that he cleue his head to the  
tebbe, and so dasty into the pyele and  
lapde on with such strokes that he slew  
and bare downe all that he attayned

vnto, than came Jolleran & at this first  
 meeting he ouerthrewe it so downe to the  
 erth. And whan Arthur sawe his compa-  
 ny do so, valaynly he had great ioye.  
 And at last he espyed syz firmont whe-  
 re as he had beten downe to the erth syz  
 Bysebar, than he dasyt his horse wth his  
 spures and couched his spere, & strake  
 syz firmont so rudely that he sent bothe  
 knyght and horse flatte to the erth ryght  
 soe astonyed, and so lape a greate space,  
 and at the last his people remounted him  
 agayne. Than Arthur thurst into the  
 prele with his good swerde clarece in his  
 hande, and the syzste that he encountered  
 he strake hym wth such vertue that he  
 claued hym to the sholdres, & fro an other  
 he toke of the head, and layd on amonge  
 his enemyes on euery syde wth such stro-  
 kes that he confounded all that euer he  
 touched, soe he cut of armes, legges, han-  
 des and heades, and bydmercuriouslye  
 wth his hande, soe he made as greate  
 waye afoze hym as though his enemyes  
 had ben vnarmed, soe they armure cou-  
 de not withstand the weyght of his stro-  
 kes, how be it he and his company were  
 but. xlii. in nombre, & his enemyes were  
 well to the nombre of. ccc. and also euer  
 they encreased in the nombre, soe syz firmont  
 had sent his commaundement to the  
 castell of the roche, and to the marches  
 there about. And so it fortuneth that wth  
 syz firmont was remoued he was mo-  
 che sorowfull because of his people that  
 he sawe so soe overladen, & therewith he  
 dasyt to his horse and strake Jolleran so  
 rudely that he ouerthrewe hym cleane fro  
 his horse and bydne soe toke hym pri-  
 soner. And whan Gouvernar sawe that he  
 lyfied by his swerde & strake syz firmont  
 so rudely on the helme he cut of cleane a  
 large hande byede therof, and the stroke

descendedde it ne on his heide a clauie se-  
 asonder in his mytles, & fro thence he  
 he byde lyght on the horse necke & strake  
 of the horse heed cleane soe the body, and  
 therewith syz firmont fell downe to the  
 erth, & than tho that helde fast Jolleran  
 byde let hym goo at large, because they  
 went to helpe they mayster, who as it  
 was soe handeled by Gouvernar, & than  
 Bysebar brought to Jolleran an other  
 horse he had wonne fro a knyght, & so  
 quykly Jolleran lepte by theron, & dasyt  
 agayne in to the prele, & than syz firmont  
 was remoued agayne on his horse, than  
 he caused a grete horne to be soured, &  
 than his people rayled theym together &  
 xl. of theym in a flocke togpyder ran all at  
 ones on Bysebar and on Gouvernar and  
 on Jolleran and so closed them aboute  
 and strake them on euery syde. And whan  
 Arthur sawe that he was in the thickest  
 of that prele and brake downe and ouer-  
 tourned all that euer was befoze hym, &  
 bette downe knyghtes mercuriously  
 of that al flebbe befoze hym as lambes  
 both fro the wolfe. But than there fell,  
 on Arthur. vii. score at ones, who came  
 fro the castel, & herfoze Arthur was fayn  
 to drawe backe and could not as than so  
 couer his knyghtes that were nere taken.  
 And so than syz firmontes company kyl-  
 led Gouvernars horse vnder hym. Than  
 Gouvernar layde on wth his swerde on  
 all sydes and mayned and slewe manye  
 knyghtes, and Bysebar and Jolleran  
 byde helpe hym full manly with all they  
 power. And at the last Gouvernar adu-  
 sed wel a knyght who al the daye befoze  
 had doone hym moche trouble, and stra-  
 ke hym so rudely wth his swerde that  
 he dasyt it cleane thurgh his body, and  
 soo he toke his horse and mounted there-  
 on in the spyte of all his enemyes, than  
 he

## The story of Arthur

he rusht agayne into the prele and layde on with myghty st. okes rounde aboute hym. And at the laste these people on fete slewe both Bysbar and Jollerans horses vnderneath them, and lyke valyaunt knyghtes they lepte on theyr fete, and by grete vertue defended themselves, but the prele was so thicke & so grete & they were ouercharched With the people on foote þy by cleue force they were taken prysoners, and thā they allā on gouernar and kyled agayne his horses vnder hym, and there he valyauntely dyde defende hymselfe meruayllouslye With his handes. And whan he saw hymselfe at that mytcheue & his sclawship takē prysoners he sayd. Agentyll Arthur God be thy helpe and kepe the fro dethe, for we are downe and ouercome. And whan Arthur hēde that and saw how they were takē thā he abandone his hert and body to rescow his knyghtes, & so daltre into the prele, & fyerfly layde on rounde aboute hym on euery syde, and dyessed hymselfe towarde Gouernar, but it auayled hym nothing for Gouernar Bysbar and Jollerā were taken and led forth toward the castel, and whan Arthur saw theym so ledde forth he was right sorrowful, and therewith he dyde so moche that it was grete meruayle to beholde hym, for he brake a sonder the grete preles, & all þeuer he attayned vnto went to dethe, so that the hartepest þe was there was in grete fere to encounter hym, but the prele was grete that dyde folow after him and did cast at him euery thing that they coude gette, thynkyng eyther to sleye hym or elles his horse, and ther that led his knyghtes to the castell warde were as than entred into a narrowe causy the whiche brought them to a grete ruyne the whiche they muste passe ouer by Wypppe, for there was no bypdge

and so they entred into the Wypppe, and hastid them very fast to enter into the castel with theyr prysoners. And whā Arthur sawe howe that he had lost his.iii. knyghtes, he dyde and aduencured hym selfe so fere that there was neuer knyghte that euer dyd suche an enterpryse before, but he had neuer no maner of feare, ne neuer doubted creature, than he lyghted of his hors, & as by fortune there was another Wypppe departyng fro the longe spde, and therewith he toynded togyder his feiz and lepte of the longe into the Wypppe among all his enemies, and his good sword drawn in his hande, and the fyrste that he encountred, he claue his head to the chyn and alwayes the Wypppe sayled towarde the castel, & he delt suche strokes among them that for feare manye of them lepte into the Water, & so were drownded & the remenaunt slaine. And at the last þe Wypppe drew so nere to the castell wall that they that were within the castell dyd cast downe greate hokes of yren, & therewith drew the Wypppe to the Wyre, and than they ran to theyr harneys, & toke theyr crossbokes & other weapons of warre. Than Arthur lepte out of the Wypppe and toke one of the grappers of yren and did fasten it surely to a ryng in the castell wall to the intent that the Wypppe shoulde not departe thence. And they of the castel did shotte and caste greate stones and barres of yren at hym, but alwayes he reuered him selfe to his whyle Wypppe so þe he coude not be hurted for suche was the vertue of the Wypppe that it coude neuer be enparzed. And the mayster of the castell caused the grete bell to be sowned wher With all the people of þe castell were moued and pssued oute in to the felde, and flocked rounde aboute Arthur, & there was than so grete noise þe it was wonder to here, & Arthur helde in

his hande clarence his good swerde, soo  
that there was none that approached ne-  
re hym, but shortly he ended his life.  
And all this season there was a gret so-  
re that kept Arthurs knyghtes, & same  
fully deite with them that it was grete  
pyte to se, for some pulled them by theyr  
heres, and some by theyr berdes, & some  
berte them w grete floutes, & some cryed  
do wne with them, & them out of hand.  
And yf syz fymont had not commaun-  
dout the contrary, they had bene al slayne  
to they had had a. Mylles, for they were  
his ter chased agaynst them than wilde bo-  
ares be whan they be hunted. And than  
nothan syz fymont had taken the reme-  
moraunt of syz Wylsebars knyghtes, than  
he retourned to the castel & all his people  
the which were well to the nombre of ii  
thousand, & alwayes his people increased  
it more & more, for they repayed to hym of  
all the townes and countrees adioyning  
about hym. And so they passed ouer the  
sayner, & than he commaunded þ the knygh-  
tes that were taken prisoners sholde be  
ledde forth into the grete dongeon of the  
castell, and there to be vnaarmed, and as  
he commaunded so it was done. And so Ar-  
thur saw howe they were ledde in to the  
castell, but the ptele wate so grete that he  
coude not come at them. Than came syz  
fymont & thre scawe with hym on horse-  
backe, and all they set at ones on Arthurs  
and dasyt at hym with ptes, and dydde  
wte at hym grete quareilles, & caste mai-  
ny a grete stone at his head. And whan  
Arthur sawe þ he was so sore handled as  
monge them, and perceyued well it was  
harde for hym to scape the grete dasyer  
that he was in, thought inwardly to hi-  
selfe that he wolde sell his lyfe dere or he  
lost it, and therwith he laced himself. &  
lepte into the myddes of the pteale with

his good swerde in his hande, & layde on  
roude aboute hi as freshely as though he  
had not fought of all the day before, &  
so made a wyde way euer before hym, &  
dyd so valpaurly that some of the knygh-  
tes that were enemyes had of hym gret a  
pyte, and soo somewhat withdrew them  
selfe, what for pyte, & what for fere, for  
doyng of hym on hurte, and sayde eche  
to other. Saynt marie what maner of  
knyght is this, it were grete domage he  
sholde thus lese his lyfe. And whan syz  
fymont sawe þ these knyghtes forbore  
Arthur, he was therwith so sorowfull þ  
he was nygh enraged therby out of his  
mynde, and so his knyghtes despyed him  
for goddes sake that he wolde haue pyte  
on Arthur seyng that he dydde so nobly  
that daye in dedes of armes, & also con-  
siderynge þ there was so many agens  
hym, but he sayde he wolde in noo wyse  
spare hym, but swore freshly þ he sholde  
dye or he departed, & therwith he dasyt  
his horse with the spurres and thought  
to haue stryken Arthur behynde him, but  
Arthur, sawe him commynge and watched  
wysely his stroke and let him passe by, &  
as he passed by Arthur aduysed him well  
and strake at him with clarence his good  
swerde, & the stroke dyd lyghte betwene  
the helme and the necke so that the head  
flew cleue in to the fyelde, and than the  
body fell downe to the ground. Than his  
knyghtes and people came & wondred al  
aboute him. And whan Arthur sawe how  
they all toke hede to þ dede body, as faste  
as he myght he went by to the castel that  
same way þ he sawe his knyghtes lede  
forth. And at the last he came to a grete  
dore of yren the which as than he found  
open, & so he entred into the tour & there  
he found them that were vnaarming of  
Wylsebar & his felawes, & than he dytte

## The story of Arthur

fast the doze after hym that none sholde  
neither enter no; yssue out, & lyke a wil  
de lyon he ran on them & wpyth his swerd  
cut them in peces as the sythe dooth the  
grasse, & whan Gouvernat sawe Arthur  
his mayster hys herte began to reuyre,  
for he wende verely þ he had bene slayne  
and his handes were fast tyed togeder &  
with his teithe & with his clene strenght  
he byast asonder the binding wherwpyth  
he was bound, than he ran to one of them  
that bounde hym and rashed out of hys  
handes his wepen, & therewpyth he gaue  
hym suche a stroke that he desceuered life  
and body asonder, & than he ranne to the  
doze to kepe that none shold escape that  
waye, for they that came to þ doze went  
no moze to they; felawes, and whan they  
sawe how they were delte with  
all, & how that they; felawes  
were slayne, some of theym  
for fere lepte oute of the toyn-  
dowes into the water and so  
som swam & some were drow-  
ned. Thus Arthur delpyered  
the tour of them all, for there  
was not one that abode there  
but he was slayne, & whan he  
was thus delpyered of hys  
enemyes, than he came to hys  
knyghtes that wer bound faste  
lyke prysoners and so loosed  
them, and whan Arthur sawe  
Wysebar so faste bounde and  
wrapped with cordes he saide,  
a dere frend ye were not wonte  
thus to be noursyshed, yf I have  
come to that noursyse þ hath caused ydu  
thus to be swathed, & so he vnloosed him  
and also Gawdewin and Jaket and such  
other þ had ben taken prysoners, & than  
he closed fast all the dozes of the toure to  
thentent þ none shold enter into them, &

this toure was right strong, for it was  
able well to kepe & susteyne .iii. monthes  
x. M. men of warre, so that they wer wel  
furnysched with vytayle, but these noble  
knyghtes had not as than within al the  
tour of vytayle the mourenance of a peni  
wo;th neyther of mete no; drynke, wher  
fore god be they; apde & comfourt for this  
present tyme. Let vs leue to speke of the,  
and let vs speke of the duke of bygozs ne-  
uwe, who was sore hurte lyeng at his  
castell of the roche as haue herde be-  
fore.

How Arthur & his company were  
sieged in the palais by the duke of  
but thanked be God they escaped by  
subtyll arte of mayster Steuen clerke  
the saye flozence of Sozolops. Can-  
g



Whan the mayre of the roche hadde  
caused the grete comyn bell of the  
towne to be ronged, the Dukes ne-  
uwe as he lay in his bedde sicke herde it  
and demaunded of a seruaunte of his what  
it myght mean, & his barlet thynkyng

to hyde the couſeyle fro hym ſayde, ſp: it  
is for nothing. Tel not me that tale ſayd  
he, for that tell is not ronge but it is for  
ſome gret cauſe, therfore I charge the to  
tell me the trouth. Well ſp: q: the varlet  
ſp: ye wyl nedeknowe it I Wal ſpew  
you, ſp: it is ſo ſp: ſp:monte your coſyn  
cauſed the knyght p wounded you to be  
watched in ſo moche p as now he hath  
founded hym, & therfore he had ſomoned  
all the people of this towne & countre a  
bout to come to hym to thentent eithet  
to take o: to ſee this ſayd knyght and al  
his company. Why ſayde ſp: Alembarte  
are they than ſpyghtyng togyder, & is he  
not yet taken. Sp: ſayd the varlet I can  
not tell you. And as they were thus tal  
kyng togyder there cam to them into p  
chambre a knyght ſore wounded bledige  
faſt and ſayd to the dukes newewe. Sp:  
it is now we wo: ſe than cuer it was for ſir  
ſpymont is ſlayne & his heed ſtryken of  
And whan ſp: Alembarte herde that, he  
ſate him by in his bedde & demaunded of  
the hurt knyght who had done p dede.  
Sp: ſayd he the ſame knyght that ſlewe  
his broder and wounded you. Well good  
frende & is not the ſame knyght ſlayne  
No no ſp: ſayde the knyght I thinke be  
rely he be noo man but rather a ſende of  
hell, for he doubteth no maner of thyng  
fo: he confoundeth all that cuer he attai  
neth vnto. for this daye he hath ſuſtayne  
d ſoo muche by his body that he hath  
ſhedde the blode of. v. hondred perſones  
& cofounded & ſlayne moo than can well  
be ſpoken of o: nombred wyth the good  
helpe of this company who are right va  
lyant & bygoztus. A ſp: ſayd Alembart  
I am ryght vnhappy if they thus eſcape  
me, but I requyre you to tel me wher they  
be. In good ſatp ſp: q: the knyght, they  
are in ponde grete toure, where as were

all the priſoners that were taken, but ſir  
Whan theſe deuyſes came thider there  
were but ſew p eſcaped death, and ſo they  
hauē louſed all the pꝛiſoners & hauē faſt  
ſette them ſelfe within the tour ſo that  
none can come at them. Well thā I char  
ge the goo make a crye & reyle by all my  
men of warre & let them be ſiege the tour  
rounde aboute and pytche by my paup  
lyous & tentes, for ſurely I wyl ſamꝛy  
them o: they get them. Than anon the  
crye was made thꝛoughout all the towne  
and the dukes newewe tent was pyght  
by, & hymſelfe boꝛne into it, and than he  
ſente all aboute the countre, & coman  
ded euery man that was able to bere har  
neys to come to hym in all haſte poſſible  
And there reſorted to hym wel to p nom  
bre of. v. hondred o: aboute, & ſo lodged  
themſelfe rounde aboute the toure. And  
than ſp: Alembarte comāunded ſtraytly  
that none ſhold be ſo hardy to aſſayl the  
toure tyll ſuche ſeaſon as he were cleue  
hole of his woꝛides, and tyll the duke of  
bygoz his vncle were comen to hym, for  
he ſware grete othes, he wolde ſle Arthur  
and his cōpany al quycke his owne han  
des, & than dyꝛe them in the ſonne, thus  
ſp: Alembarte rayled on theſe noble kny  
ghtes, who were as then lokyng out of  
the Wyndowes of the toure, & than they  
ſaw right well how that people came &  
lodged rounde aboute thepym the toure  
And Gawdelwyn & Jaket were lokyng  
out at another Wyndowe into the town  
warde, & there they eſpyed ioyninge to p  
ſame toure a ryghte ſayre manner beſe  
mynge as ſtronge a hous as coude be de  
uſed, cloſed aboute w ſtrongehye Wal  
les, & grete gates bounde with grete bar  
res of yꝛen, wyth drawe briges & poꝛte  
colyces, & wel bolmarked & cauſoyed,  
anda grete & a depe water betyng on the

## The story of Arthur

Wallas, to save the trowth this place was  
right stronge, and within this hous they  
sawe a chymney ryght soze smokynge, and  
also they smelled the kechyn, & felte wel  
the sauour of roste & fryed mete, & so ther  
was in dede, for there was ordeyned all  
the mete & the dukes newe we & hys com-  
pany shoulde haue had for it was the don-  
geon & belonged to the duke of bygon. A  
good lord & Bardewyn I wold I wer  
in yonder kechyn to ponder good mete,  
for than I wolde ete before my mayster  
for I haue gret hunger. And I also & Ja-  
ket, & it was thā past noon, & these noble  
knyghtes had eten no mete of all & dape  
before. Than Jofferan sayd I thāke god  
I had a good physicien, for I am now  
all hole, but I wold now fayne ete some  
mete. By my faders soule & I also & Go-  
uernar. Well & Bardewyn sy: Gouer-  
nar & ye wyll come hyder ye may drynke  
of this smoke as I do, wherby your hon-  
gre may be well aswaged. And than Ar-  
thur & his company wente thyder to be-  
hold fro whens the smoke came, & whan  
Arthur beheld the saye place so strōg &  
so roche buylded, & herde betyng in the  
morters within the kechyn, & might here  
how the cokes called for wine & spice, he  
sayd to Bysebar. Frende me thynketh  
these cokes in yonder kechyn haue som-  
what to do, for they be very besy in faith  
I wyl go & helpe them. And whā Gouer-  
nar herde him say so, he said that gladly  
he wolde turne the broche. A good lord  
said Bysebar. What a lad of the kechyn  
wold ye be, in good fayth I thynke very  
le ye wolde soone bete downe your may-  
ster, than they all began to laugh. Wel &  
Arthur there is no more say, but let vs  
do all well our parties, for surely yf it be  
possible thyder wyl I go & put som salt  
into the grawel, ye sy: ye be a very good

cok & Bardewyn, ye may well sel try-  
pes in the market. And thus they sported  
them eche to other. Than Arthur adu-  
sed wel the flore of the chambze wherin  
he was, & espyed well how & there were  
stages vnderneath the flore, than he sayde  
to his company. let vs breke by the pau-  
ment of this flore, & than we may se wel  
what thynge is vnderneath, so than they  
toke they: hawbertes & bylles and suche  
other wepens as was brought thider by  
them & conuayed the prisoners into that  
chambze, the whiche were than all slayn  
and cast out at the Wyndowes, & so they  
dasyt these wepens into the pavement of  
square stones, & with great labour brake  
them by, & there they made soo grete an  
hole & they myght well se all thynge that  
was vnderneath the chambze but the bar-  
te was very darke, and than they called  
to knowe whether any body was there  
or not, but there was none that answe-  
red the. At the last Arthur espyed where  
there was a chayne of yren faste rebat in  
to the wall, and the one ende attayned to  
the flore of the chambze, and the other  
ende was fast tyed to a great chest of the  
wall. than Arthur toke the chayne in his  
handes and slippyed downe thereby tyll  
he came to the crest of the wall, and ther  
was a lytle wyndowe, wherby there  
entred a lytle lychte, soo that he myghte  
wel se the bottome of the barte, & than  
he espyed well that he myghte breke the  
wall wheron he stode and myghte than  
soone come to the earth, than he caused  
all they: harneys to be broughte downe  
to the sayde cresse, and all his company  
than they brake downe the stones of the  
wall and byd caste them downe, and euer  
repsed the stones deper and deper vnder  
they: fete, euer they stode lower & lower  
tyll at the last they cam downe to the erth

without ony hurte or domage, than they found a lytle doze of pyen the whych was sherte without with. iiii. grete barres of pyen, the whyche doze opyned agens the sayd strong place where as the mete was a cōstynge, than these knyghres thought to arme them & than to breke vp the doze and so they dyd, and whan they were armed, than they toke grete peces of tymber that laye in the baute, & Arthur ran at the doze with suche randon þat it made a ryght grete noise, and the same tyme the dukes tresourer was gone to se the dead corpes of syr firmor the which was layd on a bere to be bozne to the chyrche to be buryed, & with him were gone al þe people of the towne saunge tho þe were lodged aboute the toure, so þe there was not left in the sayd place no creature but all onely the cokes þe were in the kechyn dresynge of theyre mete, noz there was none þe was ware how that Arthur was brekinge vp the dooze of the toure wpyth in, and there Arthur and his compaigny dyd so much that they brake vp the doze and so entred into a gardyn, thā Arthur sayd to his compaigny. *Syrs go quychlye to the gate & drawe vp the byrdege, and I wyl go in the meane season in to the kechyn to the cokes.* *Ha ha* sayd Baradwin *I am sure my master hath felte the sauour of the smoke the which he thinketh ryght good, whereby he hath gette him a good appetyte.* Wel sayd Arthur do as I haue shewed you & than ye shal do right well, and so they went all to ryder to the gates and dyde wyte the faste and lyfte vp the byrdes, & than they were so sure that they doubred no man, And in the meane season, Arthur entred into the kechyn, and began to crye out anawnt out of his hous re foule rybaude knaues, for ye shall all dye. And whan the cokes

sawe Arthur, they knewe well it was he that baynquyshed syr firmont, where wyth they were so sore abashed þe they fled away and cryed out, and sayd how the deuyll of hell had brought hym in to that hous, but Jolleran and Bysebar were at the doze and receyued and gaue them such dyscrypyne that it oughre not to be cotrowled. And Gouvernat & Baradbe wpyn kept so the gate & tourned them a gayne that there abode not one on lyue. Than Bysebar and Gouvernat toke the dead bodys and dyde cast them out at the wyndowes and batylmentes of the bye wall. And syr firmont was spenge on a bere and carped on menes holdres, and passed there by the waile of the same hous where as Arthur and his compaigny were, and as he passed vnder þe wall Arthur & his compaigny didde cast downe the dead bodys on the bere. And whan syr Jsembarres seruaunt sawe þe they knewe ryght well that the dukes sotes was taken and soo they toorn and shewed it to theyr master wher withall he was greatly entaged, and commaunded in all the haste to assaile the place where as Arthur and his compaigny were on the walls and defended them selfe valyauntly that theyr enemyes dyd lyttell pryncaple agaynst them, and Arthur was often tymes in wyl to haue pssed out to haue fought with his enemyes, but Bysebar wolde not suffer hym, and vterly and it had not bene moze for feare of his compaigny than for hym selfe he wolde haue sette open the gates. And whan they without saw that they coude not pryncaple, they ceased theyr assaute, & wythdrew them selfe. And Arthur & his compaigny wente and vnarmed them and Baradbe wpyn and Jaker covered the tables and served Arthur and his selaw wyth ryght rychely,

## The story of Arthur

for there was in that hous bothe wyne  
and bytable suffycient for an hole yere.  
And thus ryght well at theyr ease they  
remayned. xv. dayes about fere of theyr  
enemyes, and wythoute ony grete hurte  
Thus Will we lue to speake of Arthur  
and his company, and shewe somewhat  
of mayster Steuen.

Howe mayster Steuen by the vertue  
of his arte of nigromancy deliuered Ar-  
thur & his cōpany fro perill & daunger of  
the duke of bygo: & his newewe. Ca. lvi



During the tyme that arthur  
and his knyghtes wer thus  
besyged in the duke of by-  
goys fortreffe mayster Ste-  
uen clerke to the noble lady  
Florence of Byzolops, & the noble mar-  
kes toere all this tyme at the port norye  
loking out the windowes of the palayes  
talkyng togyder of Arthur thynkyng  
longe for hym, for it was more than. xiii.  
dayes sythe the promesse that he made of  
his retour, wherfore they were in greate  
sorrowe & in grete fere leaste he were slay-  
ne by the foule monster of the byssle. wel  
sayd mayster Steuen sy: markes abyde  
me here tyll I retourne to you agayne,  
and than I will shewe you how the case  
standeth, than the mayster entred in to  
his chambere and toke his booke and lo-  
ked so longe on them tyll he knewe well  
all the estate of Arthur and of his compa-  
ny. Than he wente agayne to the mar-  
kes and recounted to hym all the state of  
Arthur and of his felawshyp, howe that  
they were besyged in the castel, and how  
that the duke of bygo: was with. Althou-  
fande men come to the castell of the roche  
for to helpe his newewe, wherfore he sayd  
there is now nothyng to do but to stu-

dy for they: deliuerance, the whiche he  
sayd was harde to do without his coun-  
sele and aduys. Agentyli mayster sayd  
the markes, whan nebe cometh than is  
the frende knowen, sy: goddes sake may  
ke hast for they: deliuerance. Sy: sayd  
the mayster ye shall hepe this castel, and  
I wyll go to thepm and put to my payne  
to deliuer them. And so he departed fro  
the markes and entred in to his chaun-  
bze and toke his booke, and byde so mo-  
che that at the last he had al thyng that  
he demaunded, and than by hys counnyng  
he caused hym selfe to be bozne in to the  
same hall where Arthur and his cōpany  
were leryng & lokyng oure at the wy-  
dowes beholdyng the dukes hoost who  
was as than come and had lodged hym  
selfe and all his company aboute the pa-  
lays, & by that tyme sy: Alembart was  
all hole, and was able to ryde where as  
he wolde all armed, & soo he came to the  
duke hys vncle and recounted to hym al  
his aduventure. Well say: newewe sayde  
the duke take noo thought therfore, for  
by the sayth that I owe vnto you it shal  
be bere bought. And in the same meane  
season mayster Steuen was come in to  
the palays and stode behynde Arthuro:  
that he was ware thereof and layde his  
hande on his holdze, and therwyth Ar-  
thur tourned hym aboute, and whan he  
sawe mayster Steuen he cleped hym in  
his armes, and so dydde Bysebar Jolle-  
ran and Gouvernat and all other, & made  
hym right greate chere, and demaunded  
of him howe he was entred in to that  
place, & ell said the mayster hold soever  
ye haue kepte the place yet I haue doone  
so moche that I am nowe entred. Mary  
that is trouthe sayd Gouvernat o: elles be  
we sore abused, thus they made greete  
feaste and Joye all that nyghte, and the

nerte moynng they rose betymes and  
loked out at the wyndowes and beheld  
the dukes host, an than Arthur sayde  
how that he wolde issue out: & go syght  
w. h. his enemyes, but Bysbar wolde  
not suffer hym at which tyme they had  
wende that mayster Breuen had be slayn  
abed on slepe, for he was not as than  
come out of his chaumbre, how be it he  
was aboute to stude for theyr deliue-  
raunce, for as sone as he was out of his  
bed, he toke his bokes and made his con-  
furations wher by he caused such a tem-  
pest of winde and rayne to rse and fall  
in the dukes host without, that it blast  
downe tentes & ouerthrew paulions  
and rushe downe standerdes and rare  
downe lodgnges and haled asonder  
ropes, and dalyt downe al to the erth, &  
with the wynde there was blowe by in  
to the ayre streames, towels, and othe  
clothes so hie that the syght of the was  
clene lost. And arthur and his company  
whan they perceued all this without  
in the host: they had great meruaile for  
it was a fayre and a clere moynng be-  
foze. And whan this strome was come  
what sealed, than there rose out of the  
grounde such a berke myst and so spyn-  
nyng that scant one man could se an o-  
ther, and this myst hanged ouer all the  
dukes host and ouer all his castell and  
towne, except the fortrese where as ar-  
thur and his company where in where  
foze they dyd close at the wyndowes, &  
dyd syght by candels, but this myst en-  
dured so longe that al they of the dukes  
host and also within his castell & towne  
were fulfyled with the sauoure ther of.  
And at the laste it sealed and the weether  
began to be cleare and fayre, and so  
than is fortunied that all suche as hadde  
felte the sauour of the soule, mist they

herres began to sayle them and to be so  
full of cowardyse & fere as though they  
had ben chased with an hondred thou-  
sande men of armes, and oftentimes be-  
held to warde the fortrese where as ar-  
thur and his company were, a wyse fe-  
ryng lest they wolde haue pssed out on  
them. And as they loked to warde the  
mountaynes, so they heryng they herde  
richousand hornes and trompettes we-  
ryng verely that it had ben true, and  
than to theyr syghes they saw so much  
people descending downe fro the mo-  
taynes that all the earth was covered  
with harnsed men, than they were in  
great fere than they were before, and at  
the last they thought they saw descende  
downe fro an hye hyll the chiefe stan-  
darde and baner of the myghty kynge  
Emedus, wherin was portrayed a flam-  
byng dragon of golde. And on an othe  
syde they perceued were came the kyng  
of ozqueny, and with him a great mul-  
titude of men of warre, & so thoroughout  
all the host there rose a great rumeur  
& saying how the myghty kynge Emé-  
dus with all his chivalry was comen  
on them to rescow his knyght sy Bys-  
bar, whome they had besyged with Ar-  
thur in the dongeon, & so thereby that were  
so dyscomfited within theyr owne fans-  
cyses & ymaginacions what on horse  
backe & on foze they fled all a wyse as  
fast as they might, and he that coude get  
his sadel dyd set it on his horse, & some  
for hast lepe on theyr horsebacke with-  
out any sadell or byddell, & fled a way all  
dysmayed, some in the woodes and some  
in the riuers and into the great mayes  
for they wist not whider. And Arthur &  
his company whan they saw al this, they  
had great meruaile. In the name of god  
sayd Gouvernat I trow they wyl sythe

## The story of Arthur

for eles, behold how some of them bayne themselves in the maris. And at the last tidenges came to the duke how that his men fled awai and anone he lept on his horse, for his herte was as soze as frapdag any other, & so he fled away al so ag fast as he coude to saue hym self. And his seruantes that were within his castle ran all aboute the hous to seke a place to hide them in, and so did close the self fast within the ground in a lode of the castle and some hid them vnder empty pyppes and other vessels for fere of spyng. And syz Isembarte fled into the grete abbe chyrche and mounted hy to the hys valetes for to hyde hym there. And the monkes nonnes and prestes and clerkes and chanons ran to the chyrches of the towne & kneeled doune & confessed themselves eche to other & no king them self on theyz bestes w great repentance of theyz mysdoedes thinking verily neuer to die other death. Then mayster Streuen issued oute of his chambze and went into the hall where as Arthur was. And Joseran said master for gods sake come hyder & behold how the duke & his men do fite away I thynke they be astrapd. In the name of god said the master I thinke they be not at this time well assured of themselves that forso they take your harness & lette us go mete the mighty king Emeus who is coming to rescowe his knyght here syz Isebar. And whā arthur herd that, he and all his copany armed them and so opened the gates and wēt to the dukes tentes. Where as they found good and myghty horses, & there eche of them took a good horse such as lyked the best, for there were none to withstande them. & they were al cleue fledde away and not one left behynde. So than they all

mounted on theyz horses and issued out of the tentes and toke theyz way by towarde the moysesnes where as arthur and his company thought that they saw by sempling al the world of men coming towardes them, & heyrng hornes and trompes soundyng, and baying of horses, glistering of helmes, shining of sheldes, wauctyng of streamers & pennelles, and at the last they espyed the flambyng dragon of golde in the great banner of colors, and also as to theyz syght they saw all the four kinges w al theyz power coming, so that by sempling all the erth was couered with people. And arthur greatly meruailed of the great noblesse of the king Emeus that brought so great a multitude of people. For as god helpe me said mayster Streuen, yet here is not all his strength, for here is nothing of the power of my lady florence his daughter, nor none of the countrey of argencon. Wherly syz said Isebar to say the trouth he is the mightiest king y now reygnyth in al the world. And so they rode forth thus talkyng till at the last they met w the forrest company of the kynges hoste, the whiche made great chere & fete to mayster Streuen to Bysebar, and to Joseran suche as knew them. And so they rode forth tyll they mette with the kynges banner & flambyng dragon, the which was born by the seneschal of the lady florence who made great chere to bysebar and thus arthur rode euer forth weynyng verely that all this that he saw and herde had ben of trouth, & he wend full lytle that all this had ben brought by mayster Streuens werke and craft, and thus euer arthur rode forth the space of .ii. leiges, and euer still encountred much people, and at the last they met with the no-

ble kinge Emendus, who made righte  
great chere & feast to myster Steuen, &  
to Wysebar & demaunded of them how  
they had done, & how they came into the  
pylson. Spz a litle your grace said sir  
Wysebar thanked be god we doo ryght  
wel, for we were deliuered out of dani-  
ger by the only p[ro]wesse of this noble  
knight that ys here in our companye  
who hath done so much in dedes of chy-  
ualry that it cannot be deuyled, & thus  
as they talked together myster Steuen  
forsoke his enchaunement, & than the  
king & al his great host assembled were  
clene vanished away, so that there was  
in syght no more creatures but all onely  
Arthur and his company, wher to they  
were al soze abashed, and eche of them  
behelde other and spake neuer a word  
thynking how they had dremed. In the  
name of god sayd Arthur I haue greare  
meruayle. Wher spz q Wysebar I spake  
ryght now with the king my souerayne  
lord, & now I wot not where he is be-  
come. Well spz q myster Steuen let vs  
ryde on forth, for now ye may se wel  
how that we be out of the danger of our  
enemies. Than Arthur perceyued wel  
that all this was done by y[is]t[er]day of ma-  
ster Steuen because of theyr deliuerance  
so thus they rode forth til it was none  
of the day euer talking of theyr aduen-  
tures & at last agaynst night they descē-  
ded downe of a great mountayne, & the  
valley beneth was very obscure & darke  
so that they coude se but a litle way in-  
to it, and whan they weren neer to it they  
app[er]ceyued were as there p[ro]ssed oute  
therof. iiii. barlettes on feble horses ech  
of them hauinge a byrninge torch in  
theyr handes, & in theyr company an ab-  
bot who was a white monke, & iiii. o-  
ther monkes w[ith] him, and they were ver-

lene and pale, and but feble horsed. And  
whan Arthur saw them he rested and sa-  
lewed them. And the abbot dyd of hys  
hode and salewed Arthur and all his  
company, and because he saw Arthur of  
so ryght a stature, he thought verilye y[is]  
he was the chiefe of his company, and  
than he sayd to Arthur, Spz I herde re-  
ported but late how y[is] a knight hath as-  
cheued the hard aduētures of the poete  
noyze. Spz if it be so he ys of great va-  
lure, and therfore I am in purpose to  
ride thider & to complayne to h[im] of the gre-  
t wronges that hath ben done to me, for  
spz as poete as I seme now, yet I was  
wonte to be mooste honoured abbot in  
al the countre of Argenton & now I am  
left set by for my countre is clene destitute  
for it is now wel. v. yere sith one of gods  
des serupce was sayd in my chyrche noz  
there was no light neither of sonne noz  
mone that entred into it of all that sea-  
son, and all our landes and rentes are  
clene lost, wherfore many of my counte  
be dead, what for soz we and what for  
necessite, and al this is done vnto vs by  
the duke of bygoys broder that I praye  
to god and euer shall that he may dye a  
shameful deth. And spz how that al this  
is fortunēd I shall syw you a litle please  
you to here me, spz I haue plained me to  
euery noble man that I mete, to chēēt  
to haue some succour of them to get me  
my ryght agayne, but I can mete w[ith]  
none that wyl helpe oz ayde me. ther-  
fore I wyl goo and complayne me to  
the gentyll knight y[is] hath done so much  
p[ro]wesse at y[is] poete noyze if it be my for-  
tune to fynde him, spz I know not what  
you be, how be it I complaine me to you  
as I haue done to many other. By the  
mother of god q Arthur I wolde be ryght  
gladde to helpe you to your ryght, and

## The story of Arthur

thereto I shall be gladd to put my good  
 wyl, wherof the abbot thanked hym &  
 so adai the other monkes. Then may-  
 ster Beton desired them to go in com-  
 pany with them to the porte noye, and  
 prompted yf they wolde so do that they  
 shold speke w<sup>th</sup> the same knyght that they  
 seke for. And thā at last the abbot kne W.  
 And mayster Beton, & cleped & kyled  
 him & made right great Joye & sayd. I  
 gentyl mayster is the knyght yf I seke  
 for in your company or not. As god help  
 yf the master it is the same knyght that  
 yf have al this season spoken vnto, and  
 he by his promysse hath loosed out of pry-  
 son the noble markes your owne broder.  
 And than the abbot helde vp his handes  
 toward the heuen and sayd. He is a myghty  
 kyng of paradise celestiall increase in  
 that noble knyght honour & boiste. Thā  
 the abbot adoupled wel Bysebar & Josse-  
 ran and kered them ryght Well and  
 made with them great Joye and feast.  
 And thus they rode forth so longe tyl at  
 the last they arrived at porte noye and  
 so descended fro their hoxles & mounted  
 vp to the palays. And whan the noble  
 markes sawe Arthur he made to hym  
 ryght great chere, & whan he sawe the  
 abbot who was his owne broder he be-  
 gan to wepe for pite whan he remembred  
 the death of the lord of Argenton hys  
 broder. And so eche of them embraced o-  
 ther w<sup>th</sup> great weppynge for tope and than  
 the abbot sayd. I pray to god yf he maye  
 be an euyl dech that hath lase our bro-  
 der the gentyl lord of Argenton, wher-  
 by great hurt and damage is come to  
 our chyrche. And I pray the same said yf  
 markes, for therby is our nece the lady  
 of Argenton byherited wrongfully & w<sup>th</sup>  
 our cause, and therw<sup>th</sup> they wept eche  
 to other right pitously, wherof Arthur

and his company had great pite, & thā  
 Arthur said to them. Lordes be of good  
 comforte, for I promysse you I wyl be  
 at her marriage yf I may and if the lady  
 haue than any neede of helpe I shalbe re-  
 dy to ayde her to the best of my power.  
 And the two byethern thanked him mu-  
 che, and so they unarmed them & where  
 therein great Joye and sport. Now let  
 vs leue to speke of them, & we will re-  
 te of the messenger that bare the head of yf  
 monster to the court of king Emendus  
 and to the sayze Florenee.

How the newe W of Bysebar arrived  
 at the court of yf myghty kyng Emen-  
 dus w<sup>th</sup> the head of the monster & dyd  
 salute the kyng and also the emperour  
 of ynde who was wyl in the court atre-  
 ding that the kyng shold giue him in ma-  
 riage his doughter the sayze Florenee  
 and to her the head of the monster was  
 presented from Arthur, and she w<sup>th</sup> her  
 how that all only by his noble promysse  
 he had slayne the terrible monster of the  
 bylle. Cap. liiii.

So it was that whan Bysebars  
 newe W was departed fro them  
 as the monster was slayne, he rode so  
 longe tyl he arrived at a Citie named  
 Whesale where as the kyng was and  
 the emperour in his companye, who  
 wolde in no wyse departe tyl that the  
 kyng hadde gyuen hym the sayze Flo-  
 rence to be hys wyfe. And also there  
 was in the court at the same tyme the  
 kyng of ozqueneys colyn germayne vnto  
 the sayze Florenee. The court was  
 as than great and sumptuous, and the  
 kyng had as than hearde masse, and  
 was returned into his palays and  
 the emperour with him, and also there

was florence accompanied with many  
ladyes and damoyseles, & the kinge of  
ozquene was there accompanied with  
many other grete lordes & knightes tal-  
king together of a cozney that shoulde be  
made at ozofeme. And in this meane sea-  
son Cristelme newe to Bysebar mou-  
ted vp to the keyes, & two grete lub-  
bers brought after hym the heed of the  
monster in a great basket couered ouer  
with towels, & so entred vp into the pa-  
lais, & there euery body made him right  
grete chere & feast, & ther w he came be-  
fore the kyng, & when the king saw hi  
comynge he had right grete Joy, and be-  
maunded how Bysebar dyd, & whether  
that he had slayne the monster or not.  
As god helpe me qd sy Cristelme mine  
uncle doth ryght well, but as to the sle-  
yng of the monster he is nothyng gylty  
nor none of all his company, for all one-  
ly one noble knight hath slayne the mo-  
ster the whiche knight by his proweesse  
hath achieved all the ferefull aduencures  
of the poire noyre, he is the moste fayre  
knight & the most gracious that ever I  
saw w min eyen. And when he saw the  
sayde florence sitting by the king her fa-  
ther he kneeled downe to the erth & said  
that the dere lady this sayd noble knight  
sendeth to your noble grace for a presēt  
the he ad of the sayd monster, as to the  
most hye & puissant lady of the worlde  
now liu. ing, and to you he offreth hym  
selte to do all that he may for so noble  
lady as ye be, and truly madame it shal  
be a grete treasour to haue and to retain  
so noble & so valiant a knight as he is  
for he the floure of all the worlde, & in  
bounce surmounting all other, than the  
head was discouered and shewed to the  
kyng and to the emperour, and thider ran  
euery body that was in the court to be

holde it, than they toke knives and swee-  
des and strake at it, but none coude en-  
paye it, for it was so excedynge harde  
Than euery mā prayled much the kni-  
ght that had slayne the monster, & sayd e-  
how p in all the worlde there was not  
his pere, & some sayd also p this knight  
is he that hath achieved the aduencures  
of the poire noyre, and the kyng dyd  
muche prayse hym, and determyned to  
sende to seke for him. Sende to seke for  
hym sayd the king of ozquene, it were  
lytle ynough to sende a kyng for hym,  
for it were not metely for a synple kni-  
ght to go seke for such a knight of so hie  
prowesse as he is of. Wel sy sayd Cry-  
steilme, Bysebar is abyden w hym &  
are gone together to the poire noyre and  
yf he can he wll bringe him vnto your  
courte. Thā al the kinges and princes  
counseyled the kyng that he shoulde not  
sende for him but abyde the comynge of  
Bysebar. Than florence rose and sayd  
to the kinge her father, sy and it lyke  
your grace to giue me leue to departe in  
to my chambze, for this soule head tron-  
bleth me soze to loke therō, & so she toke  
her leue of the kyng & of the emperour,  
& when she was in her secrete chambze  
she called to her the kyng of ozquene,  
in whome she saythfully trusted and so  
they sat them downe togeder, & than she  
said. Sir of great valure is the knight  
that hath slayne the monster and doone  
so many valiant dedes, therefore I pray  
you can you tell me what he is. Wp the  
sayth that I olde vnto you madame I  
cannot tell you, but let vs send for Cri-  
steilme to knowe yf he canne tell vs o-  
ny thinge of hys estate. Than incont-  
nent he was sente for in all the haste,  
and than florence caused the chambze  
for to be cleane attopied, laupnge of the

## The story of Arthur

kyng of ozqueney and of the quene his wyfe. And whan Cristelme was come to them, than florence demaunded of hym what maner of knyght it was that offred his scrupes in such wyse to her. Adame said he as god helpe me I can not thew your grace, but moze fayrer, moze graciously, noz moze gentiller here of a knyght cannot be founde agayn in all the wyde worlde noz a goodlier man of armes, noz of hier prowesse cannot be lightly ymagined. Wel frend sayd florence and what message hath he sent to me by you. Adame he thewed me how that he is your knyght & redy to do you scrupce at all times. Whn said florence and therwith we slyghed and than there entred into her herte a great & a feruent loue in so much that al other were clene put out of her minde & therw she stode in a stoupy without speakinge of anye worde. And than the quene of ozqueney demaunded of hym what armes the knyght dyd bere. Adame sayd he a chekered armes and a white helde. Wel sayd florence is this of crouch. Ye truly madame said the knyght, and also he hath a swerde that can helpe no man but hym selfe, but he doth therwith what him list. Adame I say vnto you that about al other he is the best of all the worlde, & so he is reputed in euery place. Tha was florence outcome with loue moze tha she was before, & thought wel p it was he y mayster steuen her clerke abode so longe for at p porte noz. Tha she gaue Cristelme. C. li. of lade for the ridoiges that he brought her fro the said knyght.

How that arthur & mayster steuen went to the garden pertainyng to the palays of the porte noz, and entred in to the riche paulis where as the image

was holding in her handes the chaplet the which she did set on Arthurs head in signifying how that he shuld haue the saye florence to whome the ymage was resemblable, for there was none p should haue florence in marriage with out he should die an euil dech, without it were he that the ymage dyd gyue vnto the sayd chaplet. Cap. l. b.

**I**n the meane tyme that Cristelme Wysebars newe was at p court with the kyng Emendus as ye haue herde before Arthur and his company were at the porte noz in greute Joye and myeth. And tha the abbot had longe masse and so they were all togder in the palays, and entred into the garden, and so went talkyng together tyll at last mayster steuen toke Arthur by the hande and said how that he wold speke with him in counsaile, than they departed togther fro the other companye, and went talkyng togder tyll they came to the riche paulis and entred into it, and stode before image that helde the chaplet in her handes. Than the mayster sayd, sy this ymage is ryghe saye, how be it the ygyre p is doth represent is. x. tymes fayrer, the whyche is the saye florence daughter to the myghey kyng Emendus, & sy whan p she was fyrst borne she was broughte vp into the moit of aduictures, & there was gyuen her this riche paupryon by the quene of the saye, & there they destined on her that no creature shuld haue her in marriage but ell only he that this ymage wold gyue vnto the chaplet that she holdeth in her handes as ye may se, & I hope verily it shal be you, because of the great prowesse that is in you, & I pray to god it may be so, & sy now here

is none but you and I, therefore I praye  
you go to the ymage, and than we shall  
know the trowth. I mayster sayd Arthur  
for goddes sake I aske mercede, so hys a  
thing as is the loue of þ noble lady flo-  
rence is not apertenaunte to so symple a  
persone as I am, therefore it were folp to  
me to goo to the ymage, presumynge to  
attayn to so hys a felicitye. By my head  
sayd the mayster ye shall go, & therfore I  
pray you so to doo, for my hearte gyueth  
me good comfort that ye shall speede. Well  
sayd Arthur syth ye wyll nedes haue me  
to go, I am content: but first ye shall go  
before me. With a good wyll sayd þ may-  
ster, soo that ye wyll promise to folow  
me yf soo be that I mylde. As god helpe  
me sayd Arthur so wyll I do. Than the  
mayster went and kneled downe before  
the ymage, but though he had kneled the  
xx. yere together he wold nothing haue  
spede, yet he was ryghte fayne and a  
good clerke & right gracious, & also son  
to a kyng: but for al that the ymage did  
nothinge to him. And whan the mayster  
sawe that he rose, & caused than Arthur  
to do as he dyd, the which he was ryght  
loth to do: but at the last w much payne  
he kneled downe before the ymage, & in  
contynente the ymage tourned towarde  
him, and to his seying it blusshed as red  
as sendall, & fayne and casely the ymage  
dyd set the chaplet on his heade. And the  
same season that this ymage dyd set the  
chaplet on his head, the noble Lady flo-  
rence was in her chambere talking with  
Cristelyne, who tolde her how þ knyght  
that slew the monster had a whyte shield  
and a word that could not be enpayed.  
At the whyche tyme she felte in her herte  
the vertue of the propertie of the same y-  
mage in the riche paulson, the which re-  
presented her samilitude, wherebye there  
Arthur.

entred into hys hert such a lone, that she  
lost al her countenaunce, & blusshed as  
as muche as the ymage dyd before. Ar-  
thur, and therby in a maner she fell in a  
traunce & lost the vse of her speache. And  
whan the quene of orqueneys saw her in  
that poynt, she cryed right hiesly and said  
Our blessed lady saint Mary saue my la-  
dy florence fro deeth or teoperdy & than  
Cristelyne toke her in his armes. Than  
other ladies came into the chambere, and  
whan they saw her in that poynt, they  
toke and layde her on her bedde & anon  
it was spredde al about the court howe  
þ the noble florence was soze sick, wher  
with the courte was soze troubled, & the  
kyng and the emperoure were right sorow-  
ful whan they herd therof. And whan that  
florence was well come agayne to her  
selfe, than the quene of orqueneys deman-  
ded of her what she ayled to be in þ case  
so sodenly. And she answered and sayd þ  
it was because that she remembred the  
foule horribleness of the head of the dead  
monster, whereb her herte fapled her.  
Than incontynent the spryng comanded  
that the head shold be brent to thentent  
that it shold no more be seen, & so it was  
done in all haste. And as for Arthur was  
al this season before the ymage with the  
chaplet on his head. And he was than so  
taken wth loue that there was none in  
al the world that pleased him, but al one  
ly the fygyure of her þ owed the chaplet,  
and therewith he roze on his feete, and the  
chaplet on his head. And whan the may-  
ster sawe that, he had neuer so great ioy  
afore and sayd. Say god increate in you  
bounte and noblenesse for as for honour  
ye are therewith as now gretely enoued  
sy now I se and know wel that ye shall  
be my lorde, therefore I owe to you faith  
and trowth, and fro hence forth I wyl to  
M. i.

## The story of Arthur

you make homage, and holde my lande of you. A maister said Arthur suffice not your selfe so to say, for the son of a king ought not to holde his lande of so simple a knyght as I am, howbeit the maister dyd so muche that at the last Arthur receiued him for his man, and when he had so receyued hym, the maister sayde. My lord I owe vnto you fayth a troth and truly that I shal I kepe, a from hence forth hardely do somwhat after my couaille, for I shal helpe you to accomplishe this enterpryse more than any other man lyuing. Maister sayde Arthur, & I shal beleue your counsaile & put my selfe all onely into your handes, for as god help me the loue that is in my hearte greueth me soze, & yet I wote not who it is that I loue. So sayd the maister take y chapel fro your head & giue it agayne to the ymage to kepe tyll ye aske it agayne another season. Maister said Arthur with a good wyl, & so toke the chapel & deliuered it agayne to the ymage. And than the ymage dressed her vp and stode styll as she dyd before. Than y maister sayd, syr Byssebar wyl desire you to go to the court wyth him, but ye must deny hym as for this seaso, for after my mynde ye shal first go to achueue the aduenturs of the tenebrons or darke towre, and take wyth you no company but only Bawdwyn your squyer, and ye shal depart to morow betymes, and I wyll go to the court wyth Byssebar & shal thinke ryght wel of euery thing that is behouable for the contentacion of your mynde. In the name of god said Arthur so let it be. And as they wer thus talking together there came to them y abbot & the shrikes his brother Gouvernar, & Jolleran, & as for Bawdwyn & Jaket apparayled for the dîner in the palais. And than the abbot

said to Arthur, sir I haue be here a great season, wherof I thank you, and also I am euer bound vnto you becaus ye haue deliuered out of pryson my brother the markes, syr now it is time y I recozne agayne vnto my dolorous abbey, y whiche was wont to be the floure of beauty of all that country, & now it is the pryso of al unhappines and mysfortune. & he that hath caused all this I praye to god that he may die an euyl death, who is sir Isembart the false newe we of the duke of Wygoz, for by his meanes a false enchaunter hath taken away clene y light of the heauen fro our abbey, so that we lyue euer in darkenes, and also he hath taken away all our rentes and honours, wher wyth we are therby famished for hungre, & also he hath falsly by treason slayne my brother the noble lord of Agenton, and hath dysshetred my nece his daughter, and hath gyuen her to a lewde boye, who is his barbour, and now at this nexce Bawdelyne yde he purpolet that they shal be maried together, the which wyl be greet picie that euer so good and beautiful a lady as she is, shuld be cast a way vpon so vile a person, for ye she were not my nece I wold saye she were worthy to haue a ryght good pryncce, wherfore I complayne me to god and to al gentylmes, & specially syr humblye I requyre you to helpe to take vengeance of him, and of such as takech his part. By the saych y I owe vnto the duke of Bystayne sayd Arthur I shal put to my payne if I canne, and wyl be there at this Bawdelyne tyme, and than I shal helpe to ayde the damosell to the best of my power. So sayde maister Streuen, than shal ye do well, for ye speake as a gentylman shoud say. Than said Byssebar swete syr let vs go.

go together to the court, & there ye shall  
see the noble kynge of Bopoloy & al his  
barons the whych is right great and he  
& also ye shall see my lady the gentyl flo-  
rence, who shall receyve you for one of  
her knyghtes, and ye shall have than in  
your company an hundred knyghtes of  
great valur, wherof I am the simplest  
and mosse insuffycient of them all, and  
so by you shall the company be enfor-  
ced and yrenown of them doubled throug-  
hout all the world, and I shall promyse  
you aboute al other to kepe you true and  
faythfull companye. And whan Arthur  
herde hym say all this, he smyled a litle  
and sayd. Dere frend Byssebar I thank  
you heartely for your noble profer, and  
certaynly suche as my poore body can do  
is, and ever shall be ready to do my lady  
florence service. for whete so ever I be  
come her servaunt shall I be: but as at  
this tyme to the court maye I not go,  
for fyrst I must rymyshe an enterpryse  
that I have taken on me & god wil gyve  
me the grace to accomplishe it. And  
than Jofferan demaunded of him what  
enterpryse it was. As god help me said  
Arthur it is to achieve the adventures of  
the tourne renebrous. And whan Bysse-  
bar herde that, he said, fyrst for goddes sake  
let that enterpryse alone, for certaynly  
all the power that my lord the kynge  
of Bopoloy hath is not sufficient to at-  
tayne to achieve that adventure, therfore  
fyrst in my mynde it were a great folly for  
you to take suche a chynge in hande as  
no man can achieve. Than maister Ste-  
nen sayd, Spyr Byssebar let him alone,  
for he hath a great herte though it be a  
great enterpryse, yet I truste god shall  
helpe hym for sythe he hath taken it in  
hande I am sure ther is none that can  
let hym of hym mynde. wel sayd Bysse-

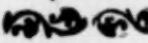
Arthur.

bar sythe he wyl not be turned I wil go  
with him. And so wyl I also said Joffe-  
ran, wel sayd Arthur I thank you  
but surely I wyl have none with me: but  
al onely I will delyver my squyer. In the  
name of god sayd the mayster so be it, &  
ye sayd Byssebar and I wyl go together  
to the court and ye sayd Markes & Joffe-  
ran Gouvernar & Jaker, al ye shall abide  
here tyl and kepe tyl this castell tyl ye  
have other word. Ye sayd wel sayd Ar-  
thur. And therewith they went al togy-  
ther to the palays to dynner, and were re-  
chely served, and al that daye they made  
great feast and ioy, and at nyght wente  
to theyr restes, and the nexte mornynge  
betymes they arose and herde masse, the  
whych the abbot rdyng, and after  
masse Arthur mounted on hym horse, and  
so dyd the abbot and mayster Streuen  
and Byssebar, and so toke theyr leue of  
Gouvernar and other, & so issued out of  
the castell, and rode together the space of  
four leges, & at the last they came to an  
entrynge into a forrest, where as was a  
forked waye and there the mayster and  
Byssebar toke theyr leue and rode forth  
theyr way on the ryghte hande, the whiche  
was the next hye way to the cite of  
Cornice where as king Emendus was  
the same season, And y abbot went his  
nexte waye to his doleous abbey. And  
Arthur toke his way on the lyfte hande  
and so rode forth all the day tyl it was  
nere hande nyght, and so arrived at a ge-  
tyl squyers place called the maner of  
plashes, the whych squyer doubted him  
selfe greatly, for he had suche enemyes  
that had mortally desyred hym, therfore  
he sayd to Arthur, fyrst ye be hither right  
heartely welcome: but I beseeche you in  
all the haste to depart hence shortly for  
the savinge of your selfe, for I can not


Id.

## The story of Arthur

Warrant you in my house, for mine enemies are right myghty, and I loke eche houre whan they shal assaile me. Than sayd Arthur, for care ye not for that but and it may please you I pray you let me haue lodgyng here with you this nyght and for I ensure you if they come while I am here I trust I shall make a good peace betwene you and the, either with sapience or otherwyse. For sayde the squyer I am content and god giue you grace to do that ye haue sayd.

How that Arthur slew and discomfited .xv. knyghtes right myghty and puyssant, who were come to assaile his house, who was called the squyer of the plasches.  Capitulo. lvi.



 Thus was Arthur rescued of the squyer, who made hym right good chere to his power, and the same tyme the squyers enemies had there

a spy, who returned and shewed to the how that there was come to the squyers house a straunge knyghte by semprys right myghty and puyssant, and howe that he had promised to the squier to help hym if he had any nede that nyghte.

Than they all answered and sayd howe that knyght myght be sure he should see that same nyght, for they said they wold not let they enterpryse for one knyght, for they were to the nombere of .xv. And whan it was nyght they all apparailled them selfe on horsebacke and came to the squyers house all armed, and righte rudely assaulted his house, and the squier and suche seruantes as he hadde defended them selfe as well as they could with crobowes and suche other weapons as they had within. And whan Arthur knewe wel thes he armed him and took his whyte shelde, the which dyd cast a great clere shelyghte, and took his good sworde clarence in his hande and whan he was thus armed that he looked out of a wyndowe, and demaunded of them with out what they soughte there, and what they woulde. And they answered howe they sought for to haue his head. Wherfore sayd Arthur looke it here for here ye maye see it, and I shall bypunge is oute worse vnto you than he despyed them within to leue they shopynge and to let open the gate, and to lette downe the byrge, and accordyng too his desyre it was done and Arthur issued oute all alone, and ran at them, and they all at once ran at hym, and Arthur drew oute clarence his good sworde, the which for his goodnes was also called tracyfer, that is for to say, curter of pryn, and strake the fyrst so that with that he claued his heade to the eyen, and he made the head flye from the secunde, and from the

thys he stroke of hys arme and sholdre  
clene from the body, and than the reme-  
nant layde all at ones on hym, but all  
they nothyng dōd enpayre hym. And  
than Arthur dalyt furth with his horse  
and encountered so one of them, that he  
outrhye the bothe horse and man into a  
great dyche the whych was about the  
place, and there he was drownded. And  
whan a great myghty knight who was  
master of them all and he that first be-  
gan this warre sawe his people so hard-  
ly delte withall with one knight he was  
ryght sorowfull, and therwith dalyt at  
Arthur and gaue hym a great stroke on  
the shelde with a great mace of yren ful  
of great pyckes of stele, the whyche he  
layd on with bothe his handes, the why-  
che stroke rebounded agayne vppwarde,  
for it coude not enpayre his shelde no-  
thyng, and than Arthur lyfte vphys  
sworde and stroke hym on the head, and  
the stroke was herde a great way of, but  
the stroke dōd glyde downe to his lyfte  
arme, so that arme and sholdre and all  
he cleue into the feld, and the sword  
dalyt into the arcon of his saddell and  
claued it cleue asonder, and dōd cut ason-  
der the croper of the horse, and therwith  
horse and knyght and al dalyt down to  
the ground, than Arthur laid on among  
the ocher bothe on the lyfte syde and on  
the ryghte syde, and made heades, ar-  
mes, handes, legges, and fere flye cleane  
into the fælde, than the remnant be-  
gan to flye, but than it was to late, for  
there was none but eyther he had loste  
an arme or a legge, and whā the squier  
vnderstode how that his gess was thus  
ysued out al alone and fygghyng with  
hys enemyes, than he armed hym selfe  
and ranne oute into the fælde, but there  
he founde nothyng to doo, for by that  
Arthur.

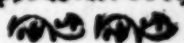
tyme Arthur as than had made an ende  
of them all, and soo was retournyng  
home warde. And than the squier sa-  
we that Arthur had ouercomen al hys ene-  
myes, he thought verely that he was of  
hys prowesse, and so he thanked him ma-  
che and sayde. For ye tolde me trouth  
whan ye sayd ye would make the peas  
betwene myne aduersaries and me, for  
now I am amonge them, and yet they  
saye nothyng to mee. And soo Arthur  
and the squier entred into the place and  
closed fast the gates after them & drey-  
ed vp the byldge, and so wente to their re-  
stes, & in the morning the squier wente  
out to se whyche of his enemyes were  
slayne, and amonge the other he founde  
his principal enemy slayne, wherof he  
had great ioye, and offered him selfe then  
for to become Arthurs man, and wold  
haue gone with hym, but Arthur wold  
not luffe hym, but so he departed from  
the squier, and anon the wordes were  
spredde abrode in all the countrey, how  
that a knyght with a white shilde had  
slayne and ouercome .xv. knyghtes, the  
whyche wordes came to the hearinge of  
master Steuen and Wysebar. Verely  
sayde master Steuen that same is Ar-  
thur, who hath the righte great valure in  
hym. As god helpe me said Wysebar it  
is he, I se well that he is a ryghte valy-  
ant knyght, for he is the best in all the  
worlde. Thus Arthur rode forth tyll it  
was thye of the clock, and there he found  
betwene two mountaynes, a great by-  
laine huge and myghty, blacke and he-  
y out of all measure, and he bare on his  
sholdre a great croked leuer. And whan  
he sawe Arthur he ranne to hym and tol-  
ke his horse by the bydel rayne, and de-  
maunded of hym, saying thus. Saye  
ye what maner of man be ye? friends

## The story of Arthur

sayde Arthur I am a knyght straunger,  
 ye sayd the vylayne be ye a knyght,  
 and what seest ye here in these pastures  
 that I haue in my keepyng. Good felow  
 sayde Arthur I go on myne aduenture  
 wher as go wil bring me vnto: why  
 sayd the vylayne go ye than to seeke  
 for aduentures, yf ye be so well harred  
 that ye dare folowe after mee, I shall  
 byngye you vnto a straunge aduenture,  
 but I thynke ye dare not folowe me, for  
 I thynke ye be one of the knyghtes that  
 wol menace and threten whan ye stand  
 by the chymney warming of you after  
 souper, and in the morninge all is for-  
 gotten. And whan that Bawdewyn herd  
 the vylayne say so to his mayster, he be-  
 gan to laughe greatly at him, and saide.  
 Well good felow, leade hym wherher  
 so euer thou wilt, and I warrant him  
 he will folowe the. Sayd the vyl-  
 layne I speake not to you, as for you I  
 fe well prouge ye be not of that force  
 and myght that ye can drawe the wyne  
 and drinke it, and pay not for your shere  
 of ye go, I speake to your mayster, the  
 fore let hym answer me yf that he dare  
 frende sayd Arthur as for Bawdeuin  
 my squier is but a sole, take ye no hede  
 what he sayth, but hardely bring  
 me wherher so euer ye will, and truly  
 I shall folowe you as longe as my life  
 will laste. Ye but sayd the vylayne,  
 yf ye folowe me, whan it cometh to the  
 nedethan I fere me least ye will leue me  
 and runne away lyke a cowarde. Hape  
 sayd Arthur I promise you faithfully  
 I will not forsake you as longe as I  
 may. Well sayd the vylayne, than come  
 on your waye forthe, and I promise you  
 yf there were ten suche as ye be, I shall  
 byngye you thither wher as none of you  
 all shoulde escape from the deth, in lyke

wise as I haue caused men a one to do  
 Than the vylayne wente furth and Ar-  
 thur folowed hym. And at the laste they  
 entred into a great valley betwene two  
 greete mountaynes, wher as they found  
 a lytel lodge wher as meat and drynke  
 was solde to traualing men. Than the  
 vylayne sayd to Arthur, say knyghte it  
 is now good season that ye geue your  
 horse some repast, for after this ye shall  
 fynde no more houses tyl it be nyghte, as  
 why the tyme I shall byngye you vnto  
 suche a lodgyng the whiche shall not be  
 good for you, for there shall ye lese your  
 lyfe. Than there Arthur alghred and  
 gaue his horse meate, and drinke and  
 drynke hym selfe. Than the vylayne said  
 say knyghte, eat and drinke with greac  
 hope alwayes, but I ensure you this  
 shall be the laste that euer ye shall take.  
 And whan Bawdeuin had that this  
 vylayne thus alwaye manaced his may-  
 ster, it geued him right sore, and sayde.  
 Thou couldest churle holde thy tonge for  
 thretenyng thus of my mayster, what  
 wouldest thou to make him abashed with  
 thy wordes naye I warrant the, he tak-  
 eth itell he be thereto. for do the worst  
 thou canst he deserveth thy malice. Than  
 the vylayne began to rouse his eyes, and  
 to benche his browes and toke his leue  
 in both his handes, and wold haue cry-  
 ken Bawdeuin, but Arthur helde him  
 and sayd. frende take no hede what my  
 squier sayeth, for I tell you he is but a  
 sole, therfore speke to me what ye wil &  
 let hym alone. And whan the good wife  
 of the lodge herd hym speake so secretly  
 to the vylayne, and was so loth to dis-  
 please hym, and whan he was vnarmed  
 he saw that he was so goodly a creatu-  
 re that he loued hym in her herte & pray-  
 sed hym moche, and demaunded of hym  
 whether

wheder he wente. Arthur answered and  
sayde good loue I folowe this good fel-  
lawe. Certaynly he sayd the wyfe he is  
no good felawe but he is the moost fou-  
lest & falsest traytoure lyvinge therfore  
gentyl knyght I haue grete pyte of you  
and ye are vicerly lost and dede yf ye go  
with hym ony farder for this foule by-  
layne dothe nothyng but wache suche  
knyghtes as passeth through this countre  
to torment to bynne the knyght where  
as he is in full purpose to bringe you vn-  
to, for fro thence there was neuer none  
that euer returne agayne without deth  
therfore gentyl knyght returne agayne  
for it were great losse of suche a knyght  
as ye seme to be thus destroyed. Than  
Balwdewyn sayd, sy: howe fele pe your  
herte, wyll ye recule backe agayn or els  
wyll ye goo forth. frende sayd Arthur  
how should euer ony lady or damoyzell  
employe theyr loue on me yf it should be  
sayd that I haue fledde away for the me-  
maynge of a foule churlysh bylayne,  
nay as god helpe me I had rather suffre  
deth. Well sy: sayd Balwdewyn than ye  
thynke on loue I se wel but and it tou-  
ched me as it dooth you I wolde thynke  
on no lady nor on loue in this poynt, for  
I wolde loue myne owne lyfe better than  
to trust on theyr prayse or rewarde. And  
with these wordes the bylayne came to  
them and sayd, sy: what noyse is this  
of cowardyse that I here, sy: knyght I  
se well your herte faileth you, for ye are  
aboute to make couenaunte to retourne  
agayne, therfore I thynke well ye wyll  
leue me when nede is. frende sayde Ar-  
thur truly I shall not forsake you. Well  
sayd the bylayne than arme you shortly  
and let vs goo hence for your last dayes  
draweth faste onwarde truly, therfore  
make haste.

Howe the great bylayne brought  
Arthur where as he foughte wyth a  
great and a terrible Lyon, but fynal-  
ly Arthur slewe hym. And howe af-  
ter he foughte wyth a grete gyant,  
telle and an horrible gyant, and by  
hys prowesse he conquered them  
bothe, and after that foughte wyth  
a grete gryffon, and this was the be-  
gynnyng of the adventures of the  
rowe Cenebrous, wherein ye shall  
here manye terrible and maruylous  
thynges, the whych were schewed by  
the onelye prowesse of the valyaunte  
Arthur.  Capit. lxx.



When that Arthur had well  
repasted hym selfe and hys  
horse, than he armed hym  
and mounted on hys horse,  
and folowed the sayde by-  
layne tyll at the laste they came intoo a  
great valey darke and depe. Than sayde  
the bylayne to Arthur, sy: knyght now  
ryde ye on before and ye dare, and I will  
folowe you. So than Arthur rode be-  
fore, and as they rode on theyr ryght  
hande there were hewers of woode, and  
as soone as they saw Arthur and the by-  
layne, than they knewe wel that he was  
brought thither by the foule churle, than  
they cryed aloude and sayde. A gentyl  
knyght for goddes sake retourne agay-  
ne, for and ye goo any fether ye are but  
deed. A thou foule bylayne we praye to  
god that thou mayest dye an euyl death,  
for many a noble man hast thou caused to  
dye. And when Balwdewyn herde these  
wordes, he sayde to hys mayster. Lo tyt  
now ye may remembre your loue, ye may  
heare what these people sayd, certaynly  
I woulde not thynke on the sayest crea-  
ture of all the woyle in this poynt. And  
than

## The story of Arthur

Whan Arthur herde Baldewyn sape so he laughed at hym saynge thus. frende by the saythe that I owe vnto my lord my fader I can not tell whether I goo nor what peryll there is therein but what peryll soo euer I shall fynde I wolde it were double as mouche on the condicion that I were in certayne that he that I saue neuer loued me as well as I loue her. And whan the soule bylayne herde hym sape so in his herte he praised hym moche and knewe well therby that he had a balyaunt herre. And thus they rode forth so longe tyl at the last the soule churle cryed out and sayd. Sy knyght now it wyl appere what ye can doo for no wy ye shall haue neede to defende your selfe. And with that worde Arthur looked on his lyfte hande and sawe where there was comynge to hymwarde a grete and amygghy Lyon. Than Arthur feared his horse lest that the Lyon shoulde haue slayne hym therfore he lyghed downe to the grounde and beluered his horse vnto Baldewyn and dyessed hym to warde the Lyon. And whan the Lyon perceyued hym he lepte and strake at hym wyth his paws thynkinge to confounde hym but Arthur put his selfe before hym and the Lyons stroke dasye theron so soze that Arthur was all astoned with the stroke. Than Arthur strake at hym with clarence his good swerde as he passed by hym and strake of clene his rayle and whan the Lyon felte hymselfe so hurt he habandoned with all his power his body agaynst Arthur and with his warperethe he toke Arthur by the helme and they entred in to the bokles of his harners but as god wolde they touched not his fleshe and with his fote he strake Arthur suche a stroke vpon the helme that and it had not ben the better wel

de it hadde bene clouen all to peces, and with his other fote he toke Arthur by the ryghte shoulde, but Arthur swarued from hym, or elles he had bene tozned asunder, for in the swarupnge awaye he lost a grete quarter of his harnes, and therewith Arthur lifte vp his good swerde and dasye it vp to the harde crosse in at the throte of the Lyon, and therewith the Lyon ydecast out a grete crye and a hydeous, and so fel down to the grounde sturke dead, and therewith incontynent he espyed agayne where as there was comynge to hymwarde a grete gyauntelle wyth a great sawchon in her hande, soo well steled that there was nothinge but it would cut asunder, and therewith she came vnto Arthur and strake at hym right egerly, and whan Arthur sawe the stroke comynge on hym he quickly cast his selfe before hym. And this gyauntelle was terribly angry for the death of her Lyon, wherefore she gaue Arthur suche a stroke vpon the shoulde as he was ryght soze astoned therewithal, but as god wolde the sawchon brake asunder in two peces, and his selfe was therewith nothinge enpayred. And whan the gyauntelle saw that her sawchon was broken, she lyfte vp a gret spere that she had standynge by her, and thoughte to haue stryken Arthur therewith vpon the head: but Arthur stepte vnder the stroke, and closed wyth her, and than she toke Arthur by the head, and so arafshed clene of his helme so rudely that she brake asunder all the buckelles wherewithal it was ryed and with the pul that she made she stepte backwarde with the helme and than Arthur with his good swerde strake her clene throught the bely and therewith she fell backwarde for she was so hasty to reuenge her Lyon, that she came to

to Arthur all brained wher in he was  
but a sole for a man may be aune to  
hasty to come to his enemye and whan  
he fell he gaue suche a crye that all the  
valey rang of the noyse so that a grete  
gyaunt who was her make herde it wel  
and than he ranne to a grete leuer and  
toke it in his hande and came rennyng  
so rudely as thowge a grete multitude  
of men hadde come to gyder he made so  
grete a noyse and by that tyme Arthur  
had stryken of the heed of the gyaunte  
and rowled it in the middes of the waye  
and byde set agayne his heime vpon his  
heed. And whan the gyaunte sawe that  
his wyfe was deed and his yron also, he  
fared lyke a scnde of hyl and toke hysle  
uer and dalyt at Arthur thynkyng to  
haue stryken hym downe to the groude  
but Arthur strepte asyde lyghtly and the  
stroke lyght on a grete rocke so rudely,  
that at his handes tynger so soze therewith  
that the leues fel from hym to the groude  
and than he stouped downe for to haue  
taken it vp agayne and whyle that  
he was stoupyng downe Arthur toke  
clarence his good swerde and gaue vnto  
hym suche a stroke that one of his boy-  
stous armes felle cleue in to the feld.  
Than the gyaunte lepte forth and toke  
Arthur in his other arme a yf that his  
wyfe lyde had not ben he hadde ben  
strufled a sonder for he gaue Arthur a  
grete stroke with the Rubbe of his hurte  
arme. And than Arthur aduysed hym  
well and vnder his arme he dalyt claren-  
ce his good swerde vnto the hard crosse  
and so he fell downe sturke dead. Than  
there came a grete gryffon and strypp-  
ned Arthurs horse cleane throught out al  
the body and thought to haue borne him  
awaye. And whan that Arthur sawe his  
horse hurte, in hys heart he was right so

construill, and strake at the gryffon with  
his swerde, and strake a sonder both his  
legges, and therewith the gryffon felle  
away with great payne, and bothe hys  
legges remained styll vpon the horse, and  
the horse blede so fast that he fel down  
deade in the place, wherewith Arthur  
was right soze displeased. Than the by-  
layne came to him and sayd in this ma-  
ner of wyse. Syr knyght in a thyng the  
whiche can not be remedied must nedes  
be suffered in the best wyse that a man  
may, your horse is slaine, take ye no care  
for hym, for there be horses ynough, ye  
haue slayn the gyaunt and the gyautes  
and also theyr Lyon, and the gryffon,  
but for all that I promise you that your  
ende draweth fast on warde, and as for  
this nyght let vs go her to where vs in  
the gyautes house her by, the wyche  
is a strong place, and there we shall fynd  
great plenty of good wyne and meates,  
and there ye shall see manye sayres  
and byghis harneys, and also there ye  
shall see heades, armes, legges and feet of  
much people, the whiche the gyaunte  
hath taken and brought to that place a-  
lyue, for the gyaunte he woulde neuer by  
her wyll eate none other meate but man-  
nes fleshe, and soo they entred into the  
place, and the same daye the gyaunt had  
taken a knyght and brought hym deade  
into the place vpon his owne horse, and  
as than the horse was yet on lyue. And  
whan the bylayne saw the horse, he toke  
hym by the byddell and brought hym to  
Arthur and sayde. Syr knyghte your  
owne horse is deade therfore I geue you  
this horse, I thanke you hartely goodfe-  
lowe sayde Arthur. Than they went  
byddell faste the gate, and there they  
byddell rest them all that nyght, and on  
the next moynyng ensuyng, beymes  
Arthur

## The story of Arthur

Arthur rose and armed hym and mounted on his horse that the vylayne had gyven hym. Than the vylayne came forth and sayd syr knyght folow me for now I wyl go forth. So on than before sayd Arthur and so Arthur rode forth after hym all the longe daye tyll it was nere nyght and than at the last they came to a myghtie strong toure the whiche pertained to a knyght named sir Roger the Scot. Than the vylayne sayd to Arthur, syr knyght it is now good tyme to lodge vs here now in this castel al thys nyght let vs goo entre in to this place but one thyng I ensue pou the knyght that oweth this place is the moost shamefull traytoure that now is lyuynge for there is none that entreth into this place, but shamefully he dothe murther them whyle they be in their beddes, he is also cosyn germaine to the duke of bygor, a nouewe to syr fyrmount, who was but now of late slayne at the castell of y roch by a knyght straunger, therefore now let se what ye wyl doo, whether ye wyl go lodge in this place or not. Well sayde Arthur I se well and I lye wythoute I shall be shrewdly lodged, and sythe thys knyght is of that lignage that ye speke of he is my mortall enemy, howe be it as yet I can not complayne on hym, for he dyd me neuer no traspasse, therefore certaynly I wyl go thither to take my lodginge. And whan the vylayne het hym say so he thought wel how that he was of great corage, and loued him therefore muche in his herte, howe be it he sayde vnto hym, syr in goddes name soo be it, let vs go thither, and if anye yll come to you thereby I am not to blame, I maye not too wythall, for I haue gyven you warnynge therof. Than they entred in to the courte of that place. And as sone

as syr Roger sawe Arthur he knewe him ryghte well, and was in certayne howe that it was he that had done soo muche prowesse at the castell of the roche, and had slayne syr fyrmount, and hadde soe roun dede syr Isembarte hys cosyn, and newewe to the duke of bygor, and than his herte began to tremble for great anger, not withstandinge he made to them great there outward, and cleped and kyled Arthur and sayde. Syr ye be ryghte hertely welcome into my house, as God helpe me I haue more toye of your coming than of any other manne liuynge but to hym selfe in wardly he sayde, yet or it be mydnyght I wyl hane that head of yours cleane from your sholders.

Than the vylayne came vnto them and cryed as loude as euer he could, god kepe the lord of this place, accordynge to his hertes desyre, and these wordes he sayde thre tymes. Than Arthur sayde, yf hys hearte be good well haue he, and yf it be other wyse than good, god amende it.

Than Arthur was brought by into his chaumbre, and there he dyd warme hym And in the meane tyme this knyght syr Roger came to hys squer and demaunded of hym howe and in what maner he myght slea Arthur, for if we make anye assaulte on hym he wyl slea vs both, for there is none lyke hym in all the wyde worlde, nor none so sooe to be doubted. For he dyd meruaylous dedes of armes at the castell of the roche. Syr sayde his squer I knowe certaynlye that we can not endure against hym: but I shall tell you what we shall doo, we shall make his bed this night aboute in your toure and sette it ouer the trappe doore of the dongeon, and we wyl take away all the boordes in the bottome of the bedde, and in the stede of the boordes sette small sta-

ues to sustayne by the clothes and so  
whan he shall lye downe in the bedde he  
and the clothes and all shall comble downe  
into the dongeon and than we shall  
soone cast downe his squer after him  
and than slee this foule vylayne & whan  
they be in the pytte we will take speres  
and so slee them o; elles let vs here chye  
o; fourē caldwong with hore scaldyng-  
water and cast it downe vpon they; he-  
des and so shall we slee them. and whā  
this sy; Roger herde his squer sape soo  
he was ryght well content with hym &  
cleped and kyssed hym and sayd this ma-  
ter is ryght well deuyfed for as ye haue  
sayd so shall it be done therewith the by-  
layne pssued out of the chaumbre from  
Arthur with his grete leuer on hes nec-  
ke and as soone as he sawe sy; Roger  
counsellynge with his squer and other  
bandynge togyder rownyng in corners  
than he began to esrpe to them & sayd  
what maner of people be ye, for what  
mater be ye thus counsellynge togyder  
what is it for some maryage be ware ꝑ  
there be noo treason amonge you for yf  
there be I shall frusthe you downe with  
my leuer. Than Arthur issued out of his  
chaumbre. And whan sy; Roger sawe  
hym he toke hym by the hand and sayde.  
Sy; it is time that we washe our han-  
des for your souper is all ready. Sy; as  
it pleaseith you sayde Arthur than they  
wasshed and ate them downe at the tas-  
ble and were righte well serued, and the  
byspayne was set downe at an other ta-  
ble behynde Arthur, and so they gaue  
hym parte of al their meates and dryn-  
kes that they hadde and he dyde ete and  
drynke excedyngly moche for they could  
not satysfye hys apetyde. And after  
souper Sawdetown Arthurs squer too  
ke hede to his hoyses. And than Arthurs

bedde was made in the same place where  
as it was deuyfed befoze, and the by-  
layne layde hym downe on foure quys-  
mens by the fyze in the hall as he that  
hadde wel eaten and dronken, and so fell  
fast on slepe & smored ryght soze, wher-  
foze sy; Roger that was knyght of the  
place would haue wakened him, but Ar-  
thur would not suffice him, but caused  
hym to be couered with a grene couerlet  
and so let hym lye, and whā it was time  
for hym to go to his bedde, than the to-  
ches were lyghted vp, and the knyght co-  
uayed Arthur to his chaumbre, and ac-  
hys taking leue of Arthur he offered to  
hys moute hym selfe and all his house-  
holde to be redy at his commaundement,  
but in his herte inwardly he thought to  
be redy to cause hym to lose his lyfe. And  
whan he was departed Arthur wente  
to his bedde, and as he layd hym downe  
he and the bed and all fell into the great  
pytte, and the knyght and hys seruants  
were ready watchyng at the dooze,  
and whan they heard the rushe, they en-  
tered into the chaumbre, and toke Sawde-  
town and dyd caste hym downe too hys  
mayster, and Arthur receyued hym in  
hys armes because he should not be hurt  
in the fallynge downe. Than there rose  
a grete crye and noyse througheoute all  
the place, and some bare speres and bar-  
res of yron to caste downe at Arthur to  
slee him in the pyt, & euer Arthur wat-  
ched well their strokes and dyd auoyde  
them as well as he myghte. And at the  
laste by the reason of the great noyse the  
byspayne arose oute of hys slepe. And so  
whan that he hearde that great brute he  
wyst well that Arthur was betrayed.  
Than he mounted vp into the chaumbre  
with his grete leuer in his handes, and  
there he saw wel that they were aboute.

## The story of Arthur

to enforce them selfe to lea Arthur.

Then he toke his leuer and strake so the knyght sy Roger in þe necke that he caused his tonge to hange out of his mouth nye half a fore, and therwith he fel down into the pyt to Arthur, And the bylayne than sayd to Arthur, sy knyght gna we well on that mozell, ye shall haue more anone. Than he lyft vp his leuer agayne and strake sy Rogers squyer suche a stroke on þe hed, þe his head was crused harde to his shulders, & he fell also down into the pyt after hys mayster. Than the bylayne sayd to Baldewyn, good squyer cut hys throte and make him sure In the name of god sayde Arthur it shal not nede, for he hath ynough alreadye. Than the bylayne dressed him at the enchaunt that held to;ches in theyr handes to gnyelichte, and dallyt theym downe one after another, and some fled awaye and he folowed after and slew them all. Than he entred into the kechyn & there he found the coke boyleng of a gret caudron full of water, the which shoulde haue ben cast down on Arthur, tha he toke the coke in his armes, and did caste hym into the caudron all boylenge, and byd hold him downe wth his leuer, & sayd. Thou shalt see without salte tyl thou be ynough, and if thy fleshe be harde so den I shall boyle the on the coles, than he ran to a ladder and bare it to Arthur in the pyt. Tha Arthur and Baldewyn issued out, and as soone as Arthur was without he ran to his swerde & demaund byd if there were any more to do in that place. As god helpe me sy sayd the bylayne I trowe not. Than they light vp to;ches and descended downe, and found an olde house ful of dead mennes bones such as the traytours of that place had laynt. In the name of god sayd Arthur

to the bylayne ye haue holpen me no more lyke a scende for al your vncurtis wordes here before: wel sayd the bylayne I wyl that if ye can scape to morow from that aduintur whether as I shal bring you, the whyche I chynke you can not do, that than ye shall promyse me to do for me a chynge suche as I shall desyre you. frende sayd Arthur and I promise you that to the vttermost of my power I shal do any thing that ye desire me ye a knight may do it wythout reproche of bylayne. Well sayd the bylayne I beleue that all this promise shal not nede, for though ye were in a maner made of yron yet I thinke ye shuld not scape fro death but as for this nyght I shal kepe you fro any daunger. And so he made Arthur a sayre bedde, and lay all nyght in the floze by hym, & so he was that nyght his chamberlaine, and so he was ever after all his lyfe, for after wards Arthur byd muche good to him. So thus they went to bedde and toke theyr rest tyl the next morneng that Arthur rose.

Howe on the next mornenge the bylayne brought Arthur to another aduenture nye to the soure tenebrous, where as he was firste assailed wth terrible monstrous byrdes, and grete griffons without nombre, & after þe he was assailed wth .xliii. knyghtes, and how he by his prowess slew them all. And also he bette down the gret machemet of byasse out of the whyche there issued out a wynd that it touned about grete myll stones lyke powder, and also how that he entred into the castell tenebrous, and quenched the fyre which was the cause of the great darkenes the which coneyned the circuite of .v. leges compasse as ye shal here after ward, Capto. lxxii.

**A**nd next morning betimes  
Arthur rose and armed him  
and mounted on his horse and  
toke his way ever following  
the vylayn, and so he rode forth  
till it was about the clock, and then  
they entered into a great valey, and euer  
they rode so lowe and lower, it was than  
a fayre season, for the sonne shone cleere, and  
by that tyme they had ryden twoo leges  
and a halfe, they were in much darkness  
that they had cleene lost the sight both of  
the sonne, and also of the day, for it was  
there as dark as though it had be about  
a tempest. Then the vylayne sayd to  
Arthur, if a knight can yettel fro whens  
all this darkness cometh, if ye can so do  
it, and make it cleere, than shall ye get there-  
by a perpetual honour, and know you for  
certayn that as yet there was neuer no  
man that euer entered any ferder that euer  
retourned agayne therfore if youe here  
sayle you enter no ferder for if ye do, ye  
shall dye as other haue done here before.  
Frende sayd Arthur, howe is it that all  
this darkness is here in this place. I  
wyl tell you no more sayd the vylayne,  
but I rede you be sage and wise, for it stan-  
deth you well in hand. And therewith Ar-  
thur departed fro them and entered into  
the darkness, and the vylayne and Batode-  
wyn abode still as the beginninge of the  
darkenes, and so they lost the syght of Ar-  
thur, but they myght see the shynnyng of  
his sheld as farre of as one myght shone  
an arrowe. Thus he rode forth well the  
space of halfe a lege, and at the last he found  
a ryuer great and depe, and black as pitch,  
and the bankes were so hye, that vn-  
derneath the water might be sene runnyng  
vnderneath, and it was so full of serpen-  
tes and lybarbes, that none could entre  
amonge them without he were slayne  
Arthur.

and about his head flew monstrous big  
bes and diuers griffons who were able  
to beare away an armed knyght hors and  
all, and that they were in as great a mul-  
titude as though they had ben starlings.  
And Arthur dyde couer his head with  
his sheld, and the griffons dailie therat  
with their talences, and annoyed bothe Ar-  
thur and his horse righte sore, and euer  
Arthur flozpled about hym with his  
good sword clarence, and what so euer he  
touched dyd hym no more hurt after.  
Also there were flies that were as great  
as nuttes and as blacke as pytche, and  
they stange both hym and his horse righte  
sore, so that the bloud yssued out after  
but it had not bene for the cleereness of  
his sheld, he had bene slayne there and  
he had had a. w. mens liues, but by the  
bryght shynnyng thereof he might well so  
rounde aboute hym, and perceyue well  
whan any of these thinges came to him  
warde, wher by he made as good defen-  
ce as was for him possible, and thus he ro-  
de a longe season by the ryuer syde, and at  
the last he found a lytel straple way the  
which he must nedes passe without he  
would haue touned agayne, and at the  
last Arthur dasyt into the straple way,  
and anon the vermin that was there ran  
to his hors, so that shortly he was full of  
them as though they had bene flies, and  
they souked so muche bloud of the hors  
that he began to wax very feble, and whan  
Arthur sawe that his horse would sayle  
him, he hasted as fast as he might to get  
oure of that straple waye, and so with  
much payn he gate his hors out therof  
and incontinent the horse fel down dead  
thā Arthur set his fete to perth as well  
as he might, and thā there came a knyght  
at Arthur or he was ware, and hit him on  
his sheld: the whiche he helde not fast in  
his.

## The story of Arthur

his hande, therefore the stroke byd glene  
and the spere helde & brake not, & as the  
knyght passed forth Arthur toke hym by  
the rayne of the byddell and caught hym  
by the arme & pulled hym so rudely that  
he made hym auoyde his horse, and soo he  
fell downe into the water and there was  
drownd & deuour'd with the foule ber-  
emyn that was therein. Then Arthur lepre  
on the same knyghtes horse and toke his  
spere. Then an other knyght cryed and  
sayd, sy knyght beware of me, than Ar-  
thur tourned & encountred hym, and the  
knyght brake his spere, but Arthur strake  
hym so rudely w<sup>th</sup> his spere went cleue  
throughtout his body, and so he fell downe  
ne dedd, than there ran at hym .x. other  
knyghtes al at ones, and they strake him  
on al sydes with great and myghty stro-  
kes, thā he toke his good swerde and strake  
one of them soo rudely that he claue  
hym cleue to the sholdres, and an other  
he claue from the sholdres downe to the  
backe bone, and delte amonge them such  
strokes that he confounded a l that he at  
tayed vnto, and by that tyme he hadde  
great nede of such herbes as mayster Tre-  
wys gaue hym, and also his whyte wel-  
de and good swerde byd hym there good  
scayce, for suche knyghtes as he hadde  
slayne were chosen m. & ryght paynted  
but Arthurs chyualere surmounted all  
other, for there he dyde so muche w<sup>th</sup>  
his handes that he slewe all þeuer were  
agaynst hym. Then he rusht forth with  
his horse and wylt not whether, til at the  
last he hearde the gryndynge togyther of  
two milstones one vpon another as they  
do in a myll, wherby all the earth about  
Arthur did shake, and the cause why that  
these stones went thus aboute was for  
there stode by them a great fat of brasse  
wherin there was a great machomet syt

tyng upon a barre of yren made by en-  
chauntemēt, who blew from hym so  
greate a wynde that these stones turned  
therby so wyfely that no creature could  
passe by them wythout death. Then Ar-  
thur approached to these mylstones, but  
than he felte so terribly a wynde that he  
was fayne to alpyght downe of his horse  
and went on fote as well as he myght,  
but he sawe wel that he coude not come  
nere these stones without he should ope,  
therefore he went rounde aboute them to  
se what wayes he myght come to them,  
and at last he founde a lytle bypoge, whi-  
che was so narrowe þ one man could not  
passe by another, and vnder this bypoge  
there was so great a pyt that the botom  
therof could not be perceyued, and there  
were also .xii. knyghtes that kepte this  
bypoge. vi. at the one ende and. vi. at the  
other all armed w<sup>th</sup> croosbowes & hatches  
and maces of stele in theyr handes. And  
whā the. vi. knyghtes sawe Arthur  
they ran at hym all at ones, & gaue hym  
many great strokes on his shoulde, but ne-  
uer they could enpayre it, than he toke  
his good swerde and strake so the fyrst þ  
he claue his hced asonder, & fro the secon-  
de he stroke of his arme cleue to the shol-  
dres, & fro the thyrde he beane his head,  
and whā þ other thre sawe how theyr  
felowes was slayne, & how that nothin-  
ge coude endure agens hym they fledde  
toward the bypoge, but Arthur overtok  
so the hyndermost that his byrme flew  
elene into the feide, and the seconde for  
haste lepte into the pyt, and there brake  
his necke, and the thyrde he overtok on  
the bypoge and toke hym in his armes &  
byd cast hym ouer the bypoge downe in  
to the pyt and there he dyed miserablye,  
therw<sup>th</sup> he hasted hym ouer the bypoge  
and than the other. vi. raune all at ones

at hym and thought to haue dasyt him  
do wne into the ppe, but Arthur spae a  
valiaunt knight leyt in amonge them &  
laped on with his swerde round aboute  
hym in suche wyse that within a shorte  
space he departed life and deach asonder  
of. v. of cheym, and than the spyt knied  
downe before Arthur & besought him of  
mercy, and prayed hym for goddes sake  
that he would not sle hym. Take no lere  
sayde Arthur for chylye is lamed, soo þ  
thou wylt tell me fro whence this grete  
wynde cometh. Spz sayde he it cometh  
out of ponde great vessel of brasse that  
ye may se ponde, for therein is a macho  
met made all of lether, spyrng on a gret  
barte of yron made by the crafte of en  
chauntmente, but who soo coulde ouer  
tourne this machomet, the Wynd shold  
chance. Well sayde Arthur abyde me  
here still & I wyl go se what I can do.

How Arthur bette down the grete  
machomet spryng in the vessel of  
brasse, and thereby the wynde was  
ceased.

Capitulo. xij.



Than Arthur wente forth &  
thought to haue gone bold  
ly to this vessel of brasse,  
but þ wynd was so byg that  
he was fayne to lie on þerth  
all alonge, & so to crape on handes afeere  
tyll he came to the vessel, & byrwe after  
hym his shilde, his swerd, and a longe  
spere, & dasyt therwith the machomet so  
rudely with so many strokes, that at þ  
last this foule machomet ouerthrew vp  
so down in the vessel, & incontinent the  
enchauntment ceased & the stones fode  
all still, for than there was no maner  
of Wynd. Than Arthur stode by on his  
feere and came agayn to the knight & de  
Arthur.

maunded of hym what to wyse it was þ  
he sa we stonde before him in the derke,  
for all this season he had no spght but  
by the reason of the shynng of his sheld  
Tha the knyght answered and sayd, sle  
the duke of by 30; hath a neuw who is  
named spz Alembart, he is lord of this  
place, and he hath such enuy to all peo  
ple that he caused this tour to be made  
by a subtyll enchaunter, & all this grete  
darknes which ye haue bene in, the whyt  
the endureth. v. leges in circuite, in the  
which compas there was no land appen  
no; towed the space of spze peters passe,  
and so all suche people as were wont to  
dwell therein are fledde away and fami  
shed for hongre, and this enchaunter by  
his craft also made this riuer þ ye haue  
passed, the which neuer man byd before  
chys tyme withoute deach, for euer chys  
darknes hath continually endured lai  
uyng one day in the pere, and that is on  
new piers day, the whyche daye the. vi.  
knyghtes that ye haue slayne, the which  
were of the best knyghtes that coulde be  
found in all this lanne, how be it now  
they haue found their mayster, the whyt  
the knyghtes byd proude for vs þ sayd  
day for all thynges as was nedefull for  
vs to haue, & I and al my company who  
wer in al the numbze of. xii. persons, we  
kept al way this passage betwene these  
mylstones the whyche turned euer with  
out test, sayng on saynt martyns daye  
and than we might passe out to the foze  
sayd. vi. knyghtes, and sette in all such  
thynges as was prouided for vs at the  
hole pere, & so this route was beset round  
about, what with knyghtes and with  
these mylstones and with wynd, and w  
darknes, so that it were in a maner im  
possible to entre into this route withoute  
deach. Well sayde Arthur I wyl vnto me

A. ii.

whas

## The story of Arthur

What is the cause, and from whence cometh al this darknes. Syr sayd he it cometh out of a greace pite that is in this founte, and there be greace geyffons that descendeth downe into this pite, and in the bottome therof there is a great hideous fyre, made so by crake that no man can tell how, out of the whych the e r y, sech so blacke and so thicke a fume and smoke the whych r y s e r h out of this pite by certayne dozes and wyndowes, wherby the light of the son and of the brighte skye is so quenched that it is euer continually darke, the which darkness conteineth the circuite of .v. leges compass as I haue shewed you before, wherfore all this country is cleene wasted & destroyed and all the people fledde out thereof. And why sayd Arthur did he all this crueltie. Certaynly said the knyght I shal shewe to you, it is of trowth that here by there is an abbey of wyse monkes who were wont to be reputed ryght noble and of great possessions, & most comonly kyn, ges & prynces whan they paste by that place they would there rest and herbour them, and there they shoulde be well serued, and it was named the abbey of the grace dicu, and the abbot is a right wise man and a noble, for he is brother vnto the lord of Argenton who was falsly slayne by treason by this dukes newe, the whych fortuneth to come to the sayde abbey vpon an Ester day in the foute none in the same seaso that the abbot and al his hole couent were in solemne procession, and because that the couent did not at his fyrst comyng leue the scrupce of god that they were in, to haue layde the cables, & to haue brought him meate and drynke to haue fylled his paunche, therfore he was so displeased that inconsistent he kepte on his horse, and so was

departyng and his false enchaunter with hym, and whan the abbot knewe that, as soone as he myghte he came to hym and desyred him to cary, but in no wyse he could make hym to chaunge his purpose: but in the most shamefull wyse that he could he rebuked them, and called them soule rotten churles, & promysynge to do them as greace displeasure as could be in his power to doo, so he hath done as ye may se, for he hath caused them euer syth to lye in great darkness, and also he hath taken from them all they rentes and possessions which they helde vnder hym or in his rule in al the londe of Argenton, for in al that cypucpe labourers coulde not labour for they lyuyng for lacke of lyghte, wherfore many of them be famished for hunger, and to save the trowth in this sayde abbey the scrupce of god hath not ben misused this fyre yete. Well sayd Arthur that is greate domage: but I praye the tell me howe may this darknes be soz done. Syr sayd the knyght the enchaunter whan he made this fyre was ryght soz displeased because that there sprang out of the carthe euen by this terrible fyre a fayre fountayne, wherby he right well knewe that this fyre shoulde be quenched if anye knyght myghte attayne to come thereto, and to cast the water therof into the fyre, and so than al the darkness shoulde cease for euermore after.

**H**ow that Arthur entred into the founte renchous, and how he there quenched the fyre, wherby all the terrible enchauntment ceased.

Caplo. lx.



Than Arthur sayd, friend byn  
 ge me to this sayd route than  
 he wente on before & Arthur  
 folowed hym, & so wente fast  
 by the greete wyndowes and  
 doores of the coure the which were of xviij  
 fperes length square out of the whyche  
 there pssued so great haboundaunts of  
 fume that his byght welde lost clene his  
 lymynng, wherfore he was sore troubled  
 for than he could se no maner of thyng  
 how be it they dyd so muche by gropynng  
 that at the laste they came Juste to the  
 toure, and there they founde the walles  
 pyght ful of sharpe barres of yron set as  
 thicke as the prickes of an brchins skyn  
 of the length of halfe a spere to the entent  
 that no creature should approche nere to  
 the walles, so there was none entre but  
 at a lytle wycket, and with moche payne  
 the knyght dyd open it, and whan that  
 it was opened there pssued out so greete  
 haboundaunce of smoke that the ocker  
 was therby was doubled throughout all  
 the counter, so that neyther candell nor  
 torch could be enne in no place, neuer  
 thelesse Arthur entred in at the wycket  
 and left the knyght wythout, the smoke  
 and here was ryght geuous to hym, for  
 yf there had not ben more valure in hym  
 than in any other he had bene there clene  
 overcome, and alwayes he wente downe  
 warde on the staires and sawe nothyng,  
 but he felt so manye greete strokes that  
 oftentymes thereby he was constrained  
 to knele on hys knees, but he could not  
 tell from whens they came, or who dyde  
 greve them to hym, and ever he flouris-  
 shed aboute wyth his swerd but it away-  
 led hym nothyng, for he strake he wyft  
 not wher at, and so fynally he was fayne  
 to couer his head wryth hys welde, for or  
 elles he had ben crushed thought he had

Arthur.

ben of yron, and alwayes thus he wente  
 ever downwarde on the staires tyll at  
 the laste he came do wne to the botom, &  
 there he founde a faye greete fatete, and  
 there he felt so great hete that he swette  
 so therby that he was nye overcome, and  
 as he felte aboute hym he percepued that  
 he was nye the fyre, and as he went fer-  
 der he founde out the fountayne by the  
 reason of the colde ayre & he felte, wher-  
 of he was ryght gladd, and soo than he  
 toke his welde & plunged it into the wa-  
 ter, and bare as muche water ther in as  
 he coude and dyd caste it into the fyre,  
 and ever he fetcht moze water and con-  
 tynnally dyde caste it into the fyre, and  
 ever as the fyre quenched the darkenes  
 began to mynysh, and the moze water  
 he dyde caste into the fyre, the clerer the  
 lyght began to wase, and at the conclu-  
 sion he dyde caste soo muche water that  
 the fyre was clene quenched, than myghte  
 he se clerly all aboute hym, than he per-  
 cepued on bothe the sydes of the staires  
 how there stode greete ymages of brasse  
 holdynge in theyr handes greete maces  
 of stele the whyche had doone hym moche  
 trouble as he wente downwarde, but  
 than theyr powder was ended, for whan  
 the fyre was quenched the enchaunte-  
 ment was synfished, than Arthur whan  
 he sawe that all was done he retourned  
 by agayne the staires, and was ryghte  
 wery of hys trauayle, what for here and  
 swetyng and the greete strokes that he  
 had recepued, and so came agayne to the  
 lytle wycket where as the knyghte was  
 styll abydynge, and whan he sawe Ar-  
 thur hole and sounde and on lyue he kne-  
 led do wne before hym and sayd, Wyte  
 he welcome as he that is chefe floure of  
 all chualty of the worlde. Than Arthur  
 set hym do wne upon the grene grass to

Al.iii.

take

## The story of Arthur

take his byrthe, and did of his helme and  
lyclede. So thus all the countre was cle-  
ne deliuered fro darkenes, soo that eue-  
ry bodye myght se clerely aboute thepm,  
wherof the abbot and all hys couent had  
great Joye, and so they Went all and ren-  
ded thanks to almyghty god in theyr  
churche. And than the abbot sayd to all  
his byrthene, saye let vs go and se hym  
that hath thus deliuered vs fro all thral-  
dome yf god wyll gyue vs the grace to  
fynde hym, for verely I thynke it be the  
gentyl knyght y was at the portenoyr.  
Than the abbot and al his couent issued  
out of the abbey with comyn processyon  
and so came to this sayd toure the why-  
che was not ferre thens, and there they  
founde Arthur lytyng on the grounde  
and the knyght by hym. And whan Ar-  
thur sawe them he toke to hym hys sheld-  
de and helme and hys spere in hys hande.  
And whan the couent with the processyon  
came before hym he knelled downe befo-  
re the Crosse, and all the couente knelled  
downe before hym, noz they Woulde not  
arise tyll he was vpon his fete. And than  
there came to them Sawdewyn, & with  
hym the foule greates bylaine who hadde  
broughte Arthur to all the se forsayd ad-  
uentures. And whan Sawdewyn sawe  
the processyon and al those monkes, than  
he thought verely that Arthur had bene  
dead, than he began to cry and to brye  
and to make all the sorow of the World  
and sayd. Was vnhappy creature as I  
am that thus haue lost my lord and may-  
ster the floure of a l the worlde in all no-  
ble chualry, alas death why dost thou  
not take me, and thus as he made thys  
great sorow at the last he espyed Arthur  
wheras he stode, than hys heart came to  
hym agayne. And the abbot came to Ar-  
thur and sayd. Myght noble and vertu-

ous knyght ye be ryght hertely welcome  
as he that hath deliuered vs and all the  
countre out of suche tourmente and pyn-  
son as we were in a longe space, and by  
the pleasure of god by your meanes the  
seruyce of god from hens forth shall be  
mynystred in our churche, for I and all  
my holt couent hartely desyre you to co-  
me and take your rest wpythin oure abbey  
now after your great traualle. And Ar-  
thur with a ryght good wyll byngraunt  
them, for he was very wery. Than Saw-  
dewyn toke his sheldde and the great by-  
laine toke hys spere and helme, and of ten  
tymes sayd vnto hym, gentyl knyghte  
god gyue the Joye and encrease thy ho-  
nour and bounte, for thou haste achieved  
that neuer man could do before thys ty-  
me, therfore now by the pleasure of god  
and by the hys promysse the saye damoy-  
sell of Argemont shall be deliuered oute  
of trouble and care, and oute of the han-  
des of the duke of Brgoyr neuewe, for  
thou haste promysed me to goo where so-  
euer that I shall byngre the, therfore I  
now desyre the for to kepe thy promysse.  
Well sayde Arthur I ensure you sayth-  
fully that I wyll not breake my promysse.  
So it said the abbot god gyue you the gra-  
ce to byngre this lady out of thraldome,  
for I knowe well ye haue promysse suffy-  
cyent to achieve that enterypse, though  
it were a greater mater. That is of trouth  
sayd the bylaine, for it hath ben right  
well proued, for I haue broughte hym  
by all the places where as any harde ad-  
uenture hath ben to proue ther by his chy-  
ualry and noble vertue, how be it the dus-  
kes neuewe is greatly to be recoubred,  
but for all that I doubt not but that he  
shall be well chastysed, and soo the wyth  
they wente all to the abbey, where as the  
abbot made thepm ryght great honoure  
and

And there, and therfore all the belles in the church were tonge continually thre dayes and thre nightes for grete loye, and so for a lytell space Arthur & Gawyn wynd and the grette vplaine sported them there in the great feast of ioy. Now for a tyme let vs leue Arthur in this abbey & let vs speke of the mighty kyng Emendus, and of the faire florence his daughter,

How after that Bissebar & mayster Steuen wer departed fro Arthur fro y porte norye they aryued at Coynte where as king Emendus was, and in his company the

emperoure of ynde, and his other four knyghtes, holdyng the same tyme a great sumptuous open court. And there mayster Steuen & Bissebar recommeded to them all in open audyence the noble chydraly of Arthur, and this same meane season there came into the court a knyght all armed and broughte rydynge to the kyng howe all the aduentures of the court reueyous were achieved by the onely promys of one noble knyght. Capitulo. lxi.



**W**hen that the mighty kyng Emendus hadde holden a gret solemne court at a tyme of easter in a gret cite of his called Sabary, the. xv. daye of easter the emperour would haue departed, but the kyng would not suffer him, but entreated hym so saye that he was

content to abyde, and soo they were detempned to kepe theyr whysontyde at Coynte. And so they byd, at which tyme the kyng kepte the moost sumptuous and open Courte that he heere spith he was kyng. Soo thus the emperours abode st. with the kyng tyl to the tyme it was whysontyde, against the which tyme

## The story of Arthur

tyme the kynge had sente for all the nobles of his realme to be at the sayd feast at his cite of Cozunce. And so whan the daye approached the kynge with all his noble company rode to Cozunce, & there mette with him his noble daughter the gentyll florence, accompanied with y<sup>e</sup> archbishop of Cozunce her uncle, and brother vnto the kyng her father, and so this cite was than riallly replentished with kynges and knyghtes. And whan the kyng was entred he alighted downe at the peryon, and so mounted vp into the palays, and the nexte day the emperour came thither, and the kyng and florence his daughter and all his hole barowp dyd encountre and conuey hyn to his lodgyng, the whiche was in the abbey of saynt Quincine, and than the kyng & florence retourned agayne vnto thei<sup>r</sup> palays. And the thirde daye before the feast there came to the court the kyng of orquene, and the noble kyng of morzall, and the kyng of valefoute and the kyng of sabary, also thither came the lord seuelon, seneschal vnto the sayde florence, and sy<sup>r</sup> ancean his newe, and the lord de boole, sy<sup>r</sup> steuen, and sy<sup>r</sup> miles de valefoute lord of damas, and sy<sup>r</sup> artaude lord of arfare, & sy<sup>r</sup> morant lord of senille, and sy<sup>r</sup> delyer lord of sabary, and also there was sy<sup>r</sup> alier lord of amalon, and sy<sup>r</sup> wol in the scot, and sy<sup>r</sup> shampton of dkelin. And all these were of the retinue of the noble florence, and there were so many other that a greate parte of thei<sup>m</sup> were fapne to be lodged wythoute the ctyte. Than the court was so full and so pleetous that there was neuer seene none suche before. Than the kyng caused to be cryed that whosoever would take on hym the noble oorde of knyghthode that

he shoulde be dubbed knyghte with his own handes. The nexte daye the whiche was the fyrst day of the feast, than there began in the court so muche feast and ioye, that there was neuer sene no such in all the court before, and on whiche sondaye after masse the kyng made in his palays fyf newe knyghtes, vnto whome he dyde geue armes and horse and harnays. And florence dyd geue them gownes of shartlet, and mantelles of grene furred with ermynes, and so all these new knyghtes were standynge before the kinge, who dyd gyde aboute them thei<sup>r</sup> swerdes, and ryghte sweetly laughynge dyd giue them the necke stroke of knyghthode, and florence dyde lace thei<sup>r</sup> mantelles about thei<sup>r</sup> neckes. And the emperour dyd make in his lodgyng xi. knyghtes. And the other four kinges eche of them made x. knyghtes. And so than the emperour and the other kynges dyd mounts on horsebacke, and all these new knyghtes with them, and so came to the palays, and than began hornes and bullynnes to blowe, and taboures and rebeckes & other instrumentes to sowe and to make the moost melodye of the world, and than there assembled together al the iuglers & comblers and al resorted to the palays. And whan they were all assembled at the court there were to the numb<sup>r</sup> of two hundred & x. newe knyghtes. And so the kyng and the emperour sate downe and the sayde florence betwene them, and al the other kinges were set eche of them after thei<sup>r</sup> degre. And the iuglers and minstrelles began to make ioye and feast. Ladies and dampselles began to daunce. Lordes and knyghtes dyd iuste and conynay, trompettes and clarions and other instrumentes of musike began to soun

And all the cyte was hanged with cloth of golde & ryche arrayes. And as they were in this great myrth & Joy there alighted at the peryon syr Brysebar, and mayster Steuen was remainyng at the castell reynarre but two leges thens, & there he made the peas betwene the burgeys of the towne and the meane people, for they had ben before longe at discorde, & whan syr Brysebar was moued vpon the pallas, all the barons and knyghtes ran & Welcomed hym, & made for hys comyng great Joye & feest, & speecially syr Aueleon the seneschall, & syr Ancell, & syr Wyllles of valisounde, & all other made hym suche chere & for pefe he had grete payne to come to the kyng, & as soone as the kyng sawe hym he made great Joy, and toke hym by the hande & caused hym to sit downe before hym. Than was al the court ryght Joyfull of hys comyng, for before there were none lacking of al florence knyghtes but he & Arthur. Than the kyng sayd, syr Brysebar ye sent hyther to me the heed of the foule great monster the whyche is slayne thanked by god but I pray you tell me how he was conquered. Syr sayd Brysebar your grace sent me thither wyth a great company, how be it we dyd nothyng there, for we founde there fyghtyng wyth the monster the moost gentyl knyght & now lyueth, and moost freest of herre, moost curtyse swete and amynable, & the moost valyaunt & redoubted knyght that euer was gyft wyth swerd, for he a lonly stroke of the monsters heed in my syghte, & dyd there suche prowesse of armes that no manne can do like him. In the name of god quod the kyng, it is great valure in one man to bring to deth suche a foule best. Syr sayd Brysebar ye can not know the valure and hys prowesse whyche is in this

knyght, for it is he that all onely hath achieved the straunge adventures of the porte noye, and it is he that wyth his body dyd manyngles at the Roche, where as syr Symont with v. hondred mo dyd laye in a wayte for hym, and there he lepte into a shyppe full of hys enemyes whan he percepued that I and other of myr company were taken prysoners and so ledde forth to the castell, and there he sustayned all onely the medlyng amonge all his enemyes the whyche was all & compynalte of the towne of the roche and of the countre all aboute, and there he slewe syr Symont and more than thre hundred of hys companye, and rescowed us out of prysen, and also he rescowed the knyght of the plashes of all hys enemyes, what wyll ye that I shall saye, he is the floure of all chyualry, there is not his pere in all the worlde. And he hadde scant vttered these wordes but that there came into the palays a knyght all armed and dresed hym to the knyng and sayde Ryght hys and myghty puyssaunt kyng I haue brought vnto you good and true tydynges, that is how that the straunge adventures of the tenebrous toure are achieved, and all the enchauntementes clene fordon, and the grete darkenes is now touned to lyght and bryghtnes, & all the knyghtes that kepte the toure are all slayne, and the great lion and gyaunt and gyauntesse are slayne, and the countre deliuered fro al the harde adventures that they had longe endured. Fapre stend sayd the kyng and who hath done all this dede. Syr that hath done a knyght al onely who wotech a whyte shelde, and for a certayne I sawe hym vnarmed in the abbey of grace dieu, but neuer syth god was borne hath there bene seen so fayre a creature so gentyl nor so grac-

ous.

## The story of Arthur

ous. And whan Florence herde spekyng of the whyte hylde, she thought than verily þat it was her spelde the whiche was in her pauplyon at the porte noyze, and thought verily that it was her frende & loue Arthur that bare it of Whome she herde so muche good reported, and thus wryth her owne thought her herte trebled and sodenly therby she blusshed, how be it she made no semblaunt & to her selfe she sayd. A swete frende noble and true here whan shall I se you, so that I may speke wryth you at good leyser. Than the king sayd in the name of god this knyght is right valyaunt, what is the cause for? Byssebar that ye brought him not to þe court wryth you, to thentent that we myght be acquainted wryth hym, so that he myght be our frende and we hys. As god helpe me sayde the kynge of orquenei it were a grete rycheesse to haue suche a wretche as he is nere vs, and verily as for my parte I had rather haue the companye of hym than of the rychest persone nowelyuynge and sayd Byssebar ye dyd ryght yll youre duty whan ye dyd not your payne to bringe him to this court. Sayd Byssebar by the fayth that I owe bat on my lord the kynge I dyd the beste of my power to haue brought hym hyther, but he answered me þe must nedes go fyrst to the toure tenebrous, and sayd if god did gyue hym the grace thereto escape that aduerture he wold be at this manweldarn ryde at Argente to make battayle ayenst sayd Asembarthe þe duke of byrgors neuwe for the saye mayden of Argentons sake for he shewed me how þe he had promysed to her uncle the markes & to mayster Steuen that he wolde do the best of hys power to get agayne the saye ladyes heritage, & how that he wolde shewe vnto the dukes newwe that falsly and vntrew

ly he had dyscreyted her, & by false treason slayne the lord of Argenton her father. It is of trowth sayd the knyght that brought thither the troynges fro the tenebrous toure, I warrunt hym he shall ryght well helpe that lady in her ryght, But by the fayth þat I owe vnto god sayd the kynge of orquenei yf suche a batayle shall be there yf god wyl it shall not be wrythout me, for verily I wyl be ther at the same tyme. Sayd Byssebar of orquenei saye vncle suffre me to go with you, for truly so wyl I do. And I also quod sayd Asembarthe. And I wyl not be behynd sayd Byssebar yf god be pleased for ther we shal se many aples of this knyght and thā in þe court ther begā to be a grete parlyament amonge the knyghtes, & a faythful auowynge to go to the sayd iourney, & so they were of one accord wel to the nobles of .v. C. knyghtes, & they all promysed faythfully in open audience to be at the sayd batayle & helpe & to ayde þe sayd damoyzell. Than Florence sayd to the king of orquenei, saye colin we shal do ryght well to go thither to help this lady, & also to acquaint you wth this gentyll knyght, & for goddes sake bring him hyther, and I promyse you to loue hym ryght deely, & to giue him suche gyftes and londe that he shall be ryght ryche & purffaunt. Well saye nere said the king I shall do the best of my power.

Howe the emperour was afrede lest Florence shulde cast her loue on Arthur, wherfore he demaunded of the kynge her father to haue her in maryage wout ony lenger delay, wherwryth the kynge was content. but Florence wold not agree thereto, wherwryth the kynge her father was wryth her ryght sore dyspleased, as ye shall here afterward. Cap<sup>t</sup>. lxxi.

Whan



**W**han that the emperour had  
 herd the great praise & laude  
 & generally was giue to he  
 chur, & perceiued wel how  
 he had the loue of al þe court, & herde wel  
 the good wordes þe florence spake of hi  
 wherby there strake into his hert a Ja-  
 lousie & a fere lest þe shuld cast her lo-  
 ue on him, therfore he roke hyng Gmen  
 bus by the hand and said. **S**ay I would  
 sayne speke with you in counsaile, but  
 I pray you ly; let your daughter be pre-  
 sent. Soo than they bothe rose and flo-  
 rence with them, and softely she smiled  
 vnto the kyng of cyquene and sayde to  
 hym in counsaile. God gyue grace that  
 of this counsaile good may come therby  
 but I fere me the contrary. So thā they  
 they entred into a chaumbre, and leane  
 them do wne in a saye wyndowe, than  
 the emperour began to speke to the ki-  
 nge and sayd. **S**ay it is of a troube that is  
 is a great fealou passyth pe gaue to me  
 your good will that I shold haue in ma-  
 riage þe saye lady florence your dought-  
 ter here presente, but she hath euer excu-  
 sed her selfe because of the late depa-  
 rtyng out of this worlde of the quene her  
 mother, for she thought it was not per-  
 sayning to her to haue bene maryed so  
 soon. After her deede, it is now so grete  
 a fealonie lyth that there can no blame be  
 repute to her now to be married, there-  
 fore saye now I requyre you that ye wyl  
 incontinens deliuer her to me accordyng  
 to your promysse made to me before this  
 tyme. In the name of God sayde the  
 kyng, it is but reason and right that I  
 shoulde so do, and so I wyl do, wherfore  
 saye a swete daughter florence ye wer  
 borne in a good houte, whan so noble &  
 so hpe a person as the emperour is wyl  
 haue you in maryage, wherby great ho-

noure and wele shall come to vs all and  
 to all our countreys let vs incontinens  
 sende for my brother the archbishop to  
 the intent to eniure you together. Right  
 dere father sayd florence it is per ryght  
 ouer loote to mary me, & for certayne I  
 am not in purpose as yet to be maryed  
 to him, nor yet to non other, I think first  
 to le. it. peres moze passed as please. How  
 so sayd the kyng, damosell wyl ye than  
 do agens my wyl as in the refusynge of  
 the emperour to be your lord in the way  
 of marriage. **S**ay sayd she I haue no care  
 for no lord but onely for god & for you,  
 for surely I wyl not consent to no mary-  
 age. Ye shall sayde the kyng, or elles ye  
 shal right soe displese me. **S**ay quod she  
 your displeasure shuld greve me aboute al  
 other thynges: but by the faith þe I owe  
 to you, I wyl not as yet be married. **S**o  
 sayd the kyng, than I se well þe wyl  
 do nothyng as I comaunde you, there-  
 fore ye shal do it whether ye wyl or not,  
 & to take her by the hande to the intent to  
 haue deliuered her to the emperour. And  
 whan she sawd that, she was not content  
 and pulled her hande to her agayne, too  
 the intent that the emperour shoulde not  
 touche it. And whan the kyng sawd that  
 he was ryght soe displeased and sayde.  
 Damosell ye haue set you against mine  
 accord and assent, and therefore I pro-  
 mise you that fro henceforth of my help  
 and counsaile ye shal saye therfore fro  
 henceforth do as, wel as ye can. & I strai-  
 ly charge you auoyd & come no moze in  
 my syght nor presence, nor wher soeues  
 that I be. And whan florence sawd her  
 father so soe displeased, she said. Right  
 dere father if ye be thus displeased wth me  
 ye do not well therein, but sayth it is your  
 pleasure that I shoulde take the emperours  
 or elles to lese your consaile and helpe, &

## The story of Arthur

also not to come in your sighte the whiche  
 is a ryghte soze payenge of the fader  
 to his chyld but syth it is so I humbly  
 requyre your grace of respyte the space  
 of a moneth tyl I suche tyme that I may  
 speke with my counseyle in that behalfe  
 Lady sayd the emperour it is to longe a  
 respyte for I wyll departe hence ryghte  
 shortly for I trowe it be hys tyme for I  
 haue ben here a longe season and al that  
 hath your loue caused wherfore I wold  
 faine or I depart knowe how or in what  
 wyse my loue shall be rewarded I saye  
 not nay but it is good for you to take a  
 supplement and I am content that ye so do  
 a daye or two. Well sayd the kyng I am  
 content that the shall haue respyte tyl to  
 morowe at this same houre & no longer.  
 Well sayd Florence this counseyle is a  
 peny my herte & wyll that I wolde take  
 a man agens my herte saynge I am a  
 quene & doughter to the moost myghty  
 kyng of all þe worlde certaynly this gre  
 ueth me ryght soze ther With she began  
 ryght piteously to wepe & to make right  
 grete sorowe. And whan the kyng sawe  
 her wepe he sayd to her. Auoyde out of  
 my sight and let me not se you tyl to mo  
 rowe agayne at this same present houre  
 and than answer me whether ye wyll ta  
 ke hym and my good wyll ther With or  
 elles leue hym and lese my good wyll and  
 fauour for euer more. Than Florence is  
 sued out of the chaumbre all wepyng.  
 Than the iiii. kynges stepte to her whan  
 they sawe her wepyng and lefte all the  
 leest amynstrelles, & Jesters left than al  
 theyr spothe and playe and the kyng of  
 orquenei toke her bi the hande & deman  
 ded of her why she wepte so soze. Dere  
 cosyn said she my lord me fader is right  
 soze dyspleased With me and hath come  
 maunded that I sholde auoyde out of his

presence. Than she sate her byde the ar  
 chebysshop & sayd to hym. Saye byde let  
 me go with you to your lodgings With  
 a ryght good wyll sayd he, & whane haue  
 he þ thus causeth you to wepe. So thus  
 al the kynges conuayed her to her bydes  
 lodgynge, and so dyd the moost parte of  
 all the barons of the court, and also all  
 the new knyghtes, and they al abode stil  
 at Florence court. And whan she was  
 thus in her lodgynge the kynges cerou  
 ned agayne to the kyng Smerdis court  
 but the kyng of orquenei and whilp his  
 neure abode styl with Florence, and þ  
 kyng of orquenei demanded of her why  
 that she wepte. Cosyn sayde she. my lord  
 my father woulde marry me and gyue me  
 to the emperoure, & woulde haue ensured  
 vs togyther wout any counsaill takynge  
 cyther of you, or of any other of my fren  
 des, & as god helpe me I had rather dye  
 than to haue the emperoure, for I hate  
 thynge so muche in all the worlde as I  
 doo hym. for as longe as I loue I wyll  
 not haue him, therfore it is but a grea  
 tely to enforce me therto. Saye lady & co  
 syn said the kyng, as god helpe me or ye  
 haue you agaynst your wyll, there shall be  
 perled a thousand helmes. Ye sayd whilp  
 the duke of sabary or that daye come  
 there shall be byente a hundredth to wnes  
 therof be ye sure, therfore saye ladye be  
 ye in peas and let your hert at rest. Well  
 sayde the Archebysshop let vs go to the  
 court and speke With this emperour, so  
 thus they rose and went forth & left Flo  
 rence in peas. And thus they moored by  
 into the palays, and founde the kyng S  
 merdis & the emperoure togyther, who  
 were as than issued out of the chaumbre.  
 Than the archebysshop sayd to þ kyng  
 Saye broder I meruayle grete why what  
 counsaill ye haue had to cause thus to co  
 me to

me to your court so many noble men & other fro so farre countreys to thentent to trouble & displease them by the onely wordes of thys man the emperour here present, who would haue my lady florence your daughter in marriage against her wyl, but for I ensue you as long as I liue agens her wil he getterly her not. As god helpe me saide Philyp the duke of Sabary he had nede to haue brought mo men hether than he hath done yet hethin hech to haue her awaye to her dyspleasure. Why said the emperour, & who is he that wyl say me nay: is it you, I would there were none to depart the matter but ye and I to se who should lide her away. Clerely sayd the kynge of orquney, it is none egale matche a duke agens an emperour, howe be it as god helpe me yet he had her agens her wyl, and none other so mekle in the matter but al onely you, I thinke ye should not reioyse her so easily as ye thynke of, and be ye in certain that in that quartell he wyl & shal defende her agens you, and therein do the best ye can wail your power, & begin whan ye wyl, for he doubteth you nothyng, nor shal do. And whan the kynge Emundus hearde theym saye these wordes, he was right soze displeased and sayd. What is this sayd, are we taken prisoners: say ye thus in a waye to menace thus in my presence my lord and frende the emperour, reuij if ye continue in this purpose ye shal know that I am right soze displeased wth you all. Than the archbys. Hop answered hym agayne right sharplye and so there began muche hurlyng and butlyng in the court, and muche ado was there likely to haue be done, but as fortune was in the meane season master Steuen was arriued at the palais & entred into the hall & xl. knyghtes wth Archua,

hym, and whan he herd thys noyse and stryle, he spake aloud & cryed. peace for goodes sake and byd soo muche that he appeased somwhat the noyse. And as sone as the kynge of valesound saw master Steuen hym son, he ran & embraced and kyssed him, and demaunded howe he byd. And he answered and said, sir right wel thanked be god. And than all other knynges byd welcome him, and so did kynge Emundus & also the emperour, and be maunded of him how he had done such his departing out of the court. And he answered and sayd right wel, than he perceued right wel how that the kynge and the archbys shew were right soze displeased together, wherfore he said to the kynge. Say what there is with you, this daye is a right hye & solempne daye, whye is your barons and court thus troubled, thys day should be of spoyte and playe. Master Steuen sayd the kynge, I can not be merry, for your lady my daughter florence hath dyspleased me, for she wyl not do that thyng that I would haue her to do. Wherwith I am nothinge content, wherfore I pray you assaue and ye can reduce her to my mynde. Sayd sayd master Steuen, I trust I shal do so moche that of reason ye shal be content, so of this matter they talked a great space.

¶ Howe florence whan she knewe that master Steuen was come to the court she was right glad, & howe she with his policie gate her longer respyt, & was tyl barrymewe tpe next after. Ca. lxxi.



In this season was the noble lady florence in her chabze making right great sorow soze wepyng, and saying to her selfe. A noble Arthur

## The story of Arthur

Swete frende fre & gentyll of hearte I neuer saw you and yet I loue you with all my herte. I had thought to haue ben vnmarrped tyll the season of your comynge to thys court, but now I se well that I must nedes take hym that I hate moost I loue you but I can not haue you, a for tyme how arre thou tourned apenst me, I hate hym þ I muste haue, I loue hym that I must lese, certaynly dere loue Arthur if ye lose me thus ye shal haue great domage, for ye shal lese her þ loueth you truly. A mayster Steuen why haue I not you here now in my great nede, if ye knewe of my sorowe I am sure nothynge coude let you but þ ye wolde tourne vp so downe this marriage. And as the thus complayned piteously tidinges came to her lodgynge that mayster Steuen was comen to the court. And as soone as she herd that her hert began to come agayne to her, for than she thought veryly that she neded to care for nothynge than the ryght hastily sent for hym. And as soone as the mayster knewe therof he sayde to the kyng. Spz my lady hath sent for me to come to her grace. So your way sayd the kyng. So thus the mayster departed and the archebyschop with hym, and the kyng of ozqueny and hys neuwe spz Whyllyp duke of Sabery, and soo they all arpyed togyther where as florence was. And the other kynges abode wth the kyng and the mperour. And the noble barons of the court and all the newe knyghes were at florence lodgynge ryght soze displeased bycause of her dyspleasure, but they were all gladd when the kyng of ozqueny & mayster Steuen were comen. Than the mayster entred into florence chambze: & goodly dpyd salute her, but as than she could speke noworde, but toke hym by the hande and caused hym to syt

downe by her syde, & Whā her hert came to her she sayd how þ he was ryght welcom, as he whom she despyed to haue at that tyme aboute all the creatures of þ worlde. Than the mayster sayd to her, madame is thys a saye aray that ye may ke thz for your estate thus to bringe yourselfe in sorowe, & thus to bringe all your people & these gentyll knyghes in great trouble for your sorowe who are thus comen to your court to do you honoure, for they haue left the kyng your father to comen to your lodgynge in this hye solempne day, therfore leue ye this sorowe & make such there as pertayneth to an hie Joyfull pryncesse reioyse your court & your people. Than florence answered & sayd I mayster swete frende I can not be merry, for I am gretly greued at the hert, for my lozomy father hath defeded me to comen in his presence for a strainger to whom he wolde that I should take in marriage, but god shal rather gyue me deith than I wyl take hym, for I hate hym wth all my herte, & it behoueth me to answer he rather I wyl haue hym or not betwene this and to morowe thys tyme, & I haue grette despire that I shulde thus be delt wth all wth a strainger. Madame sayd the mayster now be ye in rest & peas, for syth ye haue a day respyte I shal gete you nps a hole yere lenger delape, & I trust such fortune may fall that oz the yere be ron ye shal not haue hym. A dere mayster sayd she I hertely thanke you & promyse you that though thys emperour be neuer so ryche or puyssaunt or full of noblenes & power yet I haue no heart of all his rychesse, for I thanke god I am now ouer of the puyssaunt ladyes þ is lpyng, therfore I care not for hym nor for all his power. Madame sayd the mayster now thā I se well þ your herte is set on no courtyse,

lyfe, but as me se meth your heart is set  
all on gentylnes, and bylene verily that  
loue in your heart is free & sweete. Where  
as it ought to be so all people excepte to  
thempour for there I thynke your heart  
is full & hateful, but madame here be two  
thynges contrary to be in one heart both  
loue & hate, how may it agre together, to  
loue & to hate, to be meke & fell, I can not  
se how this may be. A mayster sayd he  
haue no marvaile of this though I say  
that my heart is both meke and fell, cer-  
tainly my heart is set where as it hateth  
wher it loveth. I saye quod the mayster do ye this  
hate, & say quod I saye & pright for a p  
is thynke, our who wold haue me arent  
my wyl, by the holy martyr saynt Ste-  
uen of corinte he shal not haue me by my  
good wyl, & if he take me by force I trust  
he shal well knowe that he byd neuer so  
great a folie. Madam sayd the mayster,  
marriage p is made by force is greatly to  
be doubted, but whan it is made mekely  
and sweetely by the agreement of both par-  
ties than lyghtly loue contynued succ  
after betwene them, & whan it is contra-  
ry of thynges both parties endureth ma-  
ny yll dayes and nyghtes, but madame  
now p I knowe wel to whon your heart  
is hateful, but I pray you let me know  
arent whome your heart is meke & am-  
able, thā he beheld the mayster & syghed  
right for. And whā the mayster herd her  
sygh, a lytle he smyled. And whā he saw  
hym laughe he was a lytle ashamed and  
blushed therwith, & al smylng sayd. A  
mayster pe know well prouge all this  
as wel as I do my self, for I neuer saw  
hym as yet that hath loved me ampte &  
loue, I se right wel dayly my bettes ene-  
my, but mine owne dere loue I neuer sa-  
we, but I se dayly hym that I hate, but  
I can not se hym that I loue, mayster pe  
Arthur.

knowe what he is better than I do, ther-  
fore I pray you shew me what ye know  
of him, for ye haue gyuen away my white  
sheld and good swerde clarence, and I  
wote not to what knyght, nor whether  
they be wel employed or not. Madame of  
the mayster I shal shewe you, I wyl that  
ye know that I haue gyuen them to the  
moost fayre and gracous knyghte that  
now lyueth, and freest of heart in al gen-  
tylnes that can be founde in al the worl-  
de, for he is the chefe floure of bounte in  
all maner of chualry, also he is the best  
knyght that euer was gyfte with swer-  
de, with the tyme of Gawane and Lau-  
ancelot, and the best approued knyght that  
euer hath ben herde of, who hath set his  
faythful heart without eyther fraude or  
fallshode on your loue, and to hym in my  
presence your ymage hath gyuen and set  
on his heed your chaplet. Than Florence  
heart began to tremble and sayd. Gentil  
mayster I doute me greatly that ye gy-  
ue him a greter prayse than he is worthy  
for ye haue praysed hym ryght greatly.  
Madame truly sayde he all that I haue  
sayd is of trouthe, for he is worthy to ha-  
ue more prayse than I haue gyuen hym.  
Well mayster sayd he is al this of trouthe  
Pe trulo madame sayd he. By the sayth  
that I owe vnto god sayd Florence than  
I se wel he is worthy to haue muche ho-  
nour, & I prouise you he shal not fayle  
therof if god sende me lyfe, and he shal  
not lese his loue, for syth he loveth me  
as god help me I shal loue hym agay-  
ne, for reason requyeth to loue him that  
loueth me. Than sayd the mayster I se  
well nette the kynge your father yelous  
thempour bicause he loneth you. Than  
Florence smyled & with her hande strake  
him on the sholdre & sayd, mayster there  
as I am pleased there I loue, but I care

## The story of Arthur

not for hym that is apenst in heart, one of these two please me, and the other I hate, I praye god that he maye come & I loue, & I wolde he were gone & an oþer me, he that hath my chapier my wyde & swerd hath my loue more thā any other of the worlde, and the Emperoure hath my hate more than onye other luyng creature, I loue hym that I neuer sawe and hate hym whome I se dayly, mayster now I haue shewed you all my coulseyte, as to hym in whome I trust moost ye be my clerke and my man, ye knowe now as muche of my counsyle as god dooth, therfore I requyre you kepe it secrete, and put to your payne that I maye haue hym on whome my heart and loue is layde, for now ye knowe on whome it is set. Than the mayster sayd, madame as god helpe me ye haue ryght well sette your hart on the best and farrest knyght of all the worlde, that is the gentyll Arthur. And as they thus talked there came to them the kynge of orquency and whyllyp his newewe, and the archebysshop & Byssebar, her senehall and byr Huntscl, Than florence rose apenst them and also the mayster, and so they had all greate Joye of florence whā they sawe her make better chere than she dyd before. At the last the mayster sayd, lordes I se wel how þ the noble court of myghty kyng Euenus is all in a traunce in a maner halfe a slepe, for there is neyther playe nor Joye wherof the kynge is greatly to be blamed, for it is greate shame by cause so many noble men be here at this feest therfore in my mynde it were good to take some counsyle to se howe the court myght be reioysed agayne, let vs sende word to the kyng how that my lady florence is redy to gyue her answer now we the whyche she should gyue to mozo we,

and I promyse you that I shall soo answer for her that she shall haue lenger respyte an hole yere, and I trust soo to appease both the kinge and the emperour that of reason they shall be wel content, Than the kyng of orquency sayd, mayster I se wel how that ye haue not as yet forgotten all your olde conynge, I wene ye wyl bynge them al a slepe with wyngynge of your hande. Than the archebysshop dyd laugh, and so they were al of his accorde. Than they sent to the kyng duke whyllyp and byr Byssebar, and the kyng had ryght great Joye whā he heard the byr message & sayd. Truly mayster Steuen I se ryght well hath gyuen her good counsyle he is a ryght noble clerke, I praye to god sende hym ryght good aduenture. And so these messengers retourned agayne & she wold how that the kyng was right well content & was right Joyfull to here her answer. Than florence apparayled her to go to the court So the kyng of orquency dyd conuey her, and the kyng of mo:uall dyd mete them by the way, and the archebysshop & mayster Steuen went before, than all the knyghtes assembled them togyther & were wel to the nombre of CCCC and all they folowed after florence, and in theyr hartes they cursed hym that was cause of this pletynge and barpaunce, and prayed to god þ the emperour myght aduante of his wyl. Thus florence entred into the palays, and the emperoure dyd salute her, and soo dyd all other excepte the kyng her father, than the emperour satte dowe and florence by hym, & the kyng Euenus and the kyng of orquency besoyde hym, & so all other currey man in his roume & whā euery man was in place than mayster Steuen sayd to the kyng Syr and it lyeht your grace beholde here your

your daughter a lover. Cerrapnye sayd  
 the king my daughter I beleue wel that  
 she is, but as for any loue or amice that  
 she beareth to me I can neyther knowe  
 nor see, for she hath displeased me, for be-  
 holde here my lord and dere frende the  
 emperour of ynde, who hath done vs so  
 great honour that he would haue her by  
 the way of marriage, who is come to de-  
 syre to haue her in his owne propre per-  
 son without anye other meane mes-  
 senger, and perche is so daungerous that she  
 demaundeth counsaile in this case the  
 which toucheth her honour and profite  
 and wyl not beleue me that am her own  
 father, wherwith I am ryght sore dys-  
 pleased, & bere her ryght sore in my heart.  
 Then the mayster rose vpon his feete &  
 his harbaing on his sholdre in a robe  
 of scarlet lynced with greene saccenet,  
 holdyng his gloves folded in his hand  
 and sayd ryght saye a gracious, ney-  
 ther so muche nor so lytel of stature, his  
 face somewhat full and round, and his  
 heyre saye and yelow, he was a saye  
 clerke, and sonne to a kyng and a queene,  
 and so in open audyence than he sayde.  
 Ryght excellent hye and myghty prince  
 my ladyes grace here presente the noble  
 and gentil florence is yet in great trou-  
 ble and sorow of herte of the great hard-  
 nes that ye haue shewed her this day, &  
 because it seemeth that ye haue a maner  
 of displeasure to her word, wherfore  
 she is not, nor can not be in toye nor rest  
 as longe as ye haue that wyl toward  
 her, for now she is here comen to you as  
 she that forthynt of your displeasure  
 for she doth not, nor wyl not do nothing  
 that shall be contrary to your pleasure  
 and wyl, but she is, and euer shall be re-  
 dy to accomplysh your noble commaun-  
 dement accordyng to her herte, the whi-  
 Arthur.

che is good and true both agens you &  
 all other personnes wher as it ought to  
 be, & syfth it is so that my lord the  
 noble emperour here presente wyl do her  
 so much honour as to desyre to haue her  
 in marriage, wherof humbly she than-  
 keth him, but it is wel the custome accor-  
 dyng to the state of euery person to be  
 discreete and wyl selfe in suche a case,  
 therfore syt it is conuenient to tele pri-  
 uently in this matre, for the emperour &  
 you are two of the greatest, & puissant  
 persons both of honour and of riches  
 that is no we sayyng, and my ladye flo-  
 rence is the most hye & puissant prin-  
 cesse of all the world, and as touchyng  
 so hye & solempne a matre as of the ma-  
 rriage of the emperour of ynde, and of the  
 daughter of the hye and myghty kyng  
 Emendag, this hye & great solempne  
 ought not to be done priuely in cham-  
 bres in rest & pence, but it ought to be do-  
 ne in the open presence of all the barons  
 of both landes & realmes, so thence  
 yf god sende anye pssue betwene theym  
 that theyr marriage may be knowne op-  
 ly to al people of both realmes, wherby  
 shall be eschewed all grudge & murmu-  
 ration, for than such pssue shall be wel  
 knowne for ryghtful heyre throughout  
 both the regyons, nor also it is not con-  
 uenient that this solempne feast that is  
 this day of the holy ghoste and this so-  
 lempne feast of this noble marrymony  
 should be made al but at one feast, this  
 day is so hye & princypally a feast, that  
 euery chrysten man ought to do nothing  
 elles but laude and serue god, and syt  
 the daye of this noble marriage let there  
 be here kynges dukes, barons & other no-  
 ble knyghtes, ladies & damoyselles, & let  
 all these do suche seruyce as aperteyneth  
 for them to do, and than let these ladyes  
 D. iii. and

## The story of Arthur

and damoyelles dances & synges, & gyue to the se newe knyghtes chaplettes & streimers, & set on theyr spere poyntes, & let these yonge lusty knyghtes frusthe toggyther theyr speres, & dailhe toggyther with theyr swerdes, and let than be ordeyned rounde tables to assemble toggyther such company as shal be brought thither both by you my lord the kyng, and also by the emperour, than shal we se what knyght is of valure & prayse, at the whiche tyme shal be brought hither the riche paupiston of my lady florence wherin is the ymage of the saynt holdynge the rych: chaplet, so þ whan the tournay shal be done than my lord the emperour shal go to the ymage to haue the chaplet as he þ is right ryche both of hauour & of frendes, & the moost noble parson þ there shal be assembled, and to hym the ymage wyl giue the chaplet as to him that is moost worthy, and whan he hath it than he shal be sure and certayne that he shal haue my lady florence wyth good wyl & entyre loue, and that maryage þ is made with good loue and hert is good, & that that is contrary agens the hert is ryght yll & Iopardous For a body without herte is as mete without salt, or as a body without soule, and thus may my lord the emperour haue my lady florence wyth great loue Joy and feest. And whan the emperour had well herde the mayster & saw how þ he spake no more his herte laughed in his body & sayd. By the fayth that I owe vnto god the mayster hath ryght well sayd, & being wyth a great good hert I me accorde to hys deuise, let this Joyfull dare be set and let there be ryed a great Justes & a tournay agens þ tyme, and let there be ordeyned rounde tables to make feest and Joye, and for kyng the same day I will take the tournay agens you all in loue &

fauour. As god helpe me sayd the kyng. I am ryght well agreed, and myne aduise is to let al this be here in this cyte of Cornys. But what day shal all this be on. Spz sayd the mayster and it please you I will the we you mine aduise, let it be at Barypme we tyde nexte comynge, for than shal all cornes be auoyded out of þ feldes, and by that time al thing necessary may be honourably prouided for. I am content sayd the kyng, but how say you my lord the emperour. Sir said he I am right well content. Than anone these poyntementes ran ouer all the palays in euery mannes mouth, and euery man prayed þ god might send to the mayster right good aduerture for his wel and goodly speakynge. Than began agayne right great feest and Joy, tha came forth Juglers w theyr fals castes & tombles wyth theyr leubersawtes, & damoyelles wyth theyr gambowdes, & made greater spoite and rymynge than was before. Than the kyng & the emperour laughed and made great Joye together tyl it was tyme to set the tables, than water was brought forth and florence toke licence of the kyng her father & sayd, spz I beseeche your grace be not dyspleased though these newe knyghtes go wyth me to my lodgynge and though I retayne them w me all this daye. Well sayd the kyng I am ryght well content go your way hertely and make them as good there as ye can. than florence departed and went to her chaumbre, and the kyng abode styll in the palays, and the kyng of oquency, Phelyp of sabary, & the Archebysshop, & Brysebar, & well to the nombre of .v. C. barons & knyghtes went w florence to her lodgynge. And than the mayster said to her madame how saye ye now, we haue respysse longe enough, for many thynges

ges may fail betwene thys & that. But  
let ye say & pght well, but I pray you let  
me wot not our knyght be here betwene  
this & that tenn. Whi adame sayd he I se  
well ye haue not as yet forgotten him, is  
semerth he is yet in your remembraunce.  
By the good to, be sayd florence I wold  
tyght glaciye hym, & if god be pleased  
yt be come to this sayd turney I shal do  
by my honoz, and that I pray you let hym  
know it. Adame quod y maister, I shal  
go to hym and shew hym al this matter  
and how y ye desyre hym to be there at y  
time, & I hat for your loue there is shew  
part of his chynalys. Well maister sayd  
he ye say right well, and I pray you let  
me be heren comended vnto him. Thus  
they deuised that the maister shuld go to  
the porte norye ty the time of this tour-  
ney. & I than he shuld bynige wyth him  
florence paulion with the egle of gold  
and the ymage with the chapiere, & that  
it shuld be pght in y saye metow vnto  
the halles of the cite of

Egypte. Than there was  
water brought forth, and so  
they were serued with chyn-  
ly wgrete spoz & c. tumpye  
Thus the kyng kepte open  
court. I b. dayes, & euery day  
ones florence wente to her  
fathers court. At the ende of  
xv. dayes y kyng dyd geue  
many yche gyles to these  
knyghtes, & to rober hors &  
harners, & florence in y  
twyle gaue them so largely  
yt was incunpable to con-  
syder, & they sayd al wone voyce y there  
was neuer before suche a hearte of a wo-  
man, neyther so large, so genyill, nor so  
curepse. Thus al these kyngs toke the  
lure & departed euery man to hye owne

courte to puruay him of good knyghtes  
agenst the sayd day. Than mayster See-  
uen was afoze florence & sayd, madam  
now it is tyme y I depart, for now wot  
I go streyght to Argence where I am  
sure y I shal fynd Arthur redy to tyght  
agenst the neww of the duke of bigoz, &  
saye maister said florence I haue grete  
doubt of Arthur, for the dukys newwe  
is right fierce and fell, & a good knyght,  
therfore I am in great feare of him. Whi  
dam quod he haue ye no doue, for if there  
were such. It is as he is afoze Arthur that  
could not endure his purfiant strokes.  
Tha he is right valyant quod florence.  
Than y maister toke his loue & departed  
a toke to him Wysebar & spz Aruelow  
florence marshall, & so toke thei waye  
to argere. Now let vs leue to speake of  
them, & let vs retorne again to Arthur.

How that Arthur was receyued  
at the tynye Lady Margarete into  
the cite of Argence. Cap. lxxiii.



Thus as ye haue herde before  
Arthur so iourneid a good spa-  
ce at the abbey of the grace of  
St. Iohn & a Catholayne tyde be-  
gan faste to apperhe, & so on  
a day

## The story of Arthur

a daye the soule bylayne came vnto him and sayd. We be but swyne for we do not thynge but eate and drynke, I trowe ye be wrodded to this abbey, or elles I thynke ye wyl become a monke, ye haue promysed me to fulfyll my requeste, yf that ye wyl so go hertely and arme you, and let vs goo to Argence to helpe there the saye lady Margarete of Argenton, and to gete her agayne her ryght, for it is now almost hertyme. Whan Arthur hearde hym he smiled and sayd, Wyth a ryght good wyl, and soo he armed hym and toke leue of the abbot and of the conuent, and mounted on hys horse and followed the bylayne, and soo Arthur rode forth daye by daye tyll at the laste he descended downe from a greate mountayne and entred into the sayest medowe that euer he sawe in all hys lyfe, and by the syde of this sayd medowe there ranne a saye ryuer, wherem were manye Apples, some vnder shyle, and some redde crossed, and some henge at the anger. The whyche ryuer ranne throughout parte of the saye Cyte of Argence. And than he encountred a barler who came streight fro the Cyte, and Arthur did salute hym and demaunded from whence he came, And he answered and sayd howe that he came from the Cyte of Argence, the worst fullest Cyte of the Worlde at this tyme, and is in moost tourmente and sorowe, for I am sure there was neuer tyme so sore troubled as it is at this houre. And wherfore good frende sayd Arthur. Syr as god helpe me there is good cause why for the duke of bygon and his neuwe be comynge to the Cyte, & they haue made a crye throughout all the cite & all about the countre that all the noble men and al other suche as holdeth there lordes of the heyre of Argenton shoulde be at Mawde-

layne tyme nexte comynge before theym in the cyte of Argence to do theyr homage to syr Asembarte the dukes neuwe, wherfore I praye to god he maye dye an euil death, & it is but .xv. dayes to the sayd daye, at whyche tyme he is purposed to wedde the saye lady margarete to a lewde barbour of hys, & so she shall be dyscripted fro her enherytaunce, & all the noble men & bourgeyses of the Cite & of the countre aboute are ryght sore dysraied for they wote not what counseyle to take in the case for lacke of a Capytayne, and the lady hath noo frende but an vncle of hers, who is put in pryson by the dukes neuwe, and there is none can tell where he is become. And also this syr Asembart hath slayne and murdred falsly by treason her father, and syr this is the sorowe that is in the noble cyte of Argence. Wel good frende sayd Arthur god conduyte you, god is yet ppyssaunt enough to sende helpe to this lady, but frende I praye you is this duke and hys neuwe come as yet to the Cyte. Syr as god helpe me he is come al redy, and Wyth hym moche people, for his people is abbyed to a .x. persons at the leest. That is a great company sayd Arthur, & soo they departed, & Arthur rode forth. Than the bylayne began to crye he is come that shal gide light And euer as he rode he behelde on every syde about him great compaynes of knyghtes comynge & goynge towarde the cyte of Argence, & Arthur sawe wel how that the land of Argenton was the moost goodlyest countre that euer he sawe, for he perceyued wel how that it was ful of riches and worldly welch, he sawe many noble townes and toures ryght hie, & myghty castles, & many saye woodes and medowes, and pleasaunt ryuers, and about the townes saye bynes, & goodly pastu-

res, & fieldes wiche coyne and fruite and  
there he saw many ladies and damoysel  
les sportyng them by the ryuers syde w  
famous & gersawcons on theyr hands  
and so he perceived wel that because of þ  
good comodities of the country þ dukes  
newe woulde dysperyte the saye ladye  
Pargaret, & he rode so long til at the last  
he saw the saye cite of Argence shynyng  
agains the sonne, enuoyed with greace &  
lepe byches ful of watter: þ walles stog;  
ly enbacyled, and mo than. v. l. toures  
made of lyne & stone, & sciment about it  
and also he saw manye saye churches  
couered w lede ful of tppes and pomel  
les of gold shynyng agains the sonne, &  
also he saw the burgeses lodging closed  
w hye and stonge walles barre wpyth  
great chaines of yron attaining to one  
house. can other, than Arthur in his he  
prayed muche the noblenesse and riches  
of the countre and of the cite, and sayde  
to hym selfe that it might well be called  
Argence, for it seemed wel to be of argene  
that is to say, syluer. Thus Arthur en  
tered into the cite & the bplaine went eu  
er before him w his leuer on his neck bare  
legged, and his hat hanging at his back  
& euer he went forth a great pace lokyng  
downeward to the earth, and toke hede  
of no body that he met, but alwayes cry  
ed out aloude he is come that shal gyue  
lyght, & the burgeses behelde hym well  
and sayd howe that he was a sole wo  
man and chylde, can to the wyndowes  
to beholde hym. And whan one bodye  
spake to hym, he woulde aunswere no  
thyng but alwayes sayd, he is come that  
shal gyue lyght. Thus Arthur rode  
forth into the cite and sawe there no  
thyng to do, nor noo maner of crafte or  
occupacion there used no moze than and  
it had bene vpon an hye & allfull day, for

al the shoppes and euery craft was shet  
& closed, wherof Arthur had great mar  
uaile, and he behelde in euery strete gre  
te compaignes of knyghtes walkyng al so  
berly together, luryng vnder their hat  
tes, besemyng as though they had not be  
well pleased, & some spring befoze the  
stone dozes, crollegged leaning on their  
elbowes, makyng no maner of for full  
semblaunt but soberly musinge & some  
of them behelde the bplaine, who neuer  
ceased cryng, he is come that shal gyue  
lyght. And so in this maner Arthur rode  
euer wyl for the tyll he came into þ mpy  
des of the Cite, and there he saw a great  
compaign of knyghtes and burgeses as  
bout the number of. xxxv. calyng to  
gether in counsaile but it seemed by these  
chere that they had no great joy in their  
heartes. Than the bplaine enforced him  
selfe to crye louder than he dyde befoze  
he is come that shal gyue lyght. Than  
these knyghtes behelde the bplaine wel  
and saw how that Arthur folowed him  
wherof they had great maruaile. And  
at the last a knyght of that compaign cal  
led syz Emery, came to Arthur and cur  
teply dyd salute hym and sayd. Syr it is  
myne offyce in this cite to receyue and  
to lodge al gentylmen straungers þ refoz  
teth hyther, and syz here is myne house,  
cherfoze I bespye you to sight of poure  
houe and to entre into it. Syr I thanke  
you sayd Arthur, how be it I se wel þ I  
must nedes go ferder to seke my lodging  
Syr sayde the knyght, sayng youe bpl  
pleasure, ye shal not paye by my house to  
seke an other lodgyng therfoze by the  
sayth þ I owe vnto god þe shal abyde w  
me. Ye but syz sayd the bplaine, I rowe  
ye wyl not abyde, for ye haue promysed  
to folowe me wherther so euer I go, then  
foze come on your way, for I wyl go be  
for

## The story of Arthur

fore, and so was going forth, and such cryed he is come that shall gently lighte. Than Arthur despyed the playne to carry, and at the last he agreed thereto, and Arthur rode forth to syr Emerys doze, and there alighted than the other knightes left theyr counseyle, and ydd salute Arthur, and he them agayne right courteously, and they belovd Arthur wel and praysed him muche in their heartes, for he was right sayre and gracious. Than syr Emery toke Arthur by the hand and led hym into a sayre chambze to bntyme hym, and in the meane tyme that he was bntymyng, mayster Breuen, syr Wysebat and syr Reuelon the seneschall wer come to the same syr Emerys house to take theyr lodgyng there and so toke theyr chambze, and whan the mayster had chaunged his gate he wente downe in to the hall, and the other two knyghtes with him, and the ballast knewe them right well and salled them by their names. And therwithal sawd: Whi came out of the chambze fro Arthur, and as soone as he sawe the mayster and Wysebat he tanne and courteously ydd salute them with a sayfull heart. Than syr mayster demaunded of him where as Arthur his master was. Syr sayde he, in this chambze heretby. And than they all entred into the chambze. And as soone as Arthur sawe them, he tanne and embraced the mayster, and after Wysebat and sayd: Whi owne good companions of yroche, hither ye be right hertely wel come. Also he ydd salute syr Reuelon the seneschall, who in his herte praysed hym greatly. And whan syr Emery saw how the mayster made so great chere to Arthur, than he thought verely that he should be some great man, for he knewe wel that the mayster was a kinges son,

Than they late them doun on a beddes syde. Than the mayster recounted al the werke that had bene in king Emendus couter, and how that the emperor desired to have had florence in marriage at the same tyme, and shewed hym how by his meanes he ydd lette it at that tyme and gave lenger respyte tyl Barclaym to tye, at which tyme there is cryed a great justes and tournaye, and there he shewed hym in his eare the salutation that florence ydd sende hym, and how that she desired hym to be there at that tyme and to shewe there parte of his prowess for her sake. Than Arthur sayled and embraced the mayster manye times. And whan they had thus talked a good space than the mayster called to hym sir Emery theyr host, and caused hym to syte downe by them. Than Arthur demaunded of hym wherfore the knyghtes and cytezens of that cite were so sad. And he answered and sayde, syr for it wyl be no better, and we have all good cause so to do, and than he began to shewe hym how that in the same house there was a damoysel who was doughter to the lord of that same cyte, and of all the lordes of Argenton, and how that she was the rightfull wyffe of all that couter, and how that the duke of Brgoyes newe was ydd falsely murdered by treason the lordes her father, and so she wedd hym al the hote matter as ye have herade before, and also he shewe hym how that the dukes newe would marry her to a lewd ladde his barbour, and how that he had byslytred her of forty thousande pounde of lond by perely tent, and now he hath sommoned all the gentylmen of all the couter round about, and wyl that they shall do homage unto hym, and so it behoueth them to have a false murderer

to their lord, and to keep their rightful  
 herre, & therfore sayd al the noble men of  
 this countrey & cite haue bene in counsaill  
 for this matter: but þe conclusion of their  
 counsaill was thus, how that they wolde  
 make no maner of resistance agens þe du-  
 kes newe, but rather suffre their ladye  
 to be disherited and banished from her  
 owne lande, howbeit right gladly they  
 would moue war agens him, but they  
 lacke a captayne, for they thynke bere-  
 ly that a womā to be chief head in warre  
 shuld cause it at length to be of lytel ef-  
 fect. Then Arthur sayd, say I haue some  
 what herde of this of this matter, but I  
 pray you saye hois is this sayd ladye he-  
 re in your hous. He sayd truly sayde here  
 benethe in a saye parloure, for she hath  
 bene euer here in my hous siche the deeth  
 of her father, for I haue promised neuer  
 to saye her. Then maister Steuen said  
 good doct I requyre you know this la-  
 dyes pleiure whether she wyl be con-  
 sent that we might speke with her. Sayd  
 he with a right good wyll than he  
 went into the parloure where as she was  
 the same tyme beginning of our ladies  
 euensong, & was at these wordes (De-  
 in adiutorium meū intende) that is to say  
 good lord entende to mine ayde & succoure  
 And therewith she espyed sayd Emery and  
 sayde, say ye be welcome. And he sayd sa-  
 lue her and sayd, madame here is aboue  
 in a chambere a knyght the moost fayrest  
 creature of the worlde, and maister Ste-  
 uen the kynge of Bozology, clerke, and  
 sone vnto the noble kynge of balefoune  
 dothe honour to this knyght, the which  
 knyght wold faine speake with you, and  
 as god helpe me as I perceiue by hym  
 he is in wyll to helpe and succour you in  
 your nede, shall I cause hym to come to  
 speke w you. To come to me saye friend

quod the lady, nay god forgyde, for they  
 that haue nede ought to seke for helpe,  
 and not to tary tyl it be brought to them  
 for and they doo, it may fortune to come  
 to late, and as for me I haue great nede  
 of him yf he would helpe me, as for him  
 he hath no nede of me, therfore it is rea-  
 son that I go vnto hym. Then she appa-  
 rayled her and went forth and entred in  
 to the chambere where as they were, and  
 as soone as they saw her they rose and  
 sayd salute her & counselled her to syt downe  
 and she semed to them ryghte saye, gen-  
 tyll and gracypous, and sayd salute them  
 one after another ryghte swete. Welcye.

Then Arthur said, saye lady, why haue  
 ye trauailed your selfe so soze to come hy-  
 ther to vs, for we woulde gladly haue co-  
 me to you. She answered and sayde, say  
 it is reason that I shuld so do for I am  
 a poore disherited ladye, & therfore it is  
 reason that I go seke for helpe & succour  
 Then maister Steuen demaunded of her  
 estate & she recounted to him euery deile  
 as ye haue herde here before, & ryghte so  
 weeping said. Alas I poore desolate crea-  
 ture that was wont to be kept in great  
 honour with my lord and father, who  
 saydly was slaine by this dukes newe  
 and hath put myn vncle in pryson, I can  
 not tel whether he be alive & dead. Cer-  
 tainly saye lady sayd maister Steuen,  
 for goddes sake be ye of good chere, for  
 your vncle is in good helthe and oute of  
 pryson, by the same token that he is cal-  
 led the markes, and also he hath an olde  
 hurt on his browe. And as soone as she  
 herde that her hert began to reioyce and  
 she demaunded for goddes sake to know  
 who had deliuered hym out of pryson.  
 Certaynly saye lady sayde he, the same  
 knyghte that spyteth here by you, who  
 hath conquered the straunge castell of the  
 poztg

## The story of Arthur

porte noye. And whan she herd that she fell downe on her knees befoze Arthur & humbly thanked hym. Than Arthur toke her vp and sayd, alas saye lady why do you thus, for goddes sake sette youre herte in peace and rest, for truly I offre my seruaunce to you and the best of my power to helpe and defende your ryght yf it be to mo:owe nexte I shall be redy to sustayne the batayle as longe as my lyfe wyl laste. Than the lady wold haue kneled downe & ryght humbly thanked hym & sayd. Syr: I geue to you all my ryght and enheritaunce whan ye haue wonne it, and myne vncle shal be your seruaunt. Alas I can saye no moze, I haue lost my father, wherfoze it is great damage that I lyue, for I am wey of my lyfe, than she began to wepe & sayd. Syr: I had rather that you had my right than my mo: tall enemy. My swete lady sayd Arthur yf god be pleased I shall deliuer it vnto your owne profyte, for truly I wyl not haue therof the mountaunce of a peny. And sy: Emery whan he herd that this knyght had deliuered out of prison the markes, & howe that he had achieved the aduentures of the port noye, than he thought verily in hys herte that it was he that had achieved the aduentures of the tenebrous tour, than he slept forth and kneled downe befoze Arthur & sayd. Gentle and noble knyght in whome all becom flourissheth, for goddes sake bringe vs out of derke tribulacion that we be in, and make ryght all the heartes of the hole barony of Argenton, take hys enteryse on you, and all we shall largely helpe and ayde you, I badertake ye it al haue. xl. thousand persons in harneys to geue attendaunce on you the whyche are all subiectes to my lady here present. And sy: knowe ye for certayne that I haue

all redy, & shall prouyde for horses & harness and golde & silver suffycent to sustainye your host lenger space than a yere the whyche I wyl all habandon into your handes for the helppinge of my lady. And I am here redy the fynde that wyl put my body and lyfe in jeopardy. Dame sayd Arthur yf all your other knyghtes be suche ye haue muche good people and kynde. Than he said to sy: Emery, sy: and I promyse you saythfully to helpe this lady to the best of my power. Than sy: Emery departed fro them and went & assembled togyther all the other knyghtes of the cyte yf were pertaynyng to the lady and sayd. Lordes & maysters I thynke verily that god hath byspied vs, for I shewe vnto you how that there is a knyght in my hous who hath deliuered out of prison the noble markes vncle to my lady, & also he hath achieved all the aduentures of the port noye, as maister Steven hath shewed vnto my lady, and accordyng to the trouth I thynke it be he that did great prowesse in the vale of balefounde & at the tour tenebrous, and also he hath habandoned hymselfe to be redy at my ladyes comaundement, & to defende her ryghte ayenst the dukes newe though he be neuer so fell. Certaynly frende sayd all those knyghtes we byleue verily yf all hys trauaile is in wast for this dukes newe is ryght fynde & doubte no creature, for there is not suche a knyght in all the worlde, without it be the knyght yf hath achieved the sayd aduentures that ye speke of. Verily sayd sy: Emery I beleue the same knyght is he, & at the lest I am in certayne it is he that hath esquered the port noye. Than anone these rydynge were spred abroad throughtout all the cyte, than there came knyghtes & bourgeses by great companye

pannes into sy: Emeris hous to se this  
straunge knyght, & so they eured into a  
great hall, & whan they were gathered to  
gether they were to the numbre of .v. C.  
persones, & than they despyed sy: Em-  
eris to go & se we vnto this knyght straun-  
ger & manys of the knyghtes of Argen-  
ce were come thither too speke with hym.  
And whan Arthur herdethis he was ve-  
ry ioyfull and rose, & he and the mayster  
went forth into the hall & brought with  
they the saye lady maigarete, and whan  
Arthur was althoughe them he was byg  
and myghty & hye to beholds, with byg  
armes and longe wel furnished, and he  
had on a robe of scarlet, and his own co-  
lour was saye and ruddy, & he was of  
hyer stature by the head than any man y  
was there. And whan these knyghtes &  
barons sawe hym they had ryght grete  
joye, and thanked god that he had sente  
him thither at that houre, & they al sayd  
vnto hym. Sy: ye be ryghte herely wel-  
come into this cite of Argence. And Ar-  
thur rendyd salutation agayne to them  
ryght swetely. Than a knyght called sir  
Robert Trour, who was moost hye and  
puyssaunt both of ryches and of hauour  
of all the knyghtes that were there per-  
tanyng to the lady septe forth and sayd.  
Sy: it is giuen vs to knowledg how y  
ye are in mynde & wyll to helpe and ayde  
my lady that is here present therfore sy:  
we would saye knowe your mynde in  
this case how ye are purposed for to do.  
For quod Arthur herel y am in ful pur-  
pose to se parh my bodre & like agens  
this dukes newe, and to proue how y  
trayterously he hath slou this ladies fa-  
ther & falsly dysherited her. Than sy: Ro-  
bert sayd sy: god giue you grace and po-  
wer thus to do, for sy: this dukes newe  
is ryghte fierre and fell, he wyl be it he is

in the wyng, and we in the ryght, ther-  
fore if god be pleased he shal be confoun-  
ded, and sy: we saye vnto you we be all  
gentylmen and burgeyses pertanyng  
here to my lady, and we saye fully pro-  
myse you both ayd and our persons, and  
also of our goodes though we lose our  
heades in the quarel & sy: of this mynde  
both we & al our men be of, & we laske  
nothyng but a cappayne therfore sy:  
dowd nothyng, for if the dukes newe  
mur any knyght, ye shal haue moo than  
xxx. thousande fygthng men. Saye la-  
dy sayd the mayster ye shal haue muche  
noble people. Truly sy: sayd she that is  
trouth, for they loued ryghte well their  
loved that is dead. And as they thus tal-  
ked there passed by them a great rout of  
houslemen, and so they went to the wynd-  
owes and beheld wel knyghtes & other  
in the strete on horseback to the numbre  
of .v. hundred persones, and in the first  
fronte there was the duke of bygon, & sir  
Glembart his newe, who were ryding  
to go mete the kynge of orquene, who  
as thā was coming to the cite, but his  
comynge was for Arthurs sake & not for  
the dukes, but the duke knewe not that  
and the duke had puruayed the kynge  
lodgyng at the byshops place, and had  
puruayed for whittyp duke of sabary in  
the abbey of saynte Germane. And soo  
whan he had mete the kynge who wel  
comed him into the cite and so rode forth  
together and palled forth sy: Em. ryght  
lodgyng. Than sy: Bysebar as he rode  
lokyng oure of the wyndowes espyed  
where there rode by the kynge of orque-  
ne, sy: Artaude, sy: Bozant, sy: Wyl-  
me, and sy: Alice. Than Bysebar as  
loude as he could, cryed Arthur, Arthur  
wherwith the kynge and al that rode by  
looked vp towarde the wyndowes, & there  
they

## The story of Arthur

they saw sp: Bilebar and sp: Neuelon the seneschal & maister Steuen and Arthur who seemed to them to be a man of gret valure, and anon the kyng dyd cast in his hert how p it was Arthur. Than he called to him p duke of bigoz and said sp: I pray you go to your lodging, for I wyl take my lodging at this hous. Tha the duke wold haue descended with him but the kyng in no wise wold suffer him. So than the duke & his neww departed as they p with ful lytel why the kyng & al the knyghtes were come to that cite. Than the kyng toke w him Philip his neww the archbishop and sp: Ancean and entred into sp: Emerys house and caused the gates to be closed after them, and sent al his houthold to the bishops place, and sp: Philip sent his to the abbey of saynt Germapus. Than sir Bilebar and the maister and other of the company ran to the kyng and embraced him and al his felowshyp. And than Arthur came befoze the kyng and ope p of hys bowe and dyd saute him, and p kyng toke him by the hande and Bilebar tolde the kyng in his sure how that it was Arthur. Than the kyng sayde, myne owne right dere frende Arthur ye right hertely wel merce here in the land of Arguon as the knyghte that I haue most oseyzed to se and know, for certain ly I had not come hyer at this tyme, but all onely to speake with you. A sp: sayd Arthur ye haue done your pleasure to crauaile your selfe right soze to come hyer to se so simple a person as I am. Than the kyng entred into a lytel chaubze and there dyd chaunge him and wha he was redy he came again into the hal and there found al the barons & knyghtes together, and Philip duke of Sabary was talking wyth Arthur. Than the

kyng layde his hande on Arthurs sholde & sayd, good frende I praye you that fro hens forth ye wyl be of my houthold and that ye wyl take of my gyfte robes, hoyle and harneys, and I promyse you full truly that I wyl be to you a good frende, & to you and I shal be good companions and frendes. Sp: said Arthur I thanke you, for cruelly I am pous in al places & at pont commandment wher so euer I am but sp: and it please you I haue oltred already to my lady Florence my seruice, doughter to the mighty kyng Emendus at the request of sp: Bilebar and as he hath reported to me her grace hath excepted my seruice, and so sir than I haue al redy a maistres, a loth I wote to displease her grace. In p name of god sayd the kyng ye say ryght well, for I re pue her compaignie and myn, as all ony thing and good frende beholde there sit Philip my neww duke of Sabary, wherlye I loue hym intirely, therefore I requyre you let him and you be companions & frendes, and eche of you to loue ocher. Sp: sayd Philip as god helpe me I promyse him fro hens forth sayd I will loue and amitte noz I haue nothing but he shal be loze thereof in al places and against all persons except you mine vn cle I shal be redy to ayde and succoure hym. Right dere frend quod Arthur god that all thyng fourmed rewarde you, and sp: I am and shal be your knyghtes agent all the world except my ladyes grace, who hath retayned me. All this is but ryght sayde the kyng, and hys pleaseh me ryght well. Than the kyng toke Philip by the hand and sayd to Arthur dere frende here I put into your hand & keping duke Philip my neww loo sp: here take him to you, and also newe I put into your hand hys knyght in ly he

in lyketopse take him to you, than these  
two knyghtes embraced togyther and pro  
mised eche other faythful copany. And sir  
Emery was gladd because that he had  
lodged in his hous suche a copany of no  
ble men that his herte laughed for Joye  
and al the other barons of the cyte beheld  
meruayllously Arthur and praysed hym  
moche in theyr hertes. And than the by  
layne who was in the company with the  
lady cryed as lowde as he coude, he is co  
me that shal giue lyght. And the kynge  
and al other byd laugh at him right her  
tely. Than the tables were set by a Water  
was brought for the, than the kynge late  
do Wne a Arthur by hym, & than the bys  
hop & duke Whyllyp, & so they were ser  
ued ryght ryche, for sy Emery made  
them chere w all his herte, & w ha dynes  
was done than they all entred into a say  
re gardyn, & there were togyther p kyng  
& Arthur the lady Margarete & the arche  
byshop & other to the nombre of. vi. per  
sones, & al the other company were about  
wth sir Emery, & they talked all of Ar  
thur & sayd how p he had of god a ryght  
great gyft, so he was both sayre & of no  
ble maners, & had achieved suche aduen  
tures as were gretely to be doubted. how  
be it they sayd he had enterprysed a gre  
te thyng to moue ony warre agens the  
duke of bygo: & his newwe. Syis sayd  
Brysebar doubt nothyng of hym, for I  
knowe well he hath achieved often. r. ty  
mes a greter enterpryse than this is, & as  
tha the king helde the lady by the hand &  
sayd, faire lady behold here your knyght  
who I thike shal do you good seruike to  
morrow. Syis sayd the lady I pray to god  
send him good grace and for tune, so they  
were thus longe talkyng togyther tyl it  
was time to go to their restes, than en  
ery man departed, and the kynge, Arthur,

Whyllyp and mayster Steuen lodged al to  
gyther in one chabre, and the lady depa  
ted into her chaunibre ryght Joyous of  
her good aduerture that god had sent her,  
and all that nyght she slept but lytle for  
Joye but was alwayes in her prayere  
thankyng god and besechyng hym to be  
ayde and socour to her champion, and in  
lyketopse yd sy Emery and al other of  
the cyte.

How that the next day the mayster and  
steuen for the lady, and Arthur toke her  
quarrel in hand agens the dukes newwe  
sy Isembarte.

Capitulo. lxxv.



At the morning the king and  
Arthur rose and all other barons  
and knyghtes of the cyte & went  
and herde masse, & after masse  
they range the comyn bell of the towne,  
and therby assembled all the comynite of  
the Cyte togyther before sy Emeryes  
hous to thentent to kepe this knight Ar  
thur that the duke nor none of his shuld  
do him ony hurt or reason, and the same  
daye there came to sy Emeryes hous al  
the kinges power, and al sy Whyllyps  
strength, and all other knyghtes pertray  
nyng to kyng Emend, who were com  
thither to se the batayle betwene Arthur  
& the dukes newwe. Than the king entred  
into the hall, & there was Arthur & may  
ster Steuen, sy Whyllyp of sabary, sy  
Brysebar, sy Artaude, sy Olyuer, & sy  
Joyce, & also the lady margarete, & there  
they demysed how they shuld be demened  
in p Journey. Than the duke of bygo: see  
to sir Emeryes hous & demysed hym  
that he shulde incommen bynyng the lady  
Margarete w hym to his courte, & also  
the duke caused to be cryed throughout al  
the cyte p on payne of deith al the nobles  
of the cyte shuld come to the court to ma

Do it

he shal

## The story of Arthur

he theyr homage to his newewe syr Isembart. And whan the dukes messengers had shewed the lady how that she shulde come to the court to thentent to be married, thā the maister answered and sayd. Syr is shew unto the duke your lord how that shortly she shal come to the court & there do euery thyng as she ought for to do of reason. Than departed the messengers & wente to the duke & his newewe & shewed them how the lady was not unpurchased of good counseyle, for all the knyghtes of the cyte were in her company and moo than. v. C. other, & all the moost parte of al the compys of the cyte, and al so they shewed how there was a knyght wyth her who wolde maintayne her quarell. And whan the dukes newewe herde that his hert mounted in pryde and said, what knyght is that, for certaynly yf he medell ony thyng wyth my mater I shall hang hym by the necke, & therfore he is but yll come to be of her counseyle, howe be it there is an olde proue that sayeth, of tentynges he wanteth of his wyll that foloweth, & thinketh, and so fared it by this dukes newewe, for o: it was nyghte he was in a greater balaunce of Jeopardy than this knyght was, for he left his life to pledge. Than the kynge and whyllyp wente into the palays, and the duke and his newewe byd encountre them and so broughte them into his court, and there in the open hall they sate theym do wne. Than anone after came the lady and Arthur on her one syde and the maister on the other syde, and all the other noblesse and burgeys & compys of the cyte byd enuyon them, and soo thus they were a great company & entred into the palays. And whan the kynge sawe her he rose, and soo byd the duke, but his newewe of proude herte sate styll and wolde not rise

whereof he was moche blamed of euery parson that sawe hym. And whan the people were all sylence than maister Steuen sayd to the duke. Syr ye haue commaunded here our lady Margarete that she sholde come to your court, syr beholde here she is to know what is your pleasure & wyll. Than the dukes newewe as he that was fel and full of pryde rose on his fete and sayd, syr clark we haue no thyng to do wyth you, therfore be ye in peas & let vs alone. So it said the maister for a poore clerke I am reputed with the that knoweth me, and as for that I haue sayd is for this lady, & I thynke she wyll auowe my sayenge, howe saye ye madame be ye pleased that I shall speke for you or not. Certaynly sayd the lady I wyll holde ferme & stable all that euer ye haue sayd or shall saye, and as to you syr duke I requyre you doo me ryght this dape, and yf ye wyll not here in open audyence I put bothe me and all my goodes and lordes into the handes of the kynge of orqueny and of syr whyllyp his newewe duke of Sabery, who are bothe here present. Certaynly saye damorsell sayd duske whyllyp doubte ye nothyng that ony body shall doo you wronge, where as I am present. Well madame sayd the kynge and I receyue you wyth a ryght good wyll into my handes syth it is your pleasure so to put your selfe. Than the duke of Wygo: sayd, damorsell I shall do you ryght, therfore maister speake ye on and shewe what ye wyll in this ladys behalf. Syr sayd the maister I say how that ye and your newewe haue sente for my lady Margarete who is nowe here presente, therfore yf it please you shewe vs what is the cause. Than the dukes newewe syr Isembart sayd, syr clark I shall shewe you the cause, it is so I am fully purposed to

to gyue her in mayage to a barbour of  
mine. And also here openly & straitly com-  
maund al the noble men & burgeyses of  
this cite & of al the lond of Argenton on  
paynt of leysage of their landes that in  
conscience this same day they come & do  
theyr homage to me as to their chief lord  
and gouernour, & they that wyl not do  
thus, I forbydhem their heritages that  
they holde, & not to be so hardy as to en-  
tre into it any more. Then the mayster  
sayd, sye than we pceyue wel what good  
tyght ye wold do to this ladye yf there  
were no knyght yf wolde answere you,  
how be it I wil not spare to speke: & so  
dyng to richte sye duke it is of troth that  
all the comentes of al the lond of Argen-  
ton, as well all the noble men & burgey-  
ses as the comen people haue herde and  
seen and are well assured that sye elcter  
sometime lord of al the lond of Argen-  
ton was rightfull heyre, & this noble la-  
dy wha garette hie present was lawfull-  
ly descende of hym as she yf is rightfull  
heyre of all the heritages and goodes per-  
taynyng to her sayd father, and therfore  
sye as well all the hye barons of this cite  
and lond of Argenton & knyghtes and  
burgeyses as wel othre meane people as  
wel as suche as be here present as they  
that bene absent, repureth, taketh, & hol-  
deth her for theyr natural lady, as she yf  
is the ryghtfull heyre of all the lond of  
Argenton, furthemoze sye I saye that  
sye Isembarte yourc neuw here present  
is in mynde wrongfully without cause  
to dysheryte this lady of her propre heri-  
tage, and hath al ready puroued al her of  
spere, & hath set in theyr stede seruan-  
tes of hys owne therfore sye we desire  
you that al this ladies londes may be de-  
liuered agayn to her, and that she maye  
be recompensed for such wrongs as she

Arthur.

hath had. or elles let hym shewe a law-  
full cause whye that she should lose her  
londes. And elthe sayde sye I Isembarte,  
I wyl shewe you no cause whye, but  
I wyl hepe it whether she wyl or not. And  
than said the mayster here lacketh tyght,  
but sye duke as ye be a tyghtfull Iudge,  
let vs haue right here this day. Then the  
duke sayd, what saye nemewe ye muste  
nede tel the cause whye ye wold holde  
her heritage. Wel sye sayd he sye it pleas-  
eth you I wyl shewe him the cause, sye  
clerk I say it is so yf the father of this la-  
dy for yf grete loue that he had to me after  
that we were ones accorded together be-  
fore the duke here my uncle, than at the  
last he fortunied so yf a greuous maladye  
toke him yf which sickness cost hym his  
life, & so he died because of the good com-  
pany that I kept him, and for the enten-  
loue that he had to me, he gaue me gene-  
rally all his londes without reseruyng  
of any thing to him self or to any of hys  
and so gaue me hys gouernour in receyue of  
full possession therof, & knoweth this  
lady is his daughter, how be it her own  
father did deliuer her, and not I. How  
be it her father desired me that I should  
make her a nonne, and to gyue her. xxx.  
pounds of yercly rent to fynde her wyth  
all: but because that her father loued me  
so wel, and because it is an hard thyng  
for to make a younge lusty damoysele a  
nonne, for often tymes suche age after  
warde dysmayed, for it is harde to res-  
tore nature, therfore in eschewing of  
suche inconueniencies, I purpose to ma-  
ry her & assigne to her. l. l. pound of yerc-  
ly rent, wherfore I wyl yf she shall make  
her homage to me as to her chief lord.  
Then the mayster sayd unto yf duke sye  
I shal make sufficient answere in this  
case, but fyrst we wil haue assurance of

Jo. lxxviii.

hym

## The story of Arthur

hym, & for whatsoeuer he sayd he, shall  
woue at this time no strife therfore, and  
my ladye here for her part in lykewyse  
shall make you assurance. Why said sir  
Jsembarte who is that here that wyl be  
pledge or meale for the ladye. Than sayd  
Philippe duke of Sabary stepte forth and  
sayd, I am here present who wyl be pled-  
ge for this ladye, & in like wyse sayd mo-  
eyan. v. C. other barons, wel sayd & du-  
ke of byrgoz, and I wyl be pledge for my  
neuewe. That is sufficient ynough saide  
the maister, sayd truly than I shal answere  
you, and saye that where as poure ne-  
uewe sayth that this ladies father had a  
great sickness, whereto sayd I answere &  
saye & poure neuewe here sayd Jsembarte  
broode murder and slewe hym and all his  
family by treason, lynging in a wayte for  
hym by the waye by a prepered malice  
wthout any defiance cause or occasiō  
gyuen on his part, and forthermore whe-  
re as he sayth that he is in possellion of  
all the landes of Argeniton, the whych is  
of trouthe but that is by fraude, for he  
kepeth it falsly wout reason or any cause  
sayd & he wyl knowlege him self of the  
murder of this ladies father, and how  
that wrongfully he holdeth her lond, sir  
in this ladies name I require you and  
so do we al, that we may haue right iud-  
gement of hym, and that it may be done  
to hym as it oughte to be done to a tray-  
tour, murderer, comyn thefe or robber.  
And sayd if he deny all this, suffice this la-  
dy to proue al this to be of trothe by her  
knight who is here present by her, & redi  
to maintayne her quaterell body to bodye  
agains you, neuew sayd Jsembarte. And  
whan the remnant of the ladies barons  
herde the maister speake so boldely, eche  
of them dyd poynt on other & sayde, this  
mayster doubteth to tell the pryde of sayd

Jsembarte, who whan he herde him selfe  
called to his own face murderet & thefe  
robber, he was so ful of felonye & he bluf-  
fedy for dispite, & closed his sylf and stepe  
forth & thought to haue stryken the may-  
ster w a knife & he had in his hande, but  
the people departed them. And whan Ar-  
thur saw that he layde his hand on his  
sword he sayd, sayd & easily I wold  
counsail you, for ye be in certain that ye  
felape any hand on him, all the world  
shal not saue your sylf. Than the greates  
bysayn begā to cry. iii. times, he is come  
that shall gyue lpyghte. Than the kynge  
or ozquene laughed at the bysain. And  
whan Philippe of Sabary saw Arthur mo-  
ued, he stepte forth & mo than. v. C. with  
him of knyghtes, and enuyroned the lady  
and Arthur, about to syde and to defende  
them yt nede were. Than tydnynges cam  
a byode in the cite how that Arthur was  
likely to be slayne in & palays, wherfore  
thither came ryming al the hole comen-  
ce of the cite, & brast open the palays gares  
& thought to haue slayne bothe the duke  
and his neuew, but the king of ozquene  
wyth muche payne appeased & people, al  
at the last a seruante of the dukes cameto  
by him and said, sayd do ye right to these fol-  
kes, or els ye are but dead & al pourses for  
al the comente of this cite are here with-  
out in your palays, & hath broken open  
poure gares, therfore dele wisely I rebe-  
you. And whan the duke herde & he doub-  
ted hym selfe greatlye, and woulde sayne  
that he had bene at home in his own cou-  
try. Than Arthur saide to hym, sayd it is  
of trouche al & the mayster hath sayde of  
your neuew, how & he is a murderet,  
traytour, thefe & robber, here is my gage  
to proue it true my body agains his in  
mortal batayl for this ladies sake. Tha-  
the bysain began to crye as he byd be.

fore as thoughe he had bene woode, ther to  
 Arthur cast downe before the duke hys  
 gioue. And thar the duke answered & sayd  
 for knyght ye speke ryght largely I wo  
 te not what moueth you thus to do, but  
 I praye you restryne your wordes, yf so  
 be y my newe we hath done ony trespasse  
 agens this lady. I am pynfull enough  
 to make her suche a nendes that she shal  
 holde her well content, and I praye you  
 saye damoyzell put all this mater in to  
 my handes & I promyse you I shall soo  
 do yf ye shal be well content. And sayd the  
 mayster ye are a ryghte wyse and a sage  
 pynce and are wel worthy to gyue coun  
 seyle in many great maters, for yf maye  
 gyue good counseyle in this matter yf it  
 please you to doo as I shall shewe you,  
 youre newe we dyde stryke of dy treason  
 this ladyes fathers heed, & if ye wyl ther  
 fore stryke of your newe we heed & gyue  
 it to this damoyzell in recompence of her  
 fathers heed, than she shal be content or  
 elles she shal be defended by her knyght  
 And whan for Asembarte herde all y he  
 was soo fore charged wth yf he said y  
 there sholde neuer be made none accorde  
 in that mater but al onely by the swerde  
 And whan y I haue vanquyshed this  
 knyght I shall hang hym by the necke,  
 and shall byenne this clerke & damoyzell  
 in a saye for. Than he dyd caste downe  
 his gage and therto he was well counsey  
 led by hys knyghtes, for they beleued be  
 tely that there was not in all the worlde  
 soo good a knyght as he was. Than the  
 bplayne cryed out, he is come that shall  
 gyue light. Than the mayster sayd to the  
 duke, for do as ryght requyeth, receyue  
 these gages. And so wylth great payne at  
 the last the duke toke them by, and than  
 the batayle was Judged to be incombent  
 the same daye. Than for Asembarte went

to arme hym, & the lady ledde Arthur to  
 for Emerys hous & there his knyghtes  
 dyd arme hym, & the mayster sayd to hym  
 for Arthur bere this daye in this mo: tall  
 batayle your whyle shelde And he answer  
 ed & sayd yf god be pleased I wyl not  
 bere it for fere of one knyght, nor yet for  
 two such as he is. Than it was knowne  
 th: oughout al the cyte how their lady was  
 arming of her chappon at for Emerys  
 hous, & how y the batayle was Judged  
 to be the same day, than al y belles in eu  
 ry church began to rynge, & all y people  
 of cyte & of y coure besought god to hel  
 p: & socour Arthur, & all the processions  
 of the cyte assembled them together to  
 they: relyke & crosses & holy water, and  
 chonons, prestes, & clarkes in copes of  
 golde & sylke, & all barefores praying to  
 god for they: ladyes chappon, & all the  
 se processions came & mette Arthur in the  
 strete, who as than was moued on hys  
 horse, & whylp duke of sabery with him  
 and more than. v. C. other knyghtes in  
 his company. And whan Arthur sawe  
 these processions, & the bysshop mytred  
 and all barefores, hys herte lemed and  
 wepte for pyte, & dyd lyght of hys horse  
 and kneled downe, & there the bysshop  
 dyd ense hym and blessed hym wylth the  
 crosse, and Arthur dyd k: k: se and en  
 clined his heed downe, and the bysshop  
 dyd gyue hym hys blessinge and sayde,  
 that lord that was nayled on the crosse  
 be your ayde & socoure this daye & ever.  
 And all the knyghtes and other answer  
 ed & sayd Amen. Than the processions  
 returned agayne to they: churches, and  
 Arthur and all his company mounted a  
 gayne on they: horses, and soo thus he  
 was brought in to the felde. The hole  
 clergy of all the cyte were on they: knees  
 makynge they: prayers to god that he  
 should

## The story of Arthur

shoulde that day be helpe and socoure to  
 theyr lady & to her champron. Than the  
 kynge of oquency came to the felde and  
 comaunded his newwe syr Whylp du-  
 ke of Sabary to kepe the felde soo that  
 there shoulde no wyngre noz treason be  
 wrought there that day. Than syr Whylp  
 armed hym selfe and toke in his com-  
 pany syr Brisebat, sir Beuelon, syr An-  
 cean, syr Artande, and wel to the nomb-  
 er of .v. C. knyghtes of the courts of kynge  
 E. nennus. Cha the lady came to the felde  
 with mo tha .v. C. of her men with her.  
 Than syr Isembart was armed, and as  
 he passed for by the people euery mā sayd  
 So thy way we praye to god that thou  
 maist dye an euyl berth, and whan he was  
 in the felde where as Arthur abode for  
 hym. Than the maister sayd to thy duke  
 syr a mozt all barayle ought not to be do-  
 ne without an othe. Than the duke cau-  
 sed to be brought forth a relike one of the  
 bones of saynt Vincent, and an arme  
 of saynt George. Chau Arthur toke his  
 othe and sayd, by these glorious sayntes  
 relykes that be here presente, and by all  
 the other sayntes of heuen syr Isembart  
 the duke of bygoys newwe who is here  
 presente murthered or caused to be mur-  
 thred falsly and without cause the lozde  
 of Argenton father to my lady Marg-  
 rete here present, and wrongfully he wol-  
 de delyue her, and therewith he kyssed  
 the sayntes and bokes, and soo lepte vp  
 on his horse as lyghtly as though he had  
 ben but in a Jacket, and soo set hym selfe  
 aparte and stretched hym on his horse,  
 and all that regarded hym sayd, beholde  
 the hie countenaunce of yonder knyght  
 se howe he dresteth hymselfe on his horse  
 and plungeth downe his sheide, and the  
 kynge and other also dydde well beholde  
 hym, and maped hym in theyr hertes

aboute all other knyghtes that euer they  
 sawe. Than syr Isembart toke his othe  
 and sayd that as god and the holy sayn-  
 tes myght helpe hym he neuer leue the  
 lozde of Argenton, nor neuer thought it  
 and than he wolde haue kyssed the sayn-  
 tes, but he myght not, and in hys rpsyn-  
 ge he had suche a payne in the heed that  
 almost therby he hadde losse his syght,  
 wherfore all the people that sawe hym  
 sayd this knyght hath but an euyl coun-  
 tenaunce, it semeth he is in the wyngre,  
 than he lepte vpon his horse ryght he-  
 uily, and Arthur was reop on the other  
 parte of the felde. Than the duke of by-  
 goz prayed syr Isembarte hys newwe  
 that he wolde leue the barayle and sayde  
 howe that he wolde make the peas and  
 accorde, but in no wyse he wolde do soo,  
 but sware that he wolde neuer make no  
 peas tyll that he had the heed of hys ene-  
 my and the lady byente, but many folkes  
 thynke to do many thynges the whyche  
 the hurte therof lyghteth on theyr owne  
 neckes, and so it dyd on hym. And whan  
 that the duke sawe that he coulde make  
 no peas he commaunded that they shul-  
 de doo theyr best, than bothe the knyght-  
 es let theyr horses renne with great ran-  
 don, and strake eche other with great and  
 myghty spres, & bothe knyghtes were  
 of great force, and they encountred soo  
 rudely that bothe theyr spres all to she-  
 uered to theyr systes, and they rushed  
 soo togyther with theyr bodres and hel-  
 mes that they fel downe bothe to the erth  
 But Arthur who was the more lusty per  
 knyght quykely lepte vpon his fere and  
 drewe out trauncher his good swerde  
 And all that season syr Isembarte laye  
 still on the earth his fere by warde & his  
 head downeward. And whan Arthur  
 sawe that he laye soo breakey he strepe

to hym and lyfte hym vp, and layde his  
shelde vnder his head, and tothow he  
hym selfe a lytell from him, wherfore he  
was greatly prayfed of the kyng and of  
all the other people. And the kyng sayde  
to his newe we, syr whilp it semeth wel  
thys knyghte hath a ryghte noble and a  
gentyl hearte. Merely sayd the duke whi  
lpp it can be none other wyse but that he  
must nedes be extraught of a noble blo  
de for there is in him no touch of shame  
or vylayne. And whan syr Alembarte  
was reuued out of hys traunce he start  
vpon his fete and toke his shelde to him  
and drew his swerde and came vnto Ar  
thur and gaue him a gret stroke on the  
shelde, and strake away a great piece of  
his hawberke, and the stroke dyde glyde  
downe to the earth. Than he said to Ar  
thur, ye made me righte now to fall in a  
sleepe, but or it be night I shal make you  
to slepe in such a wise that ye shal neuer  
wake, Than Arthur answered him and  
sayde, syr ye promysse very muche but I  
can not tell you whether ye shal be able  
to paye it, and there with Arthur strake  
hym on the helme with suche force that  
he bare away a gret piece therof so that  
one of his eares might wel be sene, than  
he caste his shelde before hym, and Ar  
thur gaue him suche another stroke that  
he claued his shelde asunder in the myd  
des, and the stroke dyd glen by his arme  
so that the blood folowed, and with the  
same stroke the swerde entred into the  
earth nye a foote, and all the people that  
sa we that stroke, sayde saynte Marye,  
what knight is ponde, who maye sus  
tayne his strokes, there is no knight like  
hym, and truely so he was as than the  
best knyght of all the worlde, for he was  
of that condycyon that the more he had  
to doo, the more hardynes was in hym

and strength. And whan syr Alembarte  
felt hym selfe wounded he strake Arthur  
on the helme, so that it entred til it came  
to the corse of stele, and than the stroke  
dyde glen downe to ward to the lyfe  
syde, and strake away as muche of the  
hawberk as it touched, but it came not  
nere hys fleshe, for in certayne yt was  
syr Alembarte had ben a true and a faith  
full man, he had ben a right good knyght  
for he neuer founde hys matche before  
that tyme, but as than he had to do with  
him that abated his pryde, than Arthur  
strake him on the helme and claued ason  
der both helme and corse, and so as the  
swerde courned, it carued awaye one of  
his eers from his head, and a gret piece  
of the bratone of his sholdre, and part of  
hys harnys iuste vnto the bare rybbes,  
And all tho that saw it sayd, Jesu how  
may anye suche strokes be given of any  
knyghte lypunge. And whan syr Alemb  
arte felt hym selfe so wounded, he was  
enraged for ye and sayde, Wastyle me  
thynketh ye haue founde me, but by all  
the sayntes of paradise I shal reuenge  
me, than he lyft vp his swerde and strake  
Arthur on the shelde so that he bare a  
waye a great piece of hys harnys. And  
whan Arthur felt the stroke so heuy and  
pauillans, he strete asyde as he that was  
bothe stronge and lyghte, and well and  
warly he put the stroke by, the whiche  
was wedfull, for yt the stroke had light  
vpon hym ful, by lykelyhood he had ben  
ryght soze wounded. And than Arthur  
began for to waxe angry, and toke hys  
swerde in hys hande with great pryde, and  
dressed hym toward syr Alembarte and  
strake him so rudely that he strake away  
arme and sholdre, and all the fleshe of  
hys syde vnto the bare rybbes and dyd  
cutte his legge nye cleane asonder in the  
thyrde

## The story of Arthur

chynke of the thygh, and yet for all that  
 the swerde entered into the earth halfe a  
 fote, than sayd Isembart for down to the  
 erth, & Arthur stept ouer hym and poynt-  
 ed his swerde towardes hym by sage and  
 sayd, false recreant knyght without thou-  
 tole make open knowledge of thy defau-  
 te, I shall put my swerde into thy head.  
 Than he cryed Arthur mercy and sayd,  
 free knyghte see me not, but sende for  
 myne vnkle and for the lady Margarete  
 and for all the other barons, & than shal  
 I shewe you all the case. And whan they  
 were all come than he sayd. Damoyelle  
 certaynly I shewe faillly by treason your  
 father, and wrongfully without a cause  
 haue vyllyeined you, whetfore I rendre  
 agayne to you your lande, and crye you  
 mercy in that I haue trespassed to you.  
 Than answered the damoyelles & said  
 sayd God do iugement to you for his part  
 for as for me now we haue I but ryghte,  
 that ye be in this case that ye be in. And  
 whan the duke herde that he despyed the  
 damoyelle for goddes sake to pardon him  
 and to saue his lyfe, for he had losse an  
 arme and a legge, and I require you let  
 that suffice at this tyme. Saye Ladye  
 sayd Arthur howe say you haue I done  
 ynough at this tyme, or elles shall I do  
 anyr more, and euer sayd Isembart laye  
 styll and euer cryed for mercy and sayde,  
 I praye me an recreaunte and banquy-  
 shed lyke a traytoure & murtherer. Than  
 the duke kneled downe befoze the lady &  
 helde vp his handes & required her that  
 he myght haue his newe wein the same  
 plyte as he was in. And whan the comen  
 people of the countrey saw the duke de-  
 syre the ladye to pardon hym newe we,  
 they were in grete feare lest that she  
 would haue graunted hym request, wher-  
 fore a great company of them rushe in-

to the place till they came there as sayd I  
 Isembart laye styll, and they all at ones  
 layd on hym in such wise that they left  
 no ioynt together with other. And whan  
 the duke of Brgoy sawe that he was as-  
 trayed of hym selfe, and so toke his hors  
 and fledde his way homeward into hym  
 owne country as fast as he might. Whan  
 the kyng of Brytney sayde. O goddame  
 god and this knyght hath this day done  
 you grete honour. And than sayd Whyllyp  
 demaunded of Arthur howe that he did  
 sayd sayde he ryghte well I thanke god.  
 Than all these lordes & knyghtes moun-  
 ted on their horsen, but the lady & manche  
 other people wente barefoote vnto the  
 great cathedraill church of the cite, and  
 there they rendred thankynges vnto our  
 lord Iesu Christ, and to whym a lytell  
 whyle after Arthur and sayd Whyllyp and  
 all other lordes and knyghtes came the  
 ther on pilgrimage and than the bishop  
 and all the hole clergie receiued Arthur  
 with solempne processyon, and soo for  
 great ioye all the belles of the cite were  
 ronge thre dayes together, and all the  
 burgeises throughout every strete where  
 as Arthur shoulde passe did hange oute of  
 their wyndowes and on their walles  
 cloth of golde and of silke, and ech car-  
 pettes and cussyns and coueringes of  
 grene, & riche aparyle of smerthes lay  
 abrode in every wyndowe, and saye la-  
 dies and damoyelles beholding Arthur  
 theyr champpon. And whan the lady had  
 done her prayers, she passed oute of the  
 mynstir. Than began iuglers and com-  
 blers, & mynstrelles to make great ioye  
 and sporte. And the kyng led this lady  
 on the one syde, and duke Whyllyp on the  
 other syde, and so led her forth to the pa-  
 lacy, and all the other barons broughte  
 forth Arthur, & as he passed throughout  
 every

every strete burgeyses & lades & damoy  
selles for Joye dyecast at hyin floures of  
pleasure & sayd, god encrease in you bou  
te & honour. And the great bylayne ran  
euer daunteyng befoze for Joy, and cryed  
euer now darkenes is touned to lyght.  
And whan the kyng had brought the la  
dy to the palays he sayd, nowe saye lady  
ye be welcome home to your owne ryght  
full heritag. Wy sayd the god graunte  
you p hye Joye, of heuē, and kepe and pre  
serue my good knyght p hach delpyered  
me fro mine enemies and saued my lond.  
Whā anon after Arthur entred into the  
palays and the master and al other lordes  
and knyghtes w him. Chā the lady said to  
Arthur gentyl knyght ye haue delpyered  
to me my lond the whych was lost as to  
my vse, for I had nothyng the of, and  
now I haue it agayne by your noble pro  
wesse, wherfore I holde p I haue of god  
and of you, wherfore I wyl to you make  
faythful homage, & take you for my lord  
the whiche knowledg I wyl make here  
openly befoze al the nobles p be here pre  
sent. A madame sayd Arthur for goddes  
sake say ye neuer so to me, for that shal ye  
not do. Wy sayd the ye haue given it to  
me, & of you I holde it, I am but a wo  
man alone, & am in purpose neuer to be  
marryed, scynge p my lord & fathet is deid  
the whiche I thanke myn enemies, but  
now they haue such rewards as they  
haue deserued, and I know wel as soone  
as ye departe out of this countre the duke  
of bygor wll assaile me agayne in the re  
uenging of his newwes death, and yf he  
can take away f om me p he haue giuē  
me. Saye lady sayd Arthur I promyse  
you I shal helpe you to kepe your ryghte  
to the best of my power, and whā so euer  
and as often as ye send to me I shal leue  
al thynges & come to you where so euer I

shall be. Wy said the lady god gyue you  
a. E. W. thankynges, but wy I swere to  
you by the faith that I haue boyn to my  
lord and father p I wll kepe no fore of lon  
de of ppe haue gyuen me without I ma  
ke to you homage therfore. And whā the  
kyng herd that he said to Arthur, sir take  
her homage (p)th we wll nedes do it, and  
in like wise conueyled him duke Philip  
and maister steu. and many other, and ac  
last to moche paine Arthur toke homage  
of the lady and of diuers other baros of  
londe. Whā began there to be made greet  
feest and ioye, and sir Emery, Bilsbar &  
Artaude were gouernours of the feest &  
triumphe. And whan the mete was redy  
thā water was brought forth and so the  
washed the king & the byshop and the la  
dy Margarete together, and thā Arthur  
and duke Philip and maister steu, and  
so al other, and every mā after his degre  
and so they were all in as great mirth &  
Joye as coulde be deupsed, the whiche  
Joye endured but a lytle season, for all  
their Joy was soone touned into great  
trouble, for all the courte was in great  
displeasure as ye shal here after, whō wy  
sheth to rede of here therof.

How the same season while the kyng &  
of o: quene & all these other noble people  
were at dynur in great Joye and mirth  
there came in a messēger fro the wounded  
knyght to Arthur desyringe him to come  
and helpe him o: els he wolde wpe him of  
his death, wher w all the courte was sore  
troubled, and ceased all their Joye for the  
loue of Arthur, for meconuent he depart  
ed fro p court and went forth w the mes  
senger, & how p all the courte scied great  
ly Arthur for that enterpyse, for there  
was neuer non that euer returned agant  
al yue fro that aduenture. Capto. lxxi.

## The story of Arthur



**A**nd this noble court was in this forsaide great Tene and Whyle & they were at dyner there entred in to the palays on horsse backs a squyer hys swerde gyfte aboute hym in hys harte in his hande, and whan he approached nere to the table where as the king sat he began to crye as lowde as he could, where as the knight that is called Arthur of Brytayne, yf he be in this court let hym answer me, and with those wordes all the court was in peas, soo that every man might well here hym. And whan Arthur herde how that he demaunded so for hym he answered and sayd. Frende yf ye demaunde for Arthur of Brytayne there be many folkes reputeth me to be the same therfore beholde I am here ryde, for I am the same man that ye demaunde for save what ye wyll. Syr sayd the squyer I am sente to you, therfore ye shall here what I shall say, sye it is of trouthe how

that my mayster sye Othobon of burtesbise hath hearde tydynges of you and of your adventures, And so hath he done of many other that could do hym no good, sye this knyght is very seke in his bodye, for I thinke verily he is nere to his deeth, therfore he sendeth to you by me that in comment with our onpenger delaye that ye come to hym & gyue hym helth, accompanied alonely but with your squyer, & yf ye doo not thus incontynent through your defaults he shall dye, of the whych deathe I here in his name appele you before the kyng and all this noble court. And than Arthur answered hym and sayd, frende howe is it so that I shoulde gyue hym helthe, I am but an pilsphysyon to helpe hym that is so seke as ye speke of. Syr come on your way and he shall shewe you all the maner of his sickness. Well sayd Arthur thynketh he than that I can gyue hym ony good counseyle. Ye sye said the squyer yf ye be of that hardines and balure as it is of you reported Well frende sayd Arthur suffre than tyll to morowe, and I shall this day take my leue of all these barons & so folowe you. Syr sayd the squyer are we now in Brytayne, yf ye wyll go come on your waye streyght for I wyll departe, how be it I wyll that ye know that my sayd mayster appeleth you of hys deeth. In the name of god sayd the knyng of oportunityency of an yll deeth I praye to god that he may dye, for he hath caused the deeth of many a noble knyght, and soo he wyll do now of this knyght, & soo shall we lese hys company. Truly & Brysebat wolde to god I had here his head. Whan the squyer answered the kyng & sayd, sye if I myght answer a kyng I wolde sare that ye shoulde not curse my mayster before me, & as to you

fyr knight that would hane my maisters  
 head, ye wold not go & seke to haue it for  
 your weyght of fyne golde, ye wold fain  
 haue it so it myght cost you nothing but  
 ye were neuer so hardy to go seke for it,  
 the cause is ye durst not, & as to you fyr  
 knight Arthur ye cause is to cary here  
 ouer longe, eyther come on your way or  
 els abide here still, and so the squyer was  
 goyng bys waye. Than Arthur stept  
 fro the table and demaunded for his har-  
 ners, and sayd that al the world shoulde  
 not cause hym to cary any longer, than  
 Arthur went & armed hym and came a-  
 gayne into the hall, and sayd, I wyl de-  
 parte, & so toke his leue of the kynge and  
 of al the hole barony, who were right so  
 roborfull of his departyng. Than sir Phi-  
 lyp and moo than .v. C. other knyghtes  
 woulde haue gone w hym, but the squyer  
 messenger wold not suffer any creature  
 to depart with him but al onely Batow-  
 wyn bys squyer. Than maister Secuen  
 came to Arthur and sayde, fyr ye go in a  
 great aduentur of death, for your return  
 is ryghte Jeoperdous, but yf god gyue  
 you that grace to retorne, leue ye for no-  
 thyng but that ye come to the tourney  
 befoze Loynye at batylmewyde nexte  
 compynge, for there shall I be and my la-  
 dyes pauplion with me, I wyl now re-  
 tourne to the porte noye, & I shall sende  
 Gouvernat after you. Certainly maister  
 said Arthur, if god wil that I shal escape  
 this aduenture I shall beat y lapd tour-  
 nay, wherfore as now to god I comaun-  
 de you, and so mounted on his horse and  
 toke with him his wylle shield, and cla-  
 rence bys good swerde, the which were  
 ryght nedeful to hym in that journey, &  
 so he rode forth and Batowwyn his squi-  
 er with him. This was al the court soze  
 troubled for his departyng. Than the  
 Arthur.

kynge comaunded to take by the tables  
 to rulle all his stuffe, for he said he wold  
 departe incontinente. Than the ladye  
 Margarete had thought to haue caused  
 hym to cary, but she could not in no wise  
 and so in the same houre he departed,  
 and al other ioyes & knyghtes, so yf there  
 abode with the lady Margarete no moo  
 but her own knyghtes. The ii. apfster al-  
 so sayd that he woulde go to y porte noye  
 And whan all the courte was departed  
 the maister came to the lady & sayd. Ma-  
 dame wyl ye comaunde me any seruyce  
 vnto the markes your vncle who is at y  
 porte noye. And the lady desired hym to  
 cary two or thre dayes tyl she came as  
 she had set all her londe in some good or-  
 dze, & than she promysed to go with him  
 to the porte noye to se her vncle, y wher  
 the request the maister dyd graunce her  
 with al his herte, for he loued her entze-  
 ly & had set al his herte and loue on her  
 how be it she knewe it not as than, than  
 the lady ordeyned her bailiues and pro-  
 uostes & other officers, & keepers of her  
 londes, by the aduise and good counsaill  
 of the maister, and receiued homage of al  
 her peopie, and there lye made y. Eme-  
 ry principal gouernour aboue all other.  
 And whan she had ordeyned al this, than  
 she toke her horse and .xii. of her knygh-  
 tes with her, and so rode furth with the  
 maister to se her vncle, and as they rode  
 together y maister dyscouered to her all  
 his courage how that he loued her with  
 perfite and faithfull honest loue, with the  
 which wordes her herte was so fyred y  
 fro that time for ward she loued hym en-  
 tyly and dyd nothyng but after bys  
 counsaile, and promysed to ouer him her  
 good wil & fauour, and so at the last they  
 arriued on a saturday at the porte noye.  
 And when they were come wher there  
 M. l. metis

## The story of Arthur

mettet hem Gouvernar & Jaker, & so the  
maister & Gouvernar toke down the lady  
than Gouvernar & Jaker demaunded how  
that Arthur did. And the maister answe  
red & said how that he was in good helth  
& mery, & how þ he was as thā newly de  
parted to the castel of burthple in þ coun  
tre of þ lost ple, & shewed him how that  
he desired that he would come after hym  
wherof Gouvernar had great ioy, and de  
parted the next day. And whan the lady  
saue Gouvernar so byg and so goodly a  
knyght, she demaunded of þ maister what  
knyght he was. And he answered her &  
said how þ he peccayned to Arthur. In  
the name of god said she I think it right  
well, for he semeth to be of hys prowesse  
Merely madam said he & so he is. Than  
Gouvernar toke the lady and led her into  
the palays, than the markes came forth  
the same tyme and met them whobnew  
nothings before of her comynge, and as  
sone as she saw her vncle, her herte rem  
bled whan she remembred the deeth of her  
father, & so she ran & embraced hym we  
pyng, both to þe and so: sozo we, for  
ioy that she saw her vncle, & so: sozo we  
of the remembraunce of her father. And  
whan the markes saw her and knewe  
wel þ she was his nece, incontynence he  
remembred the deeth of her father his bro  
ther, with the which remembraunce his  
herte closed in suche wille, that of a great  
space he could speke no word, and so late  
them downe on a benche. And whan the  
lady could speake, she said, saye vncle &  
dere frende I neuer sawe my dere father  
speke he departed wth you, I praye you  
tel me whether ye have sene him or not  
I pray you and were to me a poze orphe  
lyne bothe of father and mother. And  
whan her vncle herde her saye soo, hym  
thought his herte dyd bryke for sozo we,

and said. A myne owne nece & dere lous  
bothe ye and I have lost hym, and ye are  
disherited: herfore we oughe wel to com  
playne on oure damages. And sy: Ilem  
barte I pray to god thou maist dye an pil  
deth þ hast thus brought vs into this do  
lorous chaunce. Sy: said the lady of an  
pil deth he is dead, and so was about to  
tell him all the matter, but she could not  
for wepyng. Than the mayster came to  
the and shewed the markes that Arthur  
had conquered sy: Ilembarte in playne  
batayl, and had rendred to þ lady agayne  
her londes, and how that she had made  
homage vnto Arthur. Tha the markes  
said, certainly saye nece ye have done  
ryght wel to make hym homage, for he  
hath deliuered vs out of pouerte, & hath  
made vs ryche, and he hath wel aduen  
ged you of youre moztall enemy, and he  
hath deliuered me oute of the dolorous  
pylson that I was in, wherfore ye euen  
I may se hym agayne I wyl become his  
man. Thus they talked together so long  
that at the laste the mayster made them  
to forget they: sozo we, and to be ioyous  
& mery, and so they went to dynet & were  
serued right richely, and so al þ day they  
wer together, and thus this lady abode a  
great space at the porte noye, and every  
day sported wth her vncle, and so they  
made right great ioy and feast together.

**¶** How þ Gouvernar in setchyng of Ar  
thur had the honour of a tourney þ was  
made by þ erle of the pie perdue, & there  
Gouvernar was amorous of the coftess  
And how þ the erle charged the coftess þ  
she shold not speke to Gouvernar, wherof  
euill came to hym, for the nexte day Go  
uernar dyd bette hym well in the cour  
ney, & lay all nyght after With the coun  
tess his wyfe. Cap. lxxvi.



**I**n the moztynge betwix the Gouernar toke hys leue of the lady and of the maister, and of the noble Markes and rode forth on his waye on a Jacket hys squer with hym, and he was ryght ryche besen, and mounted on a good and pryfstaunte horse, and soo rode forth. viii. dayes and neuer coulde here anye tydynges of that he sought for, tyl at the laste he reued in the londes of ynde the more bytwene the realme of soroloy and the empyre, and there he sawe a great ryuer, and at a crosse waye he encountred a messenger, who bare a scotchyn on hys brest, and also a boke full of letters, and rode a great pace, and this was aboute saynt Laurence tye. Than Gouernar dyd salute the barlet and demaunded of hym what tydynges and of whence he was. And he answered and sayd, sy I am pertaynyng to the erle of the yle perdue, and am rydyng to the stronge castell to a knyght named sy Ja

kes to thetent y he sholde come to him to go with him to a tournay, for thempour of ynde hath somoned my maister y said erle to wayte on hym to Corynthe at this Bartylmeus tye in the comynge, because of a tournay that is taken there bytweene hym and the mighty Emédus kyng of soroloy, and by cause my lord thynketh not to be unpursued of good knyghtes, he hath made to be cryed a tournay on monday nexte comynge to thetent to chose of y best knyghtes y cometh thider to haue them with hym to the sayd great tournay at Corynthe,

therfore I must go to the sayd sy Ja kes to cause hym to be with my said lord on monday nexte comynge. Well good frende sayd Gouernar go on your waye god sente you good aduenture. So than the barlet departed, than Gouernar sayd to Jacket, I am in purpose to go to this sayd tournay, for it may happeright wel that we may there here some tidings of mo lord Arthur, and so they rode so longe tyl at the last they aryued at the yle perdue, where as they founde many knyghtes y were redy come, so y all the lot gyn ges were taken by. Wherefor he had moche payne to gete hym on y lot grunge, but at the laste he mette a good targe se who receiued hym frendly into his heus. And whan Gouernar was chaunged he called to hym hys hoste and demaunded hym all the maner of the erle and what maner of man he was. who answered and sayd sy he is a right valpant man and a hardy knyght, for there are but fewe that may

## The story of Arthur

compare with hym in dedes of armes, & he hath to his wyfe the moost fayre lady that is in all the world except the kyng of Spaynes daughter, & for her beaute hyther resorteth many straunge knyghtes both dukes, erles, and many other good knyghtes, & because he dooth tourney to morow he knoweth well þat many knyghtes wyll be at his house for to se his wife therfore he hath caused the gates of his castel to be fast lhetre, and hath defended that what so ever he be shal not entre, the gates were not open syth none yester day. So sayde Gouvernar in the name of god I shal assay to entre & if I can to se the fayre lady, than he called to hym Jacket and comaunded hym to byrge for his horse, for he sayd he wolde go & assay his horse agens the nexte daye that he sholde tourney, and so Jacket brought hym his horse & mounted thereon, and so rode forth throughtout þe stretes of the towne tyll he came to the castel gate the which he found fast lhetre, and than he bad the portre to open the gate, for he sayd he wolde entre into the castel, & than the portre demaunded of hym what he had to do there. Frenche said Gouvernar I wold speke with the good lady of this place. Werily she sayde the portre ye may not entre in at this place, for my lord hath defended the contrary, for he hath comaunded þat what so ever he be þat cometh hyther that none shoulde entre, wherfore I dare not lette you in. Yes I pray you sayd Gouvernar, and I wyll gyue you what soo ever ye wyll demaunde of me. Than the portre opened a lytel wyndowe & there he sawe þat Gouvernar was a ryght goodly knyght & browne of bylage, & sawe how þat he rode on a maruayllous fayre horse, than thought he well þat he was some noble man & sayd to hym, syth if ye wyll gyue me the horse

that ye ryde on I wyll open you the gate. Open the gate than at ones and I gyue hym to you. She sayd the portre wyll ye promyse me as ye be a true knyght that I shal haue hym. Werily I promyse you that ye shal haue hym as I am a true knyght. She sayd the portre I pray you carry a lytle whyle, & I shal go in & speke with my lord. Well sayd Gouvernar I praye you be ye agayne as faste as ye may. Than the portre went to the erle & sayd, syth there is at youre gate a maruayllous fayre knyght, who hath so great desyre to se my lady þat he wyll gyue me his horse that he rydeth on, the which is wel worth by lykelyhode a C. pounde on the condycyon that I wolde open the gate & let hym in, therfore syth pleaseyth it you to lyewe me your mynde in this case. Now so said the erle my mynde was that none shoulde entre into this place. Howe be it I wyll not that thou shouldest lese thy gyfte that he wolde gyue the, therfore goo thy waye & open the gate & take thy horse, & then he sayd to the countesse his wyfe, madame ponder is a knyght that hath gyuen a ryche gyfte to se & to speake to you, wherfore I charge you as dere as ye holde my loue that whan he is come ye make to him no maner of semblaunt, nor speke no worde to hym what so ever he saye to you, if ye doo other wyse ye shal ryght sore dyspleaseme. & she sayd the lady for goddes sake I axe mercy, syth we knowe not what knyght he is nor of what valure and if he haue gyuen a ryche gyfte to speake with me he shal haue but a small reward for his curtesy if I shoulde kepe my speache from hym, agens loue no man can be, and I am a gentyl woman of great power, therfore I shoulde greatly respace and I shoulde not speke to him if he speake to me. By the sayth that I

owe

own vnto god said the erle if petrespace  
agent my contumaciousent I shall dis-  
please you at the herte rose. Wei he sayd  
the lady, for your loue I am content, but  
if any bylany groweth by I praye to  
god it maye sal on you. Than the porter  
opened the gate to Gouernar, and there  
the porter toke his horse and Gouernar  
wente forth into the palays a fore, and  
the erle and such other knightes as wer  
with him mette Gouernar & dyd salute  
hym & behelde hym maruailouslye and  
longe pailed for the tyme he came where as  
the countesse was, than he wente to her  
and sayd. Adadame god that all thyng  
fourme geue you this daye helth, joye  
and peace, and blessed be the renowne &  
rūneth of your valure, beute, and fresh  
beaute, for now I le well it is of trouth  
and moze thā is oz can be reported. And  
whan the countesse herd hym she answered  
no maner of worde, the whiche gre-  
ued her ryght soze in her herte and ther-  
with she cast downe her lōke toward the  
earth. And Gouernar made countenaun-  
ce to salute the other ladyes, and so late  
downe amonge them. And at the last he  
sayd to the countesse, saye ladye I am a  
knyght that passeth thurghout this cou-  
try, and it was shewed me how that ye  
were in this castell, wherfore I thought  
I would not passe by without seynge of  
you therfore I am come to you to offere  
my selfe to be your knyght, & to do that  
I may do for your sake, wherfore mada-  
me I requyre you to shewe me what is  
your pleasure, for I am soze despyng  
to knowe it and the countesse spake no  
word agayne, but cast down her lōke to  
the grounde, wherwith she was ryght  
soze greued at the herte. And whan Go-  
uernar sawe that she spake no worde he  
was ryght sorowfull & sayde. Adadame

Wyll ye not speake to me, I haue herd te  
nowmed of you that ye were fre & gen-  
tyll of hearte and of suche courtesie that  
ye could beare none yre nor no malice in  
your herte, nor do any bylany to any ma-  
ner of persone, wherfore saye ladye aun-  
swere me some maner of worde, how be  
it for al that she spake no worde agayne  
And therewith water was brought forth  
and all they washed and late do wne to  
dynet, and the erle caused Gouernar to  
syt nexte to the ladye to the tennete to doo  
hym the moze anoyance and shame, and  
there Gouernar caried to the ladye ryght  
goodly with his knyfe, and offentymes  
spake to her, but she would neuer grue  
answere agayne, wherewith Gouernar  
was so soze dyspleased that he neyther  
dyd once nor dyke but a lytel for he sa-  
we well how the ladye spake to all other  
but in no wyse she would speke to him  
And also the countesse was right soze dis-  
pleased in her hearte becaule she durste  
not speake to him. And thus they were  
in this case tyl they were taken by scot-  
binder, and than Gouernar toke her bold-  
ly by the hand and sayd, madam I wold  
fayue speake a lytell wyth you, and soo  
he lad her vnto a fayre wyndowe, than  
he sayd, swete ladye it is for none yre or de-  
spire or for any trespace that I haue ma-  
de to you or to anye of yours that ye do  
to me suche hardnes & ye wil not speke  
to me, ye haue the name to be the moste  
free and gentyllest of hearte of any lady  
now lynyng, for al bounte and courtesie  
is sayd to be in you, therfore swete la-  
dye I wold somwhat of your courtesie to  
me as in speakyng but othe wordes. And  
saye and gentyl ladye do me soo muche  
honor as now to speke to me for as god  
helpe me I am ashamed if ye do not for-  
euer, for it shal be sayd to moze of me

## Thy story of Arthur

how that I am but a folyshe knight and outrageous, for by myne outrage it shal be sayd that I have losse the herynge of the speche of the moost fayre ladye of the worlde, madame I requyre you put frome this reproche, open to me a lytle your swete mouth wherein is all curtesy, and speke to me some worde, for madame as god helpe me thy herte dyeth in my body for I am in fereleest that ye be dyspleased wyth me for some trespase that I haue done, but for al þe spake no worde agayne to hym, and yet he was as sore greued in her herte as he. Gouvernar stode and talked so longe to this lady tyl at the laste two of her gentylwomen came for her that she should go into her chambrye and take her reste. Than Gouvernar at her departyng layde hys arme aboute her and sayd, madame I se well I must nedes departe from you at this tyme, I wyll go to my lodgyngge ryght so: owful and ye shal go & reste you & slepe & take lyrell care for my greate grete, how be it madame I saye vnto you that I wyl neuer departe fro this towne tyl ye haue spoken to me. And so thus talkyng he brought her to her chambrye doore and he sawe well where there was a waye out of the chambrye in to a fayre orcheyarde. Than he sayd, madame ye wyll not speke to me, but I promyse you I wyl come this same nyght in yonder orcheyarde & so to your chambrye to speake with you though he I dye therfore, for I haue taken that enterpryse in my mynde cyther I wyl dye or elles ye shal speake to me. And ther wyth the countesse entred into her chambrye wythout spekyng of any worde to hym. And than Gouvernar returned to hys lodgyngge into the towne ryght sore dyspleased in hys herte. And whan Jacket sawe hym come on fote he

demaunded of hym where was hys horse. And he answered & sayd, in sayth frende it gooth not wel wyth me. Whan Jacket I trowe ye haue played a way your horse bycause ye woulde not rounmay to morowe with the knyghtes of this countre, well shamefull knyght to morowe whan I se other gentyl knyghtes rounmay I wyl shewe them how that ye lys a slepe in your chambrye. Than Gouvernar layde hym downe on a bedde all resplete to ye tyl it was nyght. And than the lady erle commaunded all hys knyghtes that they should departe and goo to theyr restes bycause they shoulde be traynyed on the next daye, and also he sayd to the countesse hys wyfe, madame go this nyght into your chambrye and take your rest, for I wyl this nyght ly alone for I am sure I shal be ryght sore traynyed to morowe. And whan it was deke nyght and the countesse taken her leue and entred into her chambrye. Than rose Gouvernar and hadde Jacket his squer to geue hym his swerde. And Jacket demaunded of hym what he wolde doo. I wyl go out & playe me sayd Gouvernar. By the sayth that I owe to god sayd Jacket I trowe ye wyl go ye in a waye by the hys way for to robbe some marchant to by you a newe horse wyth all. Gouvernar answered no worde agayne but departed fro hym, and as than euery bodye was in theyr lodgynges, for it was than somwhat late, and the moone gone very byghe, and the watchmen were on the Wallis of the castell and so wente often aboute, and at the laste Gouvernar came to the hygh Wallis of the orcheyarde the wyche I orned on the one syde toward a fayre forest, and there Gouvernar sawe well on the other syde the Wyndowes of the chambrye where as he sawe the lady

entre when he departed fro her, than he  
clam upon a grene oke, and dyde so mo-  
che that at the last he gate vpon the wall  
e there he stode styl pynely a good space  
because of the watchemen that went a-  
bout, for as whan they were in that quar-  
ter, and whan they were passed he gate  
hym downe by another tree, and so stode  
styl by the walles vnder the shadowe  
of the trees, for the moone dyd hym gre-  
te anoyunce because she shone so clere.  
And at the last he gate hym into the myd-  
des of the garden vnder a fayre pyne tre  
where as there was a ryght fayre fou-  
ntayne, and there he stode a great space &  
durst not stete for feare of spying, for he  
knewe well that yf he spyed the watch-  
men who as then were not a slepe, shoulde  
se hym, and he knewe well that and he  
were espyed and taken he shoulde notte  
lightly escape without both, therefore he  
hapte hym selfe as pynely as he coulde,  
and al thys season the countesse was in  
her chambze in her bystel bare foot and  
bare legged, and on a carpet of silk and  
her damoyelles aboute her, and there  
they began to speake of the knyght who  
had gyven hys horse to speake with her  
and one of the damoyelles who was na-  
med Dowcet sayde howe that he was of  
right great valure and bounteful of hert  
By the mother of god said Eglen-  
tyn to other of her damoyelles ye saye ryghte  
truly, and where as he is gentyl of hert  
in lyke wyse he is passynge fayre and  
more gracious of wordes than my lord  
is. Truly sayd Dowcet I meynynge me  
greatly how that my lady could haue so  
harde a hert as whan he spake so swete  
ly to her that she woulde gyue hym no  
maner of answer. Truly sayd Eglen-  
tyn as I remembre I hearde hym saye  
at hys departinge that he woulde come

thys same nyght into thys garden. By  
the good lord sayde the other I remem-  
bre well I hearde hym say so. Well sayde  
the countesse I care not whether he co-  
me or not, yf he doo lette hym kepe faste  
that he shall wynte, lette vs go to our  
beddes, & that she sayd to couer her cou-  
rage and to bytake the wyndes, and so  
she sente a waye from her all her gentyl  
women, saynge Dowcet and Eglen-  
tyn, for they two were of her prey cou-  
syle, than she sayd to them. A dere lady  
the mother of god, what shall we do yf  
this knyght cometh into the garden this  
nyght, yf he be espyed of the watchmen  
it shall be thought that I haue caused  
hym to come hyther, so shall I be shamed  
and he destroyed, the which shoulde  
be a great domage, for he is a righte fayre  
knyght. By the good lord said Eglen-  
tyn maye ye saye righte truly, therfore  
for Dowcet felowe let vs chayne go so  
whether he be come or not, than Dow-  
cet toke a grene mantell and dyd cast it  
on her and so went forth together, play-  
eng to the entente the watchmen shoulde  
knowe that it were they, and at the last  
Dowcet looked vnder the pyne tree and  
there she sawe where he stode, than she  
sayde to her Eglen- tyn there is no more  
but now let vs do for the best, for yonder  
I se hym, and incontynence they approu-  
ched to the fountayne, and made sem-  
blaunce to walsh the thyr feete and handes  
and Dowcet toke her mantell and dyd  
cast it on the knyght, and toke a syne ke-  
uerche and dyd knyete it on hys heade  
and so toke hym by the arme & did leade  
hym forth into the countesse chambze,  
as though he had ben one of her felowes  
And as sone as Countess sawe y lady  
he cast of his keuerche & his mantell &  
huked downe & sayde, What maye I pray  
god

## The story of Arthur

god grue you good lyfe and good nyght  
and she answered and sayd, for knyght  
in an yll nyght and tyme ye be entred in  
to my chambrye without my licence, wher  
fore ye be not welcome vnto me, but for  
your labour I shall cause you to be han-  
ged by the necke, and these wordes she  
spake sayre and easely because she wolde  
not be heard, and forthermore she sayde  
for knyght howe durste ye be so bolde to  
breake my walles & entre into my cham-  
brye, by the mother of god ye shal dye ther-  
fore. Than Gouvernar answered & sayd,  
ryght dere and swete lady blame me no-  
thyng therfore, for as god helpe me my  
herte dyed in my bodye whan so hye a la-  
dy as ye be wolde not speke to me, for as  
it is sayd that all goodnesse and gentyl-  
nesse is cōpyled in your person, wher-  
fore sayre lady now doo wyth me what it  
shall please you, for ye haue spoken to  
me stryke of my head & ye wyll, loo here  
it is al redy, and so he layde forth his hēd  
to the countesse to haue had her stryken it  
of yf she lyst, & whan the countesse saw  
him humble himselfe so mekely, her hert  
began to mēte, & so roke of him some pye-  
te. A madame sayd Dowcet this knyght  
hath euyl employed his curtesye that he  
hath done to your porter as to grue him  
hys good horse for youre loue, and now  
ye to speke so rudely, he hath done more  
bounte and curtesy syth he came hyther  
than euer dyd ony that euer came vnto  
this place to se you, though they were nei-  
uer so noble or great, it is reason that he  
may fele that he hath not yll employed  
his gyft that he hath gyuen for youre sa-  
ke, and also he hath Jeoperded hys lyfe in  
this behalf, it came of a great gentylnes  
of herte to grue awaye his horse, and of  
a great valure of courage to put this his  
lyfe in aduēture for your sake, full ly-

tell durst thus haue done ony knyght of  
this countre, who be asfayde of euery fo-  
ly, they lacke in theyr hertes suche bolde-  
& valure, I say not all thys all onely for  
his sake, for I neuer sawe him afore this  
daye, but as helpe me god I se by reason  
that loue hath caused hym thus to do, for yf  
he had not loued you he wolde haue done  
nothyng of thys that is done, therfore ma-  
dame for goddes sake make hym amen-  
des of the yll cruelte that he dyd to him this  
day & speke to him more curtesly. Dow-  
cet sayd the lady I can not I am so full  
of yre, for he hath dyspleased me with his  
cominge hider, for it is no thanke to him  
though I wot shamed for this dede. Ma-  
dame sayd Dowcet yf ye put hym out of  
your chambrye at this tyme of nyght he  
shall be espyed of the watchmen, & so ta-  
ken & slayn & you shamed, for euery man  
that shal knowe therof wyll saye that ye  
caused hym to come, & the more that kno-  
weth therof the worse it is, for whan a  
thyng is doone it is conuenient to let it  
passe as easely as may be, and to kepe it  
secrete for all is lytle ynough, for knyght  
knele ye downe and crye my lady mer-  
cy in that ye be come hither without her ly-  
cence. Than Gouvernar kneled downe &  
sayd, madame for goddes sake forgyue  
me this trespass. And she beheld him in  
uaylouslyre, for he was sayre & gracypus  
and he was bare headed, & Dowcet strake  
downe hys heare wyth her hande, for it  
was somewhat ruffled wyth the wynde,  
and sayd. I madame beholde & se what  
maner of knight this is, and who is soo  
harde herted that wyll not forgyue hym  
that putteth hym selfe in suche aduēture  
all onely to se a sayre noble lady, certayn-  
ly I pardon hym in your name, for I am  
sure madame ye wyll be content therw.  
Than the countesse dyd smyle & sayd, al-  
ways

wayes ye wyl playe the sole, but so the to  
 he Gouvernat by the hande & caused him  
 to aryse vpon his fete, than Powert had  
 hym sye downe by her lade, but for cour-  
 tesye he would not at the fyrst bidding.  
 Than Powert sayd, sye knyght now ye  
 neede not to take any care for anye of the  
 knyghtes of this castel for your coming  
 hyer, and without ye haue fete of a wo-  
 man, sye down by my lade and make your  
 own peace ther w. Gouvernat saie down  
 and embraced and despyed the lade & she  
 wold pardon him, and so she did, & than  
 Gouvernat all simplyng cast forth many  
 pryie & goodly wordes, and euer he found  
 the lade gentyl & swete of her answers.  
 Than Powert said, sister Eglentine my  
 lade me thynketh is mary now, & so w.  
 she care not for vs, let vs go watch in y  
 nerte chaumbre, for I thynke she would  
 sayne be a bed, and soo they went they  
 way, and the lade called them again, but  
 that was very softly, for it was with a  
 dead voice. And than anon powert herd  
 the curcyngs & a wen about the bed, and  
 she knewe well there were no mo creatu-  
 res but the lade and the knyght together.  
 Than Gouvernat began a lytel to speake  
 saye, as these louers doche whan they  
 would haue their despyes, and at the last  
 he oyd so muche that they were agreed  
 to lye together, and so to bed they went,  
 and there they toke suche parauince toge-  
 ther as these louers are wont to do whā  
 they be in lyke case. And than Gouver-  
 nat demaunded of the lade why she had  
 done hym so much bysny as in that she  
 would not speake to hym in her palays.  
 In the name of god said the lade the cau-  
 se was for my lord comaunded me so to  
 do, and I durst not dysplease hym, how  
 be it that greued me ryght toze so to do.  
 Well madame, it is often seene that too

much restraynyng is not good, but as in  
 this case he y hath the damage let hym  
 wepe hardely, & so he embraced and kysed  
 the lade, & thus they were together tyl  
 was nere hand day. Thā the lade said  
 sye knyghte I requyre you sende vnto  
 my lord the vylany that he hath done to  
 vs, in such wyse y ye rust to morow as  
 gentl hym, & let him fete and know how  
 that ye be dyspleased. By the moche of  
 god said Gouvernat so shall I do, & I wa-  
 rant ye shall se hym sye to the erth. Thā  
 the lade began to laughe. Than Powert  
 came to the beddes syde and sayde: madam  
 me is all the yll wyl any thyng mynys-  
 shed, is all this warren so sayled, I be-  
 lieue that the peace be made, & now ye  
 haue made amendes this nyght to the  
 knyght. By the good lord sayd the lade  
 Powert ye play alwaye the sole. Up sye  
 knyght sayd Powert, for it is tyme for  
 you to ryle. Than Gouvernat rose & apper-  
 rayled hym. Than the countesse said, ye  
 yester day ye oyd giue a waye your horse  
 for my sake, wherfore I wyl giue you  
 agayne as good a gyfte, Powert byng  
 me bycher pander lytel casket that me-  
 on my pryde, and whan she hadde it she  
 sayde holde sye knyght I giue this cas-  
 ket to you and al that is therein. Madam,  
 me sayd Gouvernat by the leue of god I  
 wyl not take it, for I thanke god I am  
 ryche ynough, & haue so valyaunt a me-  
 ster that he wyl giue me goodes suffi-  
 cent. By the sayth y I owe to god said the  
 lade though ye were a knyng yet I giue  
 it vnto you, and without that ye take it  
 I ensure you I wyl neuer speke to you  
 moze whyle I lyue. I giue it to you frely  
 but for a remembraunce for the loue that  
 I haue in you, and to bte you therwith a  
 newe horse, and I requyre you to morow  
 bte w my lord as ye haue promysed me.  
 Madam

## The story of Arthur

Madame by the swyth that I owe unto you sayd he I ensure you I shall make hym retourne from his horse. Than pla by and Powet dydde smyle, and so than departed Gouvernar fro them, and toke the casket with him, the which was ful of copned gold, and as than al the watch men were a slepe, for than it was at the paynte of day.

Howe that Gouvernar dydde bete  
downe at the tourney the erle of che  
yle perdue. Cap. lxviii



Thus whā Gouvernar was departed fro the countesse he came to his owne lodgyng, and there he founde Jacker hys squyer slepyng on a fountne befoze the fyze, & so he awoke hym. And whan Jacker saw hym hys herte cumbled because of hys sodāne waking & sayd. Thys is a fayre tarping. I knowe for a wyse man to come now to his lodgyng, and than he did lyght by a toche and there in the chambze Gouvernar did open hys casket, wherein there was of golde and Jewelles beyonde two thousande pound. And whan Jacker sawe it hys herte was astraped and sayd. Sp: I thynke ye have robbed some abbey. be ware ye be not hanged to morow. A laker frende said Gouvernar hold thy peas holde here. C. C pound and loke that I have to morow a good horse, and gyve all the remnant of the money to poore people. Ye said Jacker ye be very liberal of other mennes goodes, for I knowe all thys coste you nothyng, ye be a large gyver of almes, I thynke it were better that ye caused the abbey to be couered with lede fro whence ye stole thys money, but so than as sone as it was farye

day Jacker wente into the market place and there he founde hys owne mayster's horse to be soulede, and there he boughte hym for an hundred pounce, and so broughte hym to Gouvernar who was ryght gladd of hym, and after that none of that day was paste, harowdes did crye in every strete, knyghtes lepe upon your horses, and get yeu shoyrpe to the fild. Than honyes, bullynes, tabourpnes, crompettes and claryons began to sowe manayloulpe. Than knyghtes quickely dyd arme thepm, and than the gates of the castell were sette open, and the erle dyd pisse out woth a great company of knyghtes woth hym, and came into the place where as the turney shold be and by that tyme Gouvernar was armed and mounted upon hys horse, and he was greatly beholien that tourney of every bodde for he was a ryght farye knyght in harnys. Than the countesse and other ladyes and damoyselles were mounted on the castell walles to beholde the tourney the whiche was in a farye grene ryghte under the castell wal, than Powet & Eglenor saw where as Gouvernar came riding towarde the tourney in a narrow lane. Madame quod Powet beholde yonder knyghte, by semynge he shold be some noble man. Truly sayd the lady he is the most semelyest knyghte in al y towne. Madame sayd Powet I thank ye would his honour and profyt be the good lord sayd the lady I wold he were a kynge. Than anon in the fild the parties were disseuered, & Gouvernar was agens y erle, & an hys was cryed knyghtes do your best. Than began the the tourney ryght hard & sharp, & Gouvernar aduysed wel the erle and ran at hym ryghte rudely, & the erle strake hym so sore that he made hym somewhat bove on hys

his hofse, but Gouvernar strake hym and mette hym With his bodye so rudelye þe made hym awayde his hofse & the legges upwarde. Than Jacket toke the erles hofse and brought hym to the countesse for a present. And whan the ladyes sawe where the erle dyd fall, than Gylentyne sayd, a ponder is one w his fete upwarde. That is true sayd Powert that is my lord the erle, beholde how he shaketh his legges. Well sayd the countesse methyns keth ponder knyght holdeth my lord very hofte. Madaine sayd Powert he acquyeth hym of hys promyse. Thus Gouvernar helde the earle so hofte þe was sayne to yelde hym whether he wolde or not. Than all the erles company came al at ones on Gouvernar, but he was stronge and lyght, and gaue so greate strokes and heuy that he confounded all that euer he attayned vnto, and at the bronte he vnhoysed moo than .viii. knyghtes. And whan Jacket had made hys present vnto the countesse who thanked hym muche, than he retourned agayne vnto hys mayster, and soo he hadde ynough to do euer to cary the hofses of them that hys mayster had ouerthrowe to the burgerse who was hys maysters hoste. Than Gouvernar aduysed well where there was to gyther a great flocke of knyghtes, than Gouvernar dalyt amonge them so rudelye that at his fyrst companye he ouerthrowe two knyghtes together, and so wythin a shofte space he departed the knyghtes a sonder and gaue suche strokes all aboute hym þe eury man fledde before hym, & al the ladyes sawe hym do meruailes wyth hys handes, & they maruailed howe that euer he coulde endure suche payne wyth his body, and than as he retourned fro that company he mette agayne the earle who as than Was remounted, than Go-

uer dalyt into the pseyntill that he came streyght where as the erle was, who as than handled ryght sharply a knyght of the partie that Gouvernar was of, than Gouvernar dyelled hym to the erle and embraced hym by the thowndres & dalyt hys hofse wyth his spures, and ouerthrowe bothe the erle to the ground and also the knyght that the erle fought wythail, and there he made the erle to yelde hym agayne. And whan the countesse sawe that he smyled ryght sweetly and said. Powert frende ponder knyght hath been downe two at ones, blessyd be hys vertue, he is now Well auenged of the erle my husbande, who wolde not suffreme to speke wyth him. Than the erles company set on Gouvernar, but he defended hym selfe ryght maruaulously, but they oppressed hym soo sore that hys hofse enfoundred vnder hym, and than Gouvernar bygrounly lepte on hys fete, and there he aduysed the erles sene shall, who hadde at that tyme ryght sore anoyed hym; and he was well mouted vpon a good blacke morrell hofse, than Gouvernar lepte vp to him and toke him aboute the necke wyth his handes and pulled hym so sore that he made hym to auoyde the saddell whether he wolde or not, and soo fell to the grounde, than Gouvernar toke hys hofse and quykely lepte vp into the saddell, and in a greate pseyntill in to the pseynt, and gaue so myghty strokes that he made all to flee before hym, and by that tyme the erle Was remounted agayne, and the thyrde tyme he came behynde Gouvernar and embraced hym wyth bothe his handes to the entent to haue lyfted hym out of hys saddell, but he coulde no moze remoue hym than thoughe he had lyfted at a great turre. Than Gouvernar retourned hym to the erle and toke hym by the head

## The story of Arthur

Madame by the savyth that I owe unto you sayd he I ensure you I shall make hym reuerse from his horse. Than pla dy and Powcet dydde smyle, and so than departed Gouvernar fro them, and toke the casket with him, the which was ful of copned gold, and as than al the watch men were a slepe, for than it was at the poynte of day.

Howe that Gouvernar dydde bete downe at the courtney the erle of the ple perdue. Cap. lxviii



Thus whā Gouvernar was departed fro the countesse he came to his owne lodgyng, and there he founde Jackett hys squyer slepyng on a fourne before the fyre, & so he awoke hym. And whan Jackett saw hym hys herte trembled because of hys sodeyn waking & sayd. Thys is a fayre tarping, I knowe for a wyle man to come now to his lodgyng, and than he did lyght by a torch, and there in the chambze Gouvernar did open hys casket, wherein there was of golde and Jewelles beyonde two thousande pound. And whan Jackett sawe it hys herte was afrayed and sayd. Sir, I forynke ye have robbed some abbey, be ware ye be not hanged to morow. A laker frende said Gouvernar hold thy peas holde here. C. C. pound and loke that I haue to morow a good horse, and geue all the remnaunt of the money to poore people. Ye said Jackett ye be very liberal of other mennes goodes, for I knowe all thys coste you nothyng, ye be a large geuer of almes, I thynke it were better that ye caused the abbey to be couered with lede fro whence ye stole thys money, but so than as sone as it was farye

day Jackett wente into the market place and there he founde hys owne maysters horse to be sould, and there he boughte hym for an hundred pounce, and soe broughte hym to Gouvernar who was ryght gladd of hym, and after that no ne of that day was past, harwodes did crye in euery strete, knyghtes lepe vpon your horses, and get you shorthe to the fildes. Than hornes, bullynnes, tabourp, nes, trompettes and claryons began to sowe mane aplouspe. Than knyghtes quackelye dyd arme theyn, and than the gates of the castell were sette open, and the erle dyd pisse out with a great company of knyghtes with hym, and came into the place where as the turney shold be and by that tyme Gouvernar was armed and mounted vpon hys horse, and he was greatly beholden that courtney of euery bodie for he was a ryght farye knyghte in harnys. Than the countesse and other ladies and damoyselles were mounted on the castell walles to beholde the courtney the whiche was in a farye grene rygher vnder the castell wal, than Powcet & Eglenour sawe where as Gouvernar came riding towarde the courtney in a narrow lane. Madame quod Powcet beholde yonder knyghte, by semynge he sheld be some noble man. Truly sayd the lady he is the most semelyest knyghte in all y towne. Madame sayd Powcet I thynke ye wold his honour and profyt. By the good lord sayd the lady I wold he were a kynge. Than anon in the fild the parties were disseuered, & Gouvernar was agens y erle, than hera wodes cried knyghtes do your best. Than began the the courtney ryght hard a sharpe, & Gouvernar aduysed wel the erle and ran at him ryght rudely, & the erle strake hym so sore that he made him somewhat bove on hys

his horse, but Gouvernar strake hym and mette hym with his bodye so rudelye þe made hym awayde his horse & the legges upwarde. Than Jacket toke the erles horse and brought hym to the countesse for a present. And whan the ladyes sawe where the erle dyd fall, than Glyentyne sayd, a ponder is one to his fete upwarde. That is true sayd Dowcet that is my lord the erle, beholde how he shake his legges. Well sayd the countesse methyns keth ponder knyght holdeth my lord very thorte. Madaine sayd Dowcet he acquyeth hym of hys promyse. Thus Gouvernar helde the earle so thorte þe was fayne to yelde hym whether he wolde or not. Than all the erles company came al at ones on Gouvernar, but he was stronge and lyght, and gaue so greates strokes and heuy that he confounded all that euer he attayned vnto, and at the bronte he unhorsed moo than. viii. knyghtes. And whan Jacket had made hys present vnto the countesse who thanked hym muche, than he retourned agayne vnto hys mayster, and soo he hadde prough to do euer to cary the horses of them that hys mayster had ouerthrowe to the burgyse who was hys maysters hoste. Than Gouvernar aduysed well where there was to gyther a great flocke of knyghtes, than Gouvernar dallyt amonge them so rudelye that at his fyrst comynge he ouerthrewe two knyghtes togither, and so wythin a thorte space he departed the knyghtes asonder and gaue suche strokes all aboute hym þe eury man fledde before hym, and all the ladyes sawe hym do meruailes with hys handes, & they maruailed howe that euer he coude endure suche payne wyth his bodye, and than as he retourned fro that company he met agayne the earle who as than was remounted, than Go-

uer dallyt into the preece yll that he came streyght where as the erle was, who as than handled ryght sharply a knyght of the partie that Gouvernar was of, than Gouvernar dyelled hym to the erle and embraced hym by the thondres & dallyt hys horse wyth his spures, and ouerthrewe bothe the erle to the ground and also the knyght that the erle fought wythall, and there he made the erle to yelde hym agayne. And whan the countesse sawe that he smyled ryght sweetly and said. Dowcet frende ponder knyght hath been downe two at ones, blessed be hys vertue, he is now well auenged of the erle my husbande, who wolde not suffreme to speke wyth him. Than the erles company set on Gouvernar, but he defended hym selfe ryght maruaulously, but they oppressed hym soo sore that hys horse enfoundred vnder hym, and than Gouvernar vygorously lepte on hys fete, and there he aduysed the erles sene shall, who hadde at that tyme ryght sore anoyed hym, and he was well moued vpon a good blacke morrell horse, than Gouvernar lepte vp to him and toke him aboute the necke wyth his handes and pulled hym so sore that he made hym to auoyde the saddell whether he wolde or not, and soo fell to the grounde, than Gouvernar toke hys horse and quyeckly lepte vp into the saddell, and in a greates preece into the preece, and gaue so myghty strokes that he made all to flee before hym, and by that tyme the erle was remounted agayne, and the thyrde tyme he came behynde Gouvernar and embraced hym wyth bothe his handes to the entent to haue lyfted hym out of hys saddell, but he coude no more remoue hym than thoughe he had lyfted at a great reure. Than Gouvernar tourned hym to the erle and toke hym by the head

## The story of Arthur

head and pulled hym downe to hys horse mane & gaue hym so many strokes that he all to brused hym, Wherwith he fell downe to the earth in such pte that he couide not reneue for all the good of the worlde than there fel on hym all the earles company, and by that tyme the earles seneschall was remounted, and so he came to Gouernar, and whā he sawe hym do such dedes of hys prowesse he prayed hym moche in his herte, and thought to tournay noo more that daye agens hym but sayd, syz knyght be ye in certayne þ as many horses as faple you this day I shill pursue you euer of an other. Than Gouernar dalyt into the prele, & rounde aboute hym he layde on their heades and bysages that he made them to blede lyke beestes, & at the last hys horse fapled him and than the earles seneschall brought to hym an other horse. And whan he was remounted he strake in as freelly among them as though he had done noo thyng of all that day before, and than he dyd so moche by hys prowesse that euery man gaue hym place & departed & left hym in the felde all alone. Thā the erle was borne into the castell in a horse lytter, for he was sore brused, & his seneschall came to Gouernar & despyed hym muche to go to the castell, but Gouernar wolde not, but sayd What shoulde I do there, I knowe not what maner of people ye be, for amonge you ye daye not to speke to ony strange knyght. Thā the seneschall wist well that he sayd that by the countesse, wherfore he blamed moche the erle in his herte, in that he had comaunded her so to do. So th in Gouernar returned to the burgyse his hoste who made him ryght great chere & feist, and the knyghtes and burgysses of the towne came thither to se hym, and sayde one to an other, beholde

here the valpant knyght. Gouernar had wonne that day, xv good horses, than he barned hym, for he was somewhat weery of his trauayle. And whā the erle was in his castell he comaunded that the gates shoulde be set open, & that euery man shoulde come in who soo euer wolde, and than he was barned and the countesse his wife came to him & demaunded howe he dyd. And he answered and sayd how that he was sore brused. A syz sayd she & who hath done that, I am right sozr therfore. Truly said he thus hath arayed me the same knyght that gaue yester day his horse to my portre to the intent to se you. Syz sayd she I byleue it well, for I thinke he was dyspleased with you because that ye forbade me that I shoulde not speake to hym, I thynke he remembred þ to daye, wherfore it is good to be wel ware to whome a man dooth a dyspleasure. Than the erle came into the hall where as all the other knyghtes were, and there they were talkyng and enquiryng eche of other what knyght had done best that day, and so they all old gawe the prayse to Gouernar. In þ name of god said the erle he hath beten me downe thre tymes this same daye, therfore I requyre you gete hym hyther to me, for I will acquyte me with hym, for I will gyue hym the one halfe of all my londes on the condycyon that he wyl abyde & dwell with me. Certaynly syz sayd his seneschall and on that condycyon I wyl gyue him perely a thousand pounce for accordyng to the trouthe he is a ryght good knyght. Than the erle comaunded his seneschall to go for hym, and so he dyd, and founde hym at his hostes hous, who made hym ryght great chere and honour. And than the seneschall said, syz the erle hertely despyeth you to come and speake with hym in the castell,

castell, and syz for goddes sake abyde a  
dwel wyth hym, and he wyll gyue you  
the one halfe of hys londys, and I wyll  
gyue you a thousande pounde yerelye, &  
kepe you true and faythfull company, &  
thus sayng they went, forch togyther  
to wards the castell, and as soone as the  
erle saw hym he rose vpon hys sete and  
so dyd all the other knyghtes, and dyd  
hym muche honoure, and the erle caused  
Gouernar to syt downe by hym. Than  
these tpynges ran anone into the coun-  
telle chambze how that the good knyght  
was com, than the ladyes had great de-  
lyte to se hym. Than howet sayde, ma-  
dame I thynk this knyght pleseth you  
ryght well, therfore let vs go se hym.  
Certaynly said the countesse with a ryght  
good wyll, so than they wente into the  
hall, than the erle & Gouernar dyd ryle  
and ryghte courtely dyd salute the la-  
dy. Tha the countesse sayd to Gouernar  
syz ye shoulde not salute me, for I haue  
done you more vylanye than euer dyd la-  
dy to any knyght without trespas. Ma-  
dame said he it is no trespasse for so hye  
a lady as ye are to take her plesure of so  
symple a knyght as I am. Than the erle  
sayde, sir ye haue this day beten me fro  
my horse, the which neuer as yet knyght  
dydde before, wherfore I owe vnto you  
a great ransom. Syz sayde Gouernar  
saunge your grace I am not of suche  
vertue nor of such valure as to do so hie  
a chyualry as ye speake of. Wel syz sayd  
the erle I knowe well how it is, but syz  
I require you be of my house, & ye shall  
be chefe commaunder therof, for I wyll  
what so euer ye comaund shall be done.  
Syz sayd Gouernar I humbly thanke  
you, howe be it I can not accomplishe  
your desyre, & the more the erle desyred  
hym, the more he sayd nay. Than the erle  
Arthur,

sayde to the countesse, madame I praye  
you desyre hym, and so she dydde ryghte  
wytely, howe be it she was not greatlye  
bound to do so muche at her husbandes  
desire, but Gouernar wylly excused him  
and sayd. Fayre lady it can not be, for I  
haue a lord already who must nedes be  
serued of me & of other far better knygh-  
tes then I am. Certaynly syz sayd the se-  
neshal yf there be moze prowesse in hym  
than is in you, he surmounteth than all  
the knyghtes of y worlde. Certaynly he  
sayd Gouernar he is able to caste such  
dys as I am into the tpuer. Cruelly sayde  
the erle, tha do ye well to serue him faith-  
fully, wherfore I wyll requyre you noo  
ferder, howe be it that forchynketh me.  
Than the countesse was ryght soze displei-  
sed because he would not abyde. Than the  
soupper was redy & water was brynghe  
forthe, and so they satte downe and were  
well serued. After souper Gouernar tooke  
the lyence of the erle & of the countesse, &  
of all other knyghtes, and than toches  
were lyghted vp, and the seneshal con-  
uayed him to his hostes house, & the erle  
comaunded that his host should take no  
thyng of hym for his dispence, than Go-  
uernar toke his leue, and the next mor-  
nyng betimes departed, & commaunded  
his hoste to god, and gaue him al the ho-  
les that he had wonne in the courney. &  
the burgeises thanked him herely & said  
In al places where as Alexander the grete  
dyd conqueire ye may go wourteoperdy  
& do as muche as euer he did. And so Go-  
uernar entred into hys way, & rode to se-  
ke his lord Arthur. How let vs leue spe-  
kyng of Gouernar, & let vs retourne to  
Arthur and to the king of ozqueny.

¶ How that after Arthur was departed  
fro Argenton to go to the castell of hure  
B. I. byle

## The story of Arthur

hysle to the wounded knight who had sent for hym, in his way at the last he found at the entryng of a fayre forest thre ladyes of right excellent beauty, of whom the chere was called Proserpin queene of the fayre who greatly desired Arthur of his loue, but in no wyse he would agre ther to, & there he lost his varlet that was his guyde, wherfore it behoued him to tarye there all that nyght, for it was darke and wyll not whither to go. Cap. lxx.

**S**o it was that when the kyng of orqueneye was depeed f. o argenton he rode straight into his own country for to make red his people to go at Barmynew ride to the turney at Cozuite, & duke Philip went to labary to apparaille his people & s. p. Reuelon, s. p. Aniean, s. p. Artaude & al the other knyghtes of kinge Emen- dus returned to the kinges court, and there recounted the hys prowesse of Ar- thur, & how he had speu at Argenton. Wh the duke of bygoys newwe, & how that p wounded knight of the castel of hurbise had sent for hym, and how that he was gone thither. Than the kyng was sorp in hys herte for he had great fere of him lest that he should neuer retorne agayne for he knew wel that many good knyghtes were perished there. And in especyall florence was tyght sorowful, for there was none p could recorde her. And Ar- thur euer rode forth after the squier, & so rode. lll. dayes together wout finding of any aduenture, and the. iiii. day he rode tyl it was none, and than they arpued at a knyghtes place who was vncle to the squier that was Arthurs guyde, & there they were wel receyued, and so sat down to dyner & were wel serued. And whan they hadde dined than they mounted on

theyr hortes agayn, & so rode forth tyl it was night, & than they entered into a ly tel narrow way betwene a fayre forest & a grene medow, and so they rode forth Wel p space of halfe a mile, and p mone began to shine fayre & bright, and at the last they came to a way p they must needs entre into the thich of the forest, and at last Arthur espyed vnder a fayre oke a delectable place, wher as he saw. iiii. ladyes maruelously white and of grete beauty, but she p was in p myodes was iouernine most fayre, for she al only had more beauty than borthe the other. ii. and yet they were as fayre as could be deup- sev. And whan Arthur had espyed them, he set his feet to p earth & lighted fro his horte, & she that was in the middes rose whan the other two were vp, & there Ar- thur saluted the right curteisly, and they him agayn, and the squier that brought Arthur thither, took one of the ladies in counsaile, and wha they had talked togy ther a good space they went into p thich of the wood, they. ii. togethet alone, and were not sene again of al the night, and the other that was in middes had i o name Proserpin, & she toke Arthur and ser hym do wne by her and helde him by the hand, & beheld hym sayntully in the vy- sage & sayd. s. p. ye be tyghte hertely wel- come. And he ans wered & sayd, madame I pray god kepe you fro all yll. s. p. sayd Proserpyne I haue greate desyre to se & speke with you, if ye be he that hath con- quered the batayle agens the duke of by goys newwe. Madame as god help me sayd Arthur I woulde full sayne p there were such valure in me as that I might achewe suche a dede. Well sayde Proser- pyne, I knowe tyght wel he w it is, and also of other of pour dedes, & s. p. ye be in certayne that tyght grete renoune re- ney

meth on you do w<sup>ch</sup>at ye be free, & were,  
saye, & gracious, & to be a good knyght  
aboute all other, & as for beauty I se wel  
how it is. Well madame sayd Arthur I  
praye god amende in me that lacketh of  
that ye speake of. That is wel said quod  
the lady than she layd her hand on his hed  
& demaunded of him what was his name.  
Madame quod he I am called Arthur.  
Arthur sayd she, now and by the faith y<sup>e</sup>  
ye owe to her that ye loue best, & to saynt  
George haue ye any lover yet, I am sure  
my demaunde is but a folly. To saye  
a knyght, so ponge, and so baltant in ar-  
mes as ye can not be w<sup>th</sup>oute a lover,  
wherefore I am in certayne ye haue one  
but I pray you shew me what he is by  
the faith y<sup>e</sup> ye owe vnto her, & I promise  
you neuer to accuse you, & therewith she  
beheld hym and smyled a lytel & said, I  
pray you speke and shew me y<sup>e</sup> playnes  
by the troth that ye owe to father & mo-  
ther y<sup>e</sup> ye haue any alyue. Madam said  
Arthur, ye coure me right soze, therfore  
as god help me I shal we w<sup>th</sup> you y<sup>e</sup> troth  
Madam it is so I can not tell whether y<sup>e</sup>  
I haue a lover or not, but of one thyng  
be ye sure I am a lover, for I loue w<sup>th</sup> all  
myne enyphert. And what is he quod  
the lady I pray you by the faith y<sup>e</sup> ye owe  
vnto her. As god help me said he I can not  
tell you, for I neuer sawe the person y<sup>e</sup> I  
loue. What said the lady that ye loue and  
wor not who, who hath he set you on this  
folp, wherefor loue ye thus. Madam quod  
he I loue becaus of the gret goodnes &  
valure y<sup>e</sup> is in her, for she is a swete gra-  
cious & a gentyl lady of hert. why sit kni-  
ght hold know ye y<sup>e</sup>. Madam it hath be-  
lyched me y<sup>e</sup> she is of suche condycions.  
Wel quod the lady, what & there haue be  
shewed you moze than troth in y<sup>e</sup> behalfe,  
who than shal do you right, I demaund  
Arthur,

of you thinke you shal that is said of me  
and other to be of t<sup>e</sup> t<sup>e</sup>. Certainli madam  
nap some liit parauentur at sometime to  
speke moze than they know. Well frende  
Arthur of she tha<sup>n</sup> ye be but a folp, by my  
counsail leue suche folp, & lese no leigie  
your time w<sup>th</sup>out reason, ye be now in your  
youth, & in your beuti, wherefore ye sh<sup>o</sup>ld  
haue daily your loue in your armes, and  
lete a louers life in myrth and in solace  
and whā it is time to stryke for her sake  
both w<sup>th</sup> p<sup>e</sup>res and w<sup>th</sup> words, & cast downe  
these knyghtes to the erth by. ii. at ones;  
and leue seruing thus of the muse or els  
ye shal be called no moze Arthur, but ye  
shal be called y<sup>e</sup> knyght that miserth, ther-  
fore leue this loue, but behold here and se  
in your copany if there be any thing that  
pleseth you, chose which ye will, the squi-  
er that brought you hither miserth not,  
for he is w<sup>th</sup> his loue, and hath her al this  
night in his armes behold here the copan-  
ny of me who is right saye and ponge,  
gentyl and puissant, holding in my hand  
grete heritage, and I am tougher to a  
king, and both my father & mother dead  
and now I am entered into my londe to  
kepe my reime which is gret and noble  
I am also right ponge about the age of  
xvi. yeres, & would loue right wel some  
gentyl knyght that wold heip me to kepe  
my londe and reime, and to counsaile me  
for my wel in al my busines suche one  
wold I loue and kepe encrely. Arthur I  
neede not to be dectrued by your loue los-  
yng of the muse & take me here in dede.  
And whan Arthur herde her, he beheld  
her wel, and w<sup>th</sup> a gret perfound sygh  
sayd. A dere lady as god helpe me my  
heart is set on her that I shewed you of  
w<sup>th</sup> al a y faithful loue and thought  
in suche wyse that I am not maister of  
my selfe, nor my herte is not myne own  
B. ii. for

## The story of Arthur

fo: it hath forsaken me fo: this sayd lady  
 so þ I am no thing lord of min owne hert  
 nor w all the power þ I haue I cannot  
 withdrau it fro her, fo: I thinke verily  
 þ she hath put my hert into her hert ther  
 fore I haue good hope þ thei shalbe good  
 rompanyons and faythfull togyther se-  
 yng. þ it wyl not come agayne to me a lo-  
 ue his were companyd, therfore saye la-  
 dy blame me not though ye loue me that  
 I do not accōply she youre desyre, for as  
 god helpe me I can not, for my heartie is  
 not mine owne, therfore madame blame  
 me not for my herte hath forsake me for  
 an other, but as I be saued ye be ful gentil  
 and noble, a ryght happy shal he be that  
 shal attayne to your graue, for your beau-  
 re is such þ eury person þ seeth you wyl  
 put to theyr payne to seke the wayes to at-  
 taine to your dehyt loue, for by the fayth þ  
 I owe to my lord & father I had rather  
 haue your loue of it myght be than to be  
 kyng of all fraunce, but by my soule ma-  
 dame ye may behold here my body wout  
 hert, wyne wythout sauour, a fayre body  
 wout loue auapieth nothyng. Wel frende  
 Arthur q Prosperyn many there be that  
 fyndeth fautes & wyl like fo: no remedy  
 you lay the blame on your hert, suche fol-  
 kes as wyl not do as they be requyred ca-  
 fynde fautes ynough to fynde occasion of  
 excuses, ye haue long mused, & yet ye pur-  
 pose to muse leger, hardely loue ynough  
 & loue there þ youre dreame & fantasie she-  
 werth you, & therby ye shal haue very mo-  
 che Joy by lykelyhode, for your musyng  
 wyl do you moche honour, by the fayth  
 that I owe to you I loue my louer fayth-  
 fully, & I saye it by poe, beholde here Ar-  
 thur who dreameth & museth, beholde here  
 the shadowe wythout the sonne lyght, be-  
 holde here the body wythout hert, this is  
 he that loueth & woteh not w ho, therfore

he is fetterd of none, therfore frende Ar-  
 thur take to you the best colleyse þ ye ca-  
 & god be with you. Than she rose fro hym  
 and departed into the woode & her com-  
 pany wyl her. Tha Arthur abode ther  
 alone but wyth Bawdewyn hys squer,  
 for the squer þ brought him thither was  
 departed, therfore he wiste not whethet to  
 goo. Than Bawdewyn sayd, sy as god  
 helpe me ye oust to be blamed. And why  
 so good frende said Arthur. For by cause  
 this gentill noble queene that was ryght  
 now to you who is so fayre so swete & so  
 gracious and she wolde sayne haue had  
 your company & loue, & thus ye to let her  
 depart and wold not embrace & kysse swe-  
 tely her pleasaunt lytle mouth, wherfore  
 in my mynde ye are greatly to be blamed  
 for as helpe me god I wolde not haue do-  
 ne soo though I had lost my head in the  
 payne. A good frende sayd Arthur, and  
 what there tha shulde the swete florence  
 haue, and what liult & she set by me yf I  
 shulde do as muche to another as I shul-  
 de do to her yf it pleased her, what wold  
 ye haue me to make of my mouth a trap-  
 ne for eury body, yf she kepe her mouth  
 close for the loue of me, and I than to ha-  
 bandon me to all the worlde, what ho-  
 noure than were it to me to be conyn to  
 al the worlde, what shulde it than be sayd  
 on me, he is but a rybaude. Wel sy sayde  
 Bawdewyn, for all that I coulde not ha-  
 ue done so. Thus they mounted on theyr  
 horses and entered into the woode, & rode  
 they wyl not whither so longe tyl at the  
 last they losse theyr waye, that they rode  
 they wyl not whither, & at conclusiō  
 they came asayne to the same oke from  
 whens as they went before, and there  
 they tarped all that nyght & laye on the  
 colde earth in the thicke busshes, and tyed  
 theyr horses to a tree.

Who Arthur conquered the castel of  
burysse the moost stronge place of the  
worlde next to the poier norre, where as  
was the damoysel by whom the wounded  
knight was hurt, and there Arthur oyd  
so much by hys prowesse that the sayd  
knyght recovered helth. Cap. lxx.

**A** morning betimes Arthur  
a Sallowin rose a shoke the  
cates to put a waye the fetheres  
so their hysse a so mounted on  
horses and found a yere way the which  
broughte the clene out of the forest. Then  
Arthur was upght soe displeied in his  
mynde because he had lost the squier  
was his guide in y manner, for he knew  
not where to fynd hym the hurt knight,  
a so they rode forth so long tyl they entered  
into a fayre meadow, and than they saw  
on a saye hys hounde stande a good  
ly castell y whych was closed wryth dou-  
ble walles and gates, a at the tyll gate  
there was one that watched the passage  
for all comers, and as soone as he sawe  
Arthur, he toke a horne and blew therin  
so fierly that al the valley longe therew  
and therewith there yllued out of y castel  
a knyght all armed and well mounted,  
a he made toke to Arthur that he should  
beware of hym. Than Arthur toke his  
shilde and furnished with his spere and  
met so rudely together that the knyghte  
broke his spere, and Arthur strake hym so  
that his spere went through our his bo-  
dy more than a fore, and so pulled out his  
spere againe and dyed hym self agens  
an other knyght that came rudely at hym  
and he strake Arthur in such a wyse that  
his spere broke in the myddes, but Ar-  
thur strake hym so fiercely that he over-  
threw both hors a man to the erth stark  
dead. Than there yllued out of the castel

Arthur.

a. knyghtes, and they all ran on Arthur  
at ones, and Arthur shoke his sword  
and strake to the first that he cloue hys  
head cleve asunder, and the other dyd  
hys hys horse under hym, but than he let  
his hand on the hors of him that he had  
slayne before and so lepte into the saddle,  
and the first that he encountered looke hys  
head. And when the other sawe that they  
flew away as fast as they myght, and Ar-  
thur folowed them, and in hys pursue  
he slew two of them, a as the yere wold  
have entered in at the castel gate, Arthur  
strake of hys head cleve fro the holdres  
Than he entered into the castel, and there  
he sawe before him an other strong wall  
and it was so hye that it was meynayn  
and it was surmounted al aboute wryth  
grete deepe water that yllued out of  
londre fountaynes, and as he behelde  
howe that he might entre into the place  
there came to hym the same squier that  
chaused hym to come to Agence, and he  
oyd salute hym. And when Arthur sawe  
hym he knewe hym ryghte well and de-  
manded of hym the cause why that he  
left hym in the forest. As god help me sir  
my lady led me to ych and I durst not dis-  
pyle her. Wel sayde Arthur, and where  
is the knyght that ye say hath sent for me  
Syr quod the squier he is in a chambe-  
re in this castel, where as I thinke he shal  
never be to moze we hys tyme, for sye ye  
say to hym over longe wrych is geat  
spene. And sayd Arthur I praye you  
bring me wher as he is y I might speke  
w hym. Than the squier broughte hym  
to the knyght and Arthur did salute him  
And the knyght righte piteously and wryth  
a soft voise said, sir ye be hartely welcom  
Syr sayde Arthur ye have sente for me,  
beholde nowe here I am, therfore  
shewe me your wyll. Than the knyghte

35. 116.

## The story of Arthur

enforced hym selfe to speke & sayd, sy: for  
goddess sake be ye not dyspleased though  
ye be come hither for my sake, for sy: the  
leke creature seeketh euer for helth & to p  
entet that ye shalbe in certain of my seke  
nes yf ye be not dyspleased I shal lye we  
pon all my grete. Than the knyght bnar  
med hym selfe & layde his body all naked  
Thā Arthur saue on his backe. v. grete  
woundes made w a knyfe p Was enuemy  
med, & thei begā at his sholdres and endu  
sed downe to his thyghes, & the woundes  
were soze rābled & of such largenes that  
he myght wel haue layde in euery woude  
all his arme. And whā Arthur saue that  
hys herte trembled for pyte & demaunded  
who had gouē hā n tho strokes. Certayn  
ly sy: sayd the knyght I shal lye we pou  
it is of a trouhe I loued ryghte heretelpe a  
sayre damoyzell who is ryght noble and  
gentyl, and lye me in lyke case, & whan I  
might I dyde rēfōrte vnto her, and she is  
in a chambze aboue in this castel, & at the  
last thys loue that was bytwene vs was  
known by her frendes, wherwyth they  
were ryght soze dyspleased & so laye in a  
wayte on me at a season p I Was w her,  
and as I wolde haue departed they roke  
me & haue arayed me as ye se w enuemy  
med knyues so that I can haue no helth &  
the damoyzell is fast kepte in pryson in a  
chambze here aboue to thentent that she  
shoulde not come to me to gyue me health  
for she can do me moze good than all the  
creatures of the worlde, and yf I myght  
haue ony creature that myght fynde the  
meanes to speke with her she wolde sende  
me suche opyntementes that shoulde make  
me bothe hole & sounde. And sy: the. vii.  
knyghtes that ye haue delpyered me of  
dyd kepe the gates to the entent that no  
surgyen shoulde come hither to hele me,  
sy: I haue ben four yere in this soze tour

ment that ye se me in, and there is nōn in  
all this place that wolde bringe me: suche  
thynges as my ladye & loue wolde sende  
me, & they wyl suffrenone to speke with  
her fro me, & therfore I muste nedes dye  
Well sy: sayd Arthur & how shoulde onys  
body entre into the castel syth the gates  
be wyttē. Sy: sayd the knyght there is  
none that can entre at the gates for they  
be ouer stronge, but sy: in the castel dyche  
there is a lytle wypppe by the wyche the  
knyghtes that ye haue slayne were wot to  
entre into the castel, & by the wypppe ther  
is a lytle false gate, wherby ye may entte  
into the castell yf it please pou, and so ye  
may bring fro my ladye the opyntēt that  
shall helpe me. Sy: sayd Arthur I shal  
do my power, & thā he sayde to the squyer  
frende bring me to the wypp and I wyll  
entre into the castell. Than the squyer  
brought hym to the wypp, and Arthur en  
tered into it, and thā the wypp went forth  
wythout ony maner of touchyng, & Ar  
thur was not gone ferre from the banke  
but there came flyenge aboute hym moo  
than. iii. ad. quarelles spotte out of crof  
bowes, and Arthur sate in the wypp and  
couered hym with hys whyte shelde, and  
the quarelles dyd lyght as thycke theron  
as thoughe it had rained, in suche wyse  
that all the wypppe was rased wth quat  
elles, and in this maner he approached to  
the posterne, & whan he came to the entre  
he founde wyckynge rounde aboute the  
gate great longe sharpe speres wherdes  
of fyne stele, than he toke hys good swer  
de in hys hande and layde on thes speres  
as faste as he coude, and so dyd cut them  
clene asonder in the myddes, and there he  
dyd soo muche that by cleane foze he en  
tered in at the posterne, and whan he was  
wythin there rose suche a wynde that Ar  
thur had muche payne to holde hym on  
his

his feet, and than they fell so greatch  
boundaunce of raine that he stode to the  
myddle legge in water, the wyche water  
canne so faste that he was fayne to stape  
hym by his speere, for what for the mynd  
and swiftenes of the water, he had mo-  
che payne to stonde vppynge, and at the  
last and with greet traual he dyd so mo-  
che that he pased out of the strapines of  
the postur, and than he herde a thyng  
make a great noise in the castell, a thet  
there came on hym at ones mo than. v.  
hundred persones ready to fight agaynst  
hym, and so they assailed hym euey on  
al pates, and they did cast at him stones  
stones, darters and staves right greet ple-  
ty, & he gaue agayne right greet strokes  
& cruellhed do wne all that eue he attay-  
ned vnto, howe be it þe pates was so greet  
that they caused hym to knele down on  
hys knees, & there quickly he stode vp  
agayne & dalyt in among them, and was  
right soze chased, & his strenght than be-  
gan to encrease, & the moze he had to do  
the moze grew his strenght, & so he cut  
alonder all that eue he attayned vnto,  
and so by cleue force he drew hys backe  
backe to a wall & there rested hym. Than  
his enemies ran to crosbowes & to spee-  
res, and so charged hym with many greet  
strokes. And whan he felte hymselfe so  
soze oppressed he was soze chased therby  
and so habandoned hym selfe among the  
& gaue greet strokes, for whom so eue  
he touched, he claue hym to the myddle,  
and than they began to fye before hym,  
and he folowed them, but he was right  
soze wety, for they behynd hym dyd hym  
much payne and traual, in this case  
thus fighyng he was to the of yelock  
epl it was none, and thet tyme he was  
dyren downe on hys knees, and yet for  
al that eue he rose agayne in the spyt of

them all. And as he was thus fighyng  
at the last he herde the lowe of a greet  
hozne about in the castel, and as sone as  
all the that fought agaynst Arthur herd  
the blaske of the hozne, they all sobainly  
departed without any word speakyng,  
& so there remayned but al only Arthur  
whereof he had greet myrraile, than Ar-  
thur dycted hym to ward the castel, and  
entered into it, and so at last he entered in  
to the saye halle, & there found neyther  
man nor woman, and than he scatched all  
about the place, but he coulde fynde no  
creature. At the last he entered into a cha-  
mber chaumbr, and there he saw the  
most saye and ryche best that eue was  
sene, and it was al ready made to lie down  
therin, than he appoched the scound late  
downe on the spote therof, and his sword  
in his hande, and than he herd well mo-  
che people coming and goyng in þe same  
chaumbr, and herd doores and windows  
open and shette but he coulde sene nothing  
whereof he had greet myrraile. And  
whan he had sytten a good spate on the  
bedde and well rested hym, at the last he  
saw where there came into the chaumbr  
a great company of ladies and damoysels  
and knyghtes and squyers, and in þe myd-  
des amonge them he saw where there  
was a yonge saye quene crowned with  
golde in a spycor of cymynes, and a man-  
cel of byolet sylke, and she was of right  
greet beauty, and foure knyghtes ichde  
her and she was enuyroned all about  
with other saye ladyes. And as sone as  
he sawe her he knewe well that she was  
Proletypa the quene whom þe found  
in the forest the nyghte before, and than  
he rose vpon his feet than þe quene came  
runnyng soe hym and embraced hym  
about the necke and sayde. Wyte are  
ryghte hertely welcome into my house.

## The story of Arthur

Fayre lady & Arthur I pray to god giue  
you bothe helthe and moche Joy. Arthur  
saide the quene now are ye past al Jeopardy  
dies, for now that ye be in my company ye be  
in a surete, therfore put of your harners  
for ye shall be in as good surete as myne  
owne propre body. Madame & Arthur I  
thake you, how be it I haue not as yet  
cheued that thinge as I came hither for,  
for here is byneth in this castell a seke  
knight who hath seke me hither to a damoy  
sel that shulde giue hym helthe, & I haue  
promysed to bringe him that she wolde de  
liuer me for his helth, therfore madame  
I requyre you yf she be here in your com  
pany cause me to speke wher yf it please  
you, & therby I shall accorde wth the my co  
uenaunt to the knight. Frede & the lady be  
ye nomore dismayed of the knight, for I  
promyse you he shall haue helth for your sa  
ke, & that right shortly. Than the quene  
called to her a lady, who was called Ar  
gene, and thā she said to Arthur, sy be  
holde here & same lady & the knight was  
hurt for & it is she that can giue hi helth  
therfore Argene I wil that ye go to your  
knight, & thynke on his helth as a loue  
ought to do to another. Madame & Ar  
gene wā right good wyll, & as to you sir  
knight I thake you a hōdyed. At tymes  
sythe that I haue leue to go to my loue  
for your sake, & sy ye haue wōne thre by  
of hym to be to you a true and a faythfull  
knight, and of me ye shall haue a true ser  
uaunt, therwith she departed, and Proser  
pine commaunded & Arthur shoulde be bna  
med, than there ran aboute Arthur kny  
ghtes & ladies, and one toke awaye hys  
shilde, an other hys swerde, an other hys  
helme, and so ech of them sayde to they  
hārs to helpe hym, and wā he was vn  
armed he stode in his doublet, & thā the la  
dies brought him warme water to washe

his necke & his bysage & haddes, and thā  
the fayre ladies dōd wype hys bysage w  
fayre Whyte kercheffes. Than Bawde  
wyn came & brought hym his gowne to  
put on but & quene wold not suffer & for  
she made hym to put on a grene kirtell &  
a spycote of scarlet than the quene toke  
her owne mantel fro her necke the which  
was of purple sūke & put it on Arthur,  
thā he was so fayre and gentill that one  
coude not be satisfyed wth beholdinge  
of hym, for all the ladies than sayd how  
that the knight was a gracious persone  
grete ioy shoulde & lady haue that might  
haue such a loue as he was. Than the  
quene toke hym by the hande the whiche  
was a ryght goodly syght to beholde, for  
they were bothe fayre & yonge, and thus  
hāde in hand they wente throughout the  
chambre, talkyng of many thynges, and  
whan they hadde thus talked togyther a  
great space the quene commaunded euerye  
body to departe, & to leaue them alone to  
gyther, & so they dōd. And than the quene  
toke hym by the hande and sayd, Arthur  
let vs goo syt downe on poudre beddes  
sloe, and so they dōd, & by that tyme the  
chambre was cleane auoyded leauing all  
only of Bawden in who sayd vnto his  
mayster, sy I thynke it best & I go & see  
your harnes & amēd it, for it is all brui  
sed, & it is harde to tell wher ye shall  
haue any thyng to do shortly or not. And  
whan Arthur heard him he wist ful wel  
what he ment and therfore he smyled, &  
so Bawdewyn departed. Clā the quene  
sayd to Arthur, min chere swete & true  
loue I am now wel pacified in my hert  
now & I haue you in my house as of him  
in all the wo:ld that I moost desyre to  
se & speake withall & therwith she layde  
one of her armes aboute her necke, and  
wyth the other hande she dōd stryke  
downe

down his here a said, Arthur ye be come  
 to þe place where as ye be much loured in  
 a faithful hert wherfoze ye shal be lord &  
 gouernour of al þe lond þe I haue in go-  
 uernance wherfoze I wil make you my  
 knyght & souerain louer by þe way of ma-  
 riage, & first I present my seife to you &  
 al the power þe I am lady ouer, and I en-  
 sure there was neuer man as yet there as  
 you be now, wherfoze refuse not the hono-  
 r & profite that I offre you thā she toke a  
 spryng fro her finger and said, by this gift  
 I put you in ful possession of me and al  
 mine, wherfoze gentyl knyghte I requyre  
 you receiue it. And whan Arthur herbe  
 her thus speke and saw the ring, thā he  
 beheld wel the lady & saw the gentilnes  
 and fattenes þe was in her, and seite her  
 swete bysch & saw her smyling counte-  
 nance, at the last his hert came to hym &  
 remembred florence, the he coulde not kepe  
 hym fro weping, and cast out many a p-  
 sound and depe sigh, and beheld wel þe o-  
 serpin and said, a gentyl and noble lady  
 your amorous wordes perserch my herte  
 so þe I seie my self at the greet mistchief  
 that euer oþd any creature toz if I were  
 þe most hie and noble king that euer was  
 lyth Alexander the greet, and if I had ler-  
 ned in loue al the cases of my life and at  
 the ende might attaine to that case that I  
 am in now, I shold wel think my payne  
 & labour right wel employed and helyp  
 rewarded, for if al the kinges of þe world  
 were al in one person & al thez goodes  
 and honours and al parties there of were  
 gathered together into one person, & if it  
 pleased you to take him to your seruice he  
 shold wel think him self right hilly and  
 betely gouerned but madaine I am but  
 a simple person to be compared to your  
 hie estate, wherfoze ye shold abate gretly  
 your renoung yf ye shold take such a

straunge knight as I am, wherfoze ye  
 shold be blamed muche of your people,  
 wherfoze madam for goddes sake aduise  
 you better, & let this passe ouer, and take  
 such a noble person as is mete for your e-  
 state and hono-  
 r. Syz qd the lady I quite  
 al the world for you, for I wil non other  
 but al ouerly you, wherfoze receiue me for  
 I wot it shal be so and none other wyse,  
 and if ye wil defend your opinion by her  
 that ye told me of this last night in the  
 forst, ye can not do so by realo, for ye ne-  
 uer saw her, noz she you, noz neuer spake  
 wher, thē wherfoze there is no couenaunte  
 made betwene you & her but that lawfully  
 ye may leue her and pelysh, thei foze ye  
 can not excuse you to do this my deilyze.  
 Wout it be for so hardwile that ye haue to  
 enterpryse the gouernance of a realme  
 And whan Arthur had wel vnderstand  
 her, he answered and said, madā as god  
 helpe me I tolde you the trouth as it is,  
 and I shold be glad to do that thing that  
 shold please you, how be it of one thyng  
 be ye in certayn that I haue set my herte  
 there as I haue shewed you, so that I  
 can neuer call it agayne, ye may behold  
 here my body, take it & it please you, but  
 my hert remaineth in an other place wher  
 her who hath it in keepyng. Than there  
 was a lady came to the queene & shewed  
 her that her dyner was redy. And then  
 she sayde, syz knyghte thynk wel in this  
 matter, I geue you respyce yll to mor-  
 rowe, and so she toke Arthur by the hand  
 and led hym into the hall, & there he saw  
 so manye bordes couered, and so grete  
 plenty of ladies and damoselles & knygh-  
 tes and squyers, that he had grete mar-  
 uail to behold the noblenes that he saw  
 there. Than the queene sayd alowd thas  
 euery body myght here her, syz lordes &  
 ladies beheld this knyghte who shal be

## The story of Arthur

lord & capitayne of al my seignory. And whā they herd that they cryed all w one voice he is welcom god kepe him, blessed be the house þeuer he came hit her, & they all beheld hym maruailously, & praysed moche his fresche beaute & goodly bemesnour. Than there began grette feest & Joy with moche honourable tryumphe, & so were set to dynet & serued ryghte honourably, & after dynet they spoynted them a longe season, & at last the queene called to her two of her ladyes the fayrest of all the company & cōmaūded them þ they shuld lede Arthur a playenge & that they shuld shewe to him suche chere to cause hym to loue one of them yf they coude byrynge it about. And they answered they wold do the best þ laye in theyr power, so they al ledde forth Arthur in to fayre chambres & gardyns of pleasure, & they dyd as moche to drawe hym to loue one of them, as euer dyd woman to drawe onye man to loue, for ther delynge w him was suche that it wolde haue l e hator for any other creature to haue wstand theyr occasyōs for yf a woman be mynded to cast for he her hokes & lynes to take on yman the w it is very harde to scape out of theyr dānger. for in suche a dede a woman is more subtyll than the deuill. for he causeth a woman of suche typosycyon to do that thynge þ he can not do hym selfe, in lyke wyse this queene cōmaūded these ladyes to do þ she coulde not do her selfe, but Arthur for al theyr pleasā t occasyōns wolde neuer bende for all þ they dyd or sayd was very morous to hym for alwaye he had in hys herte the remembraūce of the fayre florence, & so in this case he was bytwene them tyl it was tyme to go to rest. Than he was conuayed to hys chambre wth. xl. knyghtes, & a great multitude of toyches agens hys compnyng, the queene

also was redy in hys chambre, & than w in a lytle whyle after the spyes & wyne had barenen & dronken, than the queene & al other toke the lye of Arthur & departed out of his chambre, & than he went to his bed, & there was byrnyng al nyght before hys beddes fere. iii. mores of an ar. And whā euery bodye was a bedde there came to Arthurs bed syde a fayre damoy fell sent to hym fro the queene, & she was in a syrcote of crymnes, & ouer þ a ryche mantell of sylke, & so she lened doune on the bed to Arthur, and with her hād stryked doune his head ryght sweetely, & there she made him suche lowly cōtēnaūce þ he myghte perceyue well how she wolde haue had hym to haue taken her into his bed. And at laste Arthur sayde, fayre lady I am in fere lest ye wyl take colde with your taryenge soo longe here, therfore eyther come to bedde to me or elles go your way hens. Sit q the I wyl ly wth you wth great Joye, but first ye shal assure me to take me for your loue, and neuer to haue other. A fayre lady q he þ can I noe do, for I loue an other, and so thā shuld I be false of my p̄cmyse. Well sy, sayd she than I wyl go my way. Ye say wel quod Arthur I praye god sende you good aduenture, & so therewith she departed, & Arthur slept as longe as it pleased him til it was fayre daye in the moynynge. Than Baldeuyn opened the wyndowes, for Arthur wolde aryse. Than the queene entered in to his chābre. and Arthur sat in his bedde doynge on of his doublet. And as soone as Baldeuyn sawe the queene he sayd vnto Arthur, sy behold who cometh hit her to you, by myne aduise sette not her escape at this tyme. Thā the queene sat doune by Arthur on the beddes syde. And sh; hadde Baldeuyn go play him for a sease. Baldeuyn q he w a ryght good

godd wyl, I shall not longe onoy you be  
re. Tha the quene demaunded of Arthur  
how he had taken his rest that nyght. &  
hadde hym as than good mo:owe. And  
Arthur answered & sayd, madame god p  
all thynge hath fornyed sende you his de-  
loue. frende sayd she I gaue you yester  
daye respyte tyll thys day, therfore as ye  
be now aupted eyther to take or refuse p  
I haue offred you, shewe me now your  
mynde in p behalfe whortly. Madam said  
he I can shewe no more nor geue you no  
more than I haue done, ye may take my  
bodye the which is here present, but as for  
my heart I can not take it awaye from  
whence as it is, I haue enforced my selfe  
to haue it agayne but p more I thinke on  
her p hath it the faster she holdeth it, ther-  
fore madame I can do no more as helpe  
me god ye haue here my bodye about the  
herte. Tha the quene behelde Arthur wel  
& embraced hym about the necke. & al  
lynge sayd, well good frende Arthur fro  
hens forth now be ye in peas, for truly I  
haue ryght well assayed your trouthe, but  
now I se well your stedfastte fapthfulnes  
for ye be true to your loue, for I se by it ye  
loue her fapthfully, & certaynly ye haue  
good cause so to doo, for in lyke wyse she  
loueth you, for she hath refused the em-  
perour of yndes loue for your sake, for her  
hert is on no creature of the world but al-  
onely on you: & I am she p anon after her  
natyuite dyde deskeny her to you whan  
she was brought vp to vs into the most  
perpious, & as for the other. ii. ladyes p  
were th you yester day the whiche so sore  
dyd tempte you to haue wonne your loue  
the whyche they orde but onely to assaye  
you, one of them deskenyed p the ymage  
in the pauplyon who holdeth the chaplet  
shuld neuer geue it but to you, & so ye to  
haue both the lady & the chaplet, & p other

lady deskenyed p ye shuld haue the white  
shelde & the good swerde enchanted the  
whish ye be in possession of, & the thyrde  
that came to your bed last she deskenyed  
that p any other persone wolde presume  
to take the sayre florence p she shuld die  
an yll death, & I haue caused you to come  
into this countre, for I made you to haue  
the visib of the egge of gold p ye thought  
ye sawe in your slepe, & there ye sawe a  
dragon the whyche wolde haue taken her  
fro you, the dragon is synnyfyed by the  
Emperour of ynde, for as muche as he  
may he wyl let you to haue her, how be it  
she shall be yours at length, but sythe ye  
shal suffre muche payne & trouble, but I  
shal shewe you what ye shall doo, kepe  
well the loue of the kynge of orquney &  
of the archebysshop of Coynpte, for they  
shal be to you both true & stedfastte, & spe-  
cially aboue all other loue well mapster  
steuen, for by hys meanes ye shal haue  
her after your warre be doone. & in your  
warre I shal helpe you with. xl. M. hato-  
berres, it is I that sent for you in the na-  
me of the hurte knyght p ye shoulde come  
to hym to chentent that I myght assaye  
you, & to knowe of what fapthfulnes ye  
were of, but now florence maye be in a  
surete p she is beloued of the best knyght  
of the world, and of the most sayre and  
stedfastte knyght p now lyueth, therfore  
nowe sye knyght aryse, for it is hys tyme  
Tha the quene departed & Arthur appa-  
rayled him & went into the hall wher as  
he found the sayd quene nobly accompanied  
& all they rose ayenst Arthur, & he ryght  
sweetly dyd salute them, than the quene  
caused hym to lye downe by her & he said  
Madame & it lyke your grace it is nowe  
hys tyme that I take forth my Journey  
& go thither as I am in mynde to do. Cer-  
taynly s. r. said the quene I am ryght wel  
content

## The story of Arthur

content þe þe so do, but first þe shal dyne. So than Arthur dynded there to the queene, & after dyner he toke hys leaue of the queene & of all the courte, & there was moche sorow when he departed, for all the court had trusted þe he should haue bene theiꝝ lord. Than Arthur moued on his horse & so departed out of the castel, & so came to the hurt knight and demaunded of him how he dyd, and whether þe he had well quytte his couenauntes oꝛ not. So as god helpe me q the knyght I do right wel, & ye haue right truly & nobly quytte you to me, therfore the lord þe all thynge fourmed rewarde you, & truly I am and shal be your owne knyght. And so Arthur commaunded hym to god, and the lady also that was hys loue, & so rode forth his waye towarde Cozmye.

How that Arthur when he was departed fro the queene proserpane it fortuneth hym to take hys lodgyng in the newew of syꝝ Isembarte, who toke Arthur and locked hym fast in a toure to thentent to haue slayne hym by myght, but there Arthur dyd so valyauntly that he brake out of the toure and slewe the knyghte and all his people. Capitulo. lxxi.

**S**o it was that when Arthur was departed fro Proserpene he rode so longe tyll at the laste he entred in to the londe of the duke of bygoꝝs newewe and so by aduenture he toke hys lodgyng woth a knyghte who was newewe to syꝝ Isembarte, and he receyued Arthur woth grete Joye, than he was vnarmed, and when he was redye wente into the hall where as this knyght was. Thā the knyght demaunded of Arthur what was hys name. And he þe doubreth nothynge an-

swered & sayd, syꝝ I am called Arthur, & my squer is named Bawdewyn. Than the knyght knewe wel þe it was he þe had slayne his vncle syꝝ Isembarte, wherfoꝝ his hert rose soꝛe ayenst hym, but he made no semblaunt therof, for he knewe well that Arthur was a knyght ryght soꝛe to be redoubred, for he wyte well he was not able to resyst ayenst him, therfore he thought to slee hym in hys bedde a slepe, and in the meane tyme to close hym fast in a toure, & than to send for the duke of Bygoꝝ and al his company, & there to sle hym by nyght tyme. And than he made saye semblaunt to Arthur & sayde, syꝝ I am boude to loue you well bycause ye haue slayne syꝝ Isembart, for of all men lyuynge I hated hym moost, for he dydde me manye dyspleasures, & thus to saye wordes he dyane of the season to Arthur tyll it was souper tyme, and than he was ryghte well serued, and after souper they sported them tyll it was tyme to goo to theyꝝ restes. Than the knyght caused Arthurs bedde to be made in a stronge tour but it was so well hanged woth clothes of sylke and arres that Arthur could not perceyue the walles nor strengthe therof. And when Arthur and Bawdewyn were entred into the toure incontynent the knyght dyd shytte fast the dooze, whych was all of yꝛen and did barre it fast woth foure greate barte & escheped on Arthur and sayd, syꝝ make as mery as ye can for oꝛ ye depart out of your chambꝛe ye shal lese your head, for ye maye saye ye be vnhappy to come hither to your moꝛtall enemy. And whā Arthur herde þe he was in his herte right soꝛe dyspleased, & so ran to the dooze thynkinge to haue opned it but he coude not: for it was barred thout woth foure great bartes of stele. Thā the knyght armed him and al his cōpany, so that

that they were well to the nobye of. xiiii. persons, and themooone wone saye and bygyte in at a lytle wyndowe behynde one of the tappetts. Than Baldewyn tare downe the hangynges, & than they myghte se closely all aboute them, for the light of the moue came in at the window where as the prisoners were wont to be serued. Than Arthur armed hym & toke his swordes in his hand & beheld well the wyndowe the whyche was very stronge barred wyth yren, and by aduenture he founde in the chaire a grete leuer of yren and soo he toke it in bothe hys handes as he that was ryght sore displeased and dyd lyft vp the leuer as lightly as though it had ben but a sticke, & layd at the barres of yren with suche strength that he all to braste the barres & stones and made suche an hole that an ore myght well haue pssued out therat. Than the knyght and hys company wythout wohan they sawe that they dydde caste at hym ryght rudely dardres and quarreiles shot out of the crof bowes. Tha Arthur toke his white shelde and went to the wyndowe & there receyued all theyr shotyng, but they could in no wyse hurt hym. Than Arthur lepre out at the wyndow & so descended downe and couered hym wyth hys shelde. Than they all ran at ones at hym, but Arthur gaue suche strokes that he dallyt downe al that euer he attayned vnto. And Baldewyn toke a barre of yren and did helpe his master to the best of hys power. And at the last Arthur encountred the knyght of the place, and gaue hym suche a stroke that he claue hym to the sholdres & so fell downe dead to the earth. And than anon after he disco. nited all the remenaue, for he delte suche dyscypline amonge them that he cut of armes, handes, legges, and hedes, and all that euer he attayne vnto

Than Baldewyn ran and dyd lyft vp the drawe bypge, and dyd shyfte fast the gates to the intent that non shold escape and soo they serched all aboute but they coulde neither finde man nor woman, and than they went to theyr restes till the next day, and so went forth on theyr Journey towarde Coynpte.

Howe that Gouvernat in serchyng of Arthur by aduenture he passed for by the same castell where as Arthur had slayne the lord thereof, & there he was assayled of the frendes of the sayde knyght, and there dyd so valyauntly that he slewe the moost parte of them. Capitulo, lxi.



And wohan that Arthur hadd well ryden foure leges, than was it knownen how that the knyght was slayne & all that euer were in the place, & theyr came al the knyghtes frendes & found hym dead, wherfore they were ryght sorrowfull, and as they made this sorow it fortuned that Gouvernat passed for by the same castell, & as soone as they that were wyth him sawe hym they thought yf it had ben he that had slayne theyr knyght and frende. Than they begon to crye all at ones, let vs pssue out for yonder is he that hath slayne oure knyght, and so they ran all at ones at hym with great axes & maces of stele & dyd hym moche anoyauce. Than Gouvernat deliuered hys spere to Jaker hys squer, and set hande to hys sword & gaue many great strokes rounde aboute hym, and cut of handes & legges and made armes & heades to flye into the felde, and at the last he dyd so moche that he deliuered hym selfe from them all sayyng of. iiii. knyghtes, & they came with a grete randon to hym, and the fyrst that

## The story of Arthur

Gouernar encountred he strake him so rudely that he fel to the earth, & in hys fall lunge braste hys necke. Than he dressed hym to the seconde and gaue hym suche a stroke wth his sworde that he made bothe helme and head to flye to the erth. Than the knyghte stode still without any mouing, and demaunded Gouernar of Whens he was, and he answered howe he was a straunge knight. And sayde to other knight where lay pou this knyghte palled. I lay sayde Gouernar. bis leges hens wth y lady of quaterfode. well sayde he knyghte than ye be not he that lay thys nyght in this castell. As god helpe me sayde Gouernar it is not I, for I neuer sawe this castell before thys tyme. Well sayde the knyghte than I require pou to come on wth me a litel way and I promise pou I shall bring pou agayne into thys same place wthoute butte or any maner of damage to pou or to anye of yours, and al thys he doo because he wold bypunge hym before the dead bodies for to se whether any of them would blede agayne freshely or not. for thereby he thought surely he shoulde knowe whether it were he or not that had slayne all those people. And Gouernar accorded to hys desyre, and so they entred into the castell and there sawe the deade bodies wthoute anye more of bledynge. And whan the knyghte sawe that he said, for this people did runne agensst pou wrongfully and soo it appeareth by them, for they that had thought moost for to haue wonne, I thynke hath now moost losse, whetefore saye ye maye departe whan ye wyl, for ye shal not be let for me, and I pray to god sende pou right good aduventure. Than Gouernar departed and soo folowed after Arthur.

How that Arthur found .xl. knyghtes who had taken a damoyzell the whiche they found in a forrest, & they wold haue rauyned her, & there Arthur rescowd her and slewe all the .xl. knyghtes who wold haue pylled and robbed the ladyes castell, and haue slayne all that had bene within.

Capitulo. lxxiii.

**A**rthur rode forth so long tyme that the last he came to a grete forrest, and as he wold haue entred into it, there encountred hym a fayre yonge damoyzell ryght sore weeping, and her fayre yelow herye hangynge aboute her sholders, and she was ryght sore hurt in the bysage and bledde fast and as soone as she sawe Arthur armed her face began to be dooble, and than she kneled downe & helde vp her handes and cryed hym mercy and sayd. gentyl knyght saue my life and the honour of my body, and take al that euer I haue, and she was but in her smocke and a thynne sytoure, And whan Arthur sawe her, he knewe wel that she was a maye, and sayde. fayre loue haue no drede for I wyl doo nothinge to you but good. And whan she herade that, she was in a surete she felle downe on the ground, for she was in that case for fere that her legges wold not bere her, nor could not speke of a grete season. Than Arthur alyghted fro hys horse and ryghte sweetly toke he in hys armes & sayd, my owne sweete damoyzell be ye now wel assured & of good hert and shew me what case ye stand in, and I shal apt you wth al my power, than he sawe howe yowens herye was all ruffled by the reason of the wynd and thich bushes & she had runne thurgh, and Arthur yke a gentyl knyghte byd wyke do wne her herye for they

they were ryght fayre and goodly. And whan she might speke she sayd, for your great sweteness and genyrl heret hath taken fro me parte of my fere, how be it all that season the wepe ryght pteouslye & sayd, for I shall therewe pou all the case how it standeth wryth me syth it pleasech you to knowe it, for it is of trouth I haue dwelled here in this forreste wryth an aunt of myne a wydowe a good olde lady in a fayre great manorye of hers, & now there is come into this forrest. iiii. knyghtes who are banyslyed out of theyr owne countrie, and they do nothinge but robbe and pylle, and they haue in theyr company. xxx. horse men and ten fete men, and so they robbe ouer all the countrie, so that they leaue no house barobbed, and this other day they sente to myne aunt that she should send them a hundred pounde of money, but myne aunt wolde not for she wyste not why she should so do, & so now they be come and haue lard spege rounde aboute myne aunces place, and there haue chynued these. v. dayes and haue made theyr aune that they wyl neuer goo hens tyl they haue wonne the place and bent it downe to the erth, and slayne myne aunt, and so I pylled out at a lytel gate to go to a brother of myne to besye him to geue togyther our lagnage to come to helpe and deliuer vs fro these theues and robbers, & as I was goynge here by there mette meten fore men of theyr compaigne who breth in alwaite to kepe the hys wayes. And thus they haue arayed me as ye se, and haue rypoyled me and taken away my palfrey, and so wolde haue ransomed me, but as grace was they felle at a barpauce amonge themselfe who should haue ben the first that should haue defouled me, & so they fel togyther & gaue eche other great stry-

kes, and in the meane tyme I fledde as waye in great fere of my lyfe. Than Arthur sayd fayre damoyzell go wet wro togyther where as these rypawdes be, and I shall doo so moche to them eyther by faynes or foulnes that they shal cande to you agayne your goune and your palfrey. And for sayd the lady they are very yll people and a great company. fayre lady care not therfore sayde Arthur god shall helpe you in your needs. Than the damoyzell mounted vpon Arthurs horse behinde hym and so rode forth tyl at the last they acqued where as these theues were who were schynge for the damoyzell amonge the bushes. And they sawe her on horse backe rydynge behynde Arthur, they ran all aboute hym to haue slayne hym, but than Arthur toke hys swerde & larde so on these rypawdes that wryth in a lytle space he had slayne them all. Than the damoyzell had ryght great Joye and so toke agayne her horse & her clothyng & apparayled her and sayd to Arthur, for I pray god kepe you from all euyl incommynce. And Arthur sayd, my loue nowe let vs go to youre aunt & let vs helpe her as moche as we can. And for sayd she ye can neuer haue byctory ouer them, for they be at ierst. xxx. on horse backe well armed and there be of them many good knyghtes, therfore anon they wyl flee you the which shoulde be a great damage therfore let vs go to my brother & gather togyther my frendes the which shal be in nombre at the leest of. xl. persones on horse backe & so than shal ye sle them. Than Arthur sayd fayre damoyzell take ye no thought therfore for I waraunt you or I departe I shall make them to be to vs suche fren-des as fro hys forth to you nor to none other they shal do no great hurie. Wel for sayd the lady god graue you grace thus to

## The story of Arthur

do for they be ryght yll people. So thus they rode forth together into þe forreste, & the same tyme Governar & Jucker were entred into þe same forreste to seke Arthur for they had herde rydynge þe he was riden into that forrest before them, and thei rode so longe tyll at the last they founde where as these .x. theues lay dead, & than they thowght wel how that Arthur had done that dede. Than Governar sayd to Jucker, frende I knowe well my lord Arthur hath bene here, & se well he is a good carpenter, for he hath made here a fayre syght of chyppes. So Jucker sayd there is in hym greet dyssence for he gyveth more than is of hym demaunded, for he hath gyven more to this company than they wold have had, & al this season Arthur rode forth sylf wpyth þe damysel, & at last they arrived at þe camoyelles aunces place, & the sayd theues as they had lest they shold be gone after a great company of marchauntes to content to robbe & to slea them, & in the meane season Arthur and the camoysele came to the gate, and she called þe porter. And as soone as he sawe her he knele before her ryght wel, and so set open the gate, and then Arthur and the damoysele entred into the place. Than Arthur sayd to the porter, frende let the gate stande still open, for youre enemyes are all gone, for they all that were here were my colynge therfore I warrant you be not aserde of them, therfore let downe the byrtege and so the porter dyd, for he beleved hym. Than the lady led her knyghte into the hall. Than her auntee came to them and made them ryghte great feast and so by armed Arthur and made redy the mere, and than they sat downe to souper and as they sat there entred into the hall one of the knyghtes of the sayde theues, and

so he came streyght to the table whereas they dyd eate wpyth a greete staffe in his hande, & without speakyng of any word he lyft up his staffe and strake the lady a great stroke betwene the sholders, so that he made her to lene towne staffe on the table and there wpyth she made a greete crye and therewpyth she toke a great cuppe of spylt full of wyne and dyd caste all the wyne at Arthur where as he sat, and toke the cup wpyth hym, and therewithall returned backe agayne wpythout speakyng of any word, and as he yssued oute of the hall he met Baldwyn and strake hym so rudely that he dyd not well where he was. Than Arthur sayd to the lady madame thus to be beten and to lese your good is a ryghte great outrage. Than the knyght answered Arthur and sayde, syt ye thou wylt amende it come to the crosse way besyde yonder wood and there shall ye fynde me. Than Arthur slepte upon his fete, and called for his harnays and anone Baldwyn armed hym. Than the lady sayde gentyl knyght in the honour of the hys god of heauen go not thither, for they are .xxx. on horseback well armed, wherfore ye can not endure agaynll them all. Baldwyn sayd Arthur speke to me no more, for I wyl go loken on them, and so mounted on his horse and followed the knyght to the crosse way where as he was redy abyngge for Arthur, and as soon as he sawe Arthur comyng he caste downe the cuppe and toke his spere, and they met together so rudely that the knyght brake his spere but Arthur strake hym so that his spere ranne through oute his bodye more than a fote, and so fell downe dead. Than Baldwyn sayd, right now thou strakst me & now yart strephen agayne, for thy great pyrde thou hast now an yll reward

rewarde but of suche deserte, suche pay-  
ment, and so Bawdewyn trowe our the  
knyghtes owne sworde & stroke of ther-  
wyth the knyghtes hand wher wyth he  
had stryken the larde arche table, and so  
wydde put the hande into the cuppe. And  
there, nenaunce of the theues as they we-  
re departyng of theyr praye that they  
had wonne of the marchauntes, they es-  
pyed how one of theyr felowes was slay-  
ne, and therefore incontynent they toke  
theyr wayes and tynent Arthur on  
all yodes and so gaue hym many great  
strokes, but euer Arthur cast hys shelde  
before hym, and theron receyved al theyr  
strokes, so that they coude in no wyse  
paye hys shelde in any maner of payne,  
myght, or theyr had: yght great waruaple.  
Then Arthur strake one of theym so ru-  
delye that hys heade flew cleue into the  
felde, and he claued another to the shoul-  
ders, and the thyrde he claued from the  
shoulde downe to the waste, and so gaue  
amonge theym manye wonderful strokes:  
but they were very manye, and so o-  
fours of them ranne to croshowes, and  
to castles, and there wyth dyde hym mo-  
che anopaince but al wayes yghte va-  
lyantly he defended hym selfe, and so  
at the laste bynt he flew vpon a fi-  
re of theym. Then as they were thus ygh-  
tyng together it fortuned Gouvernour to  
aspue on them by the reason of the bynt  
and hoyle that he had hearde, and there  
he sawe well how al that company were  
on one knyght whome he sawe defende  
hym selfe yght valiauntly, and so long  
he beheld hym tyll at the laste he knewe  
well it was hys mayster Arthur by the  
reason of hys whyte sheld, than he dalyt  
to his hys and came in amonge them  
as the wolfe doothe amonge shepe, and  
strake soo the fyrst that he encountred  
Arthur.

that he ranne hym cleue throught the  
body, and he set his hand on his swerde  
and strake soo another that hys heade  
fell on Arthurs hysse necke. And when  
Arthur sawe that he knewe well it was  
his old knyght Gouvernour wherof he had  
great ioye, and so rested hym selfe too be  
holde Gouvernour how that he fought w-  
th his swerd, and there he sawe how Gou-  
vernour dyde cleue one downe to the gyrdell.  
Then spake Arthur smile and sayde, theys  
mayster chastiseth ryght soze his scolers  
for he teacheyth them a hard lesson by the  
sapyth that I owe vnto god I shall helpe  
hym. Saye sayde Bawdewyn whan this  
is, than a frende is proued, god gine you  
grace will to do, & so Arthur rusht into  
the prele and confounded al that euer he  
astayed vnto. Then one of these theues  
was on fote, for he had lost hys hysse  
before, came at Arthurs hysse whan he  
and strake him cleue throught the bely  
and so the hysse fell downe dead. Then  
Arthur lepte on his fete and hys swerde  
in hys hand and dydded hym to the chere  
that had slayne his hysse, and gaue hym  
suche a stroke that he claued hym to the  
sholders. And when Gouvernour sawe Ar-  
thur on his fete he was ryght sorowful  
and so dalyt into the prele and encount-  
red a knyght so rudely that neyther his  
helme nor cople of stele couid save hym  
but he was crouen to the hard ce: he and  
so he fell downe dead. Then Bawdewyn  
toke hys hysse and brought it to Arthur,  
and quynckly he lepte vpon theron, and he  
bandoned hym selfe among hys enemyes  
and so betwene hym & Gouvernour of the  
xxx. they lefte but foure alpye & so were  
taken, and in theyr takyng two of them  
were slayne & the other two were bound  
fast, & Bawdewyn and Jucker dyd kepe  
them, Then there came to them the lady  
S.iii. and

## The story of Arthur

and her nece, and when they sawe theyr  
enemies lye dead on the ground, & sawe  
the noble valure that was in those two  
knightes, these ladies prayed them mo-  
che in theyr heartes, and there they sawe  
how that Arthur and Gouvernat were to-  
gyther making good chere eche to other  
and doyng of theyr helmes. Than the  
lady sayde to Arthur, sye from whence co-  
meth this knyght, is he patrapnyng to  
you. Verily madam sayd Arthur he is  
a frende who hath ryght well hoysen me  
this daye. We sawe not together of this  
gret season. And the lady sawe wel how  
that he was saye and maruelously byg  
and sayd. Sye ye were happy to come h-  
ther at this point, and to you sir knyght  
ye haue ached this cure: pyle of these  
theues, I requyre you let these other two  
other be slayne or elles hanged for of an  
yll rote spyng rather an yll tre, for they wol  
never do good if they escape. And whan  
the theues herde that they were in great  
feare and sayde to Arthur, gentill knyght  
saue our lyues and we shal be we pon-  
tohere is in the forest ryght greete crea-  
source. Where is that sayde Arthur. Sye  
we will byng you thychet soo that we  
dye not. And Arthur answered and sayd  
syis, as for your lyfe and death lyeth in  
these ladies handes so do what it plea-  
seth them, but shortly bynge vs to this  
greate trefoure. Than these two theues  
wence on before, & Bawdwyn toke the  
cuppe wyth the knightes hande therein  
and dyd presente it to the lady from Ar-  
thur, who thanked hym muche, and soo  
would haue gyven the cuppe to Bawd-  
wyn but he wold not take it for he said  
he had ynough to do with the cariage of  
his horse and harnes. So Arthur rood so  
longe afere these theues in the forest tyll  
at the last they came into a wyld sauage

place in a great valley, & there they found  
bowes and crofbowes, hawbertes, hel-  
mes, & gowones, couerpynges and other  
cloth the which these theues had robbed  
all about the country, and also there they  
founde bydde in the grount the golde & syl-  
uer grette plentye, and cuppes and cha-  
lyces and other vessel of silver, the which  
they mounted to a gret value. Than Ar-  
thur sayde to the lady, madame cause all  
this ryches to be bozne to your place, &  
rendre ye agayn suche thynges as hath  
ben stolen to churches & other people of  
the countrey, as for me nor none of my  
company shal take the worth of one pe-  
ny therof. And the lady dyd as Arthur  
comaunded her, but she despyed Arthur  
that the theues myghte be slayne,  
and so they were incontinent, than they  
retuned to the ladies place, and wente  
to souper and were richly serued. Than  
Arthur demaunded of Gouvernat howe  
mayster Steuend bydde and the markes.  
And he answered & sayd howe that they  
dyd ryght well and were in good heith,  
and how that they dyd comaunde them  
vnto hym, & in lyke wyse dooth the sayde  
lady Margarete of Argenton, for she is  
come to the port norye to se her vncle the  
marke, wherof Arthur had grette joy.  
And whan the lady of that place herde  
she knewe than well that Arthur was  
same knyght that had deliuered the mar-  
kes out of pylson, & also had rescowd  
the lady Margarete from the handes of  
the duke of Bygoys newetwe. Than she  
kneled doth before Arthur and sayde,  
sy: I thanke you as muche as I can or  
may do for the aïoe & socour that ye haue  
done for the lady of Argenton, for I am  
her colyn Germanyn. And whan Arthur  
sawe her knele, he toke her by a so made  
greate lope together tyll it was tyme to  
go

gote they restes, and in the mornynge Arthur rose and roke his leue of the lady and so rode forth on his waye to goo to Coynpte, for it was as thā but .xv. dayes to saynt Bartylme we tyde whan as the great tournay shoulde be bitwene the kynge Bozolors and the emperoure of Ynde Now wyl I leaue to speke of Arthur and of Gouvernax and speke now of mayster Streuen.

How that mayster Streuen departed fro the porte noye to go to the tournay at Coynpte and toke with hym the noble florence the pauplyon, wherin was the ymage wyth the chaplet who resembled in all thyng vnto the lady florence the moost fayre creature that was as thā in all the worlde. Capitulo. lxxiiii.



Thus as Arthur rode forth on his waye to Warde Coynpte, mayster Streuen was at the porte noye wyth the markes and wyth the gentyl lady Margarete of Argenton, and there she dyde spoite and playe her as a gentyl daitoyfell oughte for to doo, and euery daye she made chaplettes of roses and other floures the whyche she gaue to mayster Streuen, and she made hym also wyth the needle worke a gyrdell and a purse of golde and sylke, she loued hym ryghte well in her herte. Than mayster Streuen aduysed well howe that the greates tournay at Coynpte approached nere, therfore he thought it was tyme for hym to departe thither warde, than he sayd to the Markes. Sir I desyre you to kepe well this castell of the porte noye, & to you fayre lady I requyre you kepe ye still compaigne here wyth the markes your vncler tyll ye herefro Arthur, for and I can be shal

be here bitwene this and saint Remiges daye. And right swerely she did graunte him there to abide. Than he toke his leue of them & so toke al his booke, and the egge of gold & the paulion wyth the ymage holdynge the chaplet, & so departed & rode so longe tyll he arriued at Coynpte. Than he moued by the stapes into the palays, at the whiche tyme the fayre florence was entred into her owne chaumbre, and the kynge at that tyme was not in the palays, but florence knyghtes were playenge at the chesse & at the tables and other dysportes, and the maister came in amonge them sodenly, and as soone as they sawe hym they ran to him on al fydes, and made to hym right great feest & chere. And at the last it came to the knowledge of florence how that he was come and incontynente she came to hym, and as soone as he sawe her he byd of his bonnet and saluted her, and she said sir ye be ryght hertely welcome now, for I was in fere lest that ye wolde not haue come to this tournay, therfore it is now tyme that my pauplyon be pyght by, and so she ledde the maister into her chaumbre, & and toke hym aparte, & than she demaunded of hym how that he had done syth he departed from her and howe that Arthur byd. Madame sayde he I sawe not Arthur syth he byd the batayle at Argences for as soone as the batayle was ended & that the kynge of orquency & duke Phylip & all the hole company were in great Joye and myrth there came a messenger to Arthur from the wounded knyght to chentene that he shoulde goo to him for to gyue hym helth, and soo the same prynces house he departed, whereof euery man was so soze troubled that they all departed the same daye. A mayster said florence than I fere me greatly of his death.

Madame

## The story of Arthur

Madame said the mayster be ye in a sure take no care for hym, for he feareth not all the world, for there is not such an other knyght in all the world agayne. Madame shewed hym how that he did commaunde you unto hym, & how that he desired hym as deely as he loveth you & he should not sayle for any thyng but to be at this next great tournay at cornynte and he dyd graunte me for certayne that he woldenot sayle therof. A mayster said he dydde ye not requyre hym saythfully so to be. Madame as god helpe me I warrant you he wyl not sayle. Well mayster said he I requyre you cause me to see him & to speke with him as shortly as it may be. Madame said he with a right good wyl. Well mayster than I praye you se that my pauply shold be pyght vp in the felde incontinent, for peradventure if he come nowe ony thyng before the daye and se no pyght or token in the felde shonp rout may shoulde be there, than it myght fortune he wold departe agayne. Madame ye saye right well of the mayster for in dede it is hys tyme. Than he sent for syr Arcalon her maryshall & commaunded him & her chiefe pavilion shoulde be pyght vp in the felde, & from thens forth that all her knyghtes shoulde lodge euery night about her pavilion. And as she commaunded so it was done. And also the mayster caused the pauplyon with the pynage to be pyght vp, & many other tentes and pauplyons but the pynage & helde the chaplet in the pauplyon was so goodly & delectable to beholde that no man coude be satisfyed with lookinge on her, howbeit that the beaute of florence was incomparable thereto, and so there were pyght vp .x. tentes & .xiiij. pauplyons all pertainyng to the noble florence, besyde all other & were pertainyng to her noble lordes & knyghtes

for she had there at that tyme out of her owne realme to the nobles of .xv. knyghtes. Also syr Arcalon caused his tent to be pyght vp who was seneschall to the getyl florence, & chiefe of her conseil nexte mayster Arcalon, & she trusted moche in hym, for he was a wyse man and a good knyght, & no pylfaper, and his pauplyon was set next to the forest & ferthest fro the ladies pavilion, and nexte to the ladies tent was syr Ancelles pauplyon nexte to the seneschall who was a right hardy and a valyaunt knyght, the thyrde pauplyon was pertainyng to the archbishop of cornynte who was uncle to florence, & brother to the king of Bozoloys father to florence, the fourth was syr Dymles of Calafounde, the fyfth was syr Peter bysebat a renowned knyght. Also than thither was come syr Rowland of bygoz who was one of florence knyghtes, but he was right enuyous, and he was cousin germaine to the duke of bygoz, & he caused his pauplyon also to be pyght vp by the which was right goodly & fytlye to beholde, he was not in the countre when the batayle was betwene Arthur & the duke of bygozs newwe, and when he knewe the dyscomfytur of hys cosyn he was so sorowfull that he dyd neyther eate nor drynke but lytle of thre dayes after & he knewe therof, and when he had somewhat passed hys sorowe, than he made auowde and promise that if he might see or knowe the knyght that had slayne hys cosyn syr Isembart & he wold be avenged of hym if euer it lay in his power, and he myght well be descended of the lygnage of the duke of bygoz, for he was fell & spytfull and proude, and the chiefe cause was he came to this tournay was to thentent to encountre Arthur if he came thither. So these .viij. pyghte by the .x. tentes rounde

aboute

aboute florence pauplyon. Than upon a daye florence yllued out of Cormyte & all her chynalry wyth her, and soo wente into her owne pauplyon, and all other lordes and knyghtes ladies and damoyelles wente eche of them into their owne tentes and pauplyons, the whyche were to the nombre of two thousand, and florence commaunded that every body should make as great feest & joy as they coude doo, so than there began greute feest and joye. Than knyghtes began to joust and tournay to assaye theyn selfe, and the ladies and damoyelles dydde sende theyn chaplettes & streamers to set on theyn helmes & spores, & some company of knyghtes sported them in the forest, and some wente to the sayre ruyt wyth sparrowes and gerfowcons on theyn handes, & some behelde the hye tourneys & tournymenges of the sakers & gerfawcons, squyers and variettes were furbullhyng & scouryng of theyn maysters harneys & boke-lyng of byldes and helmes, & knockyng on hedes & buttes on myghty spores, ladies and damoyelles did carole & sing and daunce wth lusty knyghtes, and clerkes sange balades, and knyghtes and ladies talked of loue, some embraced, and some kyssed & shewed sygne of loue, & suche as were locke or hurte were shortly made hole. Than florence behelde these lusty damoyelles playnge & laughyng wyth these frellhe yonge lusty knyghtes clappynge theyn on the backes wth theyn whyte handes, & shewyng theyn greute sygne of loue, and geurnge eche to other laces, gyrdels, gloves, knuecheres, rmynges chaplettes and garlonde of frellhe floures. Than florence cast out a great sygh and said to mayster Steven, for se ye not how these ladies and damoyelles laughe & play eche of theyn louer, & may

ster & what haue I deserued that I can no haue my louer to spote me with him as wel as they do wyth theyn, for I loue With al my hole herte & yet I wote not what he is, for my hert lyeth on hym that I neuer sawe, so thus I am in the sonne without haupnge of any lyght, I am in loue wythout joy. A dere master what haue I deserued more than onye other. Than the mayster sayd, a deare ladye be ye of good comforte for a tyme shall come that shall gyue you lyght, the cloude that as yet couereth the yght in good season shal be made bryght. A mayster sayd florence dyd ye not hertely comaund me: vnto hym whan ye wente to Argence. By the sayth that I owe to god sayd the mayster I dydde it in adame in the best wyse y I coude pynagyn. Thus the sayre florence and the mayster euery daye from the wednesdape tyll saterdape talked togyther of the comyng of Arthur the whyche saterdape the archbishop sange masse afore florence, and he and al the hole barony that day dynded wth the noble florence, for she had despyed them all so to do.

¶ How sy: Rowlande of Brgoy apelled Arthur of treason bycause that he had slayne hys colyn at Argence, and soo despyed hym at the brierance but Arthur at the fyrste stroke drate hym do wne horse and ail to the cart, and brake one of hys armes and two rybbes, wherof florence was right Joyous and specially whan she sawe her louer Arthur whome she neuer sawe before. And how after sy: Rowlandes seruauntes assayed Arthur to haue slayne hym, but he valyauntly defended hym selfe and slawe many of them.

Capitulo. lxx.

And

## The story of Arthur



companie & were chise  
counsailler to the knyght  
that slewe him, therefore  
I bere grudge in mine  
heart agaynste you, & I  
promise to god that ye  
I may encountre hym  
that yf that berde, I  
shal do as much to hi  
as he hath done to my  
cousyn. Syr sayd the mai  
ster whan ye mete him  
ye may do as ye wyll,  
but often times it for

**A**fter dyner the archbys  
shop and maister Secuen  
syr Rowland and the other  
barons went talkyng and  
playng togeder out of the  
medowe and entred into the forest, & at  
the laste they came to a fayre grene oke  
the whych dyd caste a fayre shadowe a  
greate cyrculte aboute it, and the grasse  
was fayre and soft and chyck vnderneath  
so there they satte them downe and tal  
ked togeder of many thynges tyl at the  
last the mayster demaunded of syr Ro  
lande how that he lyked by that country  
about Coynpte and whether it were fair  
er than the country of bygoz. Than sic  
Rowland answered that it was not to  
hym that he would geue any answer in  
that case. Why sayd the maister & as for  
me I am as ytell bound to you, as you  
to me. Well sayd syr Rowland that ma  
kerh no matter for though ye be son to a  
knyght yet wyll I not answer you in that  
matter nor in non other, take it as ye list  
why syr sayd the mayster haue I trespa  
sed any thing agaynst you. Yea y ye haue  
sayd syr Rowland & that ryght greuously  
for ye were at Argence whan my cosyn  
syr Isembart was slayne, and ye kepte

tuned that a man can not attayne to do  
so muche as he would do, nor paradu  
re he can not nor dare not, butte as for  
that dede ye oughte not to be dyspleased  
though right was done, for godlyghtly  
wyll suffer no wronge, but al wayes he  
fordereth and aideth the right cause how  
so euer it falleth. Well sayd syr Rowland  
de than ye saye howe that my cosyn was  
in the wronge but there is none y sayeth  
so but he sayeth otherwyse than trouthe  
is, and that wyll I proue before euery  
man agaynst you and ye wyll mount on  
your horse for I say the matter was not  
culp nor egally delt withall. Syr sayd  
the maister ye lay vnto me great out  
rage and vylany, where as ye saye that I  
dyd in that matter otherwyse than well  
and truly, wherof I say platnely ye lye  
falsely in your head and certainly I shal  
neuer be in tesse yll that I haue sette a  
knyghte agaynst you to prouett, and if I  
can it shal be the same knyght whiche  
dyd the odayle agaynst your cosyn, who  
shal cause you to call agayne these wo  
des that ye haue spoken. Than the may  
ster rose ryghte greatlye dyspleased and  
woulde haue departed and left that com  
panye, but the archbysshop helde hym  
agayne

agayne & prayed him that he wold suffre  
all that for that tyme, & at hys request he  
sayd he wold so do. Than sayd the seneschall  
to sayd Rowlande, sayd he content with the  
wordes of the mayster for he is a man of  
greter dygnyte than ye be of, for though he  
had stryken of your head, ye haue not so  
hye a frende & durst reuenge your cause,  
the noble kynge of Brytney was at þat  
batayle, & wher as ye say that the mater  
was not truly deite Wythall, ye speke  
than by lye apenst the kynge & apenst  
Whyllyam duke of Sabary his neuwe,  
and apenst all fur he as were there,  
the whych seynge nedeth not there to be  
reherced, for it is a shame to you to  
suffre suche wordes to passe out of your  
mouth. Than for displeased Wysebar  
stepte forth & sayd, sayd Rowlande ye say  
that the mayster dyd not truly in þat  
mater whan your cosyn was slayne, wherfor  
I saye that ye saye not truly, & if ye wyl  
mayntayne the contrary take your har-  
neys and I shal take myn & let it be seen  
who is in the trouth, & therewith sayd  
Wysebar was ryngge to haue departed, but  
the byshop helde him agayn & sayd, loke  
who soo euer spekerh ony worde more of  
this mater let hym be sure I shal not be  
hys frende, & so they left there spekyng  
of þat mater for that tyme, for the byshop  
brought them in an other talkyng, & as  
they were deupspynge & talkyng of one  
mater and other Arthur and Gouvernar  
ysued out of the forest and soo entred in  
to the medowe. And than Arthur beheld  
the goodly tentes and paulpons that  
were pyght all aboute the felde, and also  
he sawe the sheldes and helmes and har-  
neys shynnyng apenst the sonne, & he de  
the greate coursers braye & crye & stampe  
with theyr fete, the whych sight & noyse  
quyckened his herte and couraige. At the

last Gouvernar espyed Florence paulpott  
wherin was the ymage with the chaplet  
and shewed it to Arthur. And whan he  
sawe it his herte inwardly reioysed, for  
he knewe well it was his ladyes paulpott  
on. And by þat tyme the mayster & al other  
were entred agayne into the saye me-  
dowe, & Arthur sat on hys horse in a gre-  
te study & mused of hys aduenture. And  
at the last sayd Wysebar of halescote espyed  
hym & knewe well how þat it was Arthur  
for he had seen hym before at Argence.  
Than he said to the other knyghtes that  
were aboute hym, lordes beholde ponder  
is a knyght al armed who is ryght sayd  
to beholde, is there onye here þat knoweth  
hym, for he wolde not name him bicause  
of sayd Rowlande. And whan mayster Stru-  
uen sawe hym he said I know hym ryght  
well, wherfor I trust þat the greate lord  
that was lately blowen wyll now some  
be layde, & of hys compynge he had greate  
joye in his herte so moche that he forga-  
te in a maner al his displeasure. Certayn-  
ly sayd the seneschall he is right sayd  
and gracys to beholde, wherfor I be-  
leue he is of a great bloude, but me thyn-  
keth by his semblaunt he is in a great stu-  
dy wherfor so euer it be. By my hode  
Wysebar I knowe full well wherfor he  
studyeth. Than the mayster & the senesch-  
all & Wysebar rose and saye & casely  
wente to hym warde & sayd eche to other  
how þat they wolde not name hym as at  
þat tyme bicause of sayd Rowlande, and so  
they came before Arthur who was styll  
in his study. And Gouvernar as soone as  
he sawe the mayster he alpyght fro hys  
horse and embraced hym, and all the other  
barons eche after other. And therewithal  
Arthur lefte hys musyng, and as soone  
as euer he sawe mayster Struuen and the  
other knyghtes he dyd alpyght from hys  
horse,

## The story of Arthur

housle, and did salute them all one after  
an other, and so among them there was  
made right great feast and ioy, And than  
spoke Rowlande meruayled muche what  
knight he might be, becaus he sawe soo  
much chere & ioye made to him, and that  
they knew him and he not. Than the se-  
neschal said to Arthur, speake I wyl ye ta-  
ke my tent and pavilion as your owne, &  
so ye and I to kepe company together in  
this turney. Speake I am wel content quod  
Arthur, and so incontinent he was unar-  
med, & al his harnes and housle was sent  
to the seneschals tent. And whan Arthur  
was apparayled than the mayster sayde  
to hym, speake ye go & salute ye the arch-  
bysshop, who is by other to kyng Emen-  
dus, and uncle to the faire lady florence  
And whan Arthur herd speake of floren-  
ce his hert trembled for ioye, and so he  
went toward the bysshop. And whan  
the bysshop saw him he rose and gave sa-  
lute hym, & so did sir Bries and also speake  
Rowlande of byrgos how he it they knew  
hym not, and so the bysshop beheld hym  
affectionously, for he seemed to hym to be  
most fayre knyghte of the world. Than  
Arthur gave of hym bonet and gave salute  
the bysshop and al other, and in likewise  
they hym agayne. Than the bysshop de-  
maunded of hym what he was. Speake  
Arthur, I am a knyghte strainger. And as  
soone as speake Rowlande herd hym saye  
so, it ran into his hert that it was the sa-  
me knyghte that slewe hym colyn, & than  
he demaunded of hym what was his na-  
me. Speake he my righte name is Ar-  
thur. And how cal ye your squyer quod  
speake Rowlande. Speake Arthur he is na-  
med Baradwyn. Than speake Rowlande  
knew wel that it was he that slew his  
cousin, & soo demaunded of him fro whens  
he came. Speake quod Arthur I come strey-

ght fro Argente. Wel speake quod Rowlande  
saw you the batayle that was done betwene  
between a straunge knight, and the duke  
of byrgos newe we. And whan the mayster  
herd the demaundes he was right ioyous  
for than he wylt well that the wordes  
that he spoken before should be wel reu-  
ged. Than Arthur answered speake Row-  
lande and sayd, speake whan the batayle was  
done I passed for by. I thynke sayd speake  
Rowlande that it was your selfe that dyd  
that batayle with speake Jembart. Speake  
quod Arthur I wolde her right glad be to be of  
suche valure as too conquere in batayle  
such a knight as he was. Certenly quod  
Rowlande I know wel it was you, and  
therfore I saye that falsely and untruly  
ye dyd it, and that I wyl make good my  
conspuent my bodye agens your. And  
whan the archbysshop herd that he bla-  
med much speake Rowlande for his wordes  
and desyre hym that al the matter myghte  
be in rest & peas. But he proudly answe-  
red & said how that he wold not but the  
wold arme him incontinent. Than the  
mayster sayd to the bysshop, naye speake  
hym alone for he is in the right. therfore  
he hath good cause to be reuenged yet he  
can for whan he hath his enemy present  
before him, what shal he nede to go seke  
for hym any further and all that he sayde  
because he thought longe tyl they were  
together for he wylt wel he wylt Arthur  
shold reuenge the right well suche wordes  
as he had sayd to hym before. Than Go-  
uernar right soze dyspleased slepe forth  
and sayd, speake Rowlande ye be to muche  
outrageous to apperchus this knyght  
of falsenes whom ye knowe not noz ne-  
uer saw hym before, noz wylt not what  
he is therfore I say playnly ye lye falsly  
in your herte, he is not false noz neuer  
was to you noz yet to any other, and in  
that

that quarel here is my guage to fight w  
you my body agent your. Tha Arthur  
blamed Souetair for his words & com  
maunded hym to be in peace, & so he dyd  
folowe his plesure. Than Arthur sayde,  
sy: Rowland yf ye lay any thing agent  
me, I am here redy to defend me agent  
you, Well sy: sayde Rowland of fallnes  
I appele you in y quarell, mount shoz  
ly on your horse & defend it and ye dare  
Well sy: sayde Arthur ye say Wel, go on  
your way and I shall not be longe fro  
you, Sy: sayd the mayster to sy: Row  
lande ye haue the herte of a noble baron  
therfore ye do ryght well to defend your  
ryght, for your ryght & trouthe shal sure  
lye helpe you, all thys he sayde but in a  
mockery. Than sy: Rowlande went to  
arme him, and the seneschall and the ar  
chebysshop and mayster Steuen kepte  
styll company wyth Arthur, who incon  
tynente was armed. Than the mayster  
wente streyght to the noble Florence, &  
founde her in her ryche tente standynge  
on a cussbyn of sylke, and as soone as  
the sawe the mayster she began to smile  
and called hym to her. Than he sayd ma  
dame and it lyke poure grace Arthur is  
come, and at his fyrst comyng sy: Row  
lande of bygoz hath appeched him of fal  
nes for slepyng of hys cosyn at Argence,  
and so they be bothe about to arme them  
for the batayle betwene them shal be in  
contynent. And whan y lady herde hym  
speke of Arthur her bloud trembled and  
therwith she blusshed as ruddy as a rose  
and was in her hert ryght iopous of hys  
comyng, and ryghre soze dyspleased that  
sy: Rowland should fyght wyth him so  
sone at hys fyrst comyng than she sayde  
mayster I doubt me leaste that any vp  
lany should come to Arthur by fighting  
wyth sy: Rowlande. Madame said the  
Arthur.

mayster ye know not as yet y noble ba  
lure of Arthur, for I am were you be set  
teth nothyng though he had to do all ac  
ones wyth such. vi. as sy: Rowland is  
therfore madame yllue out of your paui  
lyon and loke on your loucr and beholds  
whether he be saye or not, the archebys  
shop your vncle is wyth hym, and your  
seneschal, and sy: Ancean, & alle sy: Wh  
les of valesounde, and sy: Wysebar, all  
these are ryghte soze dyspleased of the fe  
long that sy: Rowland hath done to Ar  
thur your knyght. I mayster sayde Flo  
rence would to god he were myne. let vs  
go and I pray you shewe hym vnto me  
for I desyre muche to se him. Than Flo  
rence yllued our noble accompanied w  
ladyes and damoyelles to the numbre  
of. C. C. and by that tyme the tydynges  
was spreade all about the fiede in euery  
mannes tent how y sy: Rowlande was  
armyng of hym to fyght wyth a strange  
knyght. And whan y archebysshop & the  
other barons sawe Florence they went  
and encountred her, and Arthur was in  
theyr company, and there they sawe echo  
other, wherwith they were bothe so soze  
stryken wyth the darte of loue, that they  
lost theyr countenaunce, howe be it Flo  
rence as goodly as she myghte, maincay  
ned her countenaunce, and than she laid  
her hande on the bishoppes shouder and  
demanded of him what knight Arthur  
was, who aboute al other senied to be the  
most gracious & gentle, and he had his  
helme of his head and behelde euer Flo  
rence, and also her saye eyen wente ne  
uer fro hym, for she coulde not kepe her  
selfe fro beholding of hym. Than Wy  
sebar sayde, madam this same is the kny  
ght that I taughte in my lyghte the fowle  
monster of the brolle to vntaunce, & euer  
syth he hath offred his seruice to be your  
C. i. knyght

## The story of Arthur

knigght yf it please you so to except him  
In the name of god sayd florence he is  
pyggherely welcome, and with a right  
good wyf I receyve him as my knigght  
Myght dere lady sayd Arthur I humbly  
thanke you of the hie honour that ye do  
to me as to receyve me to be of the com-  
pany and numbze of so many and noble  
wyse men as your knigghtes be. And wh  
these wordes there came a messenger to  
florence, and shewed her how that the  
kyng of wygney and duke philyp wer  
comyng w. v. C. knigghtes in their com-  
pany & how that he was within a myle  
and a halfe. They are ryght verry wel  
come said florence. And by that tyme sit  
Rowland was armed and also Arthur.  
Than the barowde began to crye go to  
gyther, bayle, bayle. Than Gouverneur set  
on Arthurs heime on hys head, & Bar-  
de wyne brought him his horse, & he mou-  
ted thereon as lightly as though he had  
bene unarmid, than he toke hys wythe  
shelde and byd cast it aboute hys necke.  
And as tooness florence saw the sheld  
she knew it ryght wel, and sayde in her  
hert. I trowe lower that shelde becometh  
you ryght well, I pray to god it may be  
well employed upon you. Than he toke  
a great & a myghy spere, and whan he  
was redy at all poyntes than he turned  
hys eyen to watte florence, and her eyen  
went neuer fro hym, but behelde hym  
with fervent love and desyre wherwith  
Arthur toke suche hardynes that he fea-  
red nor all the wordes at that houre. So  
than he turned and dashed his horse to  
watte. By Rowlands, & he in lyke wyse  
to him, & they went togither as though  
hunder had falle fro heven, & all that be  
ynde them sayd one to another, a good  
orde what a goodly knygghte is ponde-  
raunge knygght. And sy Rowland hys

Arthur so rudely that he brake his spere  
all to shewes, but Arthur brake him w  
hys spere the whych was so long & byg  
so vnmeterably y he sente bothe knigght  
and hors and al to perth in a yere, wher  
with sy Rowlandes armie brake alonder  
in y middes, and y hors and sheld fell se  
fore on him y it brake two ribbes in hys  
spere, & so he lay a great space in a traunce  
wherof florence had moze ope tha ever  
she had of any thing, and specially whan  
she sawe her love do so hys dedes of pro-  
wes. Than sy Rowland had brought  
thys her. xiii. knygghtes, and whan they  
saw theyr wyf sy Rowland & that  
myshchyl they all toke theyr harnes & al  
at ones ran & assayed Arthur. Tha Ar-  
thur & zew hys good wordes & brake so  
the fyrst that he encountred with that he  
claus him to the chinne, and fro y seconde  
he made his head to flie into y seide, and  
the thyrde he made to flie out hys horse  
crope & his legges up ward. Tha curty-  
m. n beelde the hys prowesse of Arthur  
and laid ethe to other, the strokes of this  
knygght are greatly to be doubted. Than  
Gouverneur toke a great pyece of a broken  
charyot and dallyt into y pyece and dawe  
downe knygghtes to y horse and ma to y  
crash. Than every man sayd vnto other  
this knygght is not wout company, they  
almes is right hard to indure, I would  
have none of theyr pyaunce, they are gre-  
te dypenders, for they geue moze than  
is of the benaunded. And wha florence  
saw the outrage of those knygghtes she  
was right sorowful, for she had grete fe-  
re of Arthur. Than she commaunded her se-  
nelhal y he shuld go and depart y batall  
and that those knygghtes shoulde be al ta-  
ken, and their handes bound fast togither  
in a punysshement of theyr dedes, than  
her seneshal inconspient mounted on a  
great

gree courtes, and in a rich cosset of grene  
gyrte in a white silke lace, and his hat at  
his back in a white wardeer in his hand  
be. Than he spored furth his hors & cari-  
sed knigt. So to come out of every cene &  
so they toke the knyghtes þat were figh-  
ting in Arthur and Gouvernas, but first of  
the. First there was. St. Gaim, and Druey &  
other soze hurt. Tha florence and the ar-  
chebyschop came to syz Rowland where  
as he lay still at þat time in a traunce half  
a slepe, & when he was rentred & saw þe  
byshop and florence standyng before hi  
he desired that the knyght that had iusted  
with him might come and speke to hym  
& so Wysebar went for him, & when Ar-  
thur was come, syz Rowland said to hi  
þat þe be welcome and for goddes sake  
pardo me of the outrage þat I have done  
agenst you, as so enterpyle to iuste a-  
genst you, wherof now I soze repente me  
and fro hens forth I will be your knyght  
and good frende. For sayd Arthur yf ye  
haue any thyng respassed agenst me I  
pardon you with goodheart. Than there  
were brought forth the knyghtes of syz  
Rowland who were fast bound because they  
foughte agenst Arthur about anye des-  
pauce before. Tha said florence in the  
name of god they shal make a large am-  
des. Certainly madame sayd syz Row-  
lande I am content þat they make am-  
des to þat knyght as he wyl him selfe. So  
be it said florence. Madam sayd Arthur  
I thank your grace for that they shal make  
me amdes at mine own saying therfore  
than they shal go quite & free, for I pardo  
the for they dyd but like knyghtes to help  
and ayde their lord and master. And when  
the bisshop and al other herd him say so  
they sayd, & this is a free and a gentyll  
knyght. And tha the gentill florence said  
in her heart, & mine own love ye haue a go-  
d Arthur.

all here and a free, & mine bett is to you  
and ever shal be, & than she toke to Ar-  
thur. For knyght ye shal go and bring  
you to my senel shal who shal holden you  
companye. Madame sayd Arthur as to  
shal please you I am content. Tha flo-  
rence went into her tent & toke her may-  
des by the hand and said. Master ye told  
me trouth of Arthur, for he is sayd a gen-  
tyous, and þat best knyght of this hand  
þat is in all the world. Certainly madame  
all that is trouth, for all nobles is to  
him. Well master said florence I love  
you entyely and also my lord my father  
lowerth your ight. Wel, and ye & I haue be-  
ne noryshed up togyther, so ye be not ma-  
ster clethe swozne of my stepght counsaill  
therfore ye ought to shew me your faith &  
trouth without any reason of falsenes, and  
ye ought to help and to ayde me in al my  
business. Certainly madame quod the may-  
ster al þat ye say is of trouth, and so shal I  
do as longe as I lyue, for I shal kepe so  
crete your counsaill as longe as I lyue  
Certainly master sayd she I haue great  
assyaunce in you, therfore it is so I wyl  
þat ye shal know the secretes of my heart,  
the story I requyre you kepe it close. I shal  
so I love Arthur as al my heart, & I wyl  
love hym above all other creatures of þe  
world, for here I shal be faithfull to you  
that as longe as I lyue I wyl neuer  
haue lord nor spouse but al onely hym.  
And when the mayster bette her saye so  
he had ryght great joy, and sayd. Mad-  
ame ye haue good aduys to do, for  
he is the floure of all the world, and I  
shal helpe you to haue hym more than  
any other person of the world. But may-  
ster quod florence there is one thyng  
that I wold sayne knowe of whar hym  
ge he is of. Certainly madame he is son  
unto a myghty duke, for Bawdyn was  
C. ii. squyer

## The story of Arthur

Supper hath she wed me so. That is suffy-  
 spent sayd florence, & so they lefte they  
 commynycacyon at that tyme & departed.  
 Than was sy: Rowland borne into his  
 tent & bnrmed. And the seneschall & By-  
 sebar, sir Ancell, and sir Whyles ledde Ar-  
 thur to the seneschalles tent, & there was  
 he bnrmed, & whan he had washed his  
 handes & bysage, than brought Balde-  
 wyyn him a sy: cote of scarlet furred with  
 ermpnes the which became him right wel  
 he was bygge & hys aboute all other & co-  
 loured like the rede rose had be set on the  
 whyte lily. Than he sayd he wolde go &  
 se sy: Rowlande, wherfore euery man  
 praysed him muche, & al the other barons  
 wente thither to him, & there he was till  
 it was past none, than he toke his lue of  
 sy: Rowland & yssued out into the felde,  
 and than there was assembled all the no-  
 bles of the felde to beholde him, & they all  
 sayd how p he was the moost fayre crea-  
 ture of the worlde, we thinke he be sonne  
 to a kynge, wold to god the fayre florence  
 were his lady & spouse. And therewith he  
 entred into the seneschalles tent, and he &  
 sir Whyles played togyther at the chesse,  
 and by that tyme the kynge of ozquney  
 & duke Whylp his newe were come &  
 were lyghted in the myddes of the myd-  
 des of the medowe nere to florence tent  
 And so he & Whylp & well a. xiii. other  
 knyghtes wente streyght to florence tent  
 and there they founde her playenge with  
 mayster Sireuen, & whan florence sawe  
 the kynge her cosyn and duke Whylp she  
 did salute them and embraced and kyssed  
 them, & sayd how they were welcome, &  
 so they made eche other great feest & Joy  
 and late downe on sayre new grene rus-  
 shes, & talked togyther of many thynges.  
 And at last the kynge demaunded of the  
 mayster tydynes of Arthur. Sy: sayd

the mayster he is not ferre hys, he is in  
 the seneschalles tent. A madame sayd the  
 kynge dyd ye not se hym nor speake with  
 hym as yet. Yes sy: sayd florence I saw  
 hym whan he dyd fust agaynst sy: Row-  
 lande, who had appeled hym of falsenes  
 bycause of his cosyn the duke of bygoys  
 newe. And I pray you madame sayd  
 Whylp how wente the Justes bytwene  
 them. Sy: there is two ribbes broken in  
 sir Rowlandes syde, & one of hys armes  
 broken asonder, for hys horse fell on him  
 In the name of god said p kynge he knew  
 not as than Arthur, but now I trowe he  
 knoweth some of hys strokes, therfore  
 madame speke for p knyght & be acquy-  
 ted to him, for there is no prynce in al the  
 worlde but p wold be right glad to haue  
 the noble company of hym, and as I vn-  
 derstande he hath offred hym selfe to be  
 your knyght, therfore receyue hym & re-  
 capne hym in suche wyse that he escape  
 not fro you, for ye can not tel what nece-  
 paraunture ye shal haue of hym here af-  
 ter. Cosyn sayd florence ye say ryghte  
 well, the mayster shal go for hym, and so  
 he dyd. Than the kynge sayd to duke  
 Whylp hys newe, a sy: where is beco-  
 me the good and faythfull company that  
 ye promysed to thys knyght now that ye  
 be here and knowe that he is so nere and  
 yet ye make none other semblaunt, ther-  
 with sy: Whylp pte sey te for haster the  
 mayster for to go to Arthur, and as they  
 yssued out of they: tent & there entred the  
 archebysshop. Than the kynge and flo-  
 rence rose and dyd set don ne the bps shop  
 bytwene them.

How that duke Whylp and the  
 mayster wente to fetch Arthur to  
 the kynge of Ozquney and to the  
 fayre florence, Capitulo. lxxvi.

Duke

**D**uke Philip and the mayster entered into the seneschals tent, and there they founde Arthur playng wyth syz wyles. And whan Arthur saw duke Philip he went and embraced him & sayd I ye be right welcom. But quod duke Philip and ye be also here welcom. And sayde Arthur Where is the kyng of ozquene? Certaynly I he is wyth my lady Florence in her tent and he desireth you to come to him. In the name of god sayde Arthur, I praye to god sende hym right good aduventure go we thither and to duke Philip and he wente hande in hande talkyng together, and the mayster the seneschal, syz wyles, syz Ancean, and Wykebar wente after them tyll they came to Florence tent. And whan Florence sawe Arthur her herte began to tremble and sodely blusshed, but there was none that toke hede thereto, for every man to be regarded to Arthur. And than the kyng and the archbishop rose and went and embraced hym, and made him right grete joye, and set hym downe by hym. And than the kyng demaunded of hym howe he had done syth the tyme he sawe hym last. And he answered and said right wel I thanke god and you. Than the kyng layd to Florence, madame beholde here this knyght, for as god helpe me I wolde it had cost me euery pere. xii. thousand pound on the condycyon that he were partakynge to my house, and to be my companyon, and of this I heartely desire requyre hym at Argence, but he than answered me that he had offred his seruyce to you to be your knyght, therfore I saye there is nothyng that can be but ladys winnethal, madame ye haue him where or I am ryght ioyous, and it pleseth me ryght well for ye I had him he shold be yours at your comaundement, ye be a lye Arthur.

a puyssant lady, therfore do him some good & that shall be your honour. I promise him said Florence I shal make hym a grete lord & a puyssant, and she thought in her herte that she wolde make him as grete a lord as she was a lady. And whan Arthur I thanke your grace, & the mayster he stode vpon his fete, & he had a gentyll body both saye & by, and soo well proportioned in all his members & the more y Florence beheld him the more he pleased her, there was no lady there but that they wysshed that he had bene partraingge to their lordes & husbandes, & as they were talkyng thus roghter chere came to Florence a messenger fro her father the king Emenus, and he shewed her howe he had her self comaund hym to her, and desired her to go hastily to dyner, for he was comyng, and wold lodge the same nighte nere to her tente. Than Florence made semblaunce as though she hadde been glad of this comyng, howe be it she was not content in her herte with this happy comyng, for she had thought to haue spoken with Arthur after dinnere, and whan she perceived her & she had not spoken with hym at good leysure syth he came. Than went she to dyner, & the king of ozquene and the bishop late downe together, and Florence in the myddes of the table, and duke Philip and Arthur late downe together and so all other barons, & they were ryghte rychevely serued, and by that tyme the tentes and pavilion of kyng Emenus were come and pyghte by not far fro Florence tent, thar there came squiers and officers by grete companyes, and euery man in his owne offyce dyd thei payn to make all thyng ready agens the kynges comyng for the kyng was comyng righte nere. And whan the kyng of ozquene had dynered he mounted on his horse, and toke

## The story of Arthur

Philip and the byshop and Arthur and all other barons and knyghtes, & all they did as moche honour to Arthur as they coude do. And thus they rode forth tyl at the last they encountred kynge Emenus who had in his company two. M. horses. Than the kynge of orqueny and the archebyshop byde salute the kinge, and so rode nere him, and the kynge betwene them bothe. Than Philip and Arthur came togyder, and Philip byde salute the kynge ryght sweetly, & so than duke Philip & Arthur rode forth befoze the kynge and duke Philip helde his hande euer on Arthurs shoulde, and Florence fene shall, & sye Wyllis & sye Wyllisbar & sye Ansell rode euer aboute hym & made to hym ryght great ioye. And at the laste kynge Emenus perceyued Arthur and sawe how all þe ioye was made bycause of hym, & he sawe well howe that he was a ryght goodly knyght. Than the kynge demaunded of the archebyshop his brother and of the kynge of Orqueny what knyght he myghte be that duke Philip helde so moche company withall. By my sayth sye sayde the byshop he is a ryghte gracious knyght & a chualtrous of hys dedes, and there shewed the kynge how that he had fustred with sye Rowlande, and howe that he ouerthrewe hym hors and all to the earth. Than the king of orqueny sayd, sye it is the same knyght þe ye haue herof so moche honoure and hys prouesse reputed of. Saynt mary sayd the kynge I am aghamed þe I haue made him no better semblant than I haue done therfore for goddes sake cause hym to come to me. Than sye Mozaus who was fene shall vnto the kynge wente for him. Than Arthur retourned & wente to the kynge & byde of hys bonet, and than the kynge of orqueny put Arthur bytwene

him & kynge Emenus. Than the king said to him, sye ye be ryghte hertely wel come into this my countrie, & sye for goddes sake be not myscontent thowge I haue made none other semblant to you of this tyme. Sye & it spake your grace sayd Arthur there is none suche cause but I am all waies at your commaundement to the uttermost of my small power. Well Arthur said the kinge I thynke that is your name I requyre you be of our company, & be on our partye at this tourney agens the emperour of ynde. Sye sayde the kynge of Orqueny he is all redy on your syde syth he is retayned to my ladye Florence your daughter who hath promised to do moche for hym. Well sayd the kynge that he accomplissheth not I shall fulfyl. Thus they were talking togyder tyl they came to the knynges tent, & there he alighted fro his horse & entred into his paupylon, the kynge of Orqueny & the byshop, Philip, & Arthur folowed after the kynge. Than the kynge commaunded that there shold be a ryche paupylon pyghte bypynnyng to his, for Arthur to lodge in, so he wold haue hym nere to his persone as longe as the turnay endured. And therewith came Florence to se the kynge her fader. Than the kynge rose & embraced her and set her downe bytwene hym and the kynge of orqueny. And her fader demaunded of her howe she byde. And she answered & sayd sye ryght well I thanke your grace, than she sawe toher as the byshop helde Arthur by the hāde wherof she was right ioyous in her hert. And by that tyme the kynge of Mozaus, and the kynge of valefounde, & the kynge of Imaclite, and sye Wyllis and all the other twelue pees were come in to the felde, for they were all partaynyng to the kynge Emenus, and so they came where

where as he was, than there was great  
ioye and feast made, for than the courte  
was noble and great. Than the mayster  
made great ioie of the kyng of baleisoud  
for he was his father, and he in like case  
was glad to se his sonne. And all these  
kynges had wel in their company at the  
last a thousand knyghtes, and they wer  
all lodged aboute the medowe, the why-  
che lodgyng endured well the space of  
two leges. Thus the kyng & florence and  
all other made together ryght great ioy  
and myche in the kynges pavilion, and  
the kyng of aquenes helde florence in  
his armes and lap. Saye laoy my nere  
here that be sent noble chivalrye done to  
in this chye oapes for your sake. Truly  
colyn saide florence here that be some  
I had rather were hens. Certainly ma-  
dame said the kyng, so goeth the worlde  
some to pleasure, and some to anoyse.  
Than he sayde to kyng Emendus, sy-  
beholde here in myne armes a ryche re-  
sure, he that shall haue her ought to kepe  
and cherishe her ryght derelye. As god  
helpe me sayde the kyng a ryche man &  
a noble and a puyssaunt shall haue her  
who is the temperour of pnde & more. And  
rohan Arthur herde that he was so soze  
dyspleased in his herte that he could spe-  
ke no worde of a great season for all the  
golde of the worlde, nor though his lyfe  
had layue in reopard thereof. Sy-  
sayd florence parauenture the temperour loueth  
an other better than me, than he will let  
me go. Than mayster Steuen rose vp &  
monge them all & sayde to the kyng, sy-  
noble and puyssaunt kyng aboue al other  
I requyre your grace of a lytel audience  
here before your grace & all the ridders  
of Borelors, & before al other that be here  
present, for I trust that my saying shall  
turne you bothe to profyte & to great ho-

nour. Than sayd the kyng I am content  
that ye speke. Sy-  
sayd the mayster it is  
of trouthe that there is no creature that ought  
to loue any thyng so well as his owne  
people felthe and bloud, the which every  
man shold loue, & holde ryght derely ac-  
cording to the propyr of the soule & the  
gard of the body & honour of the person.  
For he that loneth not his owne, loneth  
folshy for I say these wordes because  
of my ladye florence here presente who  
is of your felthe & bloud, for she is your  
owne proper doughter, it is of trouthe ye  
are despons to assure & to mari her to  
honour of your person, and to the hono-  
r and profyte of al your noble reime, wher  
in ye doo ryghte nobly for it is hye tyme  
I say not agenst it, howe be it ryghte hye  
and myghty pynce in doyng of this ye  
oughte to regarde and conside these til-  
things that I haue thewed your grace  
here before, that is to say, to the propyr of  
the soule, to the sauegard of the body, and  
to the honour of her and of you, and of al  
your reime. First as to the propyr of the  
soule ye ought to regard to whome ye  
will gyue her in mariage, & to se that it be  
not agenst her hert, so that she shall haue  
none occasion to hate him that she shall ha-  
ue: butt that it be to the pleasure of her hert  
and contentment of her mynd, for yf it be  
agenst her hert than shall she hate him, &  
so shall there neuer be tist nor peace, nor  
good loue betwene the, the whyche shall  
turne to deadly syn because of the hate &  
grete rumour that shall be betwene the and  
to this world be yf for her soul, and secod-  
ly sy- ye ought to regard the sauegarde of  
her body, for ye know wel how that my la-  
dy your doughter is both yong & tender  
which be euer sweetly brought up, wher-  
fore it is no nede to send her into a stra-  
nge sauage coutry, where as the wyte & re-

## The story of Arthur

ggon is contrary to her nature and fau-  
garde of her body, she is a hye & a mygh-  
ty lady in her owne countre, what meede is  
it than to sende her any further, and yf ye  
goue her suche a husbnde as Wylle lede  
her into a ferre straunge countre, & para-  
uenture she loueth hym not, but inward-  
ly dooth hate hym, what is a woyle mala-  
dy to the body than hate & dyspleasure &  
can not remedy it, so saye I than yf the cou-  
ntre be ayen. her nature, and also that she  
hate hym that she must abyde with, I re-  
pute than my lady in a maner as deed, &  
thys saye I ye oughte to regarde the ho-  
nour of her and also of poure selfe and of  
all your countre in consyderynge how y  
marriage made agaynst hearte and good  
accoorde oftentymes hath an yll ende, for  
yf my lady poure daughter who is right  
noble and puyssaunt & ryche of hauoye  
and of londres, and also she hath frendes  
ryghte hye and doubtable, yf she shoulde  
be incompanyed by marriage to any per-  
sone that shoulde be ayenst her herte and  
Wylle her herte that is so gentyl the whi-  
che can suffre nothyng ayenst her Wylle  
I fere me that she shall doo some thyng  
ayenst hym or ayenst hys the whiche shal  
not solme to her honour nor yet to yours  
therfore saye I it is couenyent that ye regard  
and consyder all thys, and saye I save by  
cause ye haue sayd that bothe noble and  
ryche shall haue her. Who is the emperour  
of ynde the moze, saye I know well that  
my lady dooth hate hym so moche that by  
her Wylle she wold neuer se him moze, nor  
neuer to here spekyng of hym, how be it  
ye wylle nedes that she shall haue hym,  
she dare not dysplease your grace, where-  
fore I fere me that yf she haue hym that  
all these sayd thynges shall fortune, and  
perauenture woyle the whiche shoulde be  
great pite, & also saye I ye knowe well that

it is a longe season agone that ther was  
wrytyng made & sealed by you & by all  
the .xii. peres of your realme y she shoulde  
neuer haue none other creature in mar-  
riage but all onely hym that the ymage  
shoulde giue vnto the chaplet, and as yet  
there was neuer none that assayed it, &  
now saye I here is come all your chynaly,  
therfore holde on forth your tournay and  
let se to whome the pryse shall be gauen,  
and than saye I let the emperour & all y other  
kynges and noble knyghtes come to the  
pauplion where as the ymage is, and to  
whome so euer that she goue the chaplet  
lette him entope it with moche honour.  
Than the kyng of Bormall rose who  
was ryghte auncyent and a wyse prynce  
and moost pseyuent of the kynges coun-  
seyle and sayd, saye I it is trouthe I am your  
man & holde all my realme of you, there-  
fore I owe vnto you sayth and trouthe, &  
also vnto my lady your daughter, & saye I  
for trouthe I wylle bere witnessse and the  
mayster hath sayd to you well and truly  
for saye I yf it be so that ye haue put to your  
seale and were of that accorde, and also  
all these other kynges that be here pre-  
sent, and also all the .xii. peres of your  
realme, saye I save that ye & also all they  
oughte to abyde frendly by your seales  
and accorde as good kynges ought to do  
And whan that the kyng Emecous had  
well vnderstande alle these sayenges he  
knewe well how that they said trouthe,  
and soo he answered and sayde, saye I  
knewe well how that ye haue said right  
well and nobly but it is so that I haue  
promysed so saythfully to this emperour  
that I doubt me yf that I breke my pro-  
messe with hym that he wylle appele me  
of falsenes and soo make moztall warre  
agaynst me. Than the kyng of Orques-  
ney said, saye I yf that the emperour wylle  
moue

move any war agens you by my hande  
he shall be answered right sharply and  
soone, for sye commaunde you men of  
war to be ready on your paste, and we  
shall do our deuoyes on our behalues,  
and so I trust we shall see we hym such  
a fight that he shall be sore encombyed w  
lokyng or numbryng of them, and yf he

will haue batayle one  
knyght agens another  
in y<sup>e</sup> quarrel I am here  
ready and wyl be to ac  
complishe that batayle  
for my lady your dou  
gters sake. Tha<sup>t</sup> he  
saw rose up and sayd  
aloude, so y<sup>e</sup> every ma  
myght wel here him.

Noble & gentyl kyng  
it is no reason that ye  
shold aduencure your  
body agens a knyght &

ye a kyng, but yf my lady should haue  
nede ye shall not lacke of a knyght, for  
beholde me here, who is and euer shall be  
ready to do any thyng that she shall com  
maunde me. And so every man there be  
held hym, for he was maruylous fayne  
& he had on his spycore of scarlet, & why  
he became hym wonder by well & why  
he pleased muche king Emendus and al  
other. Than kyng Emendus sayde, sye  
I se wil how ye be worth a knyght, and  
therfore sye yf any batayle be in this case  
I graue you graunt that ye shall accom  
plishe it. Therwith Arthur kneled down  
and righte humbly thanked hym. Tha<sup>t</sup>  
the kyng of Wykeney toke Arthur by  
the hande and caused hym to set downe  
betwene hym and florence, wherewith  
somwhat she abashed, and as than tho  
se woo louers durst make no grate sem  
blaunt together one to another.

How a great & a pyssant knyght de  
fied Arthur because he sawe by florence  
and byd pul downe a corner of his heuyn  
cheke the which the wynde had blowen  
by, and so Arthur byd Iuste wyth hym  
and byd caste hym to the earth so rudely  
that he was not able to lepe on horsback  
syne monethes after. Cap. lxxviii.



So it was that as the king of wykeney  
& florence & Arthur sat together  
as ye haue herde before, there entred in  
to the paupson a great knyght black of  
bylage, & he was gyft w<sup>th</sup> a grete sword  
& a longe, & bare a grete faucon in his  
hand, & so he came before the kyng & salu  
ted hym and al other, as he y<sup>e</sup> was come  
fro the emperour who as than had pighe  
by his centes at y<sup>e</sup> one end of the medow  
who said, sye kyng Emendus I tel you  
the emperour of ynde wyl be here to mor  
row betwene us for gladly he would speke  
w<sup>th</sup> you as w<sup>th</sup> hym y<sup>e</sup> he entyrelly loueth.  
Tha<sup>t</sup> the king said, sye he shall be welcom  
& to morrow I wyl go to him, but sye as y<sup>e</sup>  
kyng I pray you what people hath he.  
Sye sayd y<sup>e</sup> knyght he is wel to y<sup>e</sup> nabye  
of. vi. m. knyghtes & squyers righte bar  
by a valiant. In the name of god said y<sup>e</sup>  
king that is a fayne company. Than the  
knyghtes

## The story of Arthur

knyght behelde the kynge of orqueny & Arthur, who were salig in florence, & he sawe how Arthur dyessed downe one of the corners of her hevercheffe aboute her necke the whiche had ben blowne by a wynd in the wynde wherwith þe knyght was so: displeased & said to Arthur, sy: knyght saye ladies are moche bounde to you, for ye can appaule & araye ladyes right wel, thet haue of you a good barlet to be in their chambres, for ye can byslype they: go wyne & bere they: curres ryght well. Well sy: sayd Arthur ye maye save your pleasure, it pleaseth me ryght well and not al only for your sake, but because I haue great ioye if I might do any thing that might be to their pleasures. What sy: of the knyght I beleue your sadet was a preeft, for ye can right well preeche, certainly it is for no good þe ye drawe so nye to þe lady. whyle I see of Arthur & ye thike any yll in the mater speke it & remedy it & ye can. Sy: of the knyght I thynke þe ye haue forseyte with your neyghboure. Than mayster Breuen sayd sy: knyght ye be not wyse thus here to reporte vylany of my lady, for ye saye þe she hath forseyte with this knyght, for he can not forseyte with her but þe she must be accorded with him, therfore herein ye report vylany of them bothe. Than Arthur slept by in great displeasure & said to the knyghte, sy: ye grudge with any thing in your herte she wett wyrtly. Sy: said þe knyght with a right good will with a spere or two with you here without in this saye medowe. Hasarde might he haue that refuseth you sayd Arthur. Than the knyght despyed of the kynge to haue armure, and sayde sy: I wyll styke of the heed of this knyght or it be nyght. Mary said the kynge of orqueny than what ye be yll come hither. Doo these, knyghtes

at each them & wente forth into the felde. Than the kynge Emendus went out of his tent, & so dyde al other to se þe Justices bytwene them, & the archbishop helde florence by the hande. Than one deliuered a great spere to Arthur but it pleased him not & demanded a bygger, & so than there was brought to him suche a spere that should haue greatly encoraged an other knyght to haue bozne it all onely, & that Arthur dyde because he was displeased with the knyght, & also because he wylle well þe al the hole noble company of kinges & knyghtes should se whether he had honour or shame, & specially because the noble florence should behold him, & so therewith these knyghtes ran togyder rudely & the knyght strake Arthur so vertuously that his spere shered all to peces. & Arthur strake him so rudely in the myddes of his shelde þe he claued it asunder in two peces, wherwith he made him to tourne his heles vpwarde, & brast asunder þe arson of his savel & partelles and gythes went cleue asunder, & knyght & all went to the erth in suche wyse þe with the fal þe knyght was bysed, so þe was not able to lepe on horsebacke of. vi. monthes, after, & so lay a great season in a wounde þe euery man had wounde he had ben deed, & when florence sawe þe she was neuer so forful before, & said to her selfe this knyght ought right well to be in the loue of a right hie & a pusillat damopell. Than the kynge Emendus had great miraille fro whence þe suche strokes should come & said, sy: knyghte what so ever ye be god encrease your honour, for as for boite & balvauntnes ye haue sufficient all redy. Than all the other kinges prayled hym moche, & eche of the wished that he were pertapynge to they: household. Than the kynge of orqueny ran, straight to Arthur

and

and embraced hym and said. A dere frend  
ye haue rendezed to this knyght of sucher ser  
upre suche gouerdon, and so toke a lede  
him into his tent, and there he was vnar  
med. Than kyng Smendus caused the  
knyght whā he was receiued to be borne  
into sy: Rowlandes tent to bere hym w  
pany. And whan sy: Rowland knew all  
this how y he had Justed wyth Arthur a  
howe he had speede he had so greare Joye  
that nre hande he was therby all hole of  
his hurtes, & sayd to the knyght, sy: ye be  
hertely Welcome, for ye haue founde my

phylisyon, sy: the letuary y he  
hath giue you to drynke is full  
stronge, & trowe there be ther  
in more vitteynes than swete  
nes, therfore frende come on to  
me & kepe wel your clothes as  
I do mine. Than the knyght  
said, sy: how is it to you so: as  
for me I ensure you I am soze  
dysleaso, at whiche wordes all  
y were there dyd laugh, y whp  
che sayenge was tolde to kyng  
Smendus, wher at he had great  
spote: so Arthur Wente to the  
pauilion y the kyng had made  
to be ordeyned for hym, & flo  
rence & the byshop & mayster  
Dreuen went to her tent, than  
he toke y mayster apart & said  
mayster how say ye by Arthur  
is he not a vertuous knyght &  
a valpant aboue all other, than

he ye y he hath ony loue towarde me. Ye  
truly madame I knowe Well more than  
to any creature lyvinge. A than geatly  
mayster q: flo:re synde some meanes y  
be & I might speke togyther, for I wolde  
fayne know somwhat of his herte by his  
owne reporte. Madame q: the mayster I  
wol do what I can & y shalbe to morow

after souper, & soo as for y night they de  
parted, & euery body went to rest tyll the  
next moynynge that the kyng & all other  
were vp.

How florence & Arthur spake togyther  
at good leyser at the ende of the forest, &  
there promysed eche to loue other, & there  
the quene Droserypne appered to them  
and shewed to florence how that Arthur  
loued her truly, and how that they shoulde  
haue eche other by the waye of matage,  
but sy:st they shoulde endure great payne  
and trouble.

Capitulo. lxxviii.



**I**n the next moynynge the kyng  
arose and apparayled hym selfe  
to go and meere the Emperoure  
but florence wol: eno: go nor  
suffre none of her compayne to go,  
faynyng all onely mayster Dreuen, and  
that was to the enent to speke wyth. Ar  
thur. So thus rode forth kyng Smendus  
and

## The story of Arthur

and all hys company, & Arthur rode tal-  
kyng wryth the kynge of oꝛquency, & so  
than the mayster came & dyd salute them  
and they hym, than the mayster sayd to  
Arthur in consyle, syꝛ my lady florence  
doth salute you by me as she þ̄ wolde to  
you bothe honour & profyte. A mayster  
sayd Arthur I praye to god send her as  
moche honoure and welch as I wolde to  
myne owne propre persone, for truly she  
is a lady of great honour, & I am greatly  
dyspleased in my herte þ̄ the kynge hath  
made me to ryde wryth hym, for now I  
may not se her grace the whyche greueth  
me right sore. Why sayd the mayster wol-  
de ye than gladly se her. Ye syꝛ & Arthur  
gladlier than either father oꝛ mother, and  
yet I am sure they wolde be gladder to se  
me. Than I belene said the maister that  
Whan ye se her yet wolde ye be gladder to  
speke with her. Syꝛ truly mayster I had  
neuer so great Joy as I shuld haue if I  
myght come to speke wryth her grace but  
I se well that Wyl not be. Well Arthur  
frende sayd the mayster loue ye wel than  
to speke with her. A mayster ye haue ma-  
de couenaunt with me oꝛ thys þ̄ I shuld  
speke wryth her, but I se well ye haue for-  
gotten it, but & ye wolde do it I wolde be  
your knyght. Well syꝛ and I cause you to  
speke wryth her in pryuate oꝛ it be nyght  
wyl ye than gyue me a gyfte that I shal  
demande of you. Gyue you mayster sayd  
Arthur ye truly, and what so euer ye de-  
maunde of me & it be the heed of thys em-  
peroure that is here comynge, for and ye  
Wyl I shal go stryke it of incontynent.  
Certaynly syꝛ said the maister it shal not  
cost you so moche for my demaunde is no  
more than yf I fynde the meanes that ye  
shal haue in maryage the noble florence  
wyl ye than agayne fynde the wayes þ̄  
I may haue the fayre lady margarete of

Argenton by the way of maryage who  
is at the porte norye, for I loue her wryth  
all myne entyre herte. And whan Arthur  
herde þ̄ he was neuer soo Joyfull befoꝛe,  
and embraced hym with all his herte and  
demanded of hym Whether he had onye  
comfoꝛte of her oꝛ not. And he answered  
that he trusted ryght well to speke, & the  
rather by his meanes. Well mayster sayd  
Arthur yf she be ones agreed to you feare  
no man lyuynge that shoulde take her fro  
you as long as I am able to ryde oꝛ goo  
but that he shal leſe hys heed in the qua-  
rell. So sayd the maister I hertely than-  
ke you, and syꝛ I shal tell you what ye  
shal doo thys nyght after souper, kepe  
your selfe in your tent close and goo not  
to the courte, & than I shal come to you  
and byng wryth me the lady florence, &  
there ye shal speke wryth her at good ley-  
ser, but than be ye noo thyng abashed  
but humbly desyre her loue and sauoure  
in all goodly maner, and habandon your  
selfe in all poyntes to be her knyght, but  
though that she make it straunge & deny  
you at the fyrst, yet be not ashamed ther-  
with & she shal loue you the better, wher-  
by ye shal all the rather deserue her grace,  
for than she shal know that of great har-  
dynes and valure of hearte it is come on  
you to take in hande so hye an enterpryse  
Gentyll mayster sayd Arthur thynke on  
this and I shal be your knyght. Well syꝛ  
sayd the mayster I wyl departe fro you  
as now bicause none shoulde mistrust our  
talkyng. Than the mayster rode forth in  
to the company of the kynge of balefou  
his father, and Arthur rode into the com-  
pany of duke philyp. And kynge Emen-  
bus rode forth so longe tyll at the last he  
encountred the emperoure, and there they  
made great chere eche to other, & soo rode  
together cheke by cheke tyl they came to  
they;

their tentes. And than the prestes were  
redy to go to masse, & so they herde masse  
all togyder. Than after masse the mper-  
our beyng in his tent with king Eme-  
dus and all other nobles that were there  
assembled at that tyme. Thā king Eme-  
dus sayd to hym, sy: it hath bene o: this  
tyme agreed and accorded with all these  
four kynges, & all these .xii. peres of my  
realme, as well by othe & assuraunce as  
by sealyng of certayne charters made &  
affirmed of the same couenautes that no  
creature shoulde haue my daughter Flo-  
rence in maryage but al only that persō  
that the ymage who is in Florence paup-  
lyon shold gyue vnto the chaplet that she  
holdeth in her handes, for soe it is desti-  
nyed, wherfoze & it please you. Whan the  
tournay is done ye shal go to the ymage  
and I bpleme she wyll gyue it you, & per  
out othes & assuraunce keppe & bpholde  
Verily sy: sayde the mperour I am well  
concent, chynking surely to haue had the  
chaplet. well sy: sayde the kyng ye haue  
brought hither morhe people, & also we  
haue a great cōpany with vs, wherfoze  
I fere that yf we shoulde tournay togider  
all at ones that there shold be done mor-  
che hurte, wherby here after shold ensue  
great hatred & enuy, wherfoze me thyn-  
keth best that one of your barōs take in  
hande the tournay as to mo:owe with a  
thousande knyghtes in his company, &  
I shal set one of my knyghtes apensst hym  
with as many in his company, and so let  
vs do all foure dates one after an other,  
and I thinke this is a better waye than  
all to fyght at ones. Certaynly sy: sayde  
the mperour ye saye ryght well, & all this  
pleaseth me. Thā stept forth the erle of  
the yle perdue, whereas Gouvernar had  
ben with the countesse all night, & he de-  
syred of the mperour that he might haue  
Arthur.

the tournay the fyrste daye, the wyche  
the mperour dyde graunt hym in a good  
herte. Than came forth the kyng of Or-  
quency and he desyred of kyng Eme-  
dus to answer the erle the same daye, &  
he had graūt of his request. And the kyng  
of orquency toke Arthur & Gouvernar by  
theyr handes and sayde, sy: I retayne  
you apensst to mo:owe to be on my party  
And whan the erle of the yle perdue sawe  
Gouvernar he made to hym ryghte greates  
chere. Than kyng Emedus toke leue  
of the mperour, & so euery man departed  
in to theyr owne tentes. Than the kyng  
of orquency wente aboute and dyde chose  
oute suche knyghtes as he wold haue wyl  
it was tyme to go to their dyner. Than  
was water brought forth, & so than euery  
man wente to the courte who he wold  
Than the kyng Emedus and the other  
four kynges were set at the great table  
and duke Phylip & Arthur were set next  
them, & there they were richely serued and  
made great feest and ioye. And whan all  
the clothes were taken vp, than kyng  
Emedus & the other four kynges sate  
them downe togyder on a clothe of sylke  
And the kyng of orquency toke Arthur  
by the hande, to whome he made ryghte  
greate ioye and bare to him moch honour  
And as they thus talked togyder, there  
came to them the archbysshop. Than  
mayster Steuen stode before the kyng  
& sayde, sy: my lady Florence your dought-  
er hath sere me to you, for she hath herde  
saye howe that the kyng of Orquency  
hath taken on him the tournay as to mo-  
towe apensst the Erle of the yle perdue, &  
sy: because she knoweth well how that  
the mperour hath many good knyghtes,  
therfoze sy: yf it please you she wold le-  
pe on her palfrey as to mo:owe and come  
and se the tournay & playe of these good  
knyghtes

## The story of Arthur

knights. In the name of God sayde the king of vale foure my lady shal do right well in her so doyng, and I am sure the kynge wyl geue her licence. **Sy** truly **With** a ryght good wyl sayde the kynge syth it pleaseth you, but I doubte me moche that the herte shal annoy her, and also the grete pryse of horses & knyghtes shal trouble her. Well **sy** sayde the maister of that she shal be taken good hede of, and **sy** my lady desyeth also that Arthur her newe retayned knyght myghte tournay to morowe a peny them without, for she wyl se hym tournay, & she wyl sende to be of his route her sene shal, **sy** **Wysse** bar, **sy** Ansell & **sy** **Wides** of valefoude, and so she wyl knowe to morowe what all these knyghtes wyl do. It pleaseth me ryght well sayde the kynge. And whan Arthur herde that he had great ioye and sayd, I am all at the commaundement of my lady, and I thanke her graces that it hath pleased her to retayne me for one of her knyghtes, for in dede so I am & wyl be euermore. Well sayde the maister sythe it is so that Arthur shal be to morowe in my ladyes route it shal be good that he go & spothe him with them to be acquainted with them, & to speke and comyn to gyder, for by keepynge of company togyder moche loue is attayned. In the name of God said the kyng of orqueney all this is but well sayd. go your waye with him and acquyent ye hym with these other noble knyghtes, & he thought in himselfe that Florence would gladly se hym, and that he perceyued wel syth y<sup>e</sup> time that he caused hym to syt downe by her, for than he perceyued somwhat her lowly countenance to hymwarde, and also kynge Emendous was content that he shold go, howebeit the maister made noo great haste because that wone shold mystrust him. Than the king

of orqueney said to Arthur, **sy** take your leue of the king and of other, & so he byde. Than the maister went strypte to the sene shalles tent, who made hym ryght grete there, & wha that al other knyghtes knew that he was ther thei made to hym grete sygne of loue, and desyred hym that he would not depart out of theyr company and so he promysed them to do. Than the maister wente to the saye Florence and sayd, madame Arthur is come to your sene shalles tent, the kynge hath sent hym thider to spothe him, than her herte lepe for ioye and sayd, I maister & whan shal I than se him. Madame said the maister he is as now in the company of your noble barons who doeth greatly seck hym, & as yet to cause hym to come fro the in my mynde it wer not wel done, but madame goo to your souper this nyght somwhat betymes, & then sende for your barons & commaunde them to make the redy a peny the mornyng to tournay in the company of Arthur, & than whan they be departed fro you in the meane season that they be aboute theyr besynes ye shal go playe you in the entre of this forest amonge the saye grene okes, & thider shal I bypynge hym to you. Ye saye ryght well said Florence, so be it, than she commaunded to haste her souper, and so wente therto betymes. And Arthur all that season was with the sene shal, & all the other knyghtes for the loue of hym made great ioye & fest tyll souper was past. Than maister Steven sayde to Florence, madame I wyl goo to your knyghtes and cause the to come to you, and than shortly loke that ye delpue them, and than go ye thider as I haue shewyd you, & in y<sup>e</sup> meane tyme I shal kepe company with Arthur. So your waye dere frende sayde Florence and cause them to come to me,  
for

for I shal kepe longe tyl I haue deli-  
uered the m. Than the mayster departed  
fro her and went to the seneschals tente,  
and there he found aschan al the barons  
waspyng of thei handes talkyng of  
worues and laughyng at syr Byslebar  
because he sayd he loued better to be stry-  
ken, than to stryke an other, for he sayde  
it greatly anoyed hym the dyshonoure of  
myselfe or of an other, for he was of the  
opynyon y he could not be stryken with  
out his wyfe were yll, for he sayd that yf  
pynes were ones mounted vp into the  
bert of a woman, it were harde to with-  
dawe her fro her enterpryse, and yf his  
wyfe dyd yll, the shame therof is to her  
and to her lynnage, and not to hym, for  
he shoulde be angry and displeased wyth  
her yll dedes or vylany. And when they  
sa we the mayster they ran to hym on  
all parties, and played wyth hym ryght  
froely. Than the seneschal demaunded  
of hym what tydynges. And he answe-  
red and sayde, lordes my ladye florence  
wold fayne speke with you incontynent  
therfore go your wayes shortly to her,  
but for goddes sake carpe not longe wyth  
her, for she is a lytel dyscaled in her head  
go your wayes and I shal kepe compa-  
ny wyth Arthure in the meane season, he  
and I wyl go walke together. Than al  
these lordes and knyghtes apparayled  
them and went to florence. And than  
she commaunded them that they shoulde  
make all thynges redye agaynst the nexte  
day for the tournay, and that they shoulde  
kepe company wyth Arthure as their chiefe  
captayne that day. Than her seneschal  
sayd, madame than it is nedefull for vs  
to retorne to our lodgynges to make all  
thynges redy. In goddes name sayd flo-  
rence go on your wayes, and so they de-  
parted, and in the meane season maister

breuenled Arthure into the wood. And  
when florence hadde deliuered all her  
knyghtes, she called to her the queene of  
Orquene, in whome she trusted aboue  
al other, and two other damoyelles and  
sayd to them, faye ladies let vs goo a  
lytel into yonder wood to spoote vs, for  
I haue a lytel payne in my head. Whan  
me let vs go sayd the queene of orquene.  
And so they two wente toward the forest  
talkyng together, and the other two da-  
moyelles came after, and at the last they  
came vnder the shadow of the faye gre-  
ne oke, and there they sate them down.  
And the mayster and Arthure were in the  
forest not farre fro them. And at the last  
florence and the queene perceyued them.  
Than the queene sayd, madame I se you  
der the mayster & an other knyghte wyth  
hym, but I wote not who it is. And flo-  
rence answered & sayd, madame that is  
trouthe, I am glad that I se them, for I  
haue a lytel to speake with the mayster,  
therfore madame reste you here a lytel  
whyle & I wyl go and speake with him.  
Whan she sayd the queene by your lycence  
I must also depart & go speake wyth the  
countesse of the perydus who is come  
to this courney, therfore I wil go to her  
and than the mayster may come to you.  
In goddes name sayde florence so he is.  
Than the queene departed, & the mayster  
and Arthure came to florence and so se  
them downe together. Than the mayster  
sayd, madame beholde here your knyght  
and true louer. Whan she sayde florence  
he is ryght hertely welcome, for hym com-  
myng pleaseth me ryght well. Whan she  
sayd Arthure god geue you as muche ho-  
nour & to as I wold to the person that  
I loue best of al the world. Whan quene  
the mayster as god helpe me I am in cer-  
tayne y he woulde you moze honour than

## The Story of Arthur

any person spurnge, for ye haue his hert  
 and faithfull loue more than any creature  
 of the worlde, and madame to proue that  
 this is true enquire of him the trouthe, &  
 he is so gentyll and meke that he can not  
 hyde his mynde fro you, and madame I  
 praye you be not dyspleased, for I muste  
 nedes goo speke with my lady the quene  
 of oxford, and soo he rose & wente bys  
 waye and left Florence and Arthur to-  
 gyder. Than Florence demaunded of Ar-  
 thur of whens he was. And he answered  
 and sayd, madame and it lyke your grace  
 I am of the realme of fraunce. And of what  
 bygnage be ye come sayde Florence I re-  
 quyre you tell me the trouthe. Madame  
 sayd he ye be so hye a person that I oughte  
 not to hyde any thing fro your grace, ma-  
 dame knowe ye for trouthe that I am the  
 all only son of the duke of britayne. That  
 is noble ynough said Florence, but by þ  
 sayth that ye owe to me who is the perso-  
 of the world that ye loue best and would  
 haue her loue and acquyntaunce, is she  
 in your countre or elles where. He we me  
 the trouthe & hyde nothing fro me I re-  
 quyre you, & what she is that ye would be  
 moost ioyous to haue her loue, name her  
 to me by the earth that ye owe to all the  
 sacramentes of holy chyrche. Madame  
 sayd Arthur I requyre your grace to par-  
 don me, for she may be such a person that  
 ye I should name her ye would perauens-  
 ture thinke in me grete sorow, for she may  
 be suche one that she wyl not let her hert  
 in so lowe a place, nor yet I thinke I can  
 wyll here me, therefore it is better to me  
 to be styll than to speke so. Truly said  
 Florence that is had in the herte is had in  
 the mouth & speche, therefore she we me  
 wherder ye loue any lady or damoyzell in  
 all the worlde or not. Madame truly I  
 loue one as faithfully as herte of man

can thinke. Ye sayd Florence but dooth  
 she knowe that ye loue her. As god helpe  
 me madame maye, why spake ye neuer to  
 her of þ mater. So truly madame sayd  
 Arthur. And how is it that ye loue her &  
 neuer liked her therof, in that it shoulde  
 seme to me that ye loued her not, for it is  
 moche payne for the mouth to retayne and  
 kepe close the secret wyll of the herte,  
 for lightly the desyre of the hert putteth  
 outwarde the word of the mouth, as the  
 wynde putteth away the smoke, & howe  
 should we knowe that ye loue her and it  
 be not shewed her, & ye she loue you wyth-  
 out speking eche of you to other. What  
 tope shall there be bytwene you, of your  
 hertes know not the willes eche of other  
 as moche auayeth the two howelles in a bi-  
 che and no man to walke with them, as  
 two persons to loue togider and none of  
 them to speke to other, therefore Arthur  
 shewe me surely ye she ye loue would  
 geue you audience should it any thinge  
 touche you on the quicke or not. Ma-  
 dame I shall tell you the trouthe as God  
 helpe me spekyng with her that I loue  
 should gretefully reconforte me, for the sa-  
 lutacion that ye sent me this laste daye  
 by the mayster was more ioyfull to me  
 than to haue had all the worldes treasure,  
 why doo ye let so moche by that in flage-  
 or why doo ye loue it so moche. Madame  
 for the loue of you that hyde sende it to  
 me. Arthur than me thynketh ye haue  
 loue to me. Madame as god helpe me þ is  
 trouthe more than to any other personie of  
 the world. Well Arthur by the faith that  
 ye owe vnto your baptysm is ther no loue  
 in you that surmounteth this loue that  
 ye haue to me, shewe me the very trouthe.  
 So Madame by the faith that I owe  
 vnto God neyther to fader nor moder  
 nor to any other personie of the world

And

And wold ye sayd florence be glad and  
I loued you agayne. A dere lady I haue  
netter had noz can not haue so great toy  
Well sayd florence it is but foly that ye  
haue sette your herte on me, for yf I lo-  
ued you agayne ye sholde be shortly lapy-  
ne yf it were knowen, for ye may se here  
this emperour who doth greatly enfor-  
ce hym to haue me and he is a gret man  
bothe of haupour and of frendes, and al-  
so my lozde and father and al these othe-  
rour kinges wyl al runne on you to sle  
you, therfore Arthur aduise you wel, for  
whan one begynneth a mater, it is great  
wylsome to regarde and beholde what  
ende it wyl come vntoo, and the ende of  
this enterpryse is but your deyth. Ma-  
dame sayd Arthur for all that yf I knew  
it should please your grace I wolde care  
for nothyng elles, for I wolde neyther  
dout emperour noz kyng yf I had your  
noble accorde, for yf there were any that  
wolde make any busynes in that case I  
should shew hym o: this yere wente out  
more than an hundred thousand bryght  
sheldes oute of fraunce, noz they should  
nochaue so stronge a castell o: cite but  
that I wolde byngge it down to the har-  
de earth. Why sayd florence for to haue  
me woulde ye o: durst ye tha begyn war  
agenst so many noble and hye riche and  
myghty persones as be here, haue ye so  
good a herte o: hardynesse. Madame ye  
truly by the fayth that I owe vnto you  
and it were agenst all the world. Arthur  
frend sayd florence I can not se the ma-  
ner howe ye myght haue me, but youre  
thought in this matter may be to your do-  
mage, o: parauenture dech may happely  
come to you shortly, therfore good frende  
wythdrawe your loue, and than doo ye  
wylself, and because such a man as ye be  
hath thoughte to loue so hye a person as  
Arthur.

I am, I wyl make to you amendes for  
your good wyl, therfore I gyue to you  
the port nor the wyche ye haue ache-  
ued, worth xx. thousande pounde of yere-  
ly lond, and leue ye this foly as in louing  
of me, for ye shall fynde ynough desyre.  
Why madam wyl ye than gyue me lond  
and goodes to thence that I shoulde  
leue louyng of your grace, certainly ma-  
dame I wyl none of youre londes, I lo-  
ue you wyth al my herte, and wil neuer  
take it from you, I care not for your ry-  
chesse where as I should lese your loue,  
for I thanke god I am ryche ynough, for  
as god helpe me yf I myght haue youre  
loue I wolde desire no moze welth in all  
this world. Well Arthur sayd florence  
is this than surely you trespas. Ye truly  
madame wythoute any saynyng. Well  
good frend Arthur sayd florence than  
be of a good herte, for by the fayth that I  
owe vnto you, ye be in the waye to haue  
that ye desyre for, yf ye be of a good and  
faythfull herte to me warde, I promys  
you to be in lyke case wyth you, what soo-  
uer fall therof, therfore be ye hardy and  
couragious, and shewe your selfe so to-  
morrow in this tourney that every man  
may haue cause to doubt you. Madame  
sayd Arthur, that lozde that fourmed all  
the world send youre haboundant grace  
bothe vounte and valure, for now that I  
haue your loue I am ryche ynough, for  
I desyre no moze of god, and I shall be  
true to you whyle my life endureth. wel  
myne owne true louer sayd florence I  
shal tell you what ye shal do, I wil that  
ye shall be too morowe in the tourney in  
the company of the kyng of Aqueney  
who is my colyn Germaine, and I wil  
that fro hens forth he be your companion  
and that ye loue hym, and I shall desyre  
hym euer to increase your honour, in as  
much

## The story of Arthur

moche as he may, and I shall sende vnto you to geue you attendaunce my seneſchal and other of my knightes, and they shall be of your route, and there I desyre you do suche dedes of armes that it may sounde to your honour, and to the rest a peas of my herte, for my herte shall be repassed and noursished with the good renowne of your hys proweſſe, I maye not lōg talke with you at this time, nor so often as my herte wold, but alwayes sende me your wyll & mynde by mayster Breun, and I shall sende myne agayne vnto you, kepe secreete this mater how so euer ye do, for elles moche harme or euyl myght perauenture happen to fall to vs by false enuy, be ye alwaye true & faythfull and I shall doo my payne to bypunge you to honoure. And as they were thus talkynge togyder there yssued out of the forest Proserpyne quene of the fayry, & of the castell of hurtebyse, where as Arthur had ben with the wounded knight And she dyde spt downe by Arthur, and bothe the louers knewe nothyng thereof tyll she was set, and as soone as Arthur sawe her he knewe her ryght well, and dyde salute her, and she hym agayne and florence also, and she said to Arthur I sende now haue ye that your hert hath lōge despyred for, therefore now be in peas and ioye, and loue your louer with true and faythfull herte. I am, daughter florence I sawe not you for I was in your bedde, & there I made knowlodge to you of this man, beholde here Arthur your true louer who faythfully & wryth good herte loueth you, therefore saye daughter loue hym agayne, for I dyde desteny hym to you in your natiuite in the mount of aduentures. and at the same tyme I destenyd also that ye shold in all thinge resemble vnto me. Than Arthur be-

helde the in bothe one after an other, and so perceyued well that they were lyke in all thynges, for there was no creature though he were neuer soo crafty that yf he behelde wel at lēgth them both coude not dyscryue the one fro the other they resembled so nere togyder. Than she sayd to florence beholde here your louer, and I wyll bere wytnesse yf he is at this time the moost true louer that lyueth, for I haue ryghte well proued hym, and than she recounted to florence how that she had despyred his loue in the forest, and also caused hym to come vnto the castell of hurtebyse and there dyd as moche as she coude to enuyle his mynde to cause hym to loue her and also how she made other to tempte hym, and how all that wolde not auayle, for alwayes he was in one ferme popynt, wherat florence right sweetly dyde smile. Than Proserpyne sayd to Arthur, frende ye shall haue her in marriage, but first ye must suffre grete pame And saye florence bycause that the emperoure and the kynge your fader be grete togyder, therefore your fader wyll be right sore dyspleid with you, in suche wyse that yf he myghte haue you at that tyme he woulde put you bothe to death but for al that be not abashed, for I shall make the peas betwene you ryght well, there is no grete lone betwene him and the emperour, but I promyse you or all be done I shall cause as grete hate to be bytwene them, in so moche that eche of the shall defie other to the deeth, wherfore liue ye in rest and peas and loue eche other faythfully, and I shall thinke ryght well on euery thyng that shall be behouable for you in this maier, and so thus I bequethe you bothe to God for thys tyme. So than the quene Proserpyne rose and wente her waye so sodeinly that none of them

them wylt where that she was become  
 wherof they had grete maruayle. Than  
 florence made a token to mayster steu-  
 en that he shoulde come to thepm, and  
 whan he was come she said. After he  
 holde Arthur here I deliuer hym to you  
 and loke that ye take good hede to hym,  
 and shewe to my cosyn the kynge of Br-  
 queney that I send hym to hym, and say  
 that I bespye hym to thynke to do hym  
 as muche honoure to morow as he can  
 do for my sake, and good swete lover Ar-  
 thur thynke ye to morow how that ye are  
 a lover to a fayre gentil damoyll, & to  
 a ryght noble lady & a ryche giue ye gys-  
 ses largely to these noble knyghtes both  
 harnys and horse the which shal make  
 you to be beloued of euery body, for I bi-  
 leue the tyme wyl come that we shal ha-  
 ue neede of frendes, there is noo sweter  
 thyng than largely to gyue, for thetyr  
 of centymes all yll wyl is appeased, and  
 mayster I charge you to deliuer to hym  
 what so euer he wyl haue, Arthur now  
 go on your way and lodge in the tente of  
 the king my father hath ordeyned for you  
 and loke ye be fre & large and giue wylch  
 good herte and so as for this tyme adew  
 myne owne dere lover and so for a tyme  
 bzaunce kyssed hym and than she depart-  
 ed and wente to the queene of Brqueney.  
 And Arthur and the mayster went to the  
 seneschals tente, and there they encoun-  
 tred Gouernar and Bawdewyn. Than  
 wylch in a whyle Arthur toke leue of the  
 seneschal and of al other that were there  
 and so departed and went to the kynges  
 tent, and by the way he mette the kynge  
 of Brqueney, who issued out of the kyn-  
 ge of valefoules tence, who was father  
 vnto mayster steuen, & whan he sawe  
 Arthur and mayster steuen togither he  
 dyd salute them & made to them ryghte

grete chere and lope, and so they went  
 talkynge togither tyll they came to his  
 tent. Than the mayster toke hym aparte  
 and sayde, spz my lady florence trusteth  
 muche in you, and loueth you ryghte en-  
 tyerly. Wherefore spz she hath sente you  
 here Arthur her owne knyght & putteth  
 him into youre handes, and she bespyeth  
 you that all the honoure and ayd that ye  
 can do, that ye wyl shewe to him to mo-  
 rowe in the tourneye for his sake. And  
 whan the kyng herde that he had ryghte  
 grete lope, and sayd to Arthur, spz by the  
 sayth that I owe vnto the kynge, I pro-  
 myse you that I wyl bere to hym fayth-  
 ful company and true loue, for the loue  
 of my lady and of you, so thus they were  
 so longe togither till it was tyme to go  
 so they restes and so than euery man re-  
 tourned into theirowne tentes and lod-  
 ginges. And the mayster deliuered to  
 Gouernar. xi. horses for Arthur, to chert-  
 ent that he shoulde gyue them away the  
 nexte day.

How that Arthur had the honour  
 of the tourney the fyrst dape, the why-  
 che was made for the fayre florence  
 betwene the kynge Amendus and the  
 Emperour who wolde haue had flo-  
 rence to hys wyfe, on the whyche day  
 Arthur gaue hym seife grete prayse as  
 mong all the batony, in so muche that  
 euery knyghte was glad to be in his  
 company, whereof the fayre florence  
 was right ioroug, for she loued hym  
 aboue all other.

Cap. lxxix.

**I**n the next mornynge all the  
 knynges and other rose & her-  
 de masse, & such as wold to  
 ke a sop in wine, & than eu-  
 ery man Armed hym. Tha Gou-  
 uernar

## The story of Arthur

uernar and Baldeuyn by the commaundement of Arthur dyd gyue and departe many horses and moche harneys to sondry knyghtes where as they sawe mistere and nede, the whiche knyghtes thanked Arthur ryghte hertely and promysed to gyue hym thei helpe and socoure at all tymes, and ayenst eury man, wherby it appereth that there is nothyng but by large gyftes it is made softe and meke. Than the rydynge of Arthurs courtesye was spredde abroad in eury cunte, and there it was said how that ther was not in all the world so free a knyght as Arthur was. And these wordes came to the audience of the sayre florence, wher at her hert dyde langhe, and therewithall she mounted on a palfrey, and the quene of orquene, and the archebysshop in her company, who shewed her how that Arthur had a grete renoune, and counseiled her to loue hym well. And thus was kyng Emendus mounted on his horse, & al his barony to behold the tournay, and Arthur was redy armed in y place wher as the tournay shoulde be, & so than there came to hym the kyng of orquene with his baner dysplayed, & mo than .ii. C. in his company. And whan he came to Arthur he sayd in open audience, syr youre noble valure & hys promysse is right wel knowen, & I beleue veryly that in al this tournay there shall be no knyght lyke vn to you, therfore syr I offre to you my body & all my company to be this daye vnder your gouernance. And whan florence herde that she smyled for ioye, and than there came to hym all suche knyghtes as he had gyuen to before bothe horse and harneys, and they all thanked hym ryght welteply and sayde, syr we will be of your route this daye, for we make of you our capytayne in this tournay, and as thei lo

ked do wne into y balei thei sawe toher there came florence seneschall with hys baner dysplayed, & with hym syr Wysebar, syr Ansell, & syr Wykes of valefoude and with the .iii. C. knyghtes who were all pertayning to the sayre florence, and they all came to Arthur, & toke hym for their chiefe capytayne. And wha Arthur sawe the grete honour that was don to hym he had so grete ioye that his hardnes encreaced therby moze than the one halfe, & so dalye to his horse & rote forth and dyde salute the kyng Emendus who helde his one hande in the lappe of hys doughter florence, than the kyng dyde salute hym agayne & sayd, syr I requyre you helpe to ayde this daye our knyghtes ppe man. Ye good Arthur said florence and shewe so forth your selfe that it may be knowen how ye be a knyghte pertaynyng to a gentyll damofell. Madame doubte ye not but I will do my deuoyre for my will therto is good. Tha Arthur retourned and went agayne to the kinge of orquene, and he was so sayre and goodly to beholde in harneys that eury man had thei eyen vpon him and sayd This knyght is the soueraine of bounte and beaute of all the chyualry of all the worlde. Than there came to the felde the erle of the yle perdue, & with him a thou sande and .v. C. knyghtes all with baners and streamers dysplayed wauering in the wynde with grete noyse of trompettes tabours and busynes, & than there was mounted on they horses to beholde the tournay the emperour & kyng Jonas & the duke of bigo, who as than was late come out of his owne cositre. Than haredes began to crye knyghtes do your best go togyder bayle, bayle, than began the tournay & knyghtes wot togyder by gree routes, and laide on eche vpon other, and  
Arthur

Arthur rushe forth w<sup>th</sup> hys horse so rude  
 ly as thoughe the erth had trembled, and  
 strake so the spylt that he encountred w<sup>th</sup>  
 all in the myddes of the beste soo rudely  
 that he ouerthrewe knyght and horse al  
 togither on a hepe. Then florence said to  
 the kyng her fader, s<sup>yr</sup> of yonder knyght  
 that is fallen I hope we shal haue peace  
 of him at this day. Certynly saye dough  
 ter sayde the kyng that is true, for that  
 stroke came from the handes of a good  
 knyght. Then Arthur encountred an o-  
 ther & toke him by the holders & drewe  
 hym so rudely to him warde that he cast  
 hym downe in the myddes of the place,  
 than he toke his sword the whyche flo-  
 rence had sent hym, for he wold not d<sup>ra</sup> w<sup>th</sup>  
 out clarence his good sword to chentent  
 y<sup>e</sup> he wold not mayne o<sup>r</sup> le no knyght  
 by his wyl that daye, but he gaue wyth  
 that sword such strokes y<sup>e</sup> he brought a  
 slepe vpon so euer he touched so that thei  
 were fayne to tumble to the erth whether  
 they woulde o<sup>r</sup> not, and there he dyd soo  
 muche at that tyme that he bete downe  
 a, & b knyghtes, than euery man y<sup>e</sup> saw  
 hym sayd, this knyght is none earthlye  
 man, but we thynke rather he be a rende  
 of hell, whom thynke he be nothyng  
 petynyng to god, for he confoundeth  
 all that euer he attapneth vnto, so euery  
 ma was abashed of hys p<sup>ro</sup>wes &  
 vertue. Then the kyng of Brytayne al-  
 wayes folowed Arthur with hys eyen, &  
 by the reason of the noble p<sup>ro</sup>messe that  
 he saw in hym, he toke in hym greter har-  
 dyne than euer he dyd before, and there  
 w<sup>th</sup> he rushe into a gret flocke of knygh-  
 tes that were of the emperours partye,  
 and layde on rounde aboute hym, for he  
 was a ryght noble knyght, than al those  
 knyghtes and dyuers other ra<sup>n</sup>rounde  
 aboute hym, for they knew well y<sup>e</sup> they

myght take hym prysoner it shoulde be a  
 great honour vnto them and alsoo they  
 thought they shoulde haue a great raine  
 some for hym, but alwayes he defended  
 hym selfe ryght nobly, but at length it a-  
 uayled him not for the p<sup>re</sup>se was so gret  
 and some toke hym by the necke, and  
 some by the holders, and so woulde haue  
 vnhorsed hym. And whan s<sup>yr</sup> Neelson  
 the seneschal, s<sup>yr</sup> Wysebar, s<sup>yr</sup> Ansell, &  
 s<sup>yr</sup> Wykes sawe the kyng of Brytayne  
 in that case, they dasyt al togither intoo  
 the p<sup>re</sup>se to helpe hym and there they did  
 right nobly, howe be it the seneschal was  
 beten downe, for hys horse foundred vnder  
 hym, and soo there they woulde haue  
 taken hym prysoner. Then Gouverneur sa-  
 we that, and he d<sup>re</sup>lled hym so that part  
 where as the seneschal was taken, and  
 Gouverneur helde in bothe hys handes a  
 gret leuer, wherewith he layd on amonge  
 those knyghtes w<sup>th</sup> so mighte and he  
 up strokes that he assayed whome soo  
 euer he touched, and there he dyd so m<sup>u</sup>ch  
 that by very force he caused the seneschal  
 to remount agayne on his horse, and  
 in the meane season the kyng of Brytayne  
 was holden ryght w<sup>ell</sup> so that hys  
 horse foundred and fell vnder hym, howe  
 be it after y<sup>e</sup> he defended hym selfe ryght  
 valyauntly. And whan Arthur who as  
 than had dyscomfyte a gret compaigne  
 of knyghtes sawe the kyng in y<sup>e</sup> distresse  
 he rushe forth into the p<sup>re</sup>se and encoun-  
 tred w<sup>th</sup> the son of the erle of the yle per-  
 due, and toke him w<sup>th</sup> both his handes  
 about hys holders and dyde caste hym  
 downe on ocher two knyghtes that were  
 on fote, so that one of them fell flatte to  
 the erth, and than he rose agayne and be-  
 helde the knyght that was fallen on him  
 and sayd, maye s<sup>yr</sup> yll haue he that dyd  
 caste you vpon me. And whan Arthur  
 had

## The story of Arthur

had ouerthrowe this knight he took his horse by the rayne & brought hym to the kynge and bide light of his owne horse to helpe the kynge to mounte thereon in the spryte of all hys enemies, & than by grete force and hardynes byde lepe vp agayne on his owne horse. And al this saw wel florence and the archbishop, & all the other kynges & praised gretefully that dede. He is the best knyght of the world sayd the kyng. Emebus. Syr that is true sayd the bishop. And whan Arthur had remounted the kynge of ozquene agayne he said, Syr put your selfe no more this daye in to soo grete a pise of your enemies, but syr & it please you hardlye so to we me. Than Arthur put hym selfe in to the same pise that was before on the kynge, and ther were as than al rested on Gouvernar and on syr Bysebar, who as than had grete nede of helpe, & there Arthur layde on rounde about hym by suche force & he bette downe knyghtes & horses to the plaine earth, for he strake none but that he went to the earth, & soo thre Arthur byde so wiche that he ouercame all that route, & whan he was passed thyn he sawe where thre knyghtes had ben downe syr Byles of valefounde. Than Arthur dressed hym so to the first that he ouerthrewe to the erth, & took his horse & deliuered it to syr Byles & caused hym to mount thereon. Than Arthur strake so the seconde knyght that hys horse bare hym all aboute in a traunce, for he wist not where he was. And Gouvernar with his leuer strake so that the thyrde he fell flatte to the erth, and whan he releued he fledde awaie as fast as he myghte, for he durst no lenger abyde for all the Certe of Marys, & the other knight & was boine on his horse all in a straunce came before where as the kynge Emebus and flo-

rence was, wher at the kynge & edyd laugh. And whan the knyght couped he sayd all on hys. The knyght is an yll carpenter, for he maketh many chyppes, & stroke all the fendes of hell hath sent hym hyder, whame haue he I wene he is a burgonpon. Than the kynge laughed at the wordes & sayde, there is none can abyde hym, for his strokes are ryght valpauite. That is true syr sayd the bishop. Than Arthur sawe where there was a grete company of knyghtes wel to & nombre of .ii. hondred in a route, & amonge them was the erle of the ple perdue, & he had taken more than .xl. of florence knyghtes, and unhorsed them and was ledinge of them for the as pyloners. And whan Arthur sawe that he was ryght forwofull, and soo by grete randon he dalpe in amonge them, and there byde suche dedes of armes that all that behelde hym wondres at hys valpauites, for it semed that he was but newly come to the tournay, he claued asonder hylde and unbarked belmes and braste asonder gythes & bette downe knyghtes togyder on hepes, and Gouvernar with his leuer delte strokes right rudely, wherwith he broughte knyghtes a slepe, soo that some of them wiste not whiche waye to tourne them. Tha came to him the kynge of ozquene, Bysebar, the seneschall, syr Byles, and syr Ansell and many other knyghtes, and so by that tyme there was horsed agayne a .xv. of the knyghtes that were before taken pyloners, & there they delte so with theyr enemies that the erle of the ple perdue was sore displeased, & he and a .xviii. in hys company ranne all at ones at Arthur, & ther by force they slewe his horse vnder hym, wherwith he was ryght sore displeased, and than crepte vp on his feet and gaue soo many grete strokes & huy that

that he cast every mā to the erth who so  
euer he met withal, and than he repented  
hym that he had not boyn with hym that  
day clarence his good sward, how be it  
he gaue suche strokes þat none durst ap-  
proche to him, but euery man fled fro hym.  
And whan Gouvernat saw Arthur a foie  
in that grete pzele, he aduysed well the  
erie of the pleyardues neuwe who was  
right well mounsed on a good hoise, a so  
toke hym with his gons hons by the neche  
and pulled hym down on his hoise mane  
and gaue hym a ryght grete stroke with  
his leuer betwene his sholders, as he  
thus helde hym Arthur came & toke hym  
by the leg and tumbled hym ouer his hoise  
out of the sadel and chysto him to þe erth  
and so toke his hoise and did mount ther  
on. And whan the erle saw his neuwe  
on the erth, he spurred his hoise to come  
to his rescowe. And than Arthur embra-  
ced hym so at his compng and spurred so  
his hoise that he dreyne hym clene besyde  
hys sadel, and in chespite of al his ene-  
myes he toke hym prysoner and caused  
hym to be yeldd to king Smendus, and  
so was put into the keepng of the saye  
Florence, a thā she caused hym to be vn-  
armed, for he was ryght wey and was  
verpe hore and soze chafed. And than Ar-  
thur dasyt into the pzele and there dyd  
what he lyst hym selfe, for he bet downe  
knyghtes and wan hoises & thempetour  
sawe well howe that he al onely discom-  
fytred hys knyghtes, the whych greued  
him right soze, & also the duke of bygoz  
was ryght soze dyspleid in hys mynde  
because he sawe Arthur do all that day  
so nobly, and at the laste he knewe well  
howe that was he that had slayne hys ne-  
uwe at the cite of Argence, wherfore  
he would sayne haue runned on hym to  
haue slayne hym, but he doubted muche

the knyge of ozquieney. Than he sayd to  
thempetour, sy the erle of the pleyardues  
is taken prysoner and all your knyghtes  
clene dyscomfytred, the whych is to you  
great shame wythoute so be that ye put  
thereto some other maner of reuenge, and  
all the shame that is done to vs, is done  
by yonder knyght with the white sheld  
and by the other knyght with the gret le-  
uer, and verely it is he that slewe my ne-  
uwe sy Rembart at Argence, and soze  
wounded my colyn sy Roulard. & also  
he hath slayne sy fymont my tresoure  
and so he hath done me righte grete da-  
mage, and I knowe well he is a ryghte  
fayre knyght and a yonge, and of his ha-  
des suche as ye may se, and this I say be-  
cause of your loue Florence whome ye  
shal haue, but his promys and goodnes  
parauenture may cause her to loue hym  
for the heart of a woman is sone turned  
and chadged, this knyght hath done you  
al reby righte grete damage, and is likly  
to do you moze whout ye take righte good  
hede, and put thereto righte good counsaill.  
Therfore sy I requyre you let me haue  
the courney to morowe, and I shall con-  
handel hym that I promys you he shall  
not be here agayne on the thyrde daye.  
Well sy sayd thempetour I graunt you  
your desire. Sy sayd the duke I thanke  
you, and so they left their talking as at þe  
time. And Arthur al that season layde on  
round about him as freshly as though  
he had but newly begon the courney, and  
the knyng of ozquieney behelde hym mer-  
uailously and spake neuer a woide, and  
whan he had longe beholden hym, he tooke  
at hys hys p:owesse suche hardynes  
that he habandoned hym selfe into the  
pzele, and layde on frely with hys sword.  
Than the courney was moze gretter  
and moze thpycker than is was of al the  
day.

## The story of Arthur

day before and so there Gouvernar brake his leuer, thā he layd band on his sword and dyd therwith as much as any good knyght oughte or myght doo. And so at last Arthur and the kyng of Wyqueney dyd so muche that they vanquished all the erles cōpany and wer set on fere soe beaten, in so muche that they had much payne to stand on their fere. Than Arthur stode in the felde w his sword in his hand saying, lordes yf there be any moo that wil come let them pise forth, I am redy to answer them, and so at last y kyng of wyqueney and he returned fro the felde. Than the kyng Emendus encountered them & embraced them all armed as they were, & specially Arthur and thanked him muche of the pain that he had suffered y daye, for sye all onely by your prowesse this daye the emperours people are oylcōfyed. And as they wer thus talking together they came to them a knyght fro y duke of bygoz who sayde y kyng Emendus, sye the duke of bygoz demaundeth of you the tourney to morow. Than stepte forth the kyng of morzail and sayde, sir may it please you to suffice me to haue to morow the turney agens the duke of bygoz. Sye it pleaseth me ryghte wel sayde the kyng Emendus, therefore I desyre you do your part, for we haue the honoz this daye, therfore do your paine that we may haue it also to morow. Sye said he doubte not I shall do my true deuoye, thā he toke Arthur by the hand and said Genevyl knyght floure of all chivalry I desyre you as hertely as I can do so muche to morow as ye may wyne a kyng for evermore as y it would please you to shew parre of your hye prowesse to morowe in ayding of my quarell and in the defence of the noble honoz of my lord y kyng here present. Ye sye said the kyng

Emendus & therto I wyl desyre you, for by your hye prowesse we haue the honoz this daye, therfore it shuld greue us greatly and we shoulde lese it to morow. Thā Arthur sayd, sye with a right good wil I shall do my deuoye. And whan Florence herd y she was not content in her mynde, for she thought that Arthur had bene soe wery of that dayes tourney, & thought that it shoulde greatly annoy hym yf he turnayed the nexte daye and so she thought she wold let that tourney yf she myght, thā she commaunded the kyng her father to god as at that time, than she toke with her into her tent the archbishop and dyuers others of her barons & king Emendus caused Arthur to be broughte into his tent with al hys hole barons, & all the emperours knyghtes spake of no thyng but of Arthurs prowesse, for they sayd that there was not agayne to al the world so good a knight as he was be holdyng and consideryng al his dedes, & how that he had bozne him selfe in this turney, & the emperour said y he wold rather resemble to hym than to haue suche an other empyre as his owne was: & the bypys of Arthurs renowne sprad so far abroad, yll at last it came to the hearing of sye Rowland, and than he said I thanke god that suche a knight hath Isted agens me, for my honoz is the more. Thā the kyng Emendus came into his one tente, & than caused Arthur to come to hym, & there were al the other kinges who dyd muche honoz to Arthur, and there were dyuers that sayd to the kyng of Soroloy, sye behold here this knyght full of bounte & worthy to haue gret honoz & all that they sayd by Arthur toke as than was right hore. Than the kyng commaunded two squyers to stand with a towell & blow wynd into hys face, and thus

thus Arthur stode before the kynge and he was goodly for to beholde, for he was strepght longe & bygge, & aboute all other ryghte gracypus of his wordes, for every man had grete disporte at his lowly and goodly wordes. Than the king commaunded þat there shoulde be brought to Arthur a mantell to caste on hym to the intent he shoulde take no cold, and the kyng of orenqueney orde put it aboute hym, & whych he became hym ryghte well. And than there came to them Gouvernar to Whome there was made ryghte grete feest & ioye, there came thider the erle of þe pleyer due whā Arthur had taken prisoner in the tournay, and in his company. xxx. knyghtes to pledge hym of his raunsome. And the kyngemide hym ryghte good chere. And sy; Moulande & the emperours seneschall whō had Justed before wyth Arthur by that tyme were heled of theyr hurtes, & were come also in to the kynges tente to spozte them and to here tydynes of the tournay. And whā the erle of the pleyer due sawe them he had grete ioye, and demaunded of theym howe they orde. And they answered & sayd how that they had ben soze hurte, but as than they wer wel amended. Than the erle sayd to the kyng sy; it is of trouthe that I was taken in your tournay, therfore sy; I am come to you to be deliuered of my raunsome, therfore may it please you to shewe me youre pleasure, and I am redy to accomplishe your commaundemēt. Certaynly sy; sayd the kyng it lyeth not in me, for that matter lyeth in the pleasure of Arthur, who is here presente who that toke you prisoner in þe felde. Sy; said Arthur sauing your grace that is not so, for the tournay is yours, and I am but as one of youre knyghtes and of my ladyes your doughter, therfore sy; it were no reason that I

Arthur.

shoulde saye or doo any thyng Where as your grace is present. In þe name of god sayd the kyng We wil that ye shal speke your mynde. and it shall please vs ryghte well all þe euer ye shall saye or do. Than the kyng of valetoude sayd, sy; ye shall do thus, for it is reason that ye do as my lord the kyng wyll haue you. well sy; sayd Arthur in þe name of god, & so stode vpon his fete & sayd to the king, sy; & it like your grace syth it is your pleasure þat I shall speke I say that this erle here be ynge present shall kepe you company thys dyner season, & after dyner to spozte and to playe hym with you as longe as it shall please him, and whan it wyll please him to retourne to the emperour that he & all his company go franke & free, & I wyll desyre hym to take of my gift this swerde, the whych I thinke be good and sure, the whiche Gouvernar had brought to hym before fro mayster Steuen by the commaundemēt of Florence to the intent that he shoulde gyue it to the erle, and in dede there was not a better swerde in all the emperours hoost, & there Arthur desyred the erle for bys iode to take it for a remembraunce, and also desyred him to take a horse of his gyfte in recompence of the horse þe he had taken fro him in the felde. And whan the king herde Arthur haue these wordes he had grete ioye, & loued hym withal bys herte by cause of his gentilnes. Than the erle answered & sayd, sy; gentyll knyghte of herte I haue rythille sufficient and am able to beset a ryghte grete raunsome though it were. xx. oz. xix. duckettes, and also I haue swerdes and horses ynough, how be it þe hre prowesse that is in you and the grete gentylnes of youre herte prouoketh me to receyue all your courtesye, & verily I take all your offere of you on the condicion that ye wil

E. i.

sq

## The story of Arthur

fro hens forth take my wyde and socours  
 in al your busyness agens al persons ex-  
 cept my lord the emperoure. Than Ar-  
 thur all smylyng thanked hym muche.  
 Than the kyng embraced the erle for the  
 loue of Arthur, thā was water brought  
 forth, and the kyng washed and the erle  
 and so dyed togither & made good chere  
 and were righte richly serued, and after  
 dyner they loked them together tyll it  
 was tyme for the kyng to go to his rest.  
 Than the erle toke leue of the kyng & so  
 commaunded him to god. And Arthur con-  
 ueyed him a great space, and did giue to  
 the erles knyghtes manye good horses &  
 palfreies, wherof they thanked him righte  
 greetely. And at the last Arthur toke hys  
 leue of hym & so departed, and than the  
 erle went streyght to þe emperours rente  
 where as he founde hym accompanied  
 with the duke of byrgo and many other  
 noble knyghtes. and there the erle made  
 grete prayse of Arthur before the em-  
 peroure and shewed howe of his gentyl-  
 nes he had suffered him to go quyte, and  
 how that he had given him manye grete  
 giffes, and also to his knyghtes. Wherly  
 sayd the emperoure there is not suche a  
 knight in al þe world, neyther of beaute  
 nor of prowesse, for he is the souerayne  
 knight of al other, for I se none like him  
 of prowesse, I wolde I had given þe best  
 erle that I haue on the conditio that he  
 were retained as my knight. And whan  
 þe duke of byrgo herd the emperour prayse  
 so muche Arthur, he was in hys mynde  
 righte sore displeased & sayd to the erle, for  
 ye make here a grete pleyng of a flying  
 vacabonde, for no man knoweth what  
 he is, nor fro whens he cometh, & ye ma-  
 ke of him here suche a nopsle, that no mā  
 taketh hede of anye chynge elles, I can  
 not tell you what he hath given you, cer-

tainly it is no honor for you to take any  
 giffes of a man fugytyue that is fledde  
 or banysched out of his own countrey, but  
 for I wyl ye know certaynly þe what so  
 euer giffes he hath given you, to morowe  
 shal I giue you his head fro his sholders  
 therfore I hold him wise in that he hath  
 departed of his resour in his life dayes  
 to you & to your company, for I wacand  
 him he shal do so neuer agayne. Wel sayd  
 the erle, therte him hardely saye and  
 safely that he knew it not, for and he do  
 I fere me lest that he wyl spe a way, and  
 than ye can not giue me his heade & say  
 where as ye saye that no man knoweth  
 what he is, for I ensue you he is a right  
 noble wise knight, and it maketh no ma-  
 ter to a noble knight where so euer he be  
 cometh, for hys bounte wyl shewe righte  
 well his estate. & where as ye say that he  
 is a vacabonde and is fledde out of hys  
 own countrey, for it had ben better to your  
 newe that he had fledde into England  
 or that he met with him at Argeuce, for  
 there your newe welost his lyfe, and there  
 ye fledde a way about bydynge of anye  
 tate well, he needeth not to haue anye care  
 though ye say thus of him for an yll con-  
 gue enparryeth neuer the honour of a no-  
 ble wise man, and I ensue you I wyl  
 shewe him these playne wordes that ye  
 say of hym and ye anye yll come to you  
 therby take it a worth. Than þe duke be-  
 gan to wate angry, & so the matier wold  
 haue ben worse and the emperour had not  
 bene, for he caused them to be departed &  
 to be in peas. Now let vs lene to speake  
 of them, and returne to Florence.

¶ How that Florence faryed her self to  
 be sick, to the extent that Arthur should  
 not tourney the nexte daye, for she was  
 in fere that Algot had bene deare by  
 cause

cause of the trauaile that he had endured the fyrst daye of the tournay. And howe that the emperour whan he knewe that he went to se her, and so dyde her fader kynge Emendus, and all other kynges dukes erles and barons, and all the hole chynalry.

Capitulo, lxxx.

Emendus.

Florence.



Whan that Florence was departed fro the king her fader and entered into her tent, than she drew her into her secreete chābyr and called to her mayster Steuen & sayd. Fayre swete mayster I am ryghte soze displeased in my herte bycause of the kynge my fader hath desired my loue Arthur to turnay again to morowe in the company of the king of morrell, for I see wel he doth not consider the trauaile that he hath endured this daye, for yf he were made of stele he cā not endure thus euery daye to trauaile, alas yf ony pll or dishonour shold come to him I shold die for sorowe, I se well they þ thus desyre Arthur.

hym to go forth agayne to morowe loue but lytle his helth, wherfore I wil fynde some meanes to put of the tournay as to morowe to thentente that he shalbe the more frethe the nexte daye after, therfore I wyl sende worde to the kyng my fader how that I am sycke in my bed desyring him that as to morow the tournay maye be deferred tyll the nexte daye, but mayster I desyre you lette Arthur haue knowlege of the trowth, for elles I fere me he would be sorowfull for my disease. Madame said the maister ye speke wysely and I shall tell you why, fyrst therby Arthur shall well rest hym, and secondly it is so he is as now greatly praised of his courtsey, & is taken as chiefe companion with the king your fader, and with all the other kynges and barons, & as I understande he is greatly in the grace of the emperour and of all his knightes, for all this hole assemble loueth him, & as soone as the emperour hereth of your dyscase he wyl come and se you accompanied with all the nobles of his company, and whan the kyng your fader hereth of his comyng to you I doubt not but that he and all his other. iiii. kynges with all the noble men of theyr company wyl in lyke wyse come to se you so than therby here shall be assembled all the hole chynalrye, and so than at some houre conuenient while they be al here it shall be well done to asseye the vertue of the chapier, & to se to whome the ymage wyl grue it to. Alas mayster I loue this knyght, & I woulde not for any thinge that an other shoulde haue it, & I fere me lest the ymage wyl grue it to some other persone. Than the mayster all smiling sayd, madame What perauenture and the ymage grue me the chapier wold ye be content, & as he spake he smelled to a fayre rose that he helde in

Exii.

bys

## The story of Arthur

his hāde. Master of florence ye please me right well & I loue you saythfully, & also I doo. Arthur. Madame sayd & mayster than sayth I please you & that ye loue me & Arthur also, than it maketh no matter wheder that I or he haue the chapele sith that your loue is on vs both. Ye but mayster sayd florence, in my loue there is a difference. And what is y<sup>e</sup> difference I pray you madame. She w<sup>th</sup> me thet rough. Truly mayster that rose that ye holde in your hande right well dooth sygnify it. This rose madame said the mayster & I pray you how. Herken mayster to me & I shal shew you, it is so I se in that rose thre maner of thinges, fyrst the closoure Without the whyche kepeth fro hurting the budde tyll it be a full rose spradde as hyode, and whan it is spradde than the leues be fayre & rede, and in the myddes of the rose there litle graines resembling to golde, and out of this rose there maye be felte suche odour and smell that it p<sup>er</sup>fecth throughout the nose eue to the hert for the herte will reioyse with the good smell therof. In the name of god said the mayster all this that ye saye is true, but madame what dooth all this sygnifye. Mayster said florence I shal shew you the closoure Without the which kepeth y<sup>e</sup> budde fro hurting til it be spredde abroad sygnifyeth you, Who hath kepte me tyll this daye without enpaynyng, for it is now tyme that the rose spredde abroad that is to say to mary me and to kepe my londe as it pertaineth to the doughter of a kynge, and these leues of the rose that be so fayre & rede, signifieth your trowth and saythfulnes, for I haue founde euer in you grete trowth & boūte towarde me and also to my fader & to al the hole realme, & mayster in this rose there be graines lyke vnto gold, the which is the p<sup>er</sup>fect

copust metal of al the world, and that is signified by the grete & excellent clergy that is in you the which is moze precious than gold, for therby ye haue alwayes kept & defended me in all my nedes, & mayster by these.iii. poyntes I loue you. But the fourth thing that is in this rose is the swete sauour therof, the which p<sup>er</sup>fecth al the hole body euen to the hert, for in the flagraūt odour therof bothe the body & the herte is reioysed, and certaynly mayster this.iiii. loue that cometh thus of this rose is myn owne loue Arthur who is these rose, and about all other mooste fayre, & about all other knyghtes moost valyaunt, as the rose is chiefe of all flowers. Madame sayd the mayster I se Well ye haue had a good and a sage mayster, & I se Well how that ye loue me well without, but ye loue Arthur inwardly, and by my soule ye can not do better, for ye can haue none better than he is, & knowe ye for certayne that none shal haue you but all onely he. Gentyll mayster said florence helpe me thereto, for al my trust is in you. Madame as I vnderstande he is come into the seneschalles tent. Well mayster than go your way to him and shew hym that I wyl that he come and se me, and brynge With hym the seneschal and such other company as he wyl, & than shal I se by theyr countenaunce yf they be content though I make Arthur a lytel good and lowly semblaūt, for oftentymes the wyl of the herte sheweth it selfe saydly outwarde, for it is harde to knowe another mannes wyl Without ther be made to hym some maner of semblaūt wherby he shal haue occasyon to better somewhat of hys wyl. Madame said the mayster I se Well it is a subtyl thing of a womans wytt whan they lust them selfe, than the mayster rose & went into the seneschalles tent

tent. At whiche tyme Byssebar said here  
 lacketh none now in this company but the  
 mayster. And with that worde he entred  
 in at the doze. And than syz Myles sayd,  
 loo syz whan one speketh of the wolfe  
 lightly he seeth his taile. & so therw thet  
 welcomed the mayster, & caused hym to  
 syt downe by Arthur. Than the maister  
 sayd to Arthur, syz how haue ye done in  
 this tournay, how semeth you by the kni  
 ghtes of this countre, be they not as val  
 aunt as the knyghtes offraunce. Certain  
 ly mayster sayd Arthur they be as val  
 aunt & rather more hardy, for there is no  
 ne y I haue seen but y they oughr ryght  
 well to be receyued in to the hye orde of  
 chualry. Syz sayde the mayster ye may  
 not departe fro hens now tyl ye se my la  
 dy Florence, for a ye do she wyl not be co  
 tent. Mayster said Arthur in the name of  
 god I would ryght glad to se her, but I  
 knowe not her pleasure in y behalfe, let  
 us goo & se her all togyder, & so they rose  
 and went all togyder with Arthur, and  
 the mayster wente in before the flozece  
 & sayde. Madam beholde here is Arthur  
 who is come to se you. He is right welco  
 me sayd Florence, and so she rose aysent  
 hym. and the quene of orquency toke Ar  
 thur by the hande & set him downe by her  
 and she demaunded of hym howe that he  
 dyde syth the tournay. And he answered  
 her how that he dyde ryght well. By the  
 good lord said Florence in the tournay  
 ye suffred moche payne & trauayle, and  
 ryght well there ye dyde, wherfore your  
 louer yf ye haue ony oughr to loue you  
 the better & this she said al smylng and  
 layde her hande vpon his heed. Madam  
 as god helpe me sayd Arthur I haue not  
 as moche loue as I wold haue. In good  
 faith said the quene of orquency yf she  
 were right hye & noble she shold be right  
 Arthur.

wel I enployed on you. Ye truly said Bys  
 sebar I wold he were becoued as wel as  
 I wold accordyng to my wyl, & whan  
 Florence herde y she smyled & sayde, syz  
 Byssebar by the faith y ye owe vnto the  
 hye orde of chualry & to saynt George  
 what is your wyl in that case. Madam  
 sayd he I wyl not shew that, for perau  
 ture it shold displease you. Nay by my  
 soule sayd Florence I wyl not be displea  
 sed what so euer ye saye, therfore she we  
 me your mynde, also I commaunde you so  
 to doo. Madam syth it is your pleasure  
 I shal shew you, I wold yf ye loued hym  
 in suche wyse that he wer your lord and  
 husbonds, for a more sweter, courteser,  
 noz a better knyght can ye not haue a  
 gayne in al the world, for a more gentyl  
 gracious company could not be found agayn  
 as shold be of your waine. Well Bysse  
 bar said Florence & saye ye this is good  
 herte. Ye truly madam by al the saintes  
 of paradyse. well syz sene shall said Flo  
 rence & what shold be your mynde. Ma  
 dame said he I praye to god I neuer go  
 out of this place but I wold it were soo  
 on the conditio that it cost me as moch as  
 I am worth. Thā she demaunded the same  
 of all other, & they al w one voyce said y  
 same. wel syz sayd she behold wel whe  
 der ye haue wysshed your prospe in this  
 or not, for ye al know wel how that this  
 emperour demauneth me of y kngt my  
 fader & wold haue me to his wyfe, & ther  
 fore yf it wer so that an other toke me he  
 wold haue grete despyte & moue ayent  
 hym warre, wherby shold ensue that al  
 ye shold be put to payne & trouble, & in  
 peryll of your lyues, for ye be al my men  
 wherfore ye ought to defende me ayent  
 all myn enemyes. Madam sayd Bysse  
 bar by my soule I care not for that agayst  
 who so euer it be, and it be not ayent my

## The history of Arthur

I prayde your fader, for yf Arthur myght be  
 euer amonge vs we nebe not to care for al  
 the world nor any manner of payne & I  
 wold suffre for his sake wold neuer gre  
 ue me. Well than q<sup>d</sup> Florence I se well &  
 ye wold suffre payne & peryl of your bo  
 dy on the condicion & I wold haue hym  
 to my husbonds, & than she demaunded so  
 of all the other knyghtes yf they wolde in  
 lyke wyse. And they answered yea all w  
 one voyce. And how should I be sure of  
 this said florence. Madame sayd they all  
 we saythfull assure you by the fapth of  
 our bodies & leynge of our londes and  
 goodes. Than florence said to Arthur,  
 sye ye haue here many good frendes. Ma  
 dame sayd he I thanke them and god re  
 warde them, & I shall deserue it to them  
 whan I may. By my faith q<sup>d</sup> the maister  
 I pleyue you well, for ye haue a large & a  
 plenteous hert, and so therewith florence  
 brake their wordes of & mater, & fell in  
 communication of other maters til it was  
 tyme to departe. Than Arthur toke his  
 leue of florence & of all other. & maister  
 Steurn conuailed him forth & said to him  
 in his ere, sye be not troubled in your min  
 de thoughe as to morow ye here & my  
 lady florence be somewhat diseased, for  
 she wyll do it for suche causes as ye shal  
 know ryght well here after. Well q<sup>d</sup> Ar  
 thur I am & euer shall be content w<sup>th</sup> her  
 noble pleasure, & so than & maister toke  
 his leue of Arthur & retourned agayne to  
 florence, & Arthur went streyght to the  
 king of orquenys tent, & than thei both  
 went togyder to the king Emendus tet  
 who as than was rylynge fro slepe, & so  
 they thre sare to wone togyder & talked of  
 many thinges tyll it was tyme to goo to  
 theyr souper, where as they were ryche  
 ly serued, and after souper they sported  
 them togyder tyll it was tyme to goo to

their restis. Than the kynge departed &  
 al other for that nyght.

How the tourney the nexte daye  
 was deferred bicause of florence dis  
 ease. Capitulo. lxxxi.



And the nexte morning bety  
 mes the maister rose & lept  
 on his horse and so in grete  
 haste rode streyght to & kin  
 ges tet, & ther he dyd alight,  
 and soo was brought to the kinges bed  
 des syde. And whan the king sawe hym  
 ther soerly he demaunded what tidinges.  
 Certainly sye sayde the maister my ladye  
 florence hath bene this night right sore  
 seke, & is as yet right sore holden w<sup>th</sup> the  
 collyke in her body, therfore sye she desy  
 reth your grace that & tourney this day  
 may be deferred tyl to morow by whiche  
 tyme she trusteth to be wel amended so &  
 she wyll come and se the tourney yf god  
 wil seide her any ease of her paine. Saint  
 mary sayd the kyng gentyl maister hath  
 she than suche payne, I should be ryghte  
 for yf she should fortune to dye as god  
 forbidd without any issue of her body, for  
 I wyl neuer haue wyfe, nor I haue no  
 mo chyldren but she, wherfore than the  
 realme of orolois shold be w<sup>th</sup>out heire  
 of the right stocke the which shold be a  
 great domage to al this realme, I thinke  
 veryly she had to grete hete yester daye  
 beholding of & tourney. Sye said & mai  
 ster with goddes leue she shal amende to  
 morow, but in good faith sye it wer time  
 that she were well married, wel maister  
 said the king I shal thinke therof ryght  
 shortly. In the name of god sye q<sup>d</sup> & mai  
 ster it is time & I retorne to my lady, but  
 sye for goddes sake deferre & tourney til  
 the next day bicause of florence sekenes

Than

Then thempetour sent a knyght of his  
to florence to know what malady she  
had, but florence had comaunded that if  
any body came fro thempetour þ he shol  
de not be suffered to entre into her tente,  
so thet þ knight could not be suffered to  
entre and so returned againe to thempet-  
our & shewed him how þ no body coude  
entre into her tente to speke w her, & than  
thempetour said wel I wyl go se her my  
selfe, than all the kynges, dukes, erles, &  
barons þ were in his cōpany moued on  
their hozles & rode forth w thempetour  
And whan the king Emeous herd that  
thempetour was ridynge to go se flo-  
rence his daughter, than he mouned on  
his hozle & al his kyngs and knyghtes w  
him, & whan they were al met and assem-  
bled together there was so muche people  
as though al the world had bene there, &  
at last a messenger came to maister Ste-  
ne & said, sit thempetour and the king &  
al other noble men þ be in thys felde are  
coming to se my lady florence. Than þ  
maister went and did she we that to her.  
Thā she comaunded that there sholde be  
made redy a riche bed before her pauly o  
right before þ face of the image w þ chap-  
let, & the ymage was properly besene w  
a kyttyl of purpel satyn and a gowne of  
grene sarcenet, & upon the bed there was  
a riche quyle wrought w icten cou-  
ted w icten sendal styched w thre  
des of golde, and threes of whyte spike,  
and ouer al a ryche furre of ermynes, this  
bed was ryght ryche, and florence layd  
her downe in her bedde in a lyghte kyt-  
tell of changeable byolet taworne some  
what blusshynge ou a red coloure, and  
she had a heuerchefe of whyte spike on  
her head all loose vntyed wherfore there  
myght be seene vnder the heuerchefe her  
fayze throte as whyte as puerp, and her

fayze golden heyre flyng about her neck  
and her fayze face was in a meane ney-  
ther to longe nor to rounde steepley co-  
loured lyke the rose on the lilly, and on  
her there was a cast mātell of grene silk  
and she did cast out her armes theron, so  
that her whyte handes and her long spyn-  
gers wer stretched abrode on the mantel  
& the quene of ozqueneys late by her who  
sayd to the maister, syz make poure selfe  
nowe as though ye were dyspleased be-  
cause that my lady is speke. That is wel  
sayd quod the maister, and so shal I do,  
therwith he rusht togider his hac & made  
semblaunt as though he had bene very  
angry, wherat the quene & florence did  
smyle right sweetly. Wp þ time the empe-  
tour and al the kynges & knyghtes were  
come, than thempetour went on the one  
side of the bed & the king her father on the  
other side, & so late them botne on the  
des of the bed, & all the other lordes and  
knyghtes rode roundabout þ bed. Than  
there came also the king of ozqueneys and  
Arthur w him, and they sente theyn  
downe on the beddes sete. Than thempet-  
our did salute florence, & she said how  
þ he was welcome. Than the kinge her  
father demaunded of her how she dyd, &  
layd his hand on her heade. Thā she be-  
helde her father and sayd, syz I haue ben  
this night and al moornyng ryghte yll ac-  
ease, but thanked be god I do nowe bet-  
ter than I dyd. God be thanked said the  
kyng. Than the kyng of ozqueneys who  
was right pryncypal of her counsaile sayde.  
Madame thynke not longe, for w gods  
leue ye shall soone be hole. And than she  
beheld him & smyled a smyle and sayd, syz  
I wolde be glad therof and so thug they  
talked togither of one thing and other a  
grete space. And florence sayde howe þ  
they company dyd her muche good.

## The history of Arthur

Howe the ymage in the pauppon did  
set her chaplet on Arthurs head in ppe-  
sence of the emperour & of .x. other kinges  
& of all the hole assembly, wherwith the  
emperour was right sorrowfull because  
he thoughte to haue had florence in mary-  
age, but he sayed of hys purpose, for the  
ymage toke no regard neyther to the em-  
perour nor to none other there, but as one  
ly to Arthur to Whome truly she did giue  
her chaplet.

Capitulum lxxv.



And whan the mayster sawe  
his time & knew how p all p  
hole barony were there assem-  
bled he rose vp to his fete and  
said in open audience. Mine  
owne dere & redoubted lady florence our  
loved god hath done you this day grete  
grace & honour, for I beleue verely p ne-  
uer before this time there were neuer so  
many noble men assembled together as  
be now here present for to se a ladye p is  
opressed, for madame ye maye se here a-  
bout you bed an emperour. .x. kinges du-  
kes & eyles mo than .l. & al p hole barony  
of the myrre of ynde the more, & also of .x.  
other kyngdomes, wherfore madame ye  
ought to be righte ioyous & more at ease  
in your hert, for they al loue you and are  
glad you to please, & also as I vnderstand  
my lord the kyng your father hath grete  
wyl p god be pleased to puruey for you  
a ryght hys and a noble maryage, and I  
thinke p pte please him now in his mynd  
maye be well sayd, for I beleue he  
shal neuer se agayne in one daye so ma-  
ny noble men assembled together as here  
be now presente, wherfore now he may  
fulfyll his pleasure, and according to my  
mynd it were time that ye were married.  
Than florence sat her vp in her bedde  
& a lady cast a mantel about her necke &

said, master it is of trouthe how that the  
kyng my father here presente hath had a  
grete season good wyl to marry me in so  
muche that he is now wel at the poynt  
therof if it be his pleasure, but it is so p  
my lord the kyng my father by sending  
taketh no heed to accomplyshe suche de-  
stynes as were destyned of me at my  
natyuite, & because that peraduenture  
all ye my lordes p be here present at this  
time knoweth not what it is p was desty-  
nyed on me, therfore I shall saye it he-  
re in open audience. It is of trouthe that  
my lady my mother whome god assaile  
whan I was borne she sent me by p kin-  
ge of .x. queney & mine vncle tharchbis-  
shop and by the quene of ozqueney who  
are al here present, to the most of aduen-  
tures, and here it was destyned on me  
by the quene of the sayd that no creatu-  
re sholde haue me to his wyfe but al one-  
ly he to Whome the ymage in my paup-  
pon sholde giue the chaplet that she hol-  
deth in her handes, and if that any other  
sholde take me he sholde dye an yll death  
therfore and to this couenaunt did seale  
and swere the kyng my father and all hys  
other kinges and .xii. peres of his reime  
and so on that poynt take me who so wil-  
l p he lyf to put hym selfe in the aduen-  
ture p he haue not the chaplet, therfore  
let the kyng my father do as it pleaseth  
hym, I pray to god he do so that it may  
be for p best. Than tharchbisshop rose &  
said to the kyng, syt it is true al that ever  
my nece hath sayd, for syt I was presente  
and both saw and herde al thys that she  
hath sayd, for as god helpe me p I were  
a man of the world, & so p I might haue  
her to my wyfe, I wolde not presume to  
haue her for al the good of the world, w-  
out to be I had syt the chaplet. Than p  
kyng of balefoun rose and sayd, accor-  
dyng

Dynge to my mynde it were best that all the holk chynalyr the whych ben here assembled go al to the image, & saye let my lord thempetour begyn, for he is moost worthyest both of noblenes hauour & ryches, where it shold seme that he is worthyest to haue the chaplet, and if he faile therof, let than at other assaye euery mā after other tyll it be gyuen to one or to other. In the name of god sayde the kinge of ozqueny ye say ryght & so let it be done. And thempetour sayd he was wel agreed herto. Than florence saide, I can not tell who shall haue it, but god gyue me him in mariage, so that my hert may be in rest peace and ioy, and so y he may loue me, and I him. Thā it was agreed on al partes y who so euer had the chaplet shold haue the lady without any repelling of that couenant, and herto florence contented. And whan it was thus agreed on all partes than there was laid befoze the fete of the ymage. iiii. ryche cullipns of silke and golde. And than it was ordeyned that the kyng of ozqueny and duke philyp of sabary shoulde kepe the place, and to se that none shold haue anye wronge there that daye, and also it was ordeyned that Arthur & Gouvernar shold take hede and mark wel to whom the ymage wolde gyue vnto her chaplet. Than thempetour sayd, saye lady wyl ye be glad and I haue the chaplet. & saye florence by the reason of haung therof ye shal be the moze nere my herte who so euer shal haue it, and y moze ioye shal I haue, & the better shal he please me. Cleerly sayd thempetour thā wyl we go and assay, & therw he rose, and the duke of bygor, and therie of the ple perduc led hym streyght to the ymage, and there he kneled styll on his knees fro the morning tyll it was nere euenlonge tyme, but he

was as nere as he was at the begining & at the last he rode ful of enuy & shame and soze dyspleased in hys herte, but he made at that tyme no semblaunt. Than after him went thither kinges dukes, & les barons & knyghtes eche after other all suche as were to mary, but nothyng they were obtayned, so than there were no mo to assay but such as kept the place. And than duke philyp of sabary went to the ymage for he was to mary, but he sped as hys felowes byd befoze. Than the kyng commaunded that Arthur and Gouvernar shold go and assay. Than Arthur answered and sayd, a gentyll kyng here hath bene this day many noble knynges and ether prynces that hath sayled, wherfoze than shold I presume to assay to attayne to that they haue all sayled, I thynke it were but a foly for me to assay. Well sayde the kyng but I wyl that ye go and assay according as the couenant is made. Ye truly quod thempetour we wyl y ye shal go. & quod the kyng of ozqueny ye must nedes fultyl the kinges pleasure and thempetours, wel sayde Arthur I am content sith it is their pleasure and than he commaunded Gouvernar to go afore, & so he did but no chfote he had there, than Arthur rose and went to the image, & as soon as he was on his knees the ymage began to take colour as freshly & as quicke as though she had ben aloue and saye and sweetly she turned her selfe toward Arthur and did set the chaplet on his hed in the sight of al y assemble, wherwith thempetour was right soze dyspleased. And whan the duke of bygor saw y he was soze troubled in his mind, for he hated Arthur to the deeth, in so muche y in a greete fury he stepte to Arthur and toke the chaplet fro his hed and did set it on his own head, & al that whyle Arthur

## The story of Arthur

thut was on hys knees. And whā Gouernar sawe how that he tok away the chaplet fro his mayster & set it on hys owne head, his bloud began to tremble for angre, and stept forth to the duke and layde his handes on the chaplet in suche wise that he rashed it cleue fro his head, and a great dele of hys heyre therewith and so deliuered the chaplet to flore, and she take it and set it on her owne heade, and so than there was none that durst touch it. And whan the duke of Bpgoz sawe how that Gouernar had taken fro hym the chaplet & parte of his heyre the. with he lyft up hys fist and strake Gouernar a great blow on the cheke and bid hurte hym righte yll & caused him to blede soze at the mouth and at the nose. And whan duke Philip of Sabary sawe Gouernar hurt and bledyng he drew out his sword and strake the duke of Bpgoz in the myddes of the breste in suche wyse that the point of hys sword appeared a foote beynd at his back, and therewith the duke fell do wne stark dead to the erthe. And whan the emperour saw his duke dead he cryed on his knyghtes to arme theym and to take duke Philip. Than the emperours knyghtes assayled him on al parties, and he defended hym righte valiantly. Than the kynge of Oquency stepte forth whan he sawe his neuewe in that case, and drew hys sword and layde on amonge them righte fierly. Than Arthur dasye into the preste wyth clarence his good sword in hys hand, & he layde on and gaue suche strokes that he betre downe knyghtes by great heapes. Than euery man ran to their harneys on both parties. Than Florence sayd to her seneschal what do you stand & loke on and se Arthur in peryll of hys life, ye ought to sustaine his quarel. And whan her seneschal

shall herde her saye so he stepte oute into the felde & cryed out as loude as he could to harneys spys incontinent and help to ayde & socour Arthur. Than stepte forth the Wyplebar & spys Wyple & wel to the nomber of. v. C. And whan the king Emendus sawe the matter began to kyndel so sharply he toke his horse and rushe into the preste and with great payne & whae with sayrenes & foulenes togyther he departed them & commaunded y none sholde be so hardy to stryke one stroke moze agan that time. Than the emperour came to the kynge and said, spys king ye haue begyled vs and slayn our duke & many of our knyghtes, therfore spys be ye in certayne that as longe as I lyue warre shall not sayle you tyl the houre y I haue the head of the king of Oquency & of Philip hys neuewe and of this knyght Arthur. Spys emperour said Arthur, oftentimes a may sayleth of y he desireth noz I know not him y will stryke of our heades as long as I haue in my companie clarence my good sword. Ye ye spys emperour saide the kynge of Oquency be not halfe so baslye, for oz ye haue our heades fyrst thire wyl many lese cheyres, and one thing I assure you y if it were not for the dyspysure of my lord the kynge I sholde go se you in your own countrey betwene this and Eker with suche a company of people y it sholde be harde for you to nombze theym. for ye shal fynd them that lytell doubteyth you. Than the king Emendus commaunded him to be in peace, & toke the emperour by the hand and sayd, spys be ye not dyspleased ye & I will go apart and agre ryght well together. I am content sayd the emperour. Than they auoyded from them euery mā. Than the kynge sayd, spys ye knowe that it was agreed betwe by you and by me & by al ether, that who so euer shold haue the

the chaplet shoulde haue noo wronge, but shoulde enioy it peasably, therefore poure duke dyde amysse to take it fro Arthurs heed. **Sy:** sayd the emperour though my duke dyde wronge yet I was sufficient ynough to make amēdes for his trespace though **þ** Gouvernar had not taken it fro his heed & pulled a way his herte therw, & yet wo: se what neede duke Philip to fle: him therfore. In the name of god sayd **þ** kynge duke Philip dyde, but his office, for he was one of the keepers of the felde to se **þ** none shold haue wronge, & pour duke strake Gouvernar on the face, wherfore he had his deserte, why **sy:** sayd the emperour though he strake **þ** knight yet was it no reason **þ** duke Philip shoulde fle hym, & the kynge of orquency to fle many other of my knightes. **Sy:** sayd the king though the king of orquency was moued he coude not chose, for he was puissaunt ynough to haue made amēdes for the deeth of your duke that hys neuewe slewe, but your knightes ran on hym to haue slaine hym in my presence, therefore blame not the kynge though he rescoted his neuewe, for a gentyll mannes herte ought not to sayle his knightes in time of neede, & specially his own neuewe. In the name of god **q:** the emperour he hath slayne my duke, & he is a duke, therefore I wyll that he dye for the cause, & thā it is duke for duke. Cruelly sayd the kynge this was harde to do, for yf ye begin on p noyse or trouble I haue grete feere that it wyl turne to your owne harte for it wil be ouermuch for you to acheue to that ye wold haue, but **sy:** I se well ye be ryght soze dyspleased, but **sy:** oftentymes deed men maketh peas, & by maryage many thynges are appeased, **sy:** I wall put to my payne how **þ** ye shal haue for all this florence my doughter to be your wyfe, on

the condycion that all yll wylls & herte brennynges may be quenched on al parties & euery thinge pardoned. And whan the emperour herde **þ** he simpled a lytell & sayd, verily **sy:** so: **þ** loue of florence I would forgyue and pardon a right grete trespace, **Sy:** sayd the kynge I wyl go speke w my lordes & come againe to you incontinent, than the kynge departed fro hym & called to hym his tyn. kinges & the archbishop & diuers other knyghtes & sayd. lordes this emperour is ryght soze dyspleased, & to save the trowth he hath ryght good cause why, & I can fynde no ne other agreement in hym but epythet he wyl haue duke Philipps heed, or elles he wyl come on vs right shortly with a grete host, or elles without he haue florence my doughter, this is the attēdes that he wyl haue for the deeth of his duke therefore gentle kinges and lordes shewe me your myndes in **þ** behalfe. **Sy:** sayde the kynge of balefolde it is my minde & aduise **þ** it is good to eschewe al perilles **þ** may happe to come bothe to the body & to the soule & to our hauours & frendes for a thyng of a lytle cost ye se wel how that the perour is the moost chere & costly pryncce of al the world & ryght puruassie both of hauour & of frendes, therefore **sy:** be ye nor abasshed to geue him florence your doughter, for therby shal ye haue many grete frendes, therefore **sy:** it were better for you to geue her to hym than to this knight Arthur of trhome we know nothing but that he is a knyghte ryghte good fair, & beauteous. And in very dete so he is sir **q:** **þ** king of mortall this same is myne opinion. And myn also sayd the kynge of smaclyre. In the name of god sayd the kynge of orquency, ayenst that I haue agreed ones vnto and set theron my seale shal I neuer be contrary, for I wyl

# The story of Arthur

Emendus.

Whosyne.

will neuer byke myne othe nor I will ne-  
uer loue thempetour. For I also saide þ  
archebisshop by the satch that I owe be  
to you I shal neuer be of that accorde þ  
thempetour shold haue florence. Than  
the kyng Emendus & in the name of the  
other thre kinges answered & sayde. Well  
saye I that am kyng ouer you all shal  
agre you in this matter well ynough. ye  
shal se right wel what I shal do in this  
matter. Than the kyng of ozquenev and  
the archebisshop departed fro the coun-  
seyle not contente in theyr myndes. And  
when the kyng Emendus sawe that the  
kyng of ozquenev and the archebisshop  
his washer were departed from hym, he  
went streyght to thempetour & his. iii.  
kyngeis with hym and sayd, say we wil  
be your frendes and wel wyllers, and ye  
also to ours, & are content to fulfyll oure  
wyl so that ye wyl in like wyse do to vs  
first say we wyl that ye pardon and for-  
gyue the kyng of ozquenev & duke whyl-  
lyp his newewe, and to all other all ma-  
ner of pll wyl that ye haue to them for  
all casuer of dedes done by them or any  
of theis, and on this condycion I and  
these thre kinges giue you florence my  
doughter in maryage, and I put you in  
possession of her by this gloue, & so dre-  
w it of his hand and gaue it to thempetour  
And he receyued it w great ioye and than-  
ked them right hertely & there pardoned  
all the pll wyl that he had to any body &  
so there they toke eche other by þ hand &  
went talkyng together to theyr centres.

Howe that Proserpyne quene of þ  
sayr who resided to florence layd  
her downe in florence hedde in flo-  
rence stode, and sente her to the porce-  
noyze wyth the archebisshop and all  
her knyghtes. Capit. lxxiii.



When the kyng of ozquenev &  
the archebisshop were departed  
fro þ kyng Emendus & sawe  
how þ the kyng had graunted florence  
his doughter to thempetour, they went  
streyght to florence wher as they found  
Arthur, duke whyllyp, and Gouernar  
and they were all wll armed to thentens  
to defend them yf any nede were. Than  
the kyng of ozquenev caused them to be  
dismayed and toke Arthur by the hands  
and sayde, say as longe as I lyue & haue  
any lond I shal not sayle you, but I shal  
ayde you to dye in the quarell to defende  
your ryghte. say sayde Arthur god than-  
all thynge fourned kepe you & rewarde  
your gentylnes. So we quod the kyng &  
speke with florence, and so they went to  
her, and as than she was wll streyng  
on her hedde all astryde of the bronte and  
fraye that was there, and the Quene of  
ozquenev late wepyng for fere of þ kin-  
ge her husbunde. Than there sat downe

the kynge, tharchebyfshop, Arthur, and  
Gouernar, & also there was the mayster  
and duke whelpp. Than the kynge sayd  
to florence, madame be ye in peace & rest  
and doute ye of nothyng, but it is soo  
my lord the king your fader hath gyven  
you to the emperour, and hath put hym  
in possession of you by the gloure of his  
hande, and al the other kinges are of his  
accorde, but tharchebyfshop your vn-  
cle and I are departed fro them by cause we  
wyl not consent thereto in no wyse, ther-  
fore madame may it please you now to  
shewe vs your mynde. Wheder ye be con-  
sent to haue him to your husbande or not  
for yf it please you it behoueth vs to be  
content, and yf it please you not to haue  
hym here I offre my selfe to you that or  
he haue you ayenst your wyl I shall ras-  
ther aduventure to lese my heed from the  
shoulers, and I shal put in jeopardy to  
see the emperour in defendyng of this  
gentylman Arthur in his ryght yf ye be  
so content. And whan florence herde him  
saye so she began right sore to wepe, and  
whan she might speke she sayd, a gentyl  
kynge now I se well I haue no more fren-  
des but you & suche other as be here pre-  
sent, alas I am of pstate that I ought  
of right to haue many mo, but whan my  
fader and myn owne men sayle me, alas  
to whome shall I complayne me, alas vn-  
kinde fader wyl ye geue me him whome  
that I hate mortally, & take fro me hym  
that I loue saythfully, and therewith her  
herte was so oppressed wth better sorowe  
that she fell on so sore a weping that it  
was grete pyte to behold her, and whan  
she myght somwhat speke she sayd, cer-  
tainly I had rather dye than to haue the  
emperour, and as God helpe me ye be all  
my frendes and so I wil retaine you as  
longe as the world sturth me, the whi-  
Arthur.

che yet somwhat cōforteth me, wherfore  
I wyl no lenger hyde my herte fro you,  
and so she tourned her selfe toward Ar-  
thur & said, beholde here hym who hath  
my chaplet my destiny is on him, wher-  
fore I wyl haue none other but him, for  
hym I loue & hyl do, And whā the king  
of orquene herde her saye soo he had  
great ioye and saye, madame we be all  
your owne men & frendes & of your coun-  
seyle and would alwayes your honour &  
profyte, and as God helpe me ye can not  
do better than to set your hert on this no-  
ble knyght Arthur, for better: more wysse  
more goodlyer thā he is cā not be founde,  
and syth it pleaseth you as for my parte  
I am the same accorde, & to hym I offre  
now my selfe here present, now let all o-  
ther speke euery man for him selfe. Thā  
the archebyfshop sayde, saye lady ye are  
my nece and I am your vn-  
cle, in good  
sayth I am agreed to your pleasure, and  
I promyse hym sayth and trowth, and to  
ayde hym ayenst all persons. And I al-  
so promyse the same sayd duke whelpp.  
Than the mayster rose & sayd, madame  
I am your clerk and alwayes I truste  
I haue counsayled you to your honour &  
profyte, and I allowe you in this matter,  
and am saythfully agreed thereto, but I  
counsayle you let my lord here tharche-  
byfshop ensure you bothe togyder hande  
to hande. Than thei al answered wth one  
voyce, the mayster sayth ryght Wel & all  
we be agreed thereto. Than the byfshop  
toke Arthur by the hande and the ladies  
hande also, and there byde ensure them  
togyder wth wordes of matrimony, wher-  
of eche of them had grete ioye. whan that  
florence and Arthur were thus ensured  
togyder the king of orquene sayd, syth  
now haue we purchasid warre wth the  
kynge & wth the emperour, for as soone

## The story of Arthur

as they know of this mater they wyl be  
 ryght soze dysspleased w<sup>th</sup> vs all, therefore  
 now let vs se by what meanes cyther by  
 warre o; so;se o; how this mater may be  
 brought to passe. And as thei thus talked  
 togyder sodeynly there sate on the bedde  
 by florence Droserpine quene of the fa-  
 ry. And whā thei beheld her thei had wō-  
 der of her sodeyn comyng. and thei coude  
 not well know her fro florence they re-  
 sembled so nere togyder, but thā Droser-  
 pine said to the king, sy; ye demaunde and  
 study how ye may bying about this ma-  
 ter I shal shew you, I am wherthat did de-  
 steny on florence & she shold haue Arthur  
 therfore I shal shew her howe he shal  
 do, therfore florence saye daughter se de  
 ye in concyuent Gouernar and Wyssebar  
 to your castell of clere toure, & let al your  
 tentes & pauplyons & such other abyle-  
 mentes of warre as ye haue there be con-  
 uayed in all haste to the porte norye, and  
 garny she that castel richely and surely in  
 suche wyse y<sup>e</sup> ye may be able to sustayne  
 the defence of an hole hoost, so; ther shal  
 be made a venst pou right grette warre, for  
 the king Emenhus your fader wyl be so  
 p<sup>l</sup> content with you & with Arthur that  
 p<sup>l</sup> he might haue you bothe in y<sup>e</sup> fury he  
 wold cause you bothe to dye a shamesfull  
 deth, for he hath now so grette loue to the  
 perour y<sup>e</sup> they be as al one, but for y<sup>e</sup> ther  
 is not now soo grette loue byt wene them  
 but I shal cause here after as grette war  
 byt wene them so that eche of the shal be  
 despyous to the other, wherfore faire don-  
 ghter florence ryse out of your bedde &  
 apparade your selfe & do on the maisters  
 gowne & his hat & moult on your ho;se &  
 take the quene of ozqueney w<sup>th</sup> you & also  
 tharchybysshop your vncle & duke whyp-  
 lyp and al your other knyghtes & ride ye  
 streyght to the porte norye, & the king of

ozqueney here present & the maister & Ma-  
 thur shal abyde here styll w<sup>th</sup> me, for I  
 wyl lye here still in your bedde in y<sup>e</sup> sode-  
 of you, so; ye know well there is no crea-  
 ture can know the one of vs fro y<sup>e</sup> other.  
 Goye your wates & let me alone with the  
 remnant of the mater. Madame said the  
 maister so; goddes sake thinke wel on the  
 honour of my lady florence & we shal by-  
 leue you wel. Than florence departed her  
 knyghtes a sonder & byde sende them one  
 after another all to Argence & comaunded  
 them there to abyde for her, so thei al de-  
 parted & within foure dayes they arriued  
 at Argence, & there they founde the saye  
 lady Margarete of Argenton who was  
 come the daye before fro the porte norye  
 and she receyued them with ioyfull chere  
 and there they shewed her how thei were  
 come thyder to abyde on the comyng of  
 thei lady florence, & whan she heard  
 that she was right ioyful and caused al  
 her house to be apparapled ryght richely  
 to thentent to receyue florence right ho-  
 nourably & sent for many of the gentyl-  
 men of her countre to gyue attendaunce on  
 her. Than Gouernar & Wyssebar depar-  
 ted fro florence & wēt to y<sup>e</sup> clere toure &  
 conuayed al her stuffe to the porte norye  
 bothe tre sours & abylementes of warre &  
 batayle sufficient to garny she the hous  
 withal so; the space of, vii. yere, & thei had  
 xxvii. charpottes continually carying, vii.  
 weeks togyder of such stuffe as pertayn-  
 ed to florence and to the furnysshing  
 of the place, so that it had of euery thing  
 sufficient for the space of, vii. yere.

¶ How that the lady Margarete of  
 Argenton with all her hole barony  
 wente and mette florence and re-  
 ceuyed her in to Argence w<sup>th</sup> ryght  
 grette feest and ioye. Cal. xxxiii.

And



And the third day after that  
Florence knyghtes wer de-  
parted fro her, thā she and  
the quene of oꝝ queneꝝ and  
tharchebysshop departed &  
Went fyrste to the cite of pancopone the  
which pertained to the bysshop and ther  
he commaunded al his people to be readye  
on a day warning in their best apparaille  
foꝝ the warre, and in lyke wise byd So-  
uernar in the cite of blaūche toure, so  
than Florence departed fro pancopone &  
Went streight to Argence. And as soone  
as the lady Margarete had knowledg  
that she was two daies iorney fro Argence  
she mounted on her horse and v. C. in her  
company and Went and encountred the  
lady Flore of Soloyls, and whan she  
met her she did righte humbly salute her  
& said. Madame ye be right hertely Wel-  
come in to this countre, and madame be-  
holde me here who is and shall be your  
humble damoysele euer to be redy at your  
noble commaundement. Certainly saye  
lady Margarete said Flore I take you  
and wyll doo foꝝ my selfe, all frende and  
faithful louer. Than þ lady Margarete  
went to the bysshop and to duke Phylip  
and right sweetely dyde salute them, and  
than she demaunded of Florence how it  
was with Arthur. And she answered and  
sayd: saye lady Margarete he is abeyden  
in the court wth the king of oꝝ queneꝝ  
and with mayster Breuen. And I praye  
you madame how dooth he. Werely sayd  
she right Wel. Than am I glad sayd the  
lady Margarete, foꝝ Arthur is my loꝝde  
and chere fader: foꝝ he hath redyed again  
to me my londe wherof I was dysper-  
ted by the newew of the duke of bigoꝝ. wel  
sayd Florence care not foꝝ þ foꝝ ye be as  
now well trungrd both of the vncle & of  
the newewe. A madame said she blessyd  
Arthur.

be them that hath brought that about, &  
thus they rode forth on theyꝝ way & thet  
encountred þy Wyll & þy Artaude & dy-  
uerse other knyghtes pertaining to Flo-  
rence, & al other knyghtes of that countre  
dyde theyder by grete flockes, and whā  
they wer nere to the cite of Argence, than  
they yssued out of al the honest burgeis  
of the cite riding on good horses, and sai-  
re faucons & sparhawkes on their listes  
and they were wel to the nombꝛe of fify  
well arayed al in one sute halfe scarlet &  
halfe grene, with many tabours & trom-  
pettes before theym. Than the bysshop  
sawe well how that the cite of Argence  
was ryght noble & goodly, foꝝ he sawe þ  
byghe sonne glimmering on þ faire chir-  
ches & hye steeple covered al with saye  
lede, & also he sawe the riche banners and  
streamers pyght out of wyndowes of the  
saye houses, and the baylmentes were  
pyght full of sheldes, basenettes, helmes  
& speres to the intent to the we þ strength  
of the cite, & the stretes wer haged with  
clothes of golde and of silke, & with rede  
sendlall chaungeable with grene, and all  
the helles of the towne solephus did ring  
soo that it was grete ioye to se and to be-  
holde the noblenes of that cite. In this  
maner Florence entred in to the cite, ha-  
ving in her company beyonde, xv. hon-  
dred knyghtes, and the burgeyses of the  
cite moored by into theyꝝ Windowes to  
behold Florence who was led by twene  
the bysshop and duke Phylip, and thus  
they rode til they came to the palays, and  
ther descended & so moored by into þ hal-  
than Florence entred into her chambꝛe &  
apparayled her, & by that tyme her dyner  
was redy and the tables ready covered,  
than Florence and the archebysshop and  
all other sate theym downe to dyner and  
were ryght ryche served, and soo there

## The story of Arthur

Florence sojourned the space of viii. dayes. Now let vs leue Florence at Argence & retourne to theperour & to king Emeus and to Droseryne who was layde in Florence brode in the stede of her.

Howe that Droseryne was ensured to theperour in the stede of Florence, & how that the king banyshe out of his countre the kinge of orqueney, & also the kinge of valefounde & mayster Streuen and Arthur.

Capitulo. lxxv.

**S**o it was that whā Florence was departed fro þ court of king Emeus her father & that he had gyven her to the Emperour, thā the of them went into theyr owne tentes to dīner, and the king of Orqueney who was abiden thil in Florence tence wþ Droseryne quene of the sayp who resembled soo nere Florence that the one coude not be knowen fro the other, and ther he & Arthur dīned wþ her, & after þyner theperour came to king Emeus & said, sy: ye haue giue me Florence doughter, & sy: I know wel how that the king of orqueney & Arthur be thil wþ her in her tent, & ther haue bene alwaies cōtrary to me, wherfore I doute me leest thei to... Florence mynde fro mewarde, therfore sy: I pray you let vs go & siauce her this night & let vs be maryed to morow. Sir said the king I am content, & I promise pou þ al suche Who soo euer they be þ be contrary ayenst your mynde shal incōuenient for sake my company, than theperour and the king and the other thre kinges wēt streight to Florence tē, & as sone as they wer entred the king of orqueney & the mayster & Arthur rose & welcomed them, than the king sate hūn do wne on

the one syde of the bed and the emperour on the other syde than the king sayde to Droseryne wenynge to hym it had ben his doughter Florence, saye doughter it behoueth you to be siaunced this night to this emperour and to morow ye shal be wedded wþ gret ioye. Well sayd sy: Droseryne syth it is your pleasure I am content let it be done incontinēt, than the kyng demaunded for tharchebishop his order to thēnt to ensure them togider. Sy: said the maister he is gone to pancone for abesynes þ he hath to do there & duke Dhypp also. And wher is Florence sene shal and al other knyghtes. Sy: surely they bene al gone wþ hym. In the name of god sy: sayd theperour the archbishop hath ben alwayes cōtrary to me in þ I should haue Florence, therfore sy: neuer trust me but þ he is gone to do some maner of reason to the intent þ I should not haue her. Than septe forth þ mayster & sayd, sy: emperour ye saye not wylly to call the archbishop traitous or to say þ he seketh to werke ony treason ayenst you it is to largely sayde, for ther was neuer as yet ony noble man of þis kyngdom that euer dyde ony treason ayenst you or ayenst ony other mā liuing and though that he be not of the accorde of this mariage he dooth but ryghte, for sauyng the honour of my lord the kyng here present al that be of that accorde are forsworne & haue broke their promesses & couenautes & dooth ayenst theyr own seales, & as for me as lōg as I lyue shal I neuer accorde therto. Now mayster said the king wyllye not than accorde therto, but holde all other forsworne, by the fayth that I owe unto god yf ye wer not the son of a king I should make you wel to know how ye haue spoken folishly here in my presence, but thus moch I say unto

unto you I charge you incontinent that  
 ye auoyde this pauplyon, and I defende  
 you the conynge agayne to my syghte,  
 and by charge you out of florence cou-  
 seyle. well sy: sayd the mayster syth I se  
 than that I must nedes leue your court  
 and conynge before you a banysshed sco-  
 p conseyle of my lady fo: this emperour  
 here pre sent, wherfore let hym be in cer-  
 tayne p as longe as I liue he shal neuer  
 put ringe on my lady florence finger nor  
 wedde her fo: all the power p he hath o-  
 can haue. Than the kynge was sore dys-  
 pleased & rose & had thought to haue stri-  
 ken the mayster, but the king of morial  
 and the kinge of Asmacyte dyde holde  
 hym, and therewith the mayster went out  
 of the pauplyon. And whan the kynge of  
 balefounde sawe his sone cast out of the  
 court & how the king would haue stry-  
 ken hym he rose vp & sayde to the kynge,  
 sy: fo: the esche wyng of all pill & trouble  
 before this tyme I was agreed that this  
 emperour shoulde haue your doughter,  
 wherin now I confesse me p I was for-  
 sworne and dyde therein contrary to myn  
 owne seale & promesse, the which consen-  
 tement now here I openly reuoke & de-  
 ny, fo: as god helpe me I wil be no len-  
 ger forsworne, therfore I say to this em-  
 perour p he take her not, fo: yf he do let  
 hym be in certayne that ther is and shal be  
 in the realme of balefounde a king who  
 is not his frende, but he is & shal be his  
 mortall enemy. And whan kynge Emen-  
 dus herde hym speke in p maner he was  
 right sore dyspleased, fo: he loued and be-  
 leued hym ryght well before & sayd, sy:  
 kynge eynher consent to this maryage o-  
 elles forsake the presence of me and shor-  
 ly auoyde this pauplyon. well sy: than  
 I Wyl departe, and I warraunt you I  
 Wyl noo more desyre to come in to your  
 Arthur,

syght, I say no more but god giue grace  
 ye do well, & therewith he went out of the  
 pauplyon and wente to hys son mayster  
 Steu. Than the king of orquency rose  
 vp and said to the king, sy: I haue grete  
 meruaile where ye haue taken this coun-  
 seyle to enstraunge your self fro your fren-  
 des and counscyllers, verily sy: ye be in  
 an pill mynde in this case & al fo: this em-  
 perour who shal neuer do you so moche  
 good, but by the sayth p I owe to my la-  
 dy florence yf he wer not here in your pre-  
 sence I shoulde take his heed fro his shol-  
 dres, & let hym take good heed that after  
 that he is maried that he cary her not a  
 myle out of this place but I shal be ther  
 feby to encounter hym & not to his pleasure  
 what said the king do ye menace & thre-  
 thin here before me, worthy I charge you  
 auoyde this pauplyon, & beware p I se  
 you no more in my syght, & in the despyte  
 of you all the emperour shal haue florence  
 my doughter. well sy: said the kynge of  
 orquency syth ye haue banysshed me out  
 of your court & of your presence I assure  
 you I am able ryght well to withstande  
 your malyce, but sy: I conseyle you con-  
 uey this emperour surely whan he depa-  
 teth in to his owne countre lest p he be not  
 encountered wial to his dyspleasure, than  
 the king of orquency toke Arthur by the  
 hande & said, sy: come ye on wme & lene  
 this court, fo: no noble man ought to a-  
 byde here. sy: said Arthur I wyl go w  
 you w a right good wil, than they depar-  
 ted out of the paullion, & ther thei foude  
 the king of balefounde & mayster Steuen  
 and to them he sayd, now sy: we be al  
 banysshed out of p court king of Emen-  
 dus god now be our helpe, than they trust-  
 sed vp thei tentes & sente thei people  
 euery man home to his owne countre, & so  
 than they moued vpon thei horses & so  
 departed

## The story of Arthur

departed, & they had not yetten a lege & a halfe bu: & the king of valefounde was in a sodayne study. Than the kyng of ozqueney demaunded of hym What he asled to study. Sp: q he I muse in what maner we may do anoyauce to this emperor who wold haue our lady apenst her o'wne wyl & ours, the which soze greuerth me. Well sp: said the kyng of ozqueney care not for y mater, for I ensure you he shall not wedde her this yere. Sp: said he it can be none other Wyse, for themperor & the kyng her sader wyl now lede her to Coynite and ther fiaice her apenst her wyl. wel sp: sayde the kyng of ozqueney fere ye not that, for be ye in certaine that as for florence she is all redy at the cyte of Argençe wher as she abydeth for vs. why said the kyng of valefounde & who is it than that lieth at florence bed in the stede of her and is so like her. I shal thewe you said the king of ozqueney, her be ye neuer speaking of the quene of the ladies of the fayr, that be in the mount perpillous wher as florence was couayed as soone as she was borne. Yes mary q the o'her king I haue herd therof diuers tymes. well sp: than sod moche I saye to you that she that lyeth in my ladies bed is Proserpyne quene of the fayr, & she did besteny her at her natyure that she shold be lyke in al thinges to her, & so she is as ye may se, wherfore ye shall knowe full wel by to morow this time that ther was neuer emperor and king so abused and abasshed as thei shal be. In the name of god said the king of valefounde I neuer herde spckynge of this mater before, but let vs haste vs and so speke with my lady florence at Argençe, and there let vs aduise ferder what shall be done in this mater. Sp: ye saye ryght well and so let vs do, for I am sure we shall haue

grete warre. Than they sente two squyers before them to florence to giue her knowledge how that they wold be with her the weone scape nexte after by masse tyme. And whan florence knew that she had ryght grete sope, and caused incontinent the places to be apparapled wher as they shold lodge, and than the archbishop and duke philyp to se and went and encountred them, & whan they were mette togyder they made right grete sope eche of o'her, and duke philyp embraced Arthur, and the bishop was with y kinges and so entred in to the cite, & all the burgeses & compnaite of the cite made great feest of Arthur, for he seemed to the so gracious & so fayre & they all sayd. A good sozde what a noble couple shold be betwix our lady florence & this noble knight Arthur, wolde to god he had wedded her. Than they all alighted at the palays, & ther florence mette them and embraced euery king eche after o'her, & in lyke wise did the fayrelady Margarete. Than florence cameto Arthur and said myn owne swete loutre ye be ryght herte ly welcome. Myn owne dere lady god encrease in you noble bosite & honour. And than the lady Margarete ran to mapster Steven, and eche of the right swetely embraced o'her, than they went ail to theyr chambres & apparapled them, & tha they went to dyner and were serued right ryche ly, than al these kinges & florence & the lady Margarete departed and wet to the porte noye & commaunded all theyr people to dratwe them thiderwarde as shortly as they coude, & so they rode forth and on a rewe soape betimes they arriued at the porte noye, than florence wente by to her palais wher as she had neuer ben before, and than she thanked Arthur in that he had sozdone the enchauntement

tes the adventures of þ place, and Governor and Byspitar had aparatied that place in every thyng that was behouable, and thus they were in great ioy and triumphe the space of viii. daies & than these kynges and florence wente into a fayre chambze to counsaile, & the bishop and Arthur, duke Whylp & the mayster were with them, & than they recouited to florence how þ they were departed oute of the court in gret displeure, and how that the king Emendus had banysshed them al out of his ptesence, and also we knowe wel that as sone as he hath knowledg that ye be here and we with you we shall haue sharpe and gret war made betwix vs, wherfore it is conuenient that we aduise wel what shal be done in this mater. Than þ maister rose and said, loy des if ye thinke it to be done I shal shew you mine aduise. And they all answered and said, maister say what ye wil it shal please you right wel to giue you audience. Than the maister sayd, madam ye be the pryue and rightfull heyre of Sozologs, and our pryue lady, and we al your me, the dyscoide that is betwene my lord your father, and vs moueth properly by the reason of you, and not for any trespasse that euer we doo hym, therfore ma, vaine it is reason that ye take vpon you this quatell and busynes, and take your herte to you & be not to softe in this mater, for whan my lord the kyng your father shall be come hyther with al his power to assaye you as I am sure he wil do, he shall not haue so hardy a knyghte in al his company but he shall be aserde to gyde hys woode about hym to come agens your company, for ye be a greate quene and a puissaunt, therfore sende for your people, and let duke Whylp do in lyke case, and my lady Margarete also,

and whan al your people be assembled together, who so euer than wil be so hardy to assaye you, let hym be sharply answered and defended, and madame beholde here Arthur to whom this matter toucheth ryght nere, who is saychful yours and ye his, therfore me thinketh it were reason that he were chiefe capytayne of this matter, and let hym maintain this war fierly and vertuouly, and the king of Wyquency and the kyng of valefount my father, let them retourne into their owne realmes, for parauenture the king Emendus wil sende for them agayne, and will repent hym in that he hath banysshed them out of his sight, and if they fall into accorde with him agayne, than shal they doo muche good for vs in this mater with the kinge, for than they shall shew him his foly in that he would make milady florence his daughter agens her wil, and how that he doth gret wronge to make warre agens Arthur, but for Arthur accorde to myne aduise be ye of good herte, and if they will nedes make war agens you do to this emperoure as muche damage as euer ye can. Than the kyng of valefount sayd, saye sonne verely ye haue wel and wysely sayde, I am agreed let it be done as ye haue sayd. As god helpe me sayd the bishop I am agreed with the same saying, and to the same they were al agreed. Than the kinge of valefounte sayd to Arthur, for we be all establisshed that ye shall haue the hole conduite of this mater, therfore do your deuoye, and here we gyue you the charge of my lady florence, and the bishop her uncle shall abyde with you and duke Whylp also and with him maister Setuen my son, and if ye haue anye nede sende vs word and we shal nat sayle my lady at no tyme, and if we happen to fail

## The story of Arthur

at any accorde with the king, than shall we blame him for his folly, and as for us a our people we faithfully promise you that if any sword be drawn against you we shall be ever ready to revenge it to the best of our power. That said, not being led away by the king of orquency. So the emperor and king of orquency departed our of the coustle and toke leue of florence and Arthur and al other and returned in to their own countreis. Now let vs leue to speke of them and returne to the emperor and king Emendus so the that they were amused at the church doze whā they had wend to haue married florence.

**H**ow that Proserpyn quene of the fair was ledde to the church to haue bene wedded to the emperor Emendus that it had bene florence, but whan the bishop had thought to haue put the wedding ringe on her finger, sodenly she vanyshed a waye, so that none wist whither she became, and so than they stode all abashed as though the cloudes had fallen from heauen. Lapi. lxxxvi.

**I**t was that whan the kynge of valefount and the king of orquency was departed to king Emendus to grete displeasure how be it the king as than whan he sawe that they were gone he repented him of his folly, how be it he made no manner of semblant for the loue of the emperor, but sayd to hym, let vs go to the cite of cornyre and there shall ye fynde florence, and to morrow be married to her. So with a right good wyl sayd the emperor. Than Proserpyn was apparayled and ledde forth to Cornyre,

where there was ready the bishop of Pancopone, and as soon as they were come to the cite, chā incontinent the emperor was ensured to Proserpyn in the cite of florence, and so there was great feast and solace. And every man went to their rest, and in the morning they arose and Proserpyn was apparayled right as she was, and so the king of cornyre and the king of Cornyell ledde her to church, and as soon as she came to the church doze, there was ready the bishop of pancopone ready in his pontificalibus, and there byddes are the banes betwene the, and so proceeded forth in the wordes of matrimony. And whan the bishop thought to haue set the wedding ringe of her finger, sodenly she was vanyshed a waye, so that none knew where she was become, where the kinges, dukes, erles, barons and all other were as greatly abashed as though they had tumbled out of the cloudes, the bishop blessed him selfe and did caste holy water round about hym, and every man sayde this is a wondrous case, we trowe we be enchaunted, how be it neuer thelesse they herde out the masse wgrete deuorpon praying to god to kepe them from the illusions of the fende of hell, and whan the masse was done they returned to the palais, and al the day they wer sore troubled in their hertes, and so the dayes after they serched continually all about the cite for florence, and on the iiii. day there came a knight to the palais, and by salute king Emendus and the emperor, and sayd, I se wel ye be sore troubled by cause of florence, but I can shewe you the wayes right wel where she is, surlupe sayd she departed to Argence the Wednesday next after Wygheimas day, and in her company mo than. xv. knyghtes, and sayd wher is the archbishop your brother

brother & Duke Phillip of Sabary, and are  
as now at the castel of the porte noye, &  
the hath caused the place to be fortified w  
artillery and with al manner of byciple  
sufficient to stand a siege for the space of  
vii. yere, and Florence hath sent al about  
for men of warre, and Duke Phillip hath  
also sent into his own country for al his  
power, and as for al the power of Argen  
tine is there already with her, & also there  
is with her Arthur and Gouvernour, mai  
ster Arden, & the Bysher, and all her  
hole chivalry. Yet send the kyng is  
all this tyme. The kyng as god helpe me, for  
I have sene al this with myne eye. Of  
the kyng of Bruges and of the kyng  
of Basetound can ye shewe me any word  
sayde the kyng. The kyng I can shew you cer  
taine word of them, for I encountered the  
but late as they were ryding into the  
own countryes. As god helpe me sayde  
the kyng I repente me that I spake to  
them so folyshly this last day, but I dyd  
it in a great displeasure. In the name of god  
the kyng sayde the emperour if ye have done the  
any trespass ye maye ryght well make  
them amende, and in your so doing ye  
shal do ryght well. The kyng sayde the  
kyng and so wyl I do, but what counsaile  
& remedy shal we make for this knyght  
Arthur who hath thus taken away Flo  
rence my doughter, but by my crowneye  
I may take them, they shal bothe suffice  
a shamefull dech, no; as long as I lyue  
I shal neuer seale tyll I have them, and  
tha shal the drabbe my doughter be mu  
red vpon a stone wall, & the false rybaud  
Arthur hanged by the necke but I vnder  
stand they have furnished the porte noye  
for the space of vii. yere, & also they pur  
uayth of people as muche as they may  
The kyng quod the knyght that brought the ty  
dinges is of trouthe. Wel the kyng sayd them

perdur I shal shew you what we shall  
do, ye shal send for al your power, and so  
shal I do for mine, & so let vs besiege the  
castel of the porte noye, and the tyme that  
were made of yron & stele, yet shal it not  
endure agens our strength. As god helpe  
me the kyng sayd the kyng the castel doubteth  
no man, but I shal well let vs besiege  
the castel round about tyll we have famish  
ed them, for other wise shal we neuer  
have the place, therefore let vs sende for  
our people tyll we have sufficient. The kyng  
right wel quod the emperour I wyl go &  
return into mine own country, and ye shal  
send me and I lyue at the porte noye w  
in. xv. dayes of Ester next coming. And  
there shal ye fynd me also sayd the kyng  
Then the emperour commaunded to truste  
al his stuffe, and so toke leue of the kyng  
and departed into ynde, and as soone as  
the emperour was departed, the kyng  
sayde too the kyng of Bruges, & go ye  
home into your own country and somb  
by al your men of warre and meete with  
me at the porte noye the. xv. day of Ester  
and I pray you speke with the kyng of Ba  
le found and make the peace betwene us  
and me, and desyre him to be at Argence  
the sayd daye with al his power to go  
with me to the porte noye, and shew  
hym that I shal make coo hym a large  
amende for that I have done too hym  
in lyke wyse he sayde to the kyng of Br  
maelyte that he shoulde speake with the  
kyng of Bruges, and so they promys  
sed to doo, and departed and wente eche  
of them into thei own countryes, and  
than they sente al about for thei people  
and shewed the othe twoo kynges thei  
message that they hadde fro the kyng  
Emenous, and how that the kyng desy  
red them to be at Argence the. xv. day af  
ter Ester. And they answered how that  
they

## The story of Arthur

they wolde not sayle to be there at þ day  
 & so eche of them apparayled them self &  
 all their people in as hasty wyse as they  
 could. And the emperoure and the kynge  
 Emendus also made them redy in al hast  
 to go to the porte noyze, and at the empe  
 rours commaundement there came wyth  
 hym the king Godfrey & the kynge Jo  
 was, and the kynge Comedus & all they  
 hole power.

**¶** Howe that Arthur sent Gouvernart  
 his cosyn Hector duke of orgoule desiryn  
 ge him to come and help to socour him a  
 genst the emperour of ynde, & agens the  
 king Emendus, who wolde bessege him  
 in the castel of þ porte noyze. Ca. lxxviii.

**S**o it was that whan the king  
 of orquency and the kynge of  
 valefound wer departed from  
 Arthur out of the porte noyze  
 as ye haue heard here before,  
 than whin a lytell space after there came  
 to Arthur a spyte streyghte fro Coynpte,  
 and there he recounted to Arthur all the  
 helyng of the emperour and of kynge Em  
 dus, and howe that they somon together  
 great people to come to assyege them at  
 the porte noyze. And whan Arthur herd  
 that he sayd to duke Whilip, wel sye than  
 there is no moze to do but let every man  
 do the best they can, wherefoze it is crime  
 that ye sende to sabary to your seneschall  
 that he byng hyther to you al your chy  
 valery now at this Ester and ye my lady  
 Florence send forth your letter to your  
 relaine of blafche toure, and let my lady  
 Margaret sende to Argence, and I shall  
 send to orgoule to my cosyn Hector, wh  
 chan said Florence haue ye than a cosyn  
 in these parties. Ye madams by the sayth  
 that I owe to your grace, for if I myghte

haue hym ones by my syde I don bt but  
 tyel the malpce of this enyroure, than  
 she made her letter and seet sye. Neue  
 lon to the clere toure, & so sparte. And  
 whan he was there arpuemnon he foud  
 sye. Berdykas who was chife gouernar  
 of all that realme of clere wyse, and to  
 him he deliuered flozence letters, and in  
 contynent on the syght of the letters he  
 somoned together al the noble men of the  
 cite and of al the hole realme, and whan  
 they were assembled together they were  
 to the nombze of. xxx. thousand men of  
 warre, and so they put them seke streighte  
 into þ way to go to theyr lady Florence  
 to the porte noyze. And also the lady Mar  
 garette sente sye. Wylls unto Argence to  
 sye. Emery, who brought with him wyl  
 xxx. thousande. And duke Whilipp sente  
 sye. Wysebat into sabary to genyill Cle  
 menson his marshal who brought with  
 hym. xx. thousande. And Gouvernart went  
 to the cite of Orgoule to the noble duke  
 Hector, cosyn to Arthur, and than it was  
 shewed hym howe that the duke was at  
 Wyule with the countesse of Wyule, who  
 as than was a lytel descaied, & Gouver  
 nar rode so longe that on a saterday ber  
 mes he arpued there, than he mouned  
 by the starys and entred into the hall  
 and there he founde Hector syttinge by  
 the counelle his mother in lawe eating  
 together of a dyshe of spylle, and as sone  
 as Hector saw Gouvernart he rose and en  
 braced hym & his herte reioysed for glad  
 nes wt. a he saw people of his own coun  
 try, and than he demaunded tydings of  
 his cosyn Arthur, and Gouvernart answe  
 red and sayd, sye he hertely commaundeth  
 hym to you, and desirerh you to come to  
 helpe to socour him agens his enemyes.  
 And I pray you what be they sayd Hec  
 tor that be his enemyes, for as long as I  
 lyue

Iste what so euer they be though they be  
 netter so greute of degre of putsaunt but  
 I shal make them to tremble a quake if  
 they wyl abyde and loke me in the face.  
 Than the countesse sayd, saye sonne I  
 wolde pe should not spare to helpe to so-  
 coure our frende and loue the noble Ar-  
 thur. Than the duchesse of Orgoule the  
 saye lady Mice embraced Gouvernar and  
 demaunded of hym how y Arthur dyd.

saye lady he hertely com-  
 maunders hym to you. Tha  
 he sayde to Hector, syz haue  
 you toz it is nede. Tha hec-  
 tor called too hym syz Ote-  
 bon his seneschal and com-  
 maunded him that he shold  
 sende into al the countrey of  
 the erldome of Bzule that  
 al that myght be harneys  
 that in al the hast they shold  
 come to hym too the Cyte  
 of Bzule, and inly he wyle  
 he sence into all the duchye  
 of Orgoule to syz Clarim-  
 balt that he shold assemble

al his hoste, and in al hast to come to him  
 so the Cyte of Bzule, and whan al hys  
 people were assembled togither, tha hec-  
 tor toke leue of the countesse his mother  
 in lawe, and of the saye lady Mice hys  
 wyfe, who desyred Gouvernar to recom-  
 maunde her to the genyll Arthur. So  
 they departed fro Bzule, and entred into  
 theyr waye towarde the porte noyze, and  
 so long they rode tyl at the last they were  
 withyn two leges of the porte noyze, and  
 than they entred into a great depe valey

Tho what Hector as he went toward  
 the porte noyze to socoure Arthur, he en-  
 countered one of the kynges that was co-  
 minge to warde the emperoure, and had

in his company boel into the nombze of  
 xviii. thousande men of warre the whi-  
 che kyng Hector slew and all his peo-  
 ple, so that there was none that euer es-  
 caped saupnge & woo, and soo they fledde  
 away, and there Hector was a great bo-  
 rpe & muche treasure & gret haboudance  
 of vytayle the whych was al brought in  
 to the porte noyze.

Capit. lxxviii.



Thus as Hector and his people  
 were entred into this greate  
 balley they percepued where  
 as there came to themwarde  
 aboue the nombze of. xviii.  
 thousande men of warre. Than Hector  
 demaunded of Gouvernar if that he knew  
 them. And he answered and sayd syz nay  
 in good fayth, but I doute me least they  
 be of our enemyes. Than Hector made  
 al his host to be armed, and he him selfe  
 and Gouvernar armed them, and whan  
 they were armed Gouvernar presed forth  
 and demaunded one of them fro whence  
 they were. And one of them answered &  
 sayde, frende it is kyng Godfrey who is  
 goyng to warde the emperoure to helpe  
 hym

## The story of Arthur

hym to lay siege to the porte nyght to the  
 entent to take it and to see a knight that  
 is therein, who hath taken away Iloze  
 daughter to kyng Emendus the which  
 lady tholb haue bene wedded to my lord  
 the myperour. wherfore there is none that  
 is in that castel oz taketh part with that  
 knyght but that the shal ope all a shame  
 full death. What said Gouvernar thā thou  
 doest threten me and yet thou callest me  
 frende, but I shal quite y for thy labour  
 therfore defende thy selfe. than Gouver-  
 nar dyewe hys swoorde and strake soo the  
 knyght betwene the sholders & the necke  
 that he claue hym downe to the waste, &  
 than Gouvernar sayde I trowe I haue al-  
 lured this knyght to be on our parte, for  
 I thynke he wyl abyde here tyll in thys  
 place. Thā sayd Hector I se wel that by-  
 twene Gouvernar and this knyght there  
 was but lytel friendship, than Hector be-  
 helde and saw where kyng Godfrey dyd  
 despyng hym selfe to come on Gouvernar  
 as fast as he might, but Hector met him  
 fyrst and strake the kyng so rudely that  
 he ouerthrew him wyde open in the feld  
 than Hector tourned him to hys swoorde  
 in hys hande to haue stryken of his head  
 but his people socoured him and ran on  
 Hector on all sydes, but Hector strake so  
 among them that he brake the gret pyle  
 than Gouvernar dasyte into the chykkest  
 of the pyle without sparyng of any bo-  
 dy, for he cut of armys legges and hedes  
 gret plenty. Than sayd Clarembart en-  
 tred into the pyle, and sayd Othes in like  
 wise, than there began suche a fray that  
 it was pille to beholde, than kyng God-  
 frey was remounted agayne and Hector  
 layde on round about hym, and he went  
 so muche forwarde that he was closed in  
 among hys enemies, so we be it he gaue  
 amonge them so gret strokes that all y

euere he attayned vnto wence to the bedch  
 but his enemies dyd cast at hym knyues  
 and daggers, so that at the last therby they  
 slewe his horse vnder him, than he lepe  
 on his feet with his swerde in his hand  
 but his enemies oppressed him gretly.  
 Therwith Gouvernar came to hym all in  
 a gret rage, & he was also at his comyng  
 so beset with his enemies that his horse  
 was slayne vnder him and than Hector  
 & Gouvernar were in that case y it was  
 harde for them to escape, tyll at last sayd  
 Clarembart & al his route came to them  
 and so than there began so fore a batayle  
 that it was wonder to beholde, and than  
 Hector and Gouvernar dyd so valiantly  
 that eche of them gate hym a newe horse  
 and soo in the spyte of all theyr enemyes  
 they were agayne remounted, and than  
 they dasyte into the pyle & gaue so mygh-  
 ty strokes that they confounded all that  
 euere they attayned vnto, than the kyng  
 Godfrey came on them with so greate a  
 pyle that they dyewe by clene force Go-  
 uernar and sayd Othes out of the pyle &  
 closed them so rounde aboute, and gaue  
 them so many grette strokes y they slewe  
 theyr horses vnder them, and than they  
 defended them selfe as valsaunce knygh-  
 ts ought to do, and oftentymes they cal-  
 led for Hector to helpe to rescowe them,  
 but the pyle was so great and chynke y  
 Hector in no wise could get to them and  
 yet there he did maruailles with his han-  
 des, for he all to trussed helmes and vn-  
 barred helmes and ket downe knyghtes  
 but Gouvernar & sayd Othes were so ouer-  
 laden that they were bothe taken pryso-  
 ners and ledde out of the batayle. Than  
 Gouvernar sayde, a dere mayster Arthur  
 to god I you commend, he that al thyng  
 fourmed kepe and saue thy noble bodye.  
 But whan Hector knewe that they were  
 taken

taken prysoners he was soo soze displeased that nye he enraged for soow, & soo habandoned hym selfe amonge hys enemies & gaue so grete & heuy strokes that euery man fled before hym, for he strake none but that they lost their lyues, or elles soze wounded. And in the meane season Gouvernar and syz Orthes wer ledde forth to Warde themperour who was coming after, and as thei were thus ledde forth they mette with syz Wysebar and Clemenson seneschal to duke Phylipp of Sabary, and Wysebar knew Gouvernar as soone as he sawe him, than Wysebar espyed & sayd, saynt mary saue Arthur the good knight, for I se wel that Gouvernar is taken, therfore geue knight helpe to socoure these two knyghtes who are pertayninge to the gentyll Arthur, than all his company set sperryll on them, and within a litle whyle they were all slayne and he wen in final peris, & than Gouvernar & syz Orthes were remoued agayne and they sayd to syz Wysebar. Al syz for goddes sake haste you as fast as ye can, for ye shal finde here before in a grete valley the noble Hector cosin to Arthur fighting with king Godifer who hath with him a grete company, wherefore I fere megretely that this noble duke Hector hath to moche in hande easely to escape. Saint mary sayd Clemenson vnder I se them, Wysebar folowe me, than they all toggyder in a fronte wente toggyder as faste as they might, & they were all well to the nombre of .xx. thousande syghting minne, than Clemenson dasyt in to the pseye with his sword in his hande, than he strake the fyrste that he encountred in suche wyse that he made his heed to flye fro his sholdres, and syz Wysebar mette so with an other that he claue his heed to his tethe, and they dyd so moche at theyr Arthur,

coming that they fllod bette downe and slewe mo than .xx. knyghtes. And whan Hector saw that he sawe, saint mary what knyghtes be the seoz fro whens are they come. Than Gouvernar who the same time came into the pseye answered Hector and sayd, syz I trust that I haue done so moche that ye shal haue noble socour, & whan Hector sawe Gouvernar his herte reioysed and said, frende helpe to socoure vnder two knyghtes, for they are worthy to haue helpe. Than by that tyme all the hole company of .xx. thousande was come in to the pseye, and there they fllod knyghtes grete plente, so that all kyng Godysfers company were nye dyscomfyted. And whan the king saw that he was soo soze dyspleased that nye he was dead for anger, than he dasyt his spores to his horse and gaue Hector such a stroke that he strake away of his shelde & harnays a grete quarter, but as god wold þ stroke dyd not entre into the fleshe, and Hector strake the king soo rudely on the helme that he claue his heed downe to the sholdres, and therewith he fell downe to the erth strake deed, & whan his people saw that they tourned and fledde away, but Clemenson and Wysebar folowed in the chase so that of .xxviii. thousand thei left on lyue but two persones. Than Hector and Gouvernar came to Clemenson and Wysebar and eche of them saluted other and Hector thanked them of theyr good socour. Than they went all to the chariotes and cartes that kyng Godyser had brought thyder, wher in thei foud grete plente of golde and syluer & grete plente of vitayle, the whyche Hector caused to be couaied to the porte noyze. Than Gouvernar sayd to Hector, syz I will goe before to mylorde Arthur and shewe hym of your coming, and come you after faire  
H. i. and

## The story of Arthur

and easely. Wel said Hector go your way  
in the name of god, & so he departed and  
wente to the porte noyre & mounted bp in  
to the palays, & there he founde Arthur  
with florence & the byshop and mayster  
Steuen & duke Whyllyp. And whan Ar-  
thur and duke Whyllyp sawe Gouvernar  
they sawe well by his harneys þ he had  
ben in some bataile. Thā Arthur deman-  
ded of hym what tidinges. Sir sayde he  
ryght good thanked be God, þ beholde  
ponder cometh your cousin Hector; and al  
his hoost who hath discompted & slaine  
the kynge Godpfer, & of. xviij. thousande  
that he brought with hym there is left a  
lyue but two perones, Wyth the which  
king we met in a sayre vale, & he was  
carnyng to warde the emperour to haue  
holpen hym to haue destroyed you, in the  
whiche fraye I was taken prisoner and  
also the countess of Bules seneschal þ  
Othes, but thanked be god & duke Whyl-  
lyp for his seneschal the gentle Clemen-  
son and þ Wylsebar byderescow & de-  
lyuer vs, too now the kynge Godpfer is  
slayne & all his company, & Hector byn-  
geth With him grete plente of gold & syl-  
uer & bytaye the whiche he wan in this  
bataile, I know Well it mounteth to the  
nombre of. ii. C. charpottes and cartes. A  
good lord said Arthur þ bytaye is moze  
welcome than golde or syluer. Than by  
þ tyme Hector, Clemenston, & Wylsebar  
alyghted at the portenoyre, and lodged  
all their hoost about in the castel, thā Ar-  
thur ran & embraced Hector al armed as  
he was & sayd, cosyn þe be ryghte hertely  
Welcome to the helping of the noble flo-  
rence here present. Truly sayd florence  
blyssed be þ neighbour þ is redy to helpe  
at nedre, but Arthur howe is it þ þe haue  
had suche a kynnesmā so nere vs & wold  
neuer thewe it to me. Madame of Arthur

I did it for none pllentent, so thā Hector  
was led into a chambze to be vnarmed, &  
duke Whyllyp receyued Clemenston & Wyl-  
sebar & þ Othes w grete ioye, and whā  
Hector was vnarmed than he went into  
the palays, & florence behelde him & liked  
hym wonderfly, so she saw wel that he  
was bygge & well made, than she sayd to  
Arthur, þ this gentylman semeth well  
to be of a redoubted lynage. þ the  
byshop he semeth wel to be of the valure  
of a noble man. Þe þ quod Hector þ I  
warrunt you yf I wer at a table sayre  
couered w mete & drinke theron. As god  
helpe me said duke Whyllyp he saith wel for  
it were now tyme to ete some mete. Thā  
suyers set bp tables, & in þ meane tyme  
florence & Arthur, duke Whyllyp & the ar-  
chebyshop wet & lent out at a window  
and at last they sawe wher ther was co-  
ming florence seneschal & þ Berdicas  
&. xxi. in their copany of florence re-  
tinue, and thei al folowed þ white baner  
of the realme of blaūche tourte, than flo-  
rence sayd to Arthur, þ beholde ponder  
cometh our folke þ shal helpe our neigh-  
bours. Madame quod Arthur thei be wel  
come, thā also they saw wher there came  
þ Wiles & þ Emery &. xii. in their  
copany, than the sayre lady Margarete  
said, madame behold ponder cometh my  
copany, who are come to helpe you at al  
tymes Margarete myloue I thanke you  
quod florence of your good ayde, & god  
grue me grace so lōg to liue þ I may de-  
serue it vnto you. And whā Hector sawe  
so many stādardes & streamers coming he  
said as god helpe me yf this were the pe-  
rount to this comig I wold thā haue trust  
soone to se hym & by þ good lord I shal  
se him as shortly as I can. So thā these  
knyghtes byd alight and mounted bp in  
to the palays, and Gouvernar & Wylsebar  
anoynted

apoynted euery man to his lodging, and these knyghtes were receiued with grete ioye, and thei went to dinet & wer serued right rythelp with al maner of deyntees.

¶ Now that thempetour of ynde & the kyng Emeous accompanied with. viii.

kinges, & wel to the nombre of. iiii. C. men of warre layde spege aboute the castell of the porte noye. Wher as florence and Arthur were. Wherof yll iourned to thempetour, for there he lost thre of his kynges and well an hondred thousande of his men.

Capitulo. lxxix.



**A**fter dyner whā al the tables wer take away, than florence & the bishop & Arthur went to gyder & lened out at a window, and duke philip & the master & Hector lened out at an other window, thā thei saw wher as the king of Morrell & the kyng of Asmarlyte wā al their powers roke their lodging and pight their felde aboute the castell, and the king Emeous was at Arigence abiding for the king of valefoilde and the king of orquener, and whā they were come to hym than the kyng Emeous made his oūn peas with them, and made theym a large amendus in that he Arthur.

had before banysshed theym his couēte & sayd how that he dyde it but in a haste, & than repented hym of his soo delynge, & whan they wer thus accorded than they all rogyder set forth in their way to ward the porte noye, & the two kinges went before, & the king with the grete dragon of sorolois came in the reerwarde wā al his hoost, so that al the couētre was ouer spradde with people. Now I se wel said Arthur that we shal haue warre, but by the sayth that I owe vnto god yf I may ones medle with theym they shal not all retourne agayne. By the good lord said Hector thei lodge very nye vs, & yet thei be not our frendes, Chan of theperours

A. ii.

com

## The story of Arthur

to company there came king Jonas, & after hym there came kynge Clamados, & than after came the emperor him selfe, & he was yght so rowful whan he knewe of the deeth of kynge Godifer & of his company, & how that al the tresour & vitaille was taken into the porte noyze, & so the emperor was lodged on the left syde of the castel. Than J. orpence said to the bishop, sy: how saye ye is not ponde people sufficiēt to take a lady prysoner. Let saynly madame q Arthur it is of etrouth they are gretely to be doubred. Sy: sayd Hector: let vs go to them and gyue them they: welcome. Dertly sayd the mayster now shal be seen who is a noble man, be reply I am sone to a kyng therfore oughthe I by reason to loue dedes of chynalry & to bere harneys, therfore by cause of this mater I would sayn be made a knyght, & thā I wold gladly sy: Hector: go in your company to bynde ponde galaunties welcome, for I wold be loth y ye sholde go & I to tary behynde. And whan y byshop herde the mayster say y he wold be made a knyght he had therat great laughter & spozte and said, mayster by the good lord it is moche better to be in a chābre with ladies & damoyelles than to be ponde without & to abide the byeking of sharpe speeres, & it is hard to fynde a tierke to be a good knyght. well sy: said the mayster all y maketh no mater, for I truste to do so well y I shal bynge in one daye in to this place. ii. of those kynges prysoners, than thei all y herde hym began to laugh & so al y day they spozted them at y maysters wordes tyl it was tyme to go to rest and than every man wēt to bed and roke thei restes tyll the nexte morning, in the morning all these lordes arose betymes and assembled them togyder in the middes of the palays, thā Hector: sayd to Ar-

thur, colyn ponde people without harth good lyfte to slepe, for there is none to wake them, by y good lord me thynketh we be very slow let vs go to them and se how they do. In the name of god q sy: Clemē: so soler it be for we do not our deys woyrs to abide so lōg, therfore let vs issaue out a dele valiantly w thē. In the name of god quod Arthur every mā to harneis & so every man wēt to arme thē. Flozce was not at y poyntment, but whan she knewe therof she came to them and sayde sy: what mene ye to do, this mater must be done wysely, for ye know not pzeise ly as yet for what cause this grette assembly be come aboute this castell, peraduenture thei be come to do honpur to our marriage bytwene Arthur and me, for I can not beleue that the kyng my fader be com on me in harneys, wherfore in my minde it were not best to assaile them first, but yf they assaile vs thā let vs defende our selfe in the best wyse we can, sy: markes ye are a noble mā to goo on my message to the kyng my fader, wherfore I pray you go to hym & humbly comāde me to his grace, & say y I requyre him to sende me worde of his minde, & why that he is come hyder in this maner of wyse at this tyme, I pray you marke wel these wordes that I haue sayd to you, a wyse man nedeth no teching, but a ye se that he wol nedes kepe syll hys frowarde mynde to me warde, thā I wyl that ye say to hys. iiii. kynges & to al his chynalry hold that I sende them word how that thei be al my men & subiectes, wherfore yf there be any of them so hardy to draue ony swerde ayenst me or ayenst ony of myne, tell the that by the sayth that I owe to my lady Eglētyne my oere moder on whose soule Ihesu haue mercye that I shal cause them to be hanged by the neckes though that

they bee neuer so noble or gentyl, & after  
that I wol ye enquire why this empe-  
rour is come thus in to my realme, & yf  
ye se that he be come for our yll & that he  
would haue batayle, thewe hym ppyssco-  
ly that he shal haue bataille right wythe  
and stronge to morow betwix us without  
ony longer delay. In the name of God  
sayde duke Phylip. I se well we haue a  
good herd of our hous, madam ye folow  
right wel the noble steppes of your lye-  
nage. wel madame said y marks I trust  
I shal so fulfyll your message y ye shal  
be content; and so he toke his leue of Flo-  
rence & of al the hole barony & rode forth  
till he came befoze the king. Emendus  
at which time he was accompanied with  
his iii. knynges, & also there was the empe-  
rour and all his knynges and other dukes  
erles, barons, and knyghtes, there was  
also the kynge Jonas and kynge Clam-  
dos and diuerse other noble men pertai-  
ning to the emperour. Than the gentyl  
marks entred in to the same place & did  
salute the king and al his company, and  
sayd, sy: I am come to you fro my ladye  
Florence your doughter the moost noble  
and gentyl lady liuing, who ryghte de-  
rely commendeth her vnto your grace as  
to her owne dere sader, & sy: she is grete-  
ly abasshed of this grete company in har-  
neys that ye haue brought hyder at this  
tyme, for sy: it is a grete abasshement to  
a noble gentyl mayden to se so many hel-  
mes & sheldes shynning ayenst the sonne  
wherfore sy: she requyrez you to know  
your pleasure & mynde. Than the kynge  
With a fyerse loke said, sy: knyght I wil  
not receiue her salutacion, for I loue  
her not at my herte, but I hope to do her  
domage bothe of body & of goodes. Sy:  
said y marks & for what cause. Certain-  
ly said the king for she hath done me Ma-

Arthur.

me and despyte, for she hath gone awaye  
fro me with a straunge knyght, and she is  
come to hyde her self in this castel, & ther  
folowely she kepeth company with this  
straunge knyght the which is a shame to  
her for euermore, & also she hath done me  
despyte, for I had gyuen her to this em-  
perour to haue bene his wyfe, & she wol  
not folow my wol, and therfore because  
of the shame that she hath done me and  
dooth yet lyke a false strumper I shal put  
her into a perpetuall prison to the tentye  
that she shal dome neuer more shame, &  
I shal hange the ribawde knyght by the  
necke that caused her thus to do, for the  
despyte that she hath done to me I shal  
do her an other, for I wyll neuer departe  
hens till I haue brought this castel downe  
to the harde earth. Tha the noble mar-  
kes answered & said, sy: as touching the  
shame that ye lay ayenst my lady for co-  
nunge into this castel I shal answer  
you, sy: my lady is of great noblenesse &  
honour and a quene called by the ryghte  
of her moed, wherfore it is right y some  
tyme she go & se her owne countre, and to  
take her pleasure of her own, & sy: in that  
she departed without your lycence was  
for fere and doubte of this Emperour to  
whome ye haue gyuen her ayenst her wil  
& herte, for she doubted lest that he wold  
haue had her ayenst her wyll, and there-  
fore the mayster by his clergy made you  
to be abused at the churche doze, and sy:  
she came not hider so simply y she oughte  
to be blamed, for she brought w her duke  
Phylip and tharchebysshop, and Wel. b.  
hondred other knyghtes in her company  
and sy: the byshop is here vncle & poure  
broder, wherfore he wold be as loth that  
she should do any other wise than wel as  
your selfe wold be, but that nedeth not  
to be fered, for she is of suche wysedome

A. iii. that

## The story of Arthur

that she ca rule her selfe wel ynough, for  
ther is not a wyser lady againe in al the  
world, & sy; also duke whyllyp hath ben  
al wayes with her, & therfore suche peo-  
ple as be dayly with her can repute her  
beling and so can not you that knoweth  
nothing therof, and yet ther is none that  
speketh any bylany of her but you & whi-  
che thing sy; me thinketh ye oughte not  
to do, and sy; in dede yoder good knight  
Arthur is with her, & though it be so that  
she hath retained him to her seruauit I  
thinke therein she hath done wysely, and  
so haue not ye done in lettig him depart  
out of your courte, for he is the floure of  
al the chualtry of the world, & she by her  
wysedome hath retayned him, for whan  
he wente out of your courte he lefte not  
his felaw behind him, and sy; if she haue  
a good knyght retayned vnto her she is  
not suche a lady but that she is of suche  
habylite that she may right wel guerdon  
hym for hys serurce, sy; she is not come  
to this castell in the despyte of you, nor  
yet for the loue of hym that ye so sore des-  
pyse, but sy; she did it bycause & ye would  
gyue her to suche a man as she neuer lo-  
ued nor can not loue nor wyll not loue  
as longe as she lyueth, without it be by  
force, & sy; she is not so pooze a lady but  
that and ye wold giue her neuer so riche  
a man ayenst her wyll yet ye may be sure  
there should neuer good lyfe be longe by-  
twene the, & bicause that this emperour  
would haue her & she loueth him not, ther-  
fore she is come to that most strōg castel  
that she hath where as she careth neither  
for hym nor yet for any other & wold do  
her any dyspleasure, therfore sy; take he-  
de what ye do for ye know wel & ye wold  
haue her to do cōtrary to that was  
destyned to her in the most perillous at-  
her natiuyte, & sy; a thyng predestynate

is harde to be broke, but sy; I shal shew  
you what ye shal doo fro hens forth leue  
medlyng any ferder in this matre, for of  
one thing I make a warant that ther is  
in her company & host a grette nombre of  
the best knyghtes of the world, sy; leue  
this matre and dele like a true king, and  
agre to & promesse that ye were before ac-  
corded vnto, & & was who so euer shold  
haue the caplet of the ymage shoulde in-  
lyke wyse reioyse my lady florence your  
doughter, & to this ye haue wyrtten your  
hande & set to your seale, and in like wise  
hath done al your. iiii. kynges here present  
and all the. xii. peres of your realme, now  
sy; ye do ayenst your owne seale & coue-  
naunt that ye made lyke a kyng thus to  
sende for your people in harnays to assie-  
ble ayenst a woman, the sader ayenst the  
doughter it is vnnatural & a gret shame  
it is no dede of a kyng to doo ayenst his  
own couenaunt & promes, sy; for goddes  
sake so; here for; doig of any hurt ayenst  
your owne child for; any singuler loue &  
ye haue to this emperour. Certainly sayd  
the kyng I wyll not so; bere my minde,  
for all the tresour of the worlde shal not  
cause me but & knight shal be hanged by  
the necke, & she put in to perpetuall pry-  
son, wel sy; sayd the markes than began  
whan ye wil, & do the best ye can perauē-  
ture all that not be as ye wold haue it, but  
neuerthelesse to you. iiii. kynges & to al &  
xii. peres & to al other knyghtes & be here  
present I saye vnto you all my lady flo-  
rence sembeth you wold by me & she mer-  
uayleth gretly & ye be come byder in har-  
nays to warre ayenst her cōsidering that  
ye be all her subiectes & she is your ryght  
lady & maistres, therfore lo; destake good  
hede what ye do, for she straitly chargeith  
you that ye nor none of yours d; a lye no  
swerde nor; wepe ayenst her nor; none of  
hers,

hers, for and ye do the promysch by the  
sach y she oweth to my lady Eglentine  
her dere mother y was, that there is none  
of what degre so euer he be of but that she  
wyl cause him to be hanged by the necke  
lyke a false traytoure, wherfore saye by  
my counsaill take hede what ye do. Than  
the kynge of orqueny sayd to the kynge  
Emendus, saye ye cause vs to haue grete  
matuapyl y ye haue somoned vs to come  
hither in harneys to make warre agens  
our natural lady and to do agens our pro  
messes wytynges and seales, saye it is of  
troth I am your man and I ought to go  
with you whether so euer ye wyl haue  
me in any iuste quarrell, but reason nor  
ryght wyl not that I sholde make war  
agens our ryght ladye, whose subiectes  
a men we be and must be, for she is a shal  
be our lady by iust inheritaunce, but by y  
sayth y I owe to god and to my crowne  
of the realme of orqueny, neither I nor  
none of mine shal moue any war agens  
her, and of the same accord wer al the. iiii.  
kynge and. xii. peres, for eche of theym  
sayd that they wolde neuer bete harneys  
agens their own lady, nor do agens their  
own promesses made befoze. Than the  
kynge Emendus sayd, lordes I can not  
tell what ye wyl do, but I promysse you  
all that I wyl neuer depart out of this  
place tyl I haue destroyed this castel and  
al the knyghtes y be therein hanged by the  
neckes. And they al answered him and  
said, saye do as it pleseth you, and we shal  
gyue you the lokyng on, but we wyl not  
helpe therto nor none of ours. Than the  
markes sayd to the myghty, saye my lady  
wold sayn know why ye be thus entred  
into her realme with suche nūbe of men  
of war. Certaynly saye the myghty  
I am come hither to seeke her as for mine  
owne, for she is giuen to me by her father

and because that she denieth my rial cher,  
for I am come hither to haue her whether  
she wyl or no, and I wyl do worse to her  
than I wolde do to a false traytoure. I  
shal hang by the necke y epbaude knyght  
that kepeth her at his pleasure, and duke  
Philyp of laboty also who doth iustaine  
her in her folysh mynte. And when  
the kynge of orqueny herde the myghty  
menace and therte a say so of his nūbe  
duke Philyp he sayde, ye saye emperours  
saye and easely for or ye can bringe y a  
bout ye shal haue no cap nor hat too pus  
on your hed, for though ye she be giue to  
you yet she is not deliuered to you, ye may  
wel muse on her deliuerance, but I en  
sure you ye get her not so lpych as ye  
wene, and saye as for the knyght whom ye  
do menace to hang by y necke, saye it were  
a gret synne so to do, for his nourysshing  
coste hym more than soo but saye take to  
morrow some appointment betwene him  
a you to do some dedes of armes togyder  
or elles take part of his men a so shal ye  
do of his, a than and ye can take him bind  
him fast, and than hang him by y necke  
a tha shal ye be clene out of suspicion be  
twene florence and him, for tha ye may  
be sure he shal respyse you no more, saye  
loue hath broughte you hither, but ye nor  
al your knyghtes are nothing worth wout  
ye do some dedes to be praysed, sit mous  
on your horse to morowe, for loue geue  
neth you my lady is so saye, and she wol  
be gladly se you giue some farr stroke to  
your sword for her loue for alway good  
knyghtes getteth grace among saye la  
dres, therfore saye to morowe when her a  
mourous grace to some dede of chualry  
for in good saythe ye haue it not. Well q  
the myghty geue me y knyght y sporteth  
hyso to her. Ye saye q the markes he wyl  
not so lpych as ye get, for saye he is within  
and

## The story of Arthur

and ye be about in the rayne, and he is in the shadow abiding in the sight of thes sayre lady which is a gret name to you heretofore put him out of this castell & get your self in, but sye how say ye, what this shal be made to morowe or not. Bi my faith said the emperour I shal make him assemble to morow of .iiii. thousand, and also of .xviii. M. men of armes. Sir said the markes will ye promise this faithfully. He cruelly said theperour. And I promise faithfully for the other parti said the markes I ye shal be receiued, & than he spake as loud as he could and said, lordes & frendes suche as be subiectes to my lady florence I on payn of your liues I ye moue not no; make no war agest my lady florence nor agest none of hers, and than he said to theperour sye for goddes sake begin the bataill betwix me because of the here. Than the king Clamedos said to the markes, is this lady florence so sayre as it is said. A sye said the markes, think ye nothing on her, for your emperour doth prouough for you dothe. Well frende said the kyng, I here say she hath wyth her a swete lylle rose white tender & pong, who is called floret. Sye said the markes in dede there is suche one in my lady, and I en sure you she is righte swete, & she maketh ofscenimes for me and suche other knyghtes of my company goodly chaplets and lit as pet to my knowledge she hath no loue nor paramour and sye me think ye haue a folly wanton eye, therefore sye come & se her to morow, for she shal be on the walles of the castel, & I shal se we her vnto you if I ca mete w you, and sye when ye haue sene her let your fete togyther & assay if ye can lepe vp to her, take on you to morow this enterpryse for theperour, with a good will said he, and said to the emperour, sye I require you let me

haue the bataill to morow. Well & theperour said sye ye will nedes I am content, and so he toke his gloure in pledge, and the king thanked hym, and the markes departed, & went to the castel and recouered to florence and so Arthur word for word as ye haue herde before, than they answered the they had of him a right good messenger, & graunted him the bataill the next dai xx. M. agest the kyng Clamedos.

**H**ow Philip duke of sabary & master Steven son to the king of balestoid were made knyghtes, and of the discomfiture of Arthur made on the emperour. Ca. lxxx.

**A**nd when duke Philip of sabary herde how the they sholde haue a bataill the next day in the morninge he sayde to the lady florence, madame I requyre you let me be made a knyght, for I may not be in the place where as so many noble men be without I were a knyght. By the faith that I owe to god said florence w a right good will. Than maister Steven stepte forth and sayde, madame my lord the archbisshop here present reputeth me but as one more meely to bete futes than knyghtes, but madam by the faith that I owe to god I wolde sayne be made a knyght, and thercof I requyre your grace, & than euery body began to laugh. Well sye & he laugh not thereat for I saye not, I wol be made a knyght and I may, than he went to the lady Margaret of Argenton and said to her in her eare, mine own dere lady will it not please you that I be made a knyghte, I beseeche you gyue me leave to be one, and she answered him sayre and softly in counsaill and said, yes prynces swete loue I wold be glad thercof, than he tole fro her & sayd alowde, my lady Margarete of Argento how say ye shal I be made a knyght. Certainly frende & she I wold be glad there of

of, on the condycyon that ye will take: ar-  
myre & horse and other abillmentes of im-  
pyte. Adam sayd he y thank you and y  
shal be glad to folow your pleasure in the  
licence of my lady florence. Certenly q  
florence y am content thereto. And whā  
al y ocher lordes and knyghtes saw that  
the maister mended good faith they were  
right glad therof, and so went as for that  
night to their restes. In the morning for  
duke philip florence prepared horse &  
harnes and al ocher abillmentes, & sat  
lady margaret ordeyned in like wise for  
maister wicchen the churchbischop sange  
p masse, and Arthur did gyde on the mai-  
sters sword, and Hector did on duke phi-  
lip, than Arthur and Clemson led forth  
the maister betwene che, and Hector and  
ly. Berdyng led forth duke philip, and  
so they offred to the bishop, and he dode  
give them p neck brokes of knyghthode  
accordeinge to the vsage p was than in y  
country, than Arthur and Hector armed  
che, and thā caused a gret hoire to be blo-  
wen, and by the sowninge thereof euery  
knyght went to their harnes, and thā they  
toke their leues of florence, and than Ar-  
thur said to the markes and to ly. Claid  
bail and to ly. oches, ly. I pray you go  
and forcy the gates of this castel w. iiii.  
L. paues, and so they did, and thā they  
issued out of the castel in good ordinauce  
and Arthur ordeyned their bataille ryght  
strong and maruelous, in y first bataille  
there was him selfe ly. Wysebar and ly.  
Clemson, and in their company. vii. M.  
halbertes, and they were comaunded to  
kepe their ryght way vnder the moynayn  
than folowen after the Hector. y. Souer-  
nar and florence sent shal w. iiii. M. w.  
them, and the maister and duke philip &  
ly. Berdyng went about the moynayn  
to chentent to close round about the mpe

ryens, and they had with them. vii. M.  
Than the petour on his part called hym  
the king Clamados and said ly. go arme  
you and pour me and go make allay in  
the castel of the port norye, and ye ye for-  
tune to encounter the king Arthur loka  
y petake him and bring him aliue to ma-  
ro; y will make him be hanged to hie and  
to nere to the castel y florence may se hy  
euery day when she wil. For q the king  
doubt ye not it shal be done, but it is an  
olde said sayd he y reckeneth withoute  
his hood mast reken welte, and so dyd he  
for he sayled of hys enterpryse, than the  
king caused to be blown a gret trumpet,  
& than euery man ran to his harnes, and  
the king Clamados ordeyned. iii. bataills  
and therle of thyle y. w. iiii. c. l. b. p. first  
bataill, and the duke of Calyon w. him, and  
they had in their cōpany. x. M. men, and  
the second bataille was led by the duke of  
Calace and he had w. hym. x. M. men, &  
the king Clamados him selfe led forth the  
third bataille & ocher. x. M. with hym  
and so they went forth with baners dy-  
played and toke the ryght way toward  
the castel, the whiche way Arthur was  
commynge toward the selde, and so they  
wente forth so longe tyl at last the duke  
of Calyon and the erle of the yle perthe  
who led the fy. the bataille encountered Ar-  
thur & Clemson and Wysebar and their  
cōpany, than Clemson desired of Arthur  
to haue the first cours with his speere and  
Arthur dyd graunte hym, than he dafte  
his spozres to his hōle spdes & ran at y  
duke of Calyon who came ayenst him, &  
they met so rudely y Clemson strake  
so y duke y his speere went clene throught  
out his body and so the duke fel down to  
the erth. y Iesu sayd Arthur what ayde  
is thys at the first meeting, our chemyng  
hath by thys dōen a gret losse and discom-  
fort

## The story of Arthur

for. And whan therle of the ple perdue  
 saw the duke dead there arose in his host  
 a gret and terrible cry, and they ran al at  
 once on Clemens, but he liken valiaunt  
 knyght defended him selfe wth his swoorde  
 and gaue righte gret and puaillane strokes  
 among them, than there was none cou-  
 de holde Wysebar but he ruyle into the  
 prele, & the fyrst y he encountered wthal  
 he bet do wne to the earth, and the second  
 neuer did crye after. Tha Arthur and his  
 company came into the prele, and there  
 bet do wne and slewe knyghtes by greate  
 hopes, and Arthur with his good swoord  
 clarece plunged in amonge his enemies  
 and bet down knyghtes and hozes in su-  
 che wyse that al fled before him, and they  
 wouide haue fled fro the deach, for there  
 was none that aboue hi but that he recei-  
 ued deth at his handes, & Clemenson flo-  
 de syl and beheld him and had gret won-  
 der at his dedes, and as he stode lokig on  
 him, Arthur encountred so a knyght that  
 he claue him to the ceth, than Clemenson  
 roke of his pedes gret hardnes on hym  
 and dallye into the thickest of the prele, &  
 fyr Wysebar folowed him so far that thei  
 were enclosed rounde about with thei  
 enemies, and the prele was so great that  
 thei hozes were slaine vnder them, and  
 so by greate force they were taken pryso-  
 ners and led forth out of the felde toward  
 thempeto; but as fortune wold Hector  
 met them and as sone as he saw them he  
 spoyred his hozs wth his spoyres, & strake  
 so the fyrst that he claue him to the chyn,  
 and fro the second he roke away his shol-  
 dre, than Sauernar toke his swoord in  
 his hande and did helpe Hector to discom-  
 fyre them that led away the prysoners, &  
 in the spyte of them all they were remou-  
 ed and so returned again to the host, and  
 Hector turned his hozse and strake in the

prele so rudely that wth the fyrst that he  
 met he strake of his hed, and o; he ceasen  
 he sle w. r. eche after ocher, and at last he  
 ro; Clemenson, Wysebar & Sauernar,  
 met togyder And bei wene them they did  
 such exyle among thempetoys people  
 that al fled before them, than therle o; ga-  
 lace came into the felde wth. r. sp. in his co-  
 pany, and chan the batayl began to be so  
 terrible that there was many slayne and  
 hurt of both pries, and wha Arthur saw  
 so many emperiens assembled together  
 penst his men he dallye to his hozs wth cla-  
 rence in his hand & strake so suwely in y  
 prele y he cut of hedes, legges, armes, &  
 handes, & vnbarrad helmes, & claue alon-  
 der shelds, and cofonned and bet do wne  
 al y euer he touched, & at last he encoun-  
 tred therle of y ple perdue, but he thought  
 he wolde not flee hym, but he strake him  
 wth the pomel of his good swoord on the  
 helme so rudely y he was so astonied  
 wth the stroke y he wist not where he was  
 and so al in a traunce he fel on his hozs  
 necke, and in the releuyng he strake at  
 Hector; who as than had broken part of  
 the prele to the intent to folowe Arthur,  
 but Hector gaue hi suche a stroke that he  
 auoyded the sabel and fel to the erth, tha  
 Wysebar and Sauernar roke him, & lohe  
 was sent into the castel to florence like  
 a prysoner. And whan the duke of galace  
 saw that he had lost hym, he was right  
 sorowful, and in gret rage dallye into the  
 prele and met wth Ansel, and gaue him  
 such a stroke that his swoord went riene  
 throughtoute his bodye, but yet as God  
 wold he was not wounded to the deth, but  
 he fel do wne to the erth in a gret traunce  
 Than Sauernar roke and conuaied hi  
 out of the prele & sent him to the castel.  
 And whan florence saw her knight sle  
 Ansel so soye wounded she was right so;  
 to wful

rowful and caused her surgens to sech  
hys woundes, and whan Arthur saw the  
stroke that the duke of Galace had giuen  
hy. Anfel he was ryght sorowful for he  
wende verely þ he had bene dead, ther to  
he broched to hys horse & encountred the  
duke to greut malice & gaue hym such a  
stroke þ he claue hym to the sholders. And  
whan his people saw þ he was slain and  
that they had as than no cappaine, they  
were greuly abashed & tourned them to  
flee, but Arthur and Hector chased the till  
at last they met with the king Clamedos  
x. x. in his company, and so they all  
basyt togider, & than there began a terri-  
ble batall, but the kinges company was  
so gret that Arthur and his company had  
muche to do to defend they. Iyues tpi at  
last maister Steuen & duke Philip & sy  
Berdyas were come rounde aboute the  
mountain so þ they were at þ backes of  
they enemies, so þ king Clamedos toke  
no hede therof tpi they were on them vn-  
ware, and as soone as maister Steuen  
saw þ kinges host he blew such a blast  
that there arose a myst in the kinges host  
that they were so abashed therwith that  
they had thought to haue fled away, but  
than duke Philip and the mayster rushe  
into the prele and eche of them bet down  
him to whom they encountred, and there  
the maister did maruilles in armes, and  
at last Souernat saw him and said to sir  
Clementson, by the good lord sy maister  
Steuen by semyng hath giuen by hys  
mynde to be a priest, for I wene he wyl  
neuer syng masse, beholde ponder how  
ballantly he fyghteth, for there he saue  
him giue right grete and ballant strokes  
what shal I say moze, so muche dyd Ar-  
thur there and his company that þ kyng  
Clamedos and al his were elene discomfi-  
ted and fled away as fast as they myght

to thempourys tene, & recoired to him  
al the losse that he had in that batall, and  
shewed him how that the duke of Calton  
and the duke of galace were bothe slayne  
and the erle of the pleperdue taken priso-  
ner & al his company slain and said also  
sy verely there was neuer scene suche a  
knyght as Arthur is, and he hath in his  
company of the mosse valyaunt knygh-  
tes of all the world. And whan the mpe-  
rour herde al thys he was so sorowfull  
and full of dyspleasure that he was nere  
enraged out of his wytte, than he caused  
hornes and trompettes to be blown to  
the intent to cause his people to arme the  
and so thempour him selfe armed him  
and also dyd kyng Jonas and. xv. thou-  
sande in their company. And whan Ar-  
thur herd that he sayd to his people, sir  
thanked be god it is ryghte well happed  
to vs in the begynnyng of thys waite,  
and our people this day hath taken grete  
payne, wherfore they ought to be wery  
wherfore in my mynde it were best that  
we draw our selfe agayn into our castel  
and let vs se what this emperour wyl  
do to vs, wherto euery man was agreed  
and so they withdrew the and mounted  
vp into the castel and entred into the pas-  
sais. Than florence demaunded of Ar-  
thur how that he dyd. And he answered  
and sayd dere lady thanked be god right  
wel. And in lyke wyse did the fayre lady  
Margarete to maister Steuen, than the  
erle of þ pleperdue came to Arthur who  
recepued him right sweetely and said, sy  
be of good chere and be not dismayed, for  
ye shall haue here but a good pylon, and  
the erle thanked him right sweetely,

¶ Howe that thempour spake with  
quene Isoscrpine, wenyng to hym that  
it had bene the fayre lady florence, but  
he

## The story of Arthur

he was deceyued, for she dyd set a grete dyscorde betwene hi and the king Emericus as ye shal here after. Cap. lxxxvi.



**X**han þe chempour & his cōpany wer cedy aparailled thet leyt on their hozles & folowed after Arthur w. xl. thousand in his cōpany, & whan he came nere to þe castel, he beheld þe sacracon ther of a gret sealon, and at the last he sawe the quene Proserpine and a damosel w her issuing out of the castel, and he thought verely þe it had ben florence that had ben fled out of the castel, and with that sight he clene forgate his displeasure and all the losse þe he had in the battayle before, and so he dasye to his hozle and a. x. persons w him, and whā he had overtaken her and sente her perfyely in the face he sayde to hym selfe verely thys same is florence and so than he forgat al maner of other thinges and layd his handes on þe raine of her hozle & sayd saye damosell whe: cher are ye goyng so fast thys way. Cer: eaynly sp: said she it hath be shewed me chat ye and the king my father are rygh: soze dyspleased w me, but sp: it greueth me moze your displeasure than mi father wherfoze sp: I thinke to go to an abbey here by, and there to be made a nonne for poure dyspleasure all onely. Damosell sayd chempour if it please you wet wo shall be soone agreed. Sp: sayde she I thanke you, but howe shall that be, wyl ye haue me to poure wife, & I you to my husband. Ve truly said chempour. Sp: said she I am content therwith, but how shall I do for the kyng my father wyl he me if he maye haue me vnder his rule, & sp: by the sayth þe I owe vnto oure lord my body was neuer defouled with yonder knyght Arthur nor yet w any other.

Well saye lady sayd chempour and þe that be of crouch I ensure you poure say: ther shall do you no hurte but my parte shal be therein. Sp: sayd she may I trust on this, for it soze forthinketh me þeuer I opd any dyspleasure to you. Ve truly said chempour think not the contraty therfoze no w be in peace, and so chempour toke her w him into hys tente, and cleped and kissed her oftentimes þe at the last it came to the helyng of king Emericus how chat chempour had a gret batall with them of the castel, and howe hat he had lost al his people chat he had sent thider, than he armed him and wel to the nūbre of. xxx. thousand and came to the emperours tent to comfotte hym of hys losse, than it was shewed to chempour how chat the kyng was compng towarde him. He shal be welcome sayd chempour. I sp: sayd Proserpine I am now vnder your keepyng, for goddes sake let my father do me no vilany. Be not afrayde for I warrant you sayde chempour. Than the king entred into the paullion and as soone as he sa we proserpine he wende verely it had be florence his doughter & sayd, what thou strumpet art þe nowhere, where is that ryband knyght Arthur that hath kept the thus long, is he now become thy sauegard, I trowe now thou wensst to make thy peace, but by the sayth chat I owe vnto the crowne of Hozolois thou shalt neuer escape out of pryson as longe as I lyue thou shalt do me no moze shame now chat I haue the. Sp: said chempour for goddes sake be not soo soze dyspleased for she hath done no trespase, & if she haue I forgyue it her for euer, and sp: so shal ye do for þe loue of mee, and florence I requyre you knele do wne before your father and cry him mercy. Sp: said she w a right good will

woyll, than she knelled downe before her  
fader & sayd, gentyl king, and dere fader  
haue mercy on me & forgyue me your yl  
woyl, and the kynge who was fylful of  
feruent pye and despyte spke by hys fote  
and strake her therwith in the middes of  
the byest & so ouerthrewe her wyde open  
to the erth. And whan the emperour sawe  
that he was ryght sore dyspleased & sayd  
for kynge ye haue done me grete vilany  
for I had assured her that she shold haue  
had no hurte neyther of you nor of none  
other, & she is in my paupson and in my  
keping, and she is myne and yet ye bete  
her here before my face. well for Empe  
rour said the king in an yll houre she is  
aryued here, for whether ye wyll or not  
she shall be cast in to perpetuall pyson,  
than the kinge toke her by the arme and  
dreme her to hym warde, to the tent to  
haue ledde her forth out of the tent, but  
the emperour toke her in his armes & said  
for kynge holde you still or by the sayth  
that I owe to myn empyre yf ye set han  
des on her ony more ye and I shalbe ene  
myes togder for euermore. Than was  
the kynge more dyspleased than he was  
before, and lyft by his hande & gaue her  
a grete blow or two vnder the cheke as  
she stode in the emperours armes. Than  
the emperour sayd what stryke ye her for  
all my praiser and betwene mine armes in  
my keping by the sayth that I owe vnto  
god it soze greueth me, & therwith he  
toke his swerde in his hande & gaue the  
king a puillaunt stroke. Than the king  
drem his swerde & gaue agayne the empe  
rour a grete stroke, than the kynge com  
pany assayled the emperour, and the emper  
our ran on the king, and so ther were  
well to the nombre of .xxx. thousande on  
bothe parties, than there began amonge  
them a grete bataille & a fyerce so þat ther  
Arthur.

were many slayne and hurt, and amonge  
them ther was such a noyse that Arthur  
and his company might well here them  
as they were in the castel, & they went to  
the wyndowes and looked out at them  
to know what noyse that was, and ther  
they sawe a fyerce bataille without in the  
felde amonge theyr enemyes, & they sent  
out a spye to knowe the trouthe what it  
myght be, & he went and came again and  
reported to florence & to them all he wit  
was, and for what occasion the bataille  
was bytwene the kynge & the emperour.  
Neuer trust me said florence but þat  
Dorothea is in the emperours tent, and they  
wene all how that I were there amonge  
them, for I remembre well she sayd ones  
to me and to Arthur also how þat she told  
cause as moche hate & stryfe to be among  
them as euer was loue. Wotely madame  
said Arthur ye say theyr trouthe, for I am  
wel remembred so I herde ones say, and  
euer this bataille encreased more & more,  
for the people dreme to on bothe parties,  
the whiche had touned to grete damage  
on both parties yf the. iiii. kynges had  
not ben, for they did so moche that with  
grete payne and itopardy, they departed  
theym, and than sodrynly Dorothea  
was banysshed away soo that none wist  
where she was become, and as soone as  
euery man was vnarmed, the emperour  
departed and went his waye toward his  
owne countre, and his people comforted  
hym to the best of theyr power, and the  
kynge was in his tent and trembled for  
pye, and therwith there came to hym one  
of the emperours dukes and sayd for my  
lorde the emperour gupeth you of the gife  
of florence youre doughter, for he ca  
reth neyther for you nor for her, nor for  
none of your loues, nor for nothing that  
ye haue or shall haue, and by me he de  
B. l. spech

## The story of Arthur

speeth you, and biddeth you to be ware of  
 hym at this netre cestes, for than he wyl  
 come and make War apenst your wyf an  
 hondred thousande men of warre. Than  
 the king of orquency sayde, sy: say vnto  
 your Emperour that yf he come he shall  
 fynde that wyl speke with hym not to  
 his pleasure, & I ensure you yf he come  
 not he shal be sought where so euer he be  
 to thentet to haue his heed brought into  
 this countre, therfore he we hym that yf  
 he wyl come and bring hym self into this  
 realme he shall ease vs of moche payne.  
 Than the duke departed, and the kynge  
 Enebus abode styll in grete melencoly  
 Than the king of balefoude said to hym  
 sy: here is begon a great besynes, & ma  
 ny inconuenientes are lyke to folow whet  
 by, therfore sy: it shal be nedeful for you  
 to puruey for people, & for the best knigh  
 tes that ye can gete, for the emperour is a  
 puissaunt prince, & hath many frendes,  
 gentle kynge suffre your selfe to be con  
 seyled both to your profyt & honour, sy:  
 for goddes sake leue this abusio thus to  
 lay spege to your daughter, & do no more  
 apenst your owne promelle & agremēt  
 no: strue no more apenst your daughter  
 desteny, for there is no profyte can come  
 to you therby but many yll inconuenien  
 tes may ensue therby, & hath done all re  
 dy as it hath appered by the duke of bigo:  
 for he hath receyued deth, & sy: ye wer in  
 grete displeasure with the king of orque  
 ny & with me, & banished vs out of your  
 courte, also sy: ye were in grete abusyon  
 at comyte at ychiche doze whan ye wede  
 to haue married florence to the emperour  
 & now ye be fallē to hym at grete mortall  
 warre, and sy: this emperour hath lost a  
 king & xi. dukes & all theyr people flarne  
 and all this is done bicause ye obstinate  
 apenst flo:re desteny, therfore now sy:

do yet the best, appease your selfe & make  
 peas with your daughter & w the good  
 knyght Arthur, & desyre hym to aide you  
 apenst this emperour, for one thyng I  
 say y he hath in his company many of the  
 best knyghtes of al the world, & sy: if ye  
 may haue them ye nede not to fere the pe  
 rour no: yet all the world, sy: I consyle  
 you thus to do. Ye said the king & wold  
 ye haue me to do thus, how wold I than  
 haue ony honour or fame in this worlde  
 syth the shamefully hath for sake me & is  
 gone a way to this straunge knight, well  
 sy: quod the big of balefoude your dought  
 ter I ensure you right sagely behaueth  
 her self as she that nothyng wyl do apenst  
 her desteny, & bycause ye wold haue con  
 strayned her to haue maried apenst her  
 wyl, therfore she is come in to this strage  
 castell for to withstand this emperour, sy:  
 she hath with her your own broder char  
 chebyshop & her cosyn duke philyp of sa  
 bury, & v. C. of her knyghtes, & sy: ther is  
 none of all these that for all the good in  
 the world they wold not suffre ony inco  
 uenientes betwene her & this knight Ar  
 thur, but sy: we feareth y this emperour  
 wold doo her damage, therfore we hath  
 retayned hym & suche other as be of hys  
 company bycause that he is the moost best  
 knyght of all the world now lyuynge,  
 wherin sy: she hath done wysely, for ye  
 may se how at all poyntes they haue dis  
 pleased this emperour and slayne of hys  
 men, sy: your daughter is your owne, &  
 this emperour is now your mo: all ene  
 my. but sy: your loue ought for to be on  
 your daughter, & here you speilly apenst  
 your enemyes and not apenst her whom  
 ye should loue. Than the kyng sayd, sy:  
 by the good lord I am at this present tyme  
 so overcome wyth dyspleasure that I  
 can not as now receyue your wordes in  
 grete,

gree, I shal aduise me well this night & to morowe I shal answere you. So ye saye well sayd the kynges and. xii. peres. Than the kyng was vnarmed & al other in lythe wyse, than the tables were spred and euery man sat downe & made good chere, and so passed forth the tyme w the kynges tyll it was tyme to go to rest.

How that after the emperor was thus departed in dyspleasure and had despyed the kyng wth moztall warre the nexte nyghte folowynge by the subtyll arte of maister Steuen al the kynges host was brought euery man fast a slepe, & in the meane tyme the mapster and fyue other knyghtes wth hym bare the king & emendus fast a slepe as he laye, bedde and all vp in to the palays of the Castell of the portenoyze.

Capitulo. lxxxix.



Thus as the kyng Emendus and hys lordes were in theyr tentes ryghte sore troubled & abashed of the debate & was tynen bytwene the kyng and the emperor for the loue of Droseryne as ye haue herde here before all that season Arthur and his company were in the castell laughynge and hauing good game of the begynning of the occasyon of the stryfe bytwene the kyng and the emperor, and so all that day they were in grete feest and ioye tyl it was tyme to go to theyr restes, and so euery man wente therto saue the mapster, & he was in hys doublet bycause that the weber was som what hote, & in his company there was duke Whylp, Bysebar, Gouvernar, Hector, and Clemenson, and Berdykas, and they played and sported them togider til it was very late, than Gouvernar sayd to the mapster, sy ponder in the heuen ye Arthur,

may se many sterres, but I pray you how can ye know by them what shold folow after. So said the maister & seynte therof is right pleasaunt and goodly. I praye your maister said Hector loke now vp in to the heuen & beholde the planettes and loke & ye can perceyue any thinge that shold auantage or elles hurtful to vs, and soo for their pleasure the mapster looked vp & beheld & heuen a grete space, & at last he sayd, lordes & frendes and ye behelde the planettes & coude consider them as well as I do ye shold clerely perceyue that we be at the ende of our war, for we shal haue shortly peas, & as I thinke verily we shal haue Arthur to our lord & mapster. So wete maister said duke Whylp & I pray you how shal al this come to passe. Verily sy I se well by & course of the sterres many meruailes, for & planet that as now reneith who hath the gouernance ouer the kyng Emendus is now in that poynt & yf we mighte haue the kyng we shold lightly haue peace w hym, & I knowe well by the planet that he is as now layde in his bedde in his paylson and is fast a slepe & all hys host, and I knowe suche a charme that yf I do cast it, neither he nor none of his shal awake tyl it be to morowe saye daye, thefore let vs go out in to the felde and bring hyther the kyng, and than shal we haue our peas sone made. In & name of god said Bysebar thame haue he that sayleth so to do. Let vs go streight waye sayd Gouvernar, than they all aparyled them and went out of the castell as pryncely as they coude, and despye the mapster to kepe the gates open tyl they returned, and whan they approached nere to the tentes, than the maister blew such a blast that ther arose a grete noyze and a thicke myste, so that they lost sene

B. ii. the

## The story of Arthur

the sight of the tentes, and therewith eue  
ry man that was waking in the felde fell  
fast a slepe, than the mapster and his co-  
pany went to the kynges tent, and there  
they founde hym in hys riall bedde fast a  
slepe, & grete lyghtes of waxe brenning  
before hym, and so amonge them they  
toke the hole bedde and the kyng lyenge  
in it, and bare it sayre and softely vp to  
the castell, and dyde set downe the bedde  
in the grete hall of the palays, and so set  
four torches of waxe brenning before  
hym, and soo they dyde let hym lye styll.  
Than the mapster sayd I Wyl retoune  
agayn to the tentes and awake the king  
my fader and shewe hym howe that we  
haue the king within the castel With vs  
And so he Went into his faders tent and  
bndyde his enchaument, and so than  
he was brought vnto his faders beddes  
lyde, and than he sate hym downe sayre  
and softely, and abode tyll the kyng his  
fader awoke by hym selfe, and than the  
mapster sayd, sye be ye a slepe. Nay sayd  
the kyng who be ye that speketh to me  
thus erly. Sye I am Steuen your sone  
Sainte mary sayd the kyng who hath  
brought you hyder, gete you hens for  
a kyng Emendus may take you ther is no  
gold nor syluer that shal saue you fro  
deth. Sye sayd the mapster the kyng is  
as now more in my daunger than I am  
in his, for sye he is in y castel fast a slepe  
A slepe in the castell sayd the kyng how  
can y be, how is he come thyder, or how  
shold he be a slepe among his enemyes  
Sye truly We haue this night bozne him  
to the castell in his bedde fast a slepe, for  
sye by the subtyll arte of nygromancy I  
brought hym & all his host fast a slepe,  
therefore sye I am com to you for to haue  
your counseyle what we shal do w him  
eyther slec hym or saue him on liue. Slec

hym said the kinge saint mary loke that  
ye touche hym not to his hurte, but ho-  
nour ye hym as moche as ye may, abyde  
ye here a lytell space, and I wyl aryse, &  
go speke with the kinge of D; queney, &  
as soone as he was redy they went bothe  
togeder to the kyng of D; queney, who  
was as than fast a slepe in his tent, than  
they awoke him & recoited to hym al the  
mater. Than the king of balefoude sayd  
sye for goddes sake helpe to make y peas  
amonge vs. Than the king said sye I  
thinke it wer best to go and wake al the  
other kinges and .xii. peres, and let them  
come hyder, and so they were incontynēt  
sente for, and they came thyder streyghe  
wayes, and as soone as they were come  
and herde all the case how it was. Than  
the kinge of balefoude said, sye let vs  
euery man set to our handes to make the  
peas for as now we are nere at the point  
let vs go all to the castel and saye to the  
kyng how that al we were bozne in lyke  
wyse as he was vp in to the castell whi-  
les that we were a slepe, and than when  
he seeth and hereth that we all be taken  
pysoners, and that he hath none now in  
all his host that is able to mayntain his  
warre he wyl the sooner be couerted and  
broken fro his purpose. And they all an-  
swered and sayd, sye ye haue ryght well  
deuysed the mater, we be al cōsent thus  
to do, than they all departed pryuely that  
none of the host espyed them, and went  
vp into the castell, & so there they wente  
to they beddes and laye styll tyll it was  
in the moyrnyng, than in the moyrnyng  
berymes the mapster and Hector Went  
to Arthur and awoke hym and sayd, sye  
ye haue here in your company the kyng  
Emendus and al the other four kinges  
and the .xii. peres. And where are they  
sayd Arthur. Here win this sayre cham-  
ber

He sayd Hector. I gentyll mayster sayde  
 Arthur blessed be the houre that euer re  
 were bo:ne, for now I trust we shal ha  
 ue peas let vs go cause florence and the  
 archebysshop to aryse, and so they dyde,  
 and whan they were by and redy a herde  
 of these rydnges they were right ioyfull,  
 than tharchebysshop sayd let vs go and  
 cause to aryse the kynge of balefounde  
 and the king of Wyquency and the kyng  
 of Imaelpre and the king of mozmall,  
 & al the xii. piers, & than let vs take cou  
 seyle togyder & se what shal be done fer  
 der in this mater, & duke Phyllyp wente  
 for them, and as soone as they wer come  
 they saluted Arthur and florence. Than  
 the byshop sayd, syz now there is noo  
 moze to do but let euery man take theyr  
 harners, than Arthur, duke Phyllyp, Hec  
 tor, & Gouvernar armed them, & tWo. C.  
 other knyghtes in theyr company, than  
 the byshop sayd, syz now shal the king  
 Smedus doubte wha he seeth you, & the  
 sooner he myl agre to make peas w you  
 Than the kyng of balefounde said, faire  
 lady florence ye shal go to the king your  
 faders bedde & wake him. Mas said flo  
 rene shal I go to him & he hateth me deed  
 ly, I fere me he wyl sle me. Madams q  
 the kyng of mozmall there is not so harde  
 a herted ma but I a woman shal molyfy  
 hym, for there was neuer so grete wyath  
 but a woma may appease it, therfore ma  
 dame go your way to him, for I warant  
 you ye shal make your peas your selfe.  
 Well quod florence I shal go to him god  
 be my helpe, tha she departed & wet soft  
 ly into the chambze wher as the king her  
 fader laye, than she opened I Windowes  
 & dyd out the lychtes of wate, and went  
 laye & softly to the kinges beddes syde,  
 and whan she saw that he slept fast she  
 fate her down by him on the beddes fete,  
 Arthur,

How that kynge Smedus wha that  
 he awoke forgaue all his ill Wyl to flo  
 rene his doughter, and dyde put all the  
 gouvernynge of his realme into her han  
 des.

Capitulo xxxxi.



Thus as florence fate on her  
 faders beddes fete a good spa  
 ce, at last the king felte one  
 sytynge on hyr beddes fete  
 therwith he awoke & opened  
 his eyen, & behelde the grete wyndowes  
 open befoze hym saye glased & the sone  
 shynynge all about the chambze the whi  
 che was hanged ryght rythely, than the  
 kyng mervayled gretely wher he was  
 and was soze afrayed and blessed him of  
 tentymes and sayd, saynt marye where  
 am I. What am I betrayed, & hat arte  
 thou that syttest on my beddes fete. Syz  
 sayd she I am your doughter florence, &  
 whan the king percelued that it was she  
 he sayd, who hath brought the in to this  
 place wher as I am syth thou haste sh  
 amed thy selfe with a fugityue knyght. A  
 syz sayd florence for goddes sake save ye  
 so no moze for by the holy baptim that I  
 receyued at the founte stone & on the dam  
 pnacion of my soule my body was neuer  
 by hym nor by none other enpayred ney  
 ther in word nor in dede. Certaynly said  
 the kyng sole as thou arte I byleue the  
 not, why hast thou elles ben so moche in  
 his copany without doyng of any other  
 thing, for loke where as the bert is there  
 is the body habandoned, for the body en  
 clyneth to the herte. Why sayde florence  
 it nedeth not alwayes to accomplysh al  
 the wylles of the herte, but suche as are  
 honourable & good. Syz sayd the king  
 what honour is this for you thus to hold  
 your selfe in pryson priuety hyde wth a  
 straunge knyght, & to leue such a noble  
 B. iii. marriage

## The story of Arthur

marriage as I would haue gyuen to you  
 sayd she yf it please you I shal shew  
 you as to that I haue left you and come  
 hyder, it is of trouth I sawe wel ye wer  
 of the mynde to haue gyuen me in mari-  
 age to this emperour the whiche truely  
 was a penynt my mynde for I haue him to  
 the death, in so moche that I woulde it  
 had cost me the one halfe of my londes so  
 that I had his heed fro his sholdres, soo  
 that I woulde not offende god, and sye in  
 this grete hate rede yf I woulde haue ta-  
 ken hym in my hert woulde neuer haue bin  
 in peace til I had caused him perauenture  
 to haue lost his lyfe, & therby shoulde I  
 haue ben reputed a false murtherer & da-  
 pned my soule perpetually, & to you this  
 shold haue ben a grete shame & reproche  
 for I am sure yf I shold haue died in the  
 quarell I shold haue sayd grauncy to  
 hym I woulde haue brought me his heed,  
 for I am in fere I shold haue put my sou-  
 le in copardye to haue gone to the deuyl  
 of hell, and as syding in some maner of  
 wayes to haue shorted his mortal lyfe, &  
 so in this I shold haue becom cruel, and  
 lost my womans herte, sye I ensue you  
 this was my wyl and intencion, & sye to  
 eschewe al these perilles & inconuenien-  
 tes I am come hyder, for I know well  
 that yf I had tarped wryth you ye wolde  
 haue caused me to haue had hym a penynt  
 my wyl, therfore I durste not dyscouer  
 my courage vnto you, but I shewed my  
 mynde to your brother the noble archebis-  
 shop who is myne vncle & fader in god &  
 confessor, he hath all this season taken  
 hede to me both comynge and going, in  
 chambere and out of chambere, therfore en-  
 quyre of hym & of duke philyp of sabary  
 and of all my other barons & knightes la-  
 dyes & damoyelles whether than I haue  
 dysonestly wyed my selfe or not, & sye

as for the knight that ye speke of I haue  
 none otherwyse done to hym but as my  
 destiny hath gyuen me, & sye thus hathe  
 ben al my deling therfore sye for goddes  
 sake haue pyte on me pour owne humble  
 chylde, ye be my lord and fader, & I am  
 pour doughter, ye are left vnto me in the  
 stede of my moder, who I am sure and she  
 had lyued wold haue endured grete trou-  
 ble rather than I shold haue ben marped  
 a penynt my wyl & destiny, & sye syth ye are  
 lefte me in the stede of my moder for god-  
 des sake than leue pour faderly herte and  
 take a moderly herte vnto you, sye accom-  
 plyshe my desyre & let neuer this empe-  
 rour haue me, I loue you & doubt you as  
 I ought to do my dere fader, Wherefore  
 sye open your hert and take pyte on pour  
 chylde, and therwith she began rusully to  
 wepe so y grete plente of syluer droppes  
 fell downe on her byestes. And whan the  
 kynge sawe her & herde her speke to hum-  
 bly his herte coude no lenger endure in y  
 rygour, but it began to melte & said, wel  
 doughter florence appease your self and  
 wepe no more I shal speke of this matere  
 with my counseyle, wher is Gylliam my  
 chāberlayne cause him to come to me for  
 I wyl tpe. Sir quod she he is about in y  
 selde in your tent. Saynt mary sayd the  
 kyng & how am I thā brought into this  
 place. Certaynly sye ye we brought hyder  
 ryght softly for fere of waking of you, &  
 in lyke wise to be al pour. iiii. kinges and  
 xii. peres, for they knew nothing therof  
 tyl they awoke this moynynge. Derly q  
 the king this was wonderly well slepte  
 of vs al, gyue me my doublet and I wyl  
 tpe, than florence gaue it hym and laced  
 his sleues & toke a keruercese & did call  
 it about his sholdres & toke a combe and  
 ryght softly dyde kembre his heed the whi-  
 che ryght wel pleased the kyng, & so she  
 made

made hym redy at al poyntes, and cha he  
ysued out o' the chambye and led floren  
ce by the hand, who made somwhat sem  
blaunt to be sorrowful, and whan they wer  
entred into this palays the kyng saw al  
his other. iiii. kinges and xii. peres than  
he smiled a lytel & said lordes the lady of  
thys place hath made better warre than  
any of vs hath done, for we are now mo  
re in her daunger than she is in ours. Cha  
the kyng of morzmal sayde, syz than it is  
needful to vs p' we take good hede p' we  
displese her not. Well sayde the kyng but  
were all we brought hrt her wout kno w  
lege of our people in the field, by the faith  
that I owe to god I haue wonder howe  
it myght be. And therewith they hearde a  
gret cry and clamoz without in the felde  
among his people, and the king marua  
led what it might be. Clerly syz sayd he  
kyng of ozquency I beleue it be for you,  
and for vs because they know not whe  
re we are become. for goddes sake sayd  
the kyng sende worde out to theym, and  
shew how that I commaund them to be  
in peace, and so incontynent there was a  
messenger sent to them. Than the kyng  
of morzmal sayd vnto florence, madam  
I requyre you depart out of this cham  
brye for a season, for we wyl speake wth  
the king in counsaile, than she departed  
Than the kyng of morzmal sayd, syz he  
for ye came to vs we were speakyng of  
you, and I shal tel you what it was, syz  
it is of trouthe that ye know Wel the de  
sceny of florence your daughter that who  
so ever take her in maryage, wythout it  
be he to whom that she is desienyed vn  
to shal not escape without dech as it ap  
pereth playnely by this emperoure, for I  
beleue verely that yf he enforce him selfe  
any ferdere so haue her it wyl coste hym  
his lyfe, and syz ye dyd se howe that the

ymage dyd gyue her chaplet vnto thes  
knyght Arthur who is aboue all other  
most chyste in chualty and syz ye dyd se  
scale and swere to kepe the appoyment  
that was made, and in lyke wyse dyd  
we al pour kyngs and, xii. peres, therfore  
syz it is our mynde and counsaile that ye  
accomplishe you p'omysse whereto ye  
haue set your wytyng and great scale,  
and syz do ye so that ye may haue the ac  
cord and good wil of this knight Arthur  
the whiche shal be righte needful for you  
for the sustaynyng of pour warre, a syz  
al we be of thys accord, why syz sayde  
the kyng and wyl ye haue me too gyue  
my doughter and heyre vnto a straunge  
knyght, and we know nothyng of hys  
gentylnes or parage, for he may be of su  
che lignage that it shold be great bylany  
to me and to al myr telme to gyue her vnto  
to hym, and al ye that counsaile me cherto  
shold be greatly blamed. Than the kyng  
of balefount sayd, syz a man oughte not  
to demaunde for good wyne where as it  
groweth, nor a wyse balpauit man fro  
whence he cometh, we se and knowe wel  
the hye surmountyng beauty of hys bo  
dy, syz in all pour realme there is noe  
a goodlyer man at all poyntes, and also  
we may se his great gentylnes howe that  
he giueth all aboute vnto knyghts hoz  
ses and harnes, robes, and golde and syl  
uer gret plentye and he is endued aboue  
al other wyth thys noble vertue of lybe  
ralitye, and syz the sweetenes and grace  
that is in hym can not be recounted, and  
the redoubted chualtye that is in hym  
is incomparable, syz yf there were no  
chynges elles in hym it were suffyrent  
p'ough for hym to attayne thereto vnto  
gret excellent honoure and noble dygny  
tye, howe be it syz send for hys colin hec  
tor, who is here wythin thys place, and  
also

## Mythology of Arthur

975155

as for the knight that ye speke of I haue  
none other wyse done to hym but as my  
besteny hath giuen me, & so thus hath  
ben al my deling therfore so for goddes  
sake haue pyte on me your owne humble  
chylde, ye be my lord and lady, & I am  
your doughter ye are left vnto me in the  
floure of my moder, who I am sure and  
habilyghed wold haue endured grete trou-  
ble rather than I shold haue ben marred  
against my will & destiny, & so syth ye are  
left me in the floure of my moder for god-  
des sake than lene your ladyship herte and  
pathe a myghty herte vnto you, so accom-  
plishe my desire & let neuer this empe-  
ment fail me, I tolde you a doublet you as  
I ought to haue had, therefore  
I haue open your herte and take wyte on your  
childe, and therewith I began to wepe  
for so I grete plenty of sorow & paine  
fell downe on her byelles, And when the  
kyng sawe her & herde her speke so hum-  
bly his herte coude no longer endure in  
pygour, but it began to multe & sayd, well  
doughter florence appease your self and  
wepe no more I shal speke of this matter  
with my counseyle, wher is Gyllistyn  
chamberlayne cause him to come to me for  
I wyl tyle. Sir quod she he is about in  
felde in your tent. Saynt mary sayd the  
kyng & how am I thabrought into this  
place. Certaynly so ye we brought hider  
ryght softly for fere of waking of you, &  
in lyke wise so be al your. iiii. kynges and  
xii. peres, for they knew nothyng therof  
tyl they awoke this moynynge. Derryly  
of the king this was wonderly well slepte  
of vs al, giue me my doublet and I wyl  
tyle, than florence gaue it hym and laced  
his sleues & toke a keruiche & did cast  
it about his sholdres & toke a combe and  
ryght softly dyde kemb his heed the whil  
the ryght wel pleased the kyng, & so she  
made

made by m redy at al poyntes, and cha he  
yffued out o' the chambze and led floren  
ce by the hand, who made somwhat sem  
blant to be sorrowful, and whan they wer  
entred into this palays the kyng saw al  
his other. In kinges and xi. peres than  
he smiled a lytel & said. lordes the lady of  
this place hath made better warre than  
any of vs hath done, for we are now mo  
re in her danger than she is in ours. Cha  
the kyng of moymall sayde, syz than it is  
needful to vs p we take good hede p we  
displese her not. Well sayde the kyng but  
were all we brought hys wyte wout know  
lege of our people in the field, by the faith  
that I owe to god I have wonder howe  
it myght be. And therewith they heade a  
pact and clamed withoute the felde  
among the people and the lady marryp  
let what it might be. And the lady be  
dyng of dyscrey I beleue that she  
and for vs because they know not  
te wece become. for goddes sake saye  
the kyng sende wordes ouer to thepyn, and  
thet how that I commaund them to be  
in peace, and so incontynent there was a  
messenger sent to them. Chan the kyng  
of moymall sayd vnto florence, madam  
I requyre you depart out of this cham  
ber for a season, for we wyl speake wyth  
the kyng in counsaile. Chan she departed  
Chan the kyng of moymall sayd, syz be  
fore ye came to vs we were speakyng of  
you, and I shal tel you what it was; syz  
it is of trouthe that ye know wel the de  
sceny of florence your daughter that who  
so ever take her in maryage, wythout it  
be he to whom that she is desiened by  
to shal not escape wythout dech as it ap  
peteth playnely by this emperoure. for I  
beleue verely that yf he enforce him selfe  
any further so haue her it wyl coste hym  
his lyfe, and syz ye dyd se howe that the

ymage dyd gyue her chaplet vnto the  
knyght Arthur who is aboue all ocher  
most chere in chynalte and syz ye dyd se  
scale and swete to kepe the appoyment  
that was made, and in lyke wyse dyd  
we al your kyngs and. xi. peres, therfore  
syz it is our mynde and counsaile that ye  
accomplishe you promysse. Whet so ye  
haue set your wytyng and great scale,  
and syz do ye so that ye may haue the ac  
cord and good wil of this knyght Arthur  
the whiche shal be ryght needful for you  
for the sustaynyng of your warre, a syz  
al we be of this accord, why syz saye  
the kyng and wyl ye haue me too gyue  
my daughter and heyre vnto a strange  
knyght, and we know nothyng of hys  
gentylnes or parage, for he may be of so  
the signage that it shold be great bylany  
to me and to al my reime to gyue her vnto  
so hym, and al ye that counsaile me cherto  
shold be greatly blamed. Chan the kyng  
of moymall sayd, syz a man ought not  
to be so careles for good wyne where as it  
groweth in the halpaine man fro  
whence he cometh, he se and knowe wel  
the hys surmyse, and the pryncyp of hys bo  
dy, for syz in all the world there is not  
a goodlyre man as he is, and also  
we may se his great strength, howe that  
he giueth all aboute his body, and his ho  
ses and harnes, robes, and all other  
uer great plentye and he is a man of  
al other. Wyth this noble  
ralyte and syz the sweetene  
that is in hym can not be receyued  
the redoubted chynalte that  
is incomparable, syz yf there were  
chyngeles in hym it were suffy  
ynough for hym to attayne therby  
great excellent honoure and noble dyg  
nyte, howe be it syz send for hys colin  
for, who is here wythin this place, and  
also

## The story of Arthur

also for Gouvernour who is a righte sage knight, and let vs take their promesse to tel vs the troth where that Arthur was born and of what lignage he is come for paradiuementure we shal sooner know it by them than by him selfe, for I am sure he wyl not praiſe him selfe, for I neuer saw so good a knight and so lytel auaventure. Then they sayd all w one voyce, sit this kyng sayeth well than they sent for Hector for a Gouvernour and whan the king Emeus saide Hector who was byg and gret and wel furnished in al his myghtes and holdyng his hand on the pomell of his sword and looked fierly. Then the kyng sayd, this knight is to be redoubted I wot not what he is. Then they answered a saide, sye themp: our people knoweth ryght wel to whom he belongeth, sye surely Arthur a he calleth eche other colyns. Then the king called them to him a sayd lordes we haue sent to speke w you, ye be both saye persons and haue righte great semblant to be wise, and so we beleue velye y ye be, yet neuertheless we wyl haue your promes that ye shal shewe vs the troth of that thyng y we wil demaund of you, and that for loue or promes losse or winning to you or to any other that ye haue shal shewe nothyng to vs but the troth of our demaunde. Certaynly sye we saythfully promysse you to shewe you any thing that we can do, so y it tourne to no bylany to vs nor to any lord a mayster. Well sye sayd the kyng I praye you who is your lord and master. Sye as god helpe me Arthur is our lord. And what holde you of hym sayd the kinge. Ueliy sye saide Hector a duchy a an erledome, I hold of hym. That is a grete thing sayd the king and ye sye Gouvernour what hold you of him. As god helpe me sye all that cuer I haue in this world. Then he is

a gret man sayd the kyng. Ye sye truly saide Hector that he is. And of whom was he borne sayd the kyng and of what collyr and of what lignage. As touchyng that ye shal pardon vs, for that wyl we not shewe you withour his lycence, than Arthur was sente for, and as soone as the kyng saide hym al his displeasure passid a way, than the kinge despyed him so hertely that at the last he gaue lycence to Hector, and to Gouvernour to shewe the kyng what he was. Then Hector sayd sye by the assuraunce and promesse that I haue made to you I shal shewe you the troth now that he hath gyven me lycence. sye this knight Arthur is the al onely son to my lord the noble duke of Brytayne, and neuer to the erle of Bloys, and of the lignage of the Duke of Lancaster in England. By my promes sayd Gouvernour al that Hector hath sayd is of a troth. In the name of god sayde the kyng than he is of a sufficient gentyl lignage, holde saye ye my lordes and peres. As god helpe me sayd the kyng of morshal, sye al we wyl counsaile you that ye helpuer to hym the honoure that god hath predestynate for hym, that is to saye, let hym haue my ladye florence your daughter, and vnto this sye we al be agreed how say ye my lordes do I say wel or not. And they al answered wryth one voyce that they were al of the same accord. And than the archbishop was sente for, who was soone agreed to this purpose. Then the kyng sayde, lordes and scendes ye wyl that I shal doo this as ye al be accorded vnto, wherewith I am content, and if good happen to come therof it shal please me ryghte wel, and yf it be ocher wyse the blame shal be too you, for ye cause me thus to do. And they al answered and sayd that they were content

sent to bere the burden thereof. Than the  
byschop sayd, I refuse not thus to do, for  
I have bene assured to her ever sith y  
tyme y the chaplet was giue him at Coz-  
nyer. Wel sayd the kynge, I syth it is so far  
forth gone I wyl than make no longer  
delay in the mater, than he called Arthur  
to him & sent for florence & sayd dought-  
er florence I haue ben in comunicatiō  
before this tyme wihemperour to haue  
married you to him, who as at this daye  
I hate of al men I yuyng, for as now I  
wold not that I had done so for this ca-  
stell full of golde and siluer, but now my  
kynge and peres of this reime doth coun-  
saile me to gyue you in maryage to this  
knight Arthur, and if it please you I am  
content therewith, therfore shewe me your  
pleasure. Wygh the dere father said florence  
he is never to my harte than euer was the  
emperour, I wyl not refuse him, but  
am ready to fulfyl your pleasure. Than  
the kynge toke a rynge fro her ringer and  
sayde to Arthur, say here I giue you flo-  
rence my doughter & put you in ful pos-  
sessyon of her by this rying, & of al y ho-  
noure that pattauneth to her to haue ou-  
ryng my lyfe, on the condicion y I wyl  
be kynge tyl as longe as I lyue & you to  
be kynge after my deeth & fro hence forth  
I put the keepynge of all my realme into  
your handes, and I wyl I syth in pias  
now in myn old daies, & y shal haue the  
payn and trauaile yf dede requirerth, and  
god be your guyde in al your woorkes.  
Than Arthur kneled down and roke the  
ryng. Than al y other. iiii. kynge toke  
hym vp and byd him honour & reuerence  
as to their lord and souerayne, & Arthur  
toke the saye lady florence in his armes  
and kyssed her ryght swetely, the which  
he neuer byd tyl the same tyme, and thae  
he swaie on al the saintes before y kynge

too put hym out of suspicte, whereof the  
kynge had great ioy, and so was cleue ou-  
of al sozome whan that Arthur was put  
in possession of the lady florence. Than  
there began great feast and ioy, and than  
they went to diner and were s. ruled rygh-  
te chely, & than it was published throug-  
out w the hoost bothe wyth in the castel  
and without how that Arthur was en su-  
red to the saye lady florence, and accom-  
ded wyth the kynge, than in al the hoost  
there was made great feast and triumphe  
for ioy, and euery mā sayd to biher nob-  
haue we a noble and a good lord, now let  
themperour do what he lyst, and blessed  
be the mother that bare this noble knyght  
Arthur, and god saue al them that euer  
hath giuen counsaile in this mater. than  
they al byd sende vnto the kynge, and re-  
quyer hym that their new lord mygh-  
come into the hoost to thentent that they  
myght se hym, and whan the kynge herde  
this request it pleased him ryghte wel &  
commaunded that Arthur shoulde be ap-  
parayled in royal vestures, than Arthur  
was arrayed as it appertayned to a lord  
of suche a gret hoost, he had on a cote of  
skatler, and a spicore of grene saracnes  
furred wyth menpuers, and oller that a  
garments of spike rayed wyth golde, and  
a longe mantell of byolet sayn, and he  
semed to be as saye as an angel descen-  
ded from heauen. Than the kynge stode  
before hym and helde in his hande flo-  
rence his doughter who byd ryghte swete-  
ly beholde hym, and al the four kyn-  
ges and xii. peres stode and behelde hym  
he was hye and bygge and surmoun-  
ge al other in stature. Than the kynge  
caused hym to mount on a saye palfrey.  
And whan the lady Margarete saw him  
she sayd to florence. Adam beholde  
what a manerly man god hath sent you  
he

## The story of Arthur

he had done more honour for you than for any creature in all the world. Then the.iii. kinges and. xii. peres and Hector Governar, duke Whilp and the maister And mo than. v. C other knightes mounced on their horses and conuaded Arthur into the host, & clarence his good sward was borne al naked before him in signifying that he was chiefe champpon of al the realme. Then the kyng caused to be cryed throughout al the host, how that he had comyted to Arthur al the cure and charge of his realme, and charged euery body that they sholde obey hym as theyr propre kyng and sauerapne lord. And as he rode throughout the host and passed for by every man sayd welcome our new lord, god encrease thy honoure, & so euery man made great toye to beholde hym. And thus the kyng solourned at the port thoye. viii. dayes in great feast and toye.

How that Arthur demaunded congie and lycence of kyng Emenbus father to his lady florence to departe into Brytayne to se the duke of Britayne his father and the duches his mother, the which lycence they gaue hym wryth muche payne and florence was in great sorow for his departing. Capl. lxxxiii

**A**t the ende of. viii. daies the kyng made to be cryed by the host shold departe euery man home warde and be commanded them to be redy at a day warning, & gaue them golde and syluer grete plenty. Then Arthur came to the kinge sayd, for it is of trowth that whan I departed out of myn owne country I promised my lord my lady & to my lady my mother that I wold be wryth them agayn at the ende of. v. peres at the fe-

chest, the which shal be now at this halowtyde, and I knowe well that ye shal be my promelle wryth them they shal neuer haue toye, and I am sure they wyl beleue no maner of mességer though he be neuer so true, therfore say by your licence I wyl depart and go se them and retorne again in as shorte space as is to me possible. And sayd the kyng take good hede what your desire is, for one thyng I promise you I wyl neuer put on my spoytes for any thyng of business that mai hap to fal to my relme & yours, for the charge wherof is now in your handes, therfore sit down shal be for your honour. Sayd Arthur as long as I lyue there shal nedes no fere to be had, and certainly I wyl tary as litle space as I may, for as god helpe me I wold I had bene there and here again, for here is the king of orqueny whome I shal leue in my stede to do euery thyng in myne absence & shal be nedefull to the realme, say I wyl take with me my colyn Hector, duke Whilp, maister Ercuen & sayd Wysebar. Sayd the kyng take with you, whome it shal please you with ye wyl nedes go, depart whan ye wyl in the name of god, who be your guide & sauegard and take your leue at florence or ye depart, than Arthur wente into florence chambze, whome he found wepyng, for it was shewed her how that he wold go into his owne countrey, she was set on her beddes syde, and the lady Margaret held before her a henechese to wype wyshall her eyen, than Arthur embraced her and sayd. mine owne dere lady wepe no more for as god helpe me it greneth my herte ryght soze to se you do thus, myne owne swete lady for goddes sake be content. And dere herte sayd florence now what ye haue me and that I am giuen vnto you, and now ye wyl leue me, alas it is but a lye

lytel fason that ye haue holde company  
with me, wherfore I am right sozo woful  
A right dere & swete lady sayd Arthur as  
god sende me lope and sauegarde of you  
there can not be to me so grete a sozo we  
as to leue you noble company therfore  
I wote gentyl herte think not that I wyl  
leue or forsake you on whom all my hert  
and faithful loue is set and fixid, and by  
whom I haue al my welthe and honour,  
for I promysse you as faithfully as ever  
any lover can promise his lady p̄ as lone  
as I can I wyl retorne agayne to you,  
for I shal think yll p̄ season be come as  
long or longer than ye shal do, & madam  
I do not but for the loue p̄ I owe unto  
my lady my father and mother, for I tere  
me that they sholde be in sozo we for my  
sake, wherfore mine own good lady & de  
er herte giue me lycence to departe as for  
this time. Excusyng dere loue of florence  
I can not endure to displease you, and I  
se wel how ye be mynded to go, wherfore  
in goddes name go on whan ye wil, and  
retorne again as shortly as you can, and  
I requyre you byngge hyther wyth you  
my lord your father and moder to them self  
that he may se me who is and shal be his  
daughter. Adam sayd Arthur wyth a  
ryght good wyl yf I can byngge hither  
co, and the which he cleped and kysed her  
the which was the second tyme that ever  
he kysed her, than Arthur requyred the  
sayd lady Margarete that she shold not  
depart out of his lades company. And  
therwith tharbyshop came to them,  
and Arthur desyred him that he wold co  
fote and consail his lady florence in hys  
absence, and so he departed and toke leue  
of the kyng and of al other, and so entred  
into his iourney and toke with him Hector  
duke philipp the mayster Gouernar, &  
Bysebar, and xi. other knyghtes, than

Hector sent befoze them a messenger to  
his cite of orgonle wher as Arthur was  
rychely receyued of the countes and of  
sayd lady Alise and of al the barons of  
that countrey, & there Arthur tarred. iiii.  
dayes makynge grete lope, and on the v.  
daye Arthur and hys companye repeted  
and Hecor with him, and so entred into  
ther; waye makynge grete lope as yonge  
people shoulde do for they wote glad of  
ther; newe lord Arthur, who was swete  
poung and curreys, and of grete power and  
thus they rode forth so meryly syngynge  
the mayster was in a cote of sar. tuer byo  
let, and a mantel of redde sental and hys  
har in his hand because the wyther was  
hery hore for it was in the moneth of Au  
gust, and the mery moornyng was sayde  
and frefre because of the swete dewe, the  
lusty bydes dyd merceipe syngge, and the  
meder was sayde and clere, & this master  
was poung haunyng a lusty hert and ful  
of newe lone, than he began merceipe too  
syngge, sayynge thys swete payne of loue  
Acceh myne hert. And al is for you mine  
owne lady. And whan Arthur herde him  
syngge, and considered well the bycre of  
hys song, he than perceyued wel how  
that his hert was set on lone the which  
pleased hym ryght wel and caused hym  
to remembre his lady florence, and than  
he said to the master, sy; dyd tuer any lo  
te cause you to wake one nyght. By the  
moder of god sy; sayd he syth that I sy; dyd  
dyd thynke on my lady I was neuer so  
faste a slepe but that I thoughte my spy  
rit and hert was with her. Sy; sayd By  
sebar than though ye syng I blame you  
not, for I am sure ye thought on her. By  
the faith that I owe to god master sayd  
duke philipp what was the thing p̄ gaus  
you occasyon to loue your lady best for  
what sayd the master wyl ye than con  
fesse



res and mers. And as lasse sp; dela loude  
sawd, verdy me thinketh it shold be Bala  
de wou my lo; de the kinges squer. Wer  
ly sayd an other a soo it is in dede. Than  
Bawdewyn alghted fro his horse. And  
Whan sp; de la loude saw verdy how it  
was he, as fast as he coude he ran, & en  
braced hym and made to hym tight grete  
ioye and feell, & bryghtes than of al par  
tyes of the felde began to assemble there  
yll or last tydynge came to Alexander  
the poyge kyng hōw p his old seruauant  
and squer Bawdewyn was com, than  
he commaunded that he shold be broughte  
to hym and so he was, and whan he was  
before the kyng he knelid down & sala  
ted the kyng. Than the kyng sayd fren  
de thou art welcome, & hōw hast p done  
synth thy departing. Certaynly sp; sarde  
he right well, for a man can not be in the  
cōpany of such a knyght as I haue ben  
Withall that can fare anywhe. In the na  
me of god said the kyng and hōw faret  
p noble knyght Arthur. Sp; by p mo  
der of god he dooth as the best renow  
med & pralced knight of al the wide world  
and the moost honoured and moost hart  
dore of dedes of valure out of p;owesse  
I being present, and there he recounted  
many of his dedes, wher at the kyng and  
al other had grete mervayle, & more out  
sp; sayd Bawdewyn I care that he is at  
this houre the mā of grettest poler that  
I know now living, for he shal be the  
noble kyng of Brozoles, for he hath on  
fured the saynt lady p; d; nite daughter  
deye to the mighty kyng. Gmduking  
of Brozoles who hath under his rule  
oure my gōt; kynges & knyghtes in his  
realme and they be all his men & holdeth  
ther; lordes of hym. By my soule sayd p  
kyng this is a grette thing that ye speke  
of, & frende where is he now at this p;es

Arthur.

sent time, or wher dyde ye leue him. Sic  
beholde ponder ye may se hym comyng  
homewarde into his own countre, sp; I  
must go before into Lion to take by his  
lodgyng. what be thei that come with  
hym quod the kyng. Sp; there is with  
him a noble clerke who is called master  
Secuen, & he is son to a kyng, & also the  
duke of sabary named sp; Bophylp, & sp;  
Hector duke of orgoule, sp; Bysbar &  
Gouernar with other. xl. knyghtes of gre  
te valure. In the name of God sayde the  
kyng he shall haue in these parties none  
other lodgyng but al onely min. Than  
he comaunded al the erles & barons about  
hym to mount on the; horses, and com  
maunded to byng hym his owne ho; so  
for he sayd playnly he wold go mete. He  
thur on the waye. Sp; said Bawdewyn  
ye say ryghte well & do nobly to do hym  
that honour, for sp; truly he loveth you  
entpely, & sp; I ensure you he is a man  
of ryght grete valure. And whā the lord  
de la lounde herde thes tydynge of Ar  
thur he had ryght grete ioye and ran to  
the lady his wyfe & to the lady Rossillon  
and to all other ladyes & damoyelles, &  
recounted to them the coming of Arthur  
and reported of his demerunge and ho  
nour as he had herde Bawdewyn say be  
fore. and also he thewed them howe the  
kyng and all the hole assembly wer  
takynge of the; ho;ses to ryde to mete  
horth hym on the waye. And whan thes  
ladyes herde all this they were in grete  
ioye because of hys comyng. Than the  
lady of Rossillon sayd, I se wel thā that  
the cratynge that we dyd so byn whā  
we sawe hym last is well bestowed & en  
pyed on hym, for it is a grette honour &  
baseth he hath borne him so valauntly  
ouer soth, therefore let us also go & mete  
w. hym and by hym welcome, and do

A. i.

hym

## The story of Arthur

hym al the honour that we can do. In the name of god sayd al the other ladies & so let it be done, than they appailed them with ryal vestures, and by that tyme the kyng and al his erles and other company were mounted on theyr horses, & the ladies & damop selles also, & so rode forth together in company. Than Bawdewyn spored his horse as faste as he coude to byrge these rydnges to Arthur. And whā Gouvernour saw Bawdewyn retourn agayne so faste he said to Hector, syz Bawdewyn toz meth agayne what it me meth I wote not. And whā he was come agayne unto Arthur he sayd, syz beholde ponder cometh the ponge kyng of maluegre & the erle of Fots, & the erle of Foist & the erle of Fleuers, the lord of Beauen and the lord de la lounde, the marshall of myrpoys, & the dolphen of byen and all theyr ladies wth them, & they are comyng to mete wth you to welcom: you into this countre, & mo than a. D. horse in their company, & the kyng wyl not suffre ye shal haue ony other lodgng but wyth hym. And whā Arthur herde this he had right grete ioye and sayd, a good lord I thake your grace that ye haue gyven me so many honours, than he sayd to the mayster and to duke Whyllyp, syz holde you nere me, and so they did, & than he said to the Certaynly syz ye shall se here people of a noble behauiour & honour & wel ordred and soo they rode forth sayng & easely wth bothe parties appoched nere together, & as soone as Arthur sawe the kyng & his barony, & specially the frewe ladies and damop selles he and al his bro alghtre of theyr horses, and in lyke wyse wyde the kyng and all his company, & there they metre and embraced ech other with more grete ioye and reuynghe, and Hector and Gouvernour were moche made of by-

cause of theyr olde acquyntaunce amōge them. Than Arthur went to the ladies and wold not haue suffred them to haue light to theyr horses, but the lady Rosilion wyde whether he wolde or not, and she ran to hym and embraced and kyssed hym ryght sweetely, what shall I saye more all the hole assembly were in grete ioye by cause of the comyng of Arthur. And whā duke Whyllyp and the mayster saw the grete feest and honour that was done to hym, bothe of the kyng and of all other erles and barons, knyghtes & squyers, ladies and damop selles, whā in their hertes they prayled Arthur more than they wyde before. Than Whyllyp sayde, this gentylman I se well is none of the lyne in his owne countre, he nedeth not to care for the emperour yf these people wyl helpe and arde him, & florence I se wel ye be well assured, woulde to god with a wyshe that ye wer now here present that ye myght se this ioye. And this kyng helde syl Arthur by the hāde and demaunded of hym what knyghtes the mayster and duke Whyllyp were. And he answered & sayde, syz this is a fourayne clerke & a knyght and a duke and sone to a kyng ryght noble and puissaunt, and syz this other is duke of Sabary a ryght noble and a doubte knyght, than the kyng toke them by the handes and said, lordes ye be ryght hertely welcome into this countre, and to you syz we wyl make feest and ioye, as for Arthur we care not for, let hym make hym selfe chere and happy. Than they mounted on theyr horses and rode forth towarde the tentes in the felde, and the kyng woulde haue had them to haue ryden before him to the tent to do them the more honour thereby, but than the master sayd, syz for goddes sake pardon us, for syz we be seruantes

to my lord Arthur here presente, for we holde of hym, therfore sy by your licence we wyl not ryde before him. Syis quod the kyng as in that ye shal bere hym honoar, therfore by the saythe that I owe unto you ye shal ryde on before, so than they wente to the before, and the earle of Forset, and the erle of fops, and the erle of Aenars were wyth Arthur, and Hector, and Gouvernar Wer with the dolphin of byen and the marshall of myrpoys, & in this maner they came to the kynges tente, and they dyde than washe theyr handes and went to diner, than the king sate downe on the hye benche and commaunded Arthur the mayster, and duke Philyp to sit downe by hym, and all othher according to theyr estates, and there they were ryche help serued. Than the ladies sente a presente to Arthur of frethe chaplettes to the intent that he shold giue them where as it lyked hym best, and than Arthur dyde gyue them vnto the kyng and to the mayster, and to duke Philyp and to all other erles and barons, and whan they had dined, than the lord de la lounde came to Arthur fro the ladies and sayde, sy all the hole assembly of ladies and damoyelles sendeth theyr recomendacions vnto you as to hym that they ones crowned kyng of all knyghtes that were assembled togyder at that tyme, and thei al desyre you that ye wyl come in to theyr tent to spozte you wyth them, and to byng in your companye to home as it shal please you best. Soo than the kyng and he, the mayster, duke Philyp, and all the other erles and grete barons went thider, and ther they were receyued with grete ioye and feest, than these ladies began to daunce, carowle, & to syng with these lordes and knyghtes. And at the last the kyng sayd to mayster Arthur.

Steven a gentyll mayster and why doo ye not play and spozte you among these ladies & damoyelles, be they not metely fayre, gentle and noble. kyng sayde the mayster by my soule they are ryghte gentyl noble and beautiful, but sy with spozte amonge them I can lytle skyll. why mayster sayd the kyng what playe than wyl ye spozte you withal. Dyrly sy sayd duke Philyp he can many good ly playes yf he wolde vse them, for there is not in all this world his matche. A gentyll mayster sayd the kyng by the saythe that ye owe vnto Arthur I requyre you shewe vs some of your spoztes for a paffaunce. Mayster of Arthur I praye you do so. Well sayd the mayster syth it pleaseth you I am content, than within a while the mayster caused in the myddes of the house to deynly a fayre fountaine to appere, & in the byest ther of ther stode a horse of crystal, and out of diuerse places ther of ther issued out streames of swete cristalline water, and that horse stode quaking sempug to be quicke, and rounde about this fountayne there seemed to be fayre grene bushes & fayre grene hylls couered with byolettes swete smellinge, and roses with other swete floures grete pleste, and by diuerse maner of byrdes synginge melodiously, & so all the ladies & damoyelles that were ther left their dauncynge and carowlinge and dyde washe their handes at this frethe fountaine, & made chaplettes of the faire floures that they sawe ther growing and hekened to the swete armony of the byrdes, & they had grete meruayle what it might be, or fro whens it myght come so sodeynly, & all the lordes & knyghtes wer grete ly abashed wth that syght. Than the mayster caused to be comynge into the hall. C. barlettes beflured all in cotes of scarlet

## The story of Arthur

paled with grene, and.ii. C. trumpettes  
so wninge all at ones, than the knyghtes  
and lades behelde what it myght mene  
And at last they entred into the hall and  
after them by seminge ther cam a clerke  
right saye and gracious, and he had on  
a robe of scarlet lymed with grene sedall  
and his cappe in his hande, & this clerke  
had stonding by hym a frellie grene haw-  
thorne full of saye blossomes right swe-  
te smylling, and in the hvest of this tree  
there was one braunch that surmounted  
all the other, whereon there sate a myghti-  
tyngale the moost saye & gracious of al  
the world and best synging, than she lise  
by her heed and lyled her throte full of  
wynde the moze shyllert to berse out her  
swete voyce, her synging pleased so wel  
all the lades that eche of them wisshed  
to haue had her in a cage. Than y kinge  
and Arthur rose & went nere to beholde  
this meruayle, than the lady marshal put  
by her hande to the entent to haue taken  
the myghtyngale, but she coude not attai-  
ne therto, than the clerke kept the hall  
thorne sayde, madame & yf ye wyll haue  
my byrde perauenture ye shall haue her  
& yf ye be suche as ought to haue her, for  
yf it be so that ye or any other lady here in  
this company byde neuer trespase in ma-  
riage neither by thought nor dede suche  
one may take her at her owne wil, but  
& yf they haue done ony faulte let them not  
offre to haue her, for thei shal sayle of her  
And whan the king herd that he laughed  
a good pace & sayd, let se who wyll enter  
pysle to haue this Joly birde & than eue-  
ry man was agreed that al the couresles  
should assaye eche after othre, than the la-  
dy marshal thought to haue departed a-  
way pryuely, but than the clerke called  
her agayne & sayde, madame ye were the  
spysse ryght now that wold haue taken

my byrde, & so shall ye be agayne now at  
this tyme, therefore in idame come forth  
and assaye what ye can do, than the king  
caused her to assaye Wjeder she wold or  
nor, and than she put by her hāde but she  
coude not attayne therto by two cubites  
of length. And whan the lady Rosyllon  
saue y than she said, madame this birde  
techeh vs to speke of our olde werkes,  
now it appereth yf ye haue ben alwayes  
in your prayers or not, ones ye said woz-  
des to me the Whiche ye knowe not, but  
now I maye saye to you suche as I se,  
than the couresle and grete lades wete  
one after an other, but all they sayled of  
theyr purpose. And at thende the kyng  
caused the lady Rosyllon to assaye, & as  
soone as she did put by her hāde toward  
the byrde the gnyll myghtyngale byde  
descende downe and sate her on her hād,  
and yet this was not to her very grete  
praise, for she had not ben longe maried  
Than she cries byde laugh at theyr wy-  
ues, but yet some of them were not very  
well content. Than the mayster caused  
sodeynly all this to tany (she away both  
clerke and tree, byrde and all, than euery  
man meruayled what this myghte be, &  
they wende that they had dremed al this  
and the kyng smyled at this mater, and  
wente and sate do wne togyder the king  
and Arthur and the mayster and all o-  
ther lordes. Than the kyng sayde, as  
god helpe me I would it had cost me the  
halfe parte of my realme, soo that this  
mayster were alwayes in my company,  
and that he loued me as well as he dooth  
Arthur. Sp; sayd Arthur he hath ryght  
wel she wed to me that he loueth me, for  
syth I departed fro you I haue had  
warre with, bri. kinges & an emperour,  
and sy; this emperour wyll come again  
nowe at this nexte eester to make warre  
with

with the myghty king of Soryolops for  
the dysaunce is made betwene both par  
ties, wherfore I must retourne agayne  
as shortly as I can, why syr said þe kyng  
shall ye than haue warre the nexte cōt.  
Ye surely syr, for it is sworne and cryd  
on bothe partyes. And whan shall ye  
wedde this lady Florence of Whome I  
haue herde so muche spekyng of. Syr  
sayd Arthur if God wyll gyue me the ho  
nour of this warre I shall wedde her in  
continent after. By saynt John syr said  
the kyng I wolde I were at þe warre, at  
the day of your wedding. why syr sayde  
the dolphin and ye wold so the go thider  
why syr sayd the kynge yf I go wyll ye  
go also. Ye syr wyth all my herte, & that  
I faithfully assure you. Wel said þe kyng  
kepe your promise, & I ensue you yf I  
woll go with. v. C. men of warre in my cō  
pany. And I promise you sayde the dol  
phin yf I wyl go & a. C. men of armes wi  
th me. And without me shall ye not go said  
therle of forest. Promise þe faithfully for  
the kyng, & as muche sayd therle of Ne  
uers, & so ferre wente this matter that þe  
erle of moribelyall, & the erle of Fops, &  
the lord Beauieu, & the mayr of m  
pays promysed all rogyder þeche of the  
wold go with. ii. C. in theyr company, &  
there appoynted agayne to meete in þe sa  
me place in the middes of lent. Than Ar  
thur thanked them & sayd, syrs I truste  
at the sayd daye to be here agayne wyth  
you, & bryge wyth me. my dere fader and  
moder, & soo than we wyl departe togi  
der. And whan these ladyes herde how þe  
Arthur wold bring thider the duchesse  
his moder, than they all despyed of theyr  
husbondes that they myght go with the  
duchesse whan she were come, & the kin  
ge was well content therewith. and desir  
ed the erles and barons that it myght be  
Arthur,

so. And soo at the last it was agreed and  
accozded that they should al go rogyder  
Thus was Arthur and his company. ii.  
dayes with the kynge and with these er  
les in grete fest and ioye.

Howe that Arthur & Hector his cōsyn  
with all theyr cōpany arriued at Bloys  
and how the erle of Bloys fader to Hector,  
and the countesse his moder, and all  
the hole barony of the realme met them  
on the way & recepued them with great  
ioye, for they had ben before in grete fere  
that Arthur theyr neuewe and Hector  
theyr son had ben dead. Capit. lxxxvi.



On the fourthe daye Arthur  
& his company toke leue of the  
kyng, and of the erles and ba  
rons, ladyes & damoyelles and  
toke his ryght waie towarde  
the towne of estampes, than Arthur see  
Jaket hys squier before to Blois to giue  
the erle knowlege how that Arthur his  
neuewe & Hector his son wold be with  
hym the sondaye nexte folowynge, than  
Jaket departed and mooued first to orli  
aunce & there he founde therle of Bloys  
who was ryght sorowful in his herte by  
cause he coude here noo maner of tydyn  
ges of Hector his son, wherfore he was  
in grete doute lest that he shold haue  
ben deed, than Jaket mounted by in to  
the hall where as therle was, & as soone  
as he sawe Jaket he rose and embraced  
hym, and demaunded of hym howe that  
Arthur and Hector his son dyd. As god  
helpe me syr sayd Jaket they do humbly  
salute you by me. and sendeth you worde  
how that they wyl be wyth you this son  
daye nexte compng hole & in good helthe  
thanked be god as grete lordes and prynces  
saunt knyghtes, for syr I saye vnto you

## The story of Arthur

how that Hector your son is erle of Brie  
le and duke of orgoule & is ryght riche &  
pyslaunt. Ye Jaker said the erle & who  
hath gyven him this honour. Syz by the  
moder of god my lord Arthur who dyoc  
conquere it with his swerde as he that is  
the best knyght of all the world. A good  
lord said therle humbly I thanke youre  
grace syth that my chyld is so well pur  
uysed, than the erle dyde sende a messen  
ger to al hys frendes giuing them know  
lege how that his sone was comyng ho  
me warde who was become ryght pys  
launt and noble, commaundinge them for  
iope to hange the stretes of the towne.  
And as soone as the coütelle herd of these  
tydynges she mounted vp in to her char  
riot & came to oylpauce to the metynge  
of her sone, & so therle & all his company  
dyeinite Arthur & Hector & they com  
pany at elerpy, and there receyued them  
with grete chere & iope, than all the no  
ble men of the countee came thyder to se  
Arthur & Hector, and so all togyder they  
went to bloys and there they seioyned  
viii. dayes makynge great feast and iope.

**H**ow Arthur aryued in Britayne and  
how the duke his fader & al his chivalry  
mette & receyued Arthur with grete ho  
nour & trumphe, & howe the durtchelle  
his moder wounded for iope whan she  
saw her sone Arthur, and made wyse  
dyde Jehannet hys olde loue, wherof the  
mayster & Philip had grete fere lest that  
Jehannet should drawe awaye Arthurs  
herte fro Flozèce bicause of þe grete loue  
þe they sawe bytweene them. Ca. lxxviii.

**A**t the ende of. viii. dares Arthur  
called to hym Jaker & said, frende  
ye muste go to my lord and fader and to  
my lady my moder and to Jehannet and

salute me ryght humbly vnto them, and  
shewe them how þe I will be wyth them  
the. xv. day after saynt Martyn, & shewe  
also to my lord and fader how that ther  
cometh in my company a sone to a king  
and a duke ryghte myghty and pyslaunt  
than saye that I desyre hym to sende for  
parte of his frendes to kepe them compa  
ny whan they shal be come to hym. Sic  
said Jaker I shal do your message in the  
best wyse, for he was g'adde to go. Than  
Gouernar sayde Jaker I praye you let  
me be humbly recommaunded to my lord  
and to my lady & to Jehannet. It shal be  
done syz sayd Jaker & so departed & rode  
so longe tyl at laste he came to Flautes  
on a fryday at night, & there he demaun  
ded tydynges of the duke, & there it was  
shewed hym how that the duke & the du  
chelle were departed to the castell of the  
forest, and fro thens they shold depart to  
thabbey of Jannibon, & than they shal co  
me to the cyte of vennes, and there to so  
iourne nere tyl it be crystmaffe, & than  
to come agayne to Flautes wher as they  
wyl kepe open courte, for he hath somo  
ned al his barons to be ther at crystmaffe  
with hym. So than Jaker taried al that  
nyght at Flautes, and in the mornynge  
he departed & wente to vennes wher as  
he founde the duke and durtchelle and they  
were as than lokinge oute at the Windo  
wes of the palays, and there they talked  
togyder of dyuerse matters tyl at last the  
durtchelle began to wepe, than the duke  
demaunded of her why she soo soze wept.  
why syz sayd she alas beholde the great  
noblenes of this countrie and the sayre  
forestes that be therein, and the valure &  
bounte of the lusty countre of Britayne  
alas syz who shal kepe and obtaine this  
countre after vs syth that Arthur our dere  
sones is ded, & syz we shal neuer haue

mo chylde together, alas syz whan I  
remembre al this my hearte dyeth in my  
body for sorowe. Deao madame sayd the  
duke nay and god wyl, for yf that were  
true we shoulde haue greare neede of com-  
forte, but yet I haue trust in god that he  
shal lende vs toyre of oure chylde, and to  
heare shortly some good tidings of him  
it is not yet full. v. pere syth hys depar-  
tyng, and within that tyme hys promys  
was to come agayne, whe. fore madame  
I praye you to wepe no more, for it grea-  
ueth me to se you do thus, as they were  
thus talking together Jakes came intoo  
the palays and entred into the hall, and  
as lone as the knyghtes and squiers saw  
Jakes they embraced him and demaunded  
howe that Arthur did. And he answered  
ho w that he dyd ryght wel and was co-  
mynge home wards, than Jakes moun-  
ted vp into the chambze, and there he found  
the duke and the duchesse together, and  
the duchesse spyed hym fyrst and ranne  
to hym and sayd: my frende howe dothe  
Arthur my sonne. Hadam he humbly sa-  
lureth you, and also my lord here present  
and also Johanner. What Arthur my son  
frend said the duke and where is he. Syz  
he wyl be here with you by the end of these  
fyue dayes. And howe dothe he sayde the  
duke. Syz as the moost honoured noble  
knight & best proued that is now liuyng  
in this world, for vnder the heauen there  
is no knyght of hys valure and hys pro-  
wesse, and syz he hath gyuen too Hector  
his cosyn an erldom. and a duchy right  
grete and noble, he is now two tymes as  
rich as the eyle his father is. Ye Jakes of  
the duke where hath he gotten this land  
and who hath gyuen it hym. Syz as god  
helpe me Arthur dyd gyue it hym, and he  
wanne it valiantly with his sworde, but  
syz this dede is no thinge to the regarde

of a thousande dedes that he hath done  
syth he departed. Than the duke smiled  
and toynd his handes togider and lyfte  
vp his eyen to heuen & thanked god. And  
the duchesse wept for toyre and so dyd Je-  
hannet also. Than the duke sayde Jakes  
and who cometh with my son Arthur  
Syz there cometh with hym a clerke of  
great wysedome, and is chiefe counseiler  
with the saye queene florence and he is  
son to a king right mighty and puissant,  
and all other is with him a myghty du-  
ke who is called Duke Philip of Sabary,  
and other dyuerse noble knyghtes to the  
nombze of xi. Why frende Jakes sayd the  
duke is Arthur than so muche honoured  
that a son of a kynge and a duke and so  
noble a compaigne cometh with hym. Ne-  
ceyly your son is in this case, that of this  
pere go out he shal be crowned kynge of  
a puissant realme. A good lord sayd the  
duchesse I reioyce to you grace and than-  
kynges syth ye haue gyuen to vs such a  
chylde of whome is reported so moch ho-  
nour. Wel sy the duke madame mount vp  
into your chapyre & let vs go to nantes &  
met hym there, so than they departed and  
went fro venes & came to Flautes in an  
euening late, and Arthur and his compay-  
ny rode so tyl at last they came to samur and  
entred into the abby of saint florens, and  
there he lodged al nyght and was wel re-  
ceued and hosted. & in the next morning  
Arthur sent a messenger to his father, gi-  
uing him knowlege how that he wolde  
be with hym at Flautes on the sonday  
next comming. And whan the duke herd  
that he sayde to the duchesse his wife, ma-  
dam let vs go & mete our son and this no-  
ble compaign that cometh with him, for  
I haue grete desire to se hym, than all the  
world, and thā by that tyme al the dukes  
frendes, louers and subiectes were come

## The story of Arthur

to him to the nombre of .v. hondred, than they all together mounted on their horses And Johanne was in the charye with the dukes, and so they rode forth, & with in thre leges thence they met with Arthur and all his company, & as soone as Arthur sawe his father he dyd alpyght and tyde of his honer and in lyk wyse dyd his father to hym and there they cleped & kyssed eche other ofrentymes. Then the duke sayd, my swete frende and dere chyld ye be ryght hertely welcome home to me as he that hath ben more desired with me than all the creatures living. I dere son howe could ye ever have the hearte thus to leue your mother who hath ben so dolorous for your absence that she hath wept ever sith your departing, and as the duke ended these wordes his mother came too hym and cleped and kyssed hym, but she was so overcome with joye, that she could speake no worde of a great season, but so they satte downe together, & when she might speake she sayd, my swete and dere chyld ye have longe holden vs in darkness, noz neuer sith ye departed my herte was in anye ioye, but nowe swete hearte my ioye is increased that I may haue you in mine arms and thare with she kyssed hym and wept right pitifully for ioye, so that Arthur coude no longer kepe his herte and eyes fro wepyng the whych he dyde neuer before sith he came out of his chyldhoode, noz neuer after did for no maner of trouble that came to him. And when the duke Philip sawe the pitifull and ioyful meeyng, betwene the chyld & the moder and the father, & saw how they wept, for all the golde of the world he could not kepe hym selfe but that his eyes were ful of dropes of water than came to them Johanne and cleped: kyng Arthur right tenderly and sayd, & my

louer Arthur ye be hertely welcom vnto me, sith ye left me right sorowful when ye departed last out of this countrey, but my swete lady your dere moder hath kept me right tenderly for the loue of you, and ofrentymes we haue wept togyther our selfe for the loue of you, & mine own swete loue I vnderstand that god hath gruen you a better & a more gentiller lady than I am, for al this agreeth me righte well, for sith I haue ryght great ioye of your welth, sith I offer me to serue you and to loue you with good faithful hearte, for ye are my lord and I am your daughter, and therewith she wept right tenderly & took Arthur in her armes. And when Arthur sawe her so wepe he could not kepe his eyes fro dyspylling of salte teares for her sake, for he loued so the damosel that he was sore tempted to haue repented him in the had spauced Florence. And when the mayster sawe the graciouslye of the father & the moder & their chyld, and of Johanne, he sayde to Philip, sith I doubt me of these people least they wold alway fro Florence Arthurs dier, & I pray you beholde and se how they loue him, saw you euer so muche honour done to any creature luyng here nor of Philip he hath brought me into this countrey, I warane you he shal depart agayn and returne in to ours. Then the dukes and Arthur rose vpon their feete than all the noble men of the countrey came aboute him and made him as great feast and ioy as they could, than the duke went to the mayster and to duke Philip and receiued them with great honour and so they all mounted and went to Nantes and thare than all the burgeses of the cite pssued out all in one sure and ioyuerey and met with them. And also the byshop of the towne and all the hole clergie encountered them and made great ioy and

and generally so byd al those of the cite  
 Than the duke made grete honour vnto  
 duke Philip and vnto the mayster. And  
 whan they were alghed fro their hoz-  
 ses, than they mounted vp into the pa-  
 laces where as they made grete feast and  
 tope the space of .xv. dayes, and than cue  
 ey man departed. Than Arthur sayd to  
 the duke his father, a present there was  
 the mayster, duke Philip and the duchess  
 sye Oliuer of yrac, and diuers other ba-  
 tons there he recounted all hys fortune,  
 and how that he had fraunced florence  
 and how that the warre is begon and ta-  
 ken betwene him and the perour of ynde  
 and how that al this warre was layde  
 on his hande and charge, and therfore he  
 prayed the duke his father that he wold  
 go with him into the countrey of So-  
 lous to content to helpe hym. Than the  
 duke sayde, sonne Arthur is a right good  
 wyl and I shall bynge with me all my  
 strength with banners displayed, and cha-  
 yf we may fynde this emperour we shal  
 shewe him what that bytens can doo.  
 And whan the mayster herd that he sym-  
 led and becleped the duke and sayde, sye  
 ye haue nobly answered without any coun-  
 sayle, it semeth wel ye are the father & he  
 is the son. sye by the saythe that we owe  
 vnto god we shal kepe you good compa-  
 ny. Than the duke sente all about for hys  
 strength. And in the meane season Arthur  
 ledde the mayster, duke Philip, sye By-  
 sebar, and al the other knyghtes of So-  
 rolous in al the towne and cities of his  
 countrey, and thus they passed the time til it  
 was nere lence, and than they retourned  
 againe to Flautes where as they found  
 al theyr host redy apparayled to departe.  
 Than Arthur toke of the .x. dayes after hys  
 owne choyle & al the remenaunt he sente  
 home agayne to content to kepe the coun-

tre in sauegarde in the dukes absence, &  
 they sojourned. iiii. dayes at Flautes & so  
 departed and toke the hye way to Lion,  
 & sir Oliuer, Gouvernar, & Bysebar had the  
 courtesie of the host, and the duke Arthur  
 Dector the master and Philip toke theyr  
 way straight to Barrys to take leue of the  
 kyng of Fraunce who receyued them with  
 right grete ioy & honour, for he loued the  
 duke entierly, and the kyng made grete  
 chere to the mayster & to duke Philip, the  
 master praised much the noblenes of fra-  
 ce, thus they were. iiii. dayes with the king  
 and than they departed and the duchess with  
 them and toke their leue of the king, cha-  
 the kyng sayd to the duke, sye if ye lacke  
 men of warre ye shal haue parte of my  
 strength, cha the duke thanked hi and said  
 I trust we haue people sufficient, so they  
 departed and rode so long on their iourney  
 til they came to Lion on a wednesday in  
 the morning & there they found Gouvernar  
 Bysebar & sir Oliuer who had made to  
 by for their lodgings, and cha the kyng of  
 malogre and al his erles & barons were  
 assembled togider & were lodged about vnto  
 and whan they knewe the Arthur was com-  
 ming they mounted on their horses & met  
 with him, and they al made grete hono-  
 rous to the duke of bityayne and the ladies recei-  
 ued the duchess righte honozably, and so  
 they rode forth togider, and than the porge-  
 king ran to the mayster and embraced hi  
 in his armes for he loued him wel becaus  
 of his marvelous cunning, than they came  
 to the paulsons and there alighted, & the  
 dukes paulson was pyght by righte rich-  
 ly, and there they sojourned. iiii. dayes in  
 grete ioy and the king despyed the master  
 the he wolde shewe was than some pastimes  
 amonge that company, than the kynges  
 squyer were afoze hi ready to do seruys  
 Than the master caused eche of them to  
 chynke

## The story of Arthur

thynk cyther wythout any head, and eche of them behelde other and were greatlye abashed and had grete maruayle where they fellows heades were become, than they looked on the erth whether they were fallen downe to the ground. & ther wyth they sought eche others head all aboute the house, and the kyng & al the hole assely had ryght grete sport thereat. Than on the fourth day they al departed & toke the right way to the porte norye. So uernar Bysebat & sir Oliver dydgupde forth the hooft, and Arthur sent Bawde wyth his squier befoze to the porte norye, to apparayl and garnyshe the castel & to drawe thither al his garnisons. this noble company rode so longe tyl they came but

a dayes Journey fro the castel of p port norye. Now let vs leue spekyng of them as for this time and retorne to florence

How after that Arthur was departed fro kyng Emendus & florence to go se his frendes, florence than departed fro the porte norye & the quene of ozqueny & the ladye Margarete of Argenton wyth her and wente to spoze her in her owne realme and castel of clere coure, where as the emperour came and besieged her, for oz she was ware therof he and his company were layde round about the towne and they were to the nombze of 1000. C. thousand, what of emperrens and of sarasens.

Ca. lxxxviii



**I**t is trouth þat whā Arthur was departed fro p port norye to go into fraunce & into bypaine for to se his frends thā florence & the quene of ozqueny and the ladye Margarete were of ac-

corde that they wolde not go with kyng Emendus into the realme of ozolops but they decerned to goo to the clere toure, and there to abyde yll theretour nyng of Arthur where as they myghte every daye pryncly talke eche vnto other of

of theſe lones, ſo than florence toke her  
leue of the kyng her father & ſo departed  
and toke with her the queene of dyqueney  
and the ladye Margarete and a. xl. other  
knightes with them, and ſo they traualled  
tyl they arrived at the clere tounre, & there  
they were in gret ſpore and ioy, but it is  
offentymes ſayd, he þ hath an plergh-  
bout hath offentymes an pil moynuge  
for as ſone as florence was come to the  
clere tounre & that it was knownen that ſhe  
wolde abyde there a good ſpace, ſy þer  
dycaſ provided for al thinges that was  
neceſſary for the place, than a ſpyte went  
to the emperor of rinde and ſayd, ſy flo-  
rence is now at the clere tounre, and ſy þe  
may now and þe wyl ſoone haue her, for  
ſhe is come thider but prylyly and but w  
a ſmal company. And whan the peroure  
herde that, he ſent incontinent for as mo  
che people as he coulde get betwene hym  
and babilon, and he aſſembled there togy-  
ther ſo manche people þal the coſtrey was  
ouer ſpied with them, and florence knewe  
noſhing of althys tyl the tyme that the  
emperor had beſieged her round about  
with mo than. ii. C. x. men. And whan  
ſhe ſaw þ ſhe was in that caſe, ſhe was  
ſight ſorrowful and wept ppyouſly eve-  
ry day moze and moze, for ſhe ſawe wel  
ſhe coulde not ſende out for no ſecoure to  
any body there was ſuche watche made  
al about the place than ſhe bewailed Ar-  
thur and ſaid, a Arthur ſweeteſtend þe are  
ouer longe fro chys buſyneſſ, certainly if  
þe leſe me þe ſhall leſe poure true lover, a  
deceiuous þam pours & now þe knowe  
nothyng in what miſchete þam in, for now  
poure lover is in gret perill, thus florence  
made the gerceſt lamentacion of pwozd  
and her people dydde comfozte her in the  
beſt wyſe þ they mighte. Now let þs leue  
of florence and returne to Arthur.

¶ How þ Arthur was ryght ſorrowful  
becauſe that hys hoſle dyd ſtumble vnder  
hym, and howe the maſter ſhe wed  
hym how that florence was beſieged by  
the emperor in her caſtel of þ clere tounre  
whereof Arthur was in gret ſcare and  
trouble. Capl. ix. p. 115

**W**han that Arthur and al his hoſt  
were wythin a lege of the porre  
noye Arthur and the duke by  
father and the kyng and the maſter rode  
eche by other ſalyunge of dyuerſe mate-  
ters, ſodenly Arthurs hoſle ſounded vnder  
hym and fell greuelynge to the carth  
but Arthur helde hym ſtyl in the ſaddell  
tyl the hoſle and he roſe bothe agayne to-  
gyther, and fro then ceſſed the Arthur was  
in ſo greate a ſtudy þ no man coulde haue  
a word of hym but wyth gret paine, and  
in this maner he endured a great ſeaſon  
¶ Than the kyng began to reaſon wyth  
hym but he coulde ſhane haue any worde  
of hym, than the kyng and duke þhilip  
lyp called to them the maſter and ſayde  
ſy what ayleth Arthur for ſith his hoſle  
ſtumbled he wolde neuer ſpeke no worde  
by his will, we may ſay what he ayleth  
well ſayd the maſter go to hym and be-  
maunde hym the quiſtion, tha they rode  
to hym, and the kyng rode on the one  
ſyde and duke þhilip on the other ſyde  
and the maſter before hym, than the maſ-  
ter al laughyng began to ſynge melodye  
ouſly, and the kyng and duke þhilip did  
laugh at him and Arthur curteſy as though  
he had bene halfe a ſlepe, and wyth the  
ſpore that they made he lyte by hys  
eyen, and whan he ſaw them a-boute hym  
makinge ſuche ſpore a lyll he ſmyled, ¶  
Than the maſter ſaid to him ſy what  
chete is wyth you, what ſpore make þe to  
my lord the kyng here þyſe ſayde

## The story of Arthur

first who is come hither for your love, sit  
 now ye be come into your owne realm  
 and into your own power, and say thes  
 lordes haue forsaaken thei owne coun  
 tryes to come hither with you. Than he  
 answered and sayd gentyl master pardon  
 me, for I knowe wel ye say but trouth,  
 but say I ensue you euer say my horse  
 sett vnder me my horse hath bene so bea  
 ryng that I can in no wyse make any good  
 chere, I can not tel what it meaneth, I  
 pray to god all be for the best, I doubt  
 the greatly of my lord the kynge of Ro  
 maigne, or elles of my lady florence lest  
 that this Emperour hath done to the  
 any tribulacyon. Sayd ouke Whyllyp  
 doubte not that, for if it were so ye may  
 be sure my lord and uncle would soone  
 haue sent messengers to you, therfore ma  
 ke good chere & reioyce your barons and  
 such noble men as be come hether for the  
 love of you and namely this great host  
 who hath so far traueyled for your sake  
 I berefrend ouke Whyllyppe sayde Ar  
 thur I requyre you make ye than good  
 chere and semblant and so chan the kynge  
 and Arthur, the master and ouke Philip  
 rode forth to gether throughout al þe host  
 & comforted their people as wel as they  
 myght, than they arriued at the port nyght  
 and mounted vp into the palays, and  
 all the host was lodged withoute in the  
 felde, and al the ladies and damoyseles  
 that came thither with them maruelous  
 ly behelde the strength and satunacyon of  
 that place, and reueled in theyi wyndes  
 grete noblenes and valure in Arthur for  
 the acheuyng and conquerynge of that  
 place. Than the mayster dyd deuyse too  
 coem all thaduentures that were in that  
 place. Than the duchess mother to Arthur  
 had ryght great ioy, and than the master  
 led them to the gartorn to se it, and when

they sawe the place so large & so delecta  
 ble they wysshed neuer to departe thence  
 so chan these ladies wente and rested  
 th in at the fountayne. And Arthur and  
 the kynge Herro, and al the other elites, &  
 the lord Beaulen were al together in a  
 pany, but Arthur was sory in melancoly.  
 Than the mayster wenes into his owne  
 chambere to loke his booke to knowe what  
 was the cause that Arthur was so sadde  
 for, than anon he perceyued by his bo  
 kes and cunnyng what peryl that flo  
 rence was in, and how the emperoure had  
 besyeged her rounde aboute, than incont  
 nent he went to Arthur and sayde, say  
 the matter goeth yl to worke, for this em  
 perour hath besyeged florence in her ca  
 stel of clere toure with a great numbry of  
 people, so my lady is in great myscheit w  
 out remedy be soone found for her, she wo  
 peth right pitiously and maketh the grea  
 test lamentacyon of the world, she cryeth  
 out on fortune and saych, alas no w haue  
 I al loste, I was bozne in an unhappye  
 houre, a gentyl heire Arthur, god shal  
 al thyng tourment of nought kepe and de  
 fende you from al ylenumbraunce and  
 greeue you honour, for as for me I am as  
 grete myschefe, for my shame haue thou  
 so; thou hast done me many troubles, a  
 las my sweete love is far fro me, and my  
 enemy hath approached nere me, my lous  
 is absent, and him that I hate is to nere  
 my presence, alas myne owne sweete love  
 Arthur if I were in your armes than I  
 wold thinke my selfe better assured than  
 to be in this strong castel, for than wold  
 I neyther feare kynge nor emperoure,  
 alas where are my men & my good fren  
 des that they doo not theyi wyngence to  
 stude for my deliuerance, a kynge of Ro  
 quency ye do a grete trespass agens your  
 true & faythfull lous Arthur when that

yedo not delyuer me out of daunger, he  
 loueth you aboue all other, and no weye  
 to be thus false to him, certainly he wold  
 neuer haue fayled you, but he wold haue  
 put his body and goodes in leopardy for  
 your sake, and now thus ye to leue me in  
 this dolour, alas good kyng come and de  
 lyuer me, and yf ye can rendre me vnto  
 this gentyll knyght Arthur who loueth  
 you with all his harte. Thus syz said the  
 mayster I know wel that the dooth com  
 playne euery daye with suche wepyng  
 chere that I must needs wepe whan I  
 thynke on her, and the quene of Orque  
 ney, and the lady Margarete dothe com  
 forte her al wepyng, for it greueth theyr  
 hertes to se her soo soze wepe, & thys syz  
 all thye of them be in grete sorow, I can  
 scant tell you who is in y gretest. Saint  
 mary said Arthur it was not so; nought  
 that my hart was so heuy, now I know  
 well the signification therof, alas may  
 ster and doth not king Emendus know  
 what case that she is in. Yes syz said the  
 mayster he assembleth people on al sydes  
 of his realme of Babiloyne, & also al his  
 iiii. kinges with al theyr powers be com  
 to hym, and they are all ready to draue  
 thider warde, & they wyll remeue a mon  
 day next commynge, but it wyl be a. xv.  
 dayes or they come thyder, and syz all the  
 kinges cōplameth gretefully that ye be out  
 of the cōtre, for they say that yf ye had  
 ben in the cōtre the emperor had neuer  
 ben so bolde to haue come thyder, syz I  
 doubt me gretefully of florece for she hath  
 not past a. xl. knyghtes with her wherfore  
 I fere me lest that she can not endure  
 to kepe the place tyll the kyng her fader  
 and his hoost be come thyder. And whā  
 Arthur herde that he was soze displeased  
 and sayd to the yonge kyng of Malogre  
 I gentyll kyng I requyre you for gods

des sake let me go thyder or elles I wyl  
 dye for sorow, and syz I pray you abyde  
 here with all this hoost tyll monday, and  
 than let the hoost folow after me to the  
 clere toure, and let duke Philyp and my  
 seneschall and the markes haue the gyard  
 dyng of them, and syz my lord my fader  
 wyl abyde here styll with you, and also  
 my lady my moder and all these ladies &  
 damopelles tyll suche season as I seude  
 you worde, and syz I wyl haue with me  
 the mayster and Hector, Gouvernar and  
 syz Bysebat. And whan all the barons  
 harde hym say that he wold go the coun  
 teiled him to take more people with him  
 but he wold not, and soo toke a soppe in  
 Wyne & toke leue of the kyng and of all  
 other, and embraced his fader and moder  
 & cōmaunded to god all the other ladies  
 and damopelles, & soo he departed and  
 his company with hym, and rode forthe  
 as fast as ever they myght, and trauay  
 led so longe bothe by daye and by nyght  
 tyll they came nere to the imperours hoost  
 Than Arthur sayd, lordes we approche  
 nere to our enemies, I thinke it bett  
 that we dyd put on our harness, and soo  
 they alpyghed and dyde put on theyr  
 harness.

CHW that Arthur & the mayster, Hector,  
 Gouvernar, and syz Bysebat entred  
 into the clere toure wher as florece was  
 besyged & they. v. dy scypted a puyssant  
 kyng sarasyn who was called the Boman,  
 who was come thyder to helpe the  
 emperor, and ther wer al the sarasyns  
 and turkes slayne. Capitulo. C.

W Han that Arthur and his. iiii. se  
 lawes were armed they moued  
 on theyr horses & rode forth tyll  
 it was about thye of the cloke, than they

## The story of Arthur

rode to the botom of a grete mountayne  
and there thei alighted, & Arthur alone  
a fote mounted by to the hiest therof, and  
there he saw the castell of the clere toure  
wheron there were pyacles of byghthe  
crisfall, and it byde wyne so agaynst the  
son that no man coude clerely loke apenst  
it, and he saw the myperours grete tent,  
and besemyng to him al the world was  
there of people, & he saw well howe that  
people laye rounde about the castell, so  
that none coude issue out nor none entre  
into the place, and he saw wel how that  
on þe same syde that he was on ther were  
lodged a great nombre of sarasyns, and  
than Arthur complayned piteously for  
the mischefe þe he saw his lady florence  
in at that tyme, and as he thus behelde  
the castell he sawe where as there came  
to warde the mostayne a. lx. sarasyns all  
armed, than Arthur wente downe to the  
valey agayne to his company and said,  
lordes I thynke all the world of people  
is in this countre, how shal we be deme  
ued. Sp: said Wysebar ther is no more  
to do but let vs moit on our horses & do  
as knyghtes shold do, sp: there is none  
of vs but þis is wel worth a knyght. Wel  
sayd Arthur now þe shal be seen, for pon  
der cometh a. lx. or moo of oure enemyes  
to awake vs þe we slepe. Let them com  
sayd Gournar and he toke a grete spere  
and byd plunge it in the reste, and there  
with the sarasyns wer come who saw  
well these. v. knyghtes, and one of them  
presed forth befoze his felawes and Gou  
ernar with his spere slew hym, & than  
the mayster strake so another with such  
vertue that the spere wet clene through  
out his body, than he set his hande by on  
his saerde & laye on so amonge hys ene  
myes as a wolfe dooth among lambes.  
And whan Wysebar saw hym do suche

dedes of armes he sayd, here is a good  
mayster he chay seth sharply hys bys  
ples, than Wysebar strake the first that  
he encountred with so rudely that his hac  
neis auailed him not a horib, for he was  
perced to the harte, than Gournar and  
he bette to kene sarasyns such as he wol  
de hym self. And whan Hector saw that  
he fered lest all the sarasyns shold haue  
ben slayne or he had done ony thyng a  
gaynst them, than he rushte into þe preste  
and cut of armes handes, & legges & ma  
te hedes fye into the felde, & bet downe  
sarasyns & horses many a plouly. And  
whan Arthur saw al this he smiled and  
sayd, lordes leue me my parte, what me  
thinketh ye take all, þis is none egal par  
tyng, than he dasyt into the thickest of  
the preste, and the first he sent to the erth  
both sarasyn and horse, & the seconde he  
claued downe to the chynne, and ther he  
gaue so pupillast strokes that he confou  
ded al that euer he attayned vnto, & to  
make shorte these. v. knyghtes byd so ba  
lyastly that of al these lx. sarasyns there  
escaped not one but thei wer all slayne  
Than Arthur sayd lordes let vs now de  
uise how we may fynde the meanes to  
entre into the castell. it is so closed on al  
sydes that none can entre into it but he  
must passe byt throughout. xxx. thou  
sandemen of war, I suppose this empe  
rour hoost endureth. v. legges in byede so  
I can not se how we shold entre euery  
man grue his aduise and counsaile, for  
here on this part of the castel that we be  
on is all oure spy adde wyth fel sarasyns  
Sp: sayd the mayster suffre a lytell and  
I shal gyue you my counsaile how we  
shall entre into the castell, I shall cause  
vs all to loke for the season as blacke as  
any pytche, so þe it shall not be known  
but for sarasyns, let vs arme vs with the  
armure

armure of these dead sarasyns, and than let me ryde on befoze, & I shall lede you sauely throughtout al their hoost, for I ca wel speke the langage. Ye saye Well said Hector, tha thei al armed the w the harneys of the sarasyns & thei had slayne, & tha they moued on they horses & the maister rode on befoze til thei came to the sarasyns tte, & the maister had on the harneys of the Sowdanes sene shal who was slayne befoze by Arthur, & the sarasyns that sawe hym wende verily & it had ben the sene shal, & thei demaunded of him self o whence he came. And he answered and said, frendes I go to play me all about the seide, and I purpose to go to the castell gares to entre in yf I may and to see al theym that be wrythin the castell, than there were dyuerse that offred them self to haue gone with him but he sayd he would haue no moze company than he had, and said syz there is none of you that shal go wryth me, therfore I charge you on payne of your lyues & pe stee not tyll ye here me blowe my grete hoine, & tha come as fast as ye ca. Tha the maister & his company rode to the castel gate & called & portier & said, my frende ope the gate & let vs in & god shal rethirde you, for we are cristen men and are soudours. & I promyse you that yf ye wyl let vs in & the lady of the place receyue our seruyce than shal we do like a wyse lady. Syz said the portier & ye be soudours ye be welcome, for my lady hath grete nede of suche, than he let downe & byrde & opened the gate, tha these v. knights entred, and the portier lyfe by again the byrde and closed the gate againe after them. Than it was shewed florence that syue strange soudours were entred into the castel to helpe & to syde her, than she commaunded that they

should be brought to a chambre and vnarmed, and than to be brought to her presence, & whan thei were vnarmed and looked so blacke eury man was afrayd of theym, and some said god giue grace that they be not spyes, and so thei were brought to florence, and as sone as she sawe them she riebled for fete, & whan she sawe that they wer al goodly persons and moche lyke of stature she sered theym gretely lest thei had ben spies, & demaunded thei of womens thei were. And they answered how that thei wer sarasyns boine, but as than thei had reuiewed they byleue and were crystened in fraunce at Marys, and the kyng of fraunce was their godfaders, and than she demaunded of them wheder thei came streyght out of fraunce. And they answered yes. Than the lady florence demaunded of them and said, frendes dyde ye euer here of a knyght who is named Arthur, and he is sone vnto the duke of bytayne. Yez truly madame sayde they we herde wel of hym, he departed from Marys the same season that we dyde departe, and he dyde haste hym gretely to come into this countre, and he bringeth with him the duke his fader and the duchesse his moder, and wel to the nombre of .x. thousande other knyghtes rety apparyled for the warre, and madame as it is sayd he be wypleth gretely a gentil damoysele of this countre, for whose sake he hath oftentimes ryght pyteously cast for the many a grete syghe & madame oftentimes he speaketh and complameth to a grete man of dygnite, who is in his company, and also madame as it is said that there is one wryth hym that is named mayster Steven, and an other Gouvernar, and the thyrde Hector, and dyuerse other that we haue for goth the

## The story of Arthur

names of them. wel syis sayd florence  
 He wel that by suche tokens as ye re-  
 porte that ye haue seen them, but I pray  
 you doorth Arthur thinke so moche on þ  
 lady that ye speke of. Ye madame truly  
 sayd the maister, than the lady florence  
 bega piteously to wepe, & the lady Mar-  
 garete helde & dy a keuerchefe to wyper  
 her eyen therwith, & whan Arthur sawe  
 her wepe so he said, right saye lady we-  
 pe no moze, for surely we shal neuer faile  
 you tyl death haue made an ende of vs.  
 And as they were thus talkyng to flo-  
 rence, the sarasyns in the felde that saw  
 them enter into the castel in that peas-  
 ble maner, than they perceiued wel how  
 that the leader of them was not the low-  
 dans sene sigal, and thought verily that  
 they had a great mocke, wherfore they  
 al ran to their armure and armed the, &  
 moo than v. hondred of them wet to the  
 castel, and dyde knocke and bete at the  
 gate. Than the watchemen of the castell  
 dyde crye, 'tis to harneys, for parte of  
 your enemyes are at the gate. Than eue-  
 ry man of the castel ranne to the Windo-  
 wes to loke what it myght be, and whā  
 Arthur sawe how it was he commaun-  
 ded his company to arme them, and soo  
 they armed theym, and soo dyde all that  
 were within the castel, for syis Dretcas  
 caused a grete horne to be blowen, and  
 by the so wyng therof all tho of the ca-  
 stel ranne to their harneys. Than flo-  
 rence said, frendes for goddes sake pssue  
 not out of the castel, for ye be not able to  
 resiste ayenst their power they be so ma-  
 ny in nombze and ye soo few, but I re-  
 quyre you defend this castel as wel as ye  
 may. Madame said Arthur be ye in rest  
 and peas and let vs alen: hardely, than  
 he mounted on his horse, and so dyde his  
 other foure companions and to the nom-

bie of xi. other knightes of the castel, &  
 so he rode to the gate and caused the por-  
 ter to set it open. Than Arthur by grete  
 randon dasyt into þ prese with his whie  
 shelde couered al in blacke, and holdyng  
 a grete hatche in both his handes & laid  
 on rounde about hym on those sarasyns  
 that he made hede, armes, and handes  
 to flye into the felde, and bet downe ho-  
 ses and sarasyns in suche wyse that it  
 was maruayle to behold him, and Des-  
 tor, and Gouvernar on their partte bette  
 downe sarasyns by grete hepes, and the  
 mayster, Bysebar, & syis Dretcas dyde  
 as valpaulntly, as onye good knightes  
 ought to do, but about all other Arthur  
 dyd excellently, for he layde on rounde a-  
 bout hym, & confounded al that euer he  
 attayned vnto, so that euey man fledde  
 fro befoze hym, & said how that he was  
 a deuyll of hel, and none erthly creature,  
 for he auoyded the stretes where as he  
 passed, & made grete hepes of dead knight-  
 tes, so that florence knightes had grete  
 meruayle of him, and also florence and  
 the quene of orquecy, and the lady Mar-  
 garete blisshed them at his dedes, & sayde  
 how that he lacked but lytell of the pro-  
 wesse of Arthur. And at the last Hector  
 was beten downe, for his horse was slai-  
 ne vnder him, and soo his enemyes had  
 thought to haue ledde hym a wape as a  
 prysoner, and therewith Arthur came thi-  
 der, and in that fury he slew moo than  
 xv. knyghtes, and remounted Hector a-  
 gayne on his horse in the spyte of al his  
 enemyes, and than he dasyt agayne into  
 the prese and bette downe all that euer  
 he attayned vnto, and Bysebar and the  
 mayster dyde ryghte well theyr partes,  
 but specially Arthur made place befoze  
 hym. And whan florence sawe these v.  
 knightes do so valpaulntly, she said vnto  
 suche

suche knyghtes as were aboute her, spys  
for goddes sake and ye loue me goo and  
helpe to rescoue ponder syne knyghtes  
Than the grete comyn bell was souned  
and every man than ranne to theyr har  
neys, and so they were to the nombze of  
an hondred and an halfe on horsebacke  
& iii. hondred on fote, who were in lōg  
Jakes and grete basenettes on their he  
des, w good swerdes girtte aboute them  
and longe spere in theyr hādes, to the  
current to sle with them theyr enemyes  
horses, and soo they issued out of the ca  
stel and slew many of the sarasyns that  
Within a lytle whyle they were nere all  
dyscomfyred. And whan the Sowdan  
sawe this people so ouerladen and slain  
he caused a grete grisley horne to be blow  
wen, than every mā that herde it ranne  
to their harneys, so that they wer to the  
nombze of xxx. thousand, and the Sow  
dan was a yonge lusty couragious kny  
ght, and mounted on such an horse that  
ther was none lyke him in al the world  
in goodnes, for who so euer was moun  
ted on his backe neded not to doubt any  
man lyuyng, for what by force of the  
horse and of the man there was none by  
lykelyhode that might resyst agens him  
Than the Sowdan dalyt vnto his horse  
with his sharpe spores, and he rusht  
forth as though he had flownen in faure  
lyke a byrde. And whan Arthur sawe  
hym comyng he despyred gretely to haue  
that horse, than he toke a great myghty  
spere and ran at the Sowdan and brake  
hys spere by the might of that horse for  
the horse was able to haue borne two  
men armed without any payne. And as  
Arthur passed forth after his course the  
sarasyns enclosed hym rounde aboute,  
than he drew his good swerde clarence  
and there he slew of hys enemyes wyth

Arthur.

out nombze, but thei charged him with  
so many strokes that they slew his hors  
vnder him, than he lepte on his fete and  
dyde put hys whyte welde before hym,  
and with clarence hys good swerde he  
did cutte so among his enemyes as a car  
penter doth he wyl chyppe, out of a gre  
tree, and thei did ffore at him with their  
bowes of turkey, wher wyth they byde  
him moche trouble, & more had done and  
hys good whyte welde hadde not bene.

Than florence sayde as loude as she  
coude crye, saint marys myghte birgin sa  
ue and defende ponder good knyght fro  
all daunger and peryl. And whan Arthur  
harde her voyce his hardynes increased  
for such was the maner of the more that  
he had to do the more was his strength,  
and was euer of more courage, and thā  
he lyghtly lepte in amonge hys enemyes  
and began so to desferre a sonder the gre  
te flockes of the sarasyns that none ap  
proche nere him but he receyued death  
for his mede. At the laste Hector espyed  
hym and saw how that he was on foote  
wherwith he was so dyspleased that he  
was in a grete rage, thā he couched hys  
spere and ran at the Sowdan who was  
rennyng at Arthur, but Hector strake  
hym so rudely that he perled hym to the  
harte, and soo he fell do wne dead, than  
Hector toke hys good horse and belynes  
red hym vnto Arthur, and whā Arthur  
hadde hym he was more gladder of the  
horse than he would haue ben of all the  
reclout in fraunce, than he mounted by  
on him and rusht into the thickest of the  
prese, and there he dyde meruayles wyth  
his handes, for there he cutte of armes,  
handes and legges, he claued a sonder bel  
mes and made hedes to flye in to the sel  
de, and bette do wne knyghtes & horses  
all toggyder in hepes, and than ther was

D. iii.

none

## The story of Arthur

none that he encountred withal that esca-  
ped from the deth, than ther came vnto  
hy:n the mayster, sy: Bysbar, and sy:  
Derbycas, and xl. other knyghtes vpon  
hosebacke of florence company, and a  
thre hondred on fote, than they al layde  
on these sarasyns and bet them downe  
lyke dogges. Than Arthur encountred  
the Sowdans broder and gaue him su-  
che a stroke with his good swerde clare-  
ce that he claue hym downe to the sadel  
And whan the sarasyns sawe howe that  
the Sowdan and also his broder were  
dead and slayne, thei made suche roying  
and so: o: among them that the empe-  
rour as he was in his tent myght well  
here the noyse, and demaunded what it  
was. And one thewed hym how that it  
was y: Sowdan who was scarmusshig  
wryth them of the castell, and therewryth  
ther came to hym a knyght who hadde  
one of his armes cleue stricken of a sayd,  
sy: Emperour the Sowdan is deed and  
his broder Saladyne also slayne, for sit  
ther be come. vi. as I thynke rather de-  
uylls of hell than erthly creatures, for  
they haue all slayne and cofounded, and  
specialy there is one among them that  
maketh waye where so euer that he co-  
meth, there is none so hardy that dare as-  
saye hym a stroke of his handes but all  
fleeth before him, therfore sy: emperour  
call your me to harneis o: elles we shal  
be all slayne. Than the Emperour was  
so: dy:splesed and sayd, what hondred  
deuylls of hell hath brought hider these  
vi knyghtes who thus confoundeth all  
my people, than he cryed to harneis and  
caused harnes to be blowe in his hoost  
Than euery man ran to their harnes,  
soo that anone there were togyder more  
than an hondred thousand men, and Ar-  
thur, Hector, Gouvernar, y: maister, B: i

sebar, & sy: Derbycas were all be sprento  
with the blode of the sarasyns that they  
had slayne. Than the quene of orquene  
who had all the daye well aduysed Ar-  
thur and his dedes sayde vnto florence,  
madame certaynly I thynke that yoder  
knight is Arthur, for as I deme yonder  
shelde is pour whyte shelde, and I thyn-  
ke he that is by hym is Hector, the map-  
ster, Gouvernar, and sy: Bysbar. Ma-  
dame sayd florence that can not be, for  
they are as blacke as ouy ynke. And as  
they thus talked thei sawe where as the  
emperour was comyng, and a hondred  
thousande following after him. A swete  
lady mary sayde florence kepe and de-  
fende now yonder knyghtes, for I fere  
me now that they shal be slayne, and the  
emperour came thiderward as faste as  
he might with grete noyse of trompettes  
& abours and hornes. And whan that the  
mayster harde that he came to Arthur, &  
sayd, sy: we haue to lytle nombre of peo-  
ple to abyde yonder emperour at this ty-  
me, we haue done al ready sufficient for  
one daye, therfore sy: let vs retourne a-  
gayne to the castel, for our company are  
ryght so: troubled. Ye say wel said Ar-  
thur cause the retraite to be blowen, & so  
it was done, than Arthur & his peple en-  
tered into the castell, & closed the gate af-  
ter them & drew by the byrdege and they  
had slayne in that batayle to the nombre  
of. xv. thousande sarasyns, than Arthur  
mounted by vnto the palays, & florence  
mette to him, & she dyd of his helme and  
thanked him gretly & al his company of  
the paine & labour that thei had take for  
her sake that day, than they looked out at  
the windowes & saw where as the empe-  
rour was beholding the dead bodies of  
the Sowdan & of his broder & of the. xv.  
thousand other sarasyns.

Howe

How true was taken for a moneth  
betwene the emperor & Arthur. Ca. C. l.

**A**nd then Arthur out of a tow  
dow called downe to the em-  
perour & said, syz emperour e  
ye do your selfe grete shame &  
vylany, ye haue yf counsaile  
thus to come on a woman by sleth, and  
vnder chassurance of truse that was take  
betwene my lord her fader & you thus to  
cause so numbze of people to come on her  
syz if there were in you eyther valure oz  
trowth ye wold not thus haue done, first  
ye sholde haue giuen her warninge, and  
haue made your despaunce, & haue giuen  
her certayne day of barayle, and than to  
haue taken her wthouten myght, this shol-  
de haue bene your honour, & not thus to  
awayte her in her chambze with all thys  
numbze of people, and she nothing kno-  
wying thereof before. Well sayde the empe-  
rour what so euer thou art thy tong is  
fayze fyled, wolde to god I had þ head of  
chine þ lokest so blache. Why syz sayd Ar-  
thur and wolde ye than so sayne haue my  
hed. Truly sayd the emperor on þ condi-  
cion I wold it had cost me one yeres tene  
of al my landes. Ye syz sayd Arthur than  
grue thys lady a certayne day of barayle  
that she may in the meane season send for  
her people so þ she may answer you, and  
syz I promyse you that I wyl be there &  
changet my head and ye can. Truly said  
the emperor I am content, but what assu-  
rance shall I haue that ye wyl be there.  
Syz sayd Arthur by the sayth þ I o we  
vnto my special lady. Well sayd the empe-  
rour and I giue her daye for a moneth, &  
truse in the meane season and so than the  
assurance was made on bothe parties,  
than Arthur sayd holdyng florence by  
the hande syz emperour beholde what a

Jewel this is, syz ought not a man to be  
ryght lolly to obtayne suche a lady so te-  
der so swete so ruddy of colour. Than þ  
emperour was soze displeased and sayde:  
What þ praryng tole me thinketh thy by-  
sage is couered ouer w blache cozdenan  
Wold to god I had the in my kepynge, sic  
sayd hertoz all simplynge take no hede of  
his sayng for he is but a tole, than the em-  
perour departed & went to his tent, than  
Arthur said to florence, madame we ha-  
ue now truse w the emperor. so that we  
may wel prouyde for men oz the trewse  
bryke for the tyme thereof is a monethe.  
Well syz of florence I thanke you thereof  
& of the paine þ ye & your cōpany hath ta-  
ken this day for my sake, but syz I shall  
deserue it when I may. Madaine it is al-  
redy deserued, but madame may it please  
you to leue the louing of the knyght þ ye  
say ye loue so wel and take me to your lo-  
uer & gyue me your loue, and I promyse  
you I shall deliuer you from thys empe-  
rour for this other knyght is now in traic-  
ce in greet spoze, and thinketh but it self on  
you, for he hath many fayze ladies in his  
countrey at his cōmaundement. Syz said  
florence his spoze and loy is a great ple-  
sure to my hert, for I am his both wyth  
hert thought & body, and neuer to be fals  
to him, for as helpe me god I had rather  
suffre my hed to be stricken of than I shol-  
de do oz think any falsenes to him. Why  
madame loue ye than him so inwardly &  
so truly, ye oz elles sayde she I pray to  
god I neuer haue sope in thys wold. Well  
than sayd he I se wel that my loue  
can not prouaile. So be ye sure said flo-  
rence, therfore be ye in peace and speke no  
more to me thereof. In like wise the may-  
ster prayed the lady Margarete of her loue  
despyng her to loue hym: to forlake the  
clerke. And she answered þ to dye in the  
payne

## The story of Arthur

payne she wolde neuer be false to hym.  
 Than Arthur sayde to the maister let vs  
 leue these lodes for we are come to late  
 for by seminge they are ensured to other.  
 Syr sayde florence I know not your na-  
 me, but I desyre you go and vnarme you  
 and than we wyl go to dyner, for our me-  
 te is readye, than they were ledde into a  
 chambre and vnarmed. And than Wyse-  
 bar whan he sawe his owne handes soo  
 foule and blacke he abhorred hym and said,  
 the deuyl take this blackenes so that we  
 were rydded hereof, than he sayde to the  
 mayster, syr I requyre you take a waye  
 of this blackenes fro me and fro al my co-  
 pany. Than the maister laughed a grete  
 pace, and so dydde al hys company. Well  
 sayd Arthur I am wel agreed that it shol-  
 de be nowe taken a waye fro vs al, for it  
 is tyme. Than the maister toke a box and  
 dyd anoynte theym all, and than they al  
 were in theyr fyrst coloure, than Arthur  
 toke on hym as chere, and in a goodly fyr-  
 core he entred into the palays where as  
 florence tarried for them to washe their  
 handes, and as soone as she sawe them  
 she knewe well Arthur and them al, than  
 she ranne to hym and embraced and kys-  
 sed hym sweetely befoze them al and sayd,  
 myne owne lord be here and loue ye be  
 ryght hertely welcome, as he for whome  
 I haue wepte many a salte teare, but syr  
 I praye you who made you so blacke as  
 ye were ryghte now. Madame by the  
 sayth that I came vnto you mayster Ste-  
 uen, and there recounsed to her al þe cause  
 why, than they began gret fest and ioye  
 throughtout al þe castel, & also throughtout  
 al the towne whan it was knowen how  
 that Arthur and Hector were comen in  
 to the castel than they were in their myn-  
 des better assured than though the kyng  
 Emendus and al hys power had bene

there, and lady Margaret made as grette  
 there to the mayster as was to her pos-  
 sible, and so they went to dyner and were  
 ryght ryche help serued, and after dyner Ar-  
 thur sayd to Gouernat it is needful for  
 vs now to puruey for euery thyng that  
 is necessary to vs to content that we be  
 not deceyued at the daye of oure batayle,  
 therfore I wyl that ye go to my lord  
 the kyng of Sorolops, & recommaunde  
 me humbly to his grace, and the we hym  
 how that I am at the clere tourse, and re-  
 counte to hym how that we haue speede,  
 and how that we haue truse for the space  
 of a monethe, and than is the daye set  
 of batayle betwene thempe out and vs  
 also salure fro me the kyng of orqueney  
 and say how that I desyre him to somon  
 agaynst the sayde terme all the power of  
 Sorolops both on horsebacke and on fo-  
 te, so that they may be here about the end  
 of foure wekes, and I wyl in the meane  
 tyme go vnto my lord my father and coo-  
 al his company and byrge them hyder.  
 And whan florence herde that she sayd,  
 syr haue ye brought them into these par-  
 ces. Ye madame truly and with my fa-  
 ther there is a noble kyng of that country.  
 And saye loue where be they. Madame  
 I left them at the porte noye. Well sayde  
 florence I requyre you go to them and  
 byrge them hyder for I woulde gladly  
 be acquainted with my lord your father  
 whose daughter I am and trustynge so  
 shall conynue, but I praye you tell me  
 how doth my lady your moder. Madame  
 I ensure you she is al so ac þe port noye,  
 accompanied with syue or syxe countes-  
 ses who haue left theyr owne countres  
 to come hyder to se you. A dere herte sayd  
 florence, blessed be the houre that euer  
 ye were bozne such that ye haue broughte  
 so noble a company with you to se me,  
 for

for now my father kynge Emenous shall  
not chynke that I am pl bestowed on you  
for I requyre you let me se them as shortly  
as yee can that Gouverneur take his leue  
and departed towarde Bologny.

How that the yonge kynge of malogre  
and the duke of Bityayne wyth dyuerse  
other erles and barons, and accompanied  
with a great armye of men of war ary-  
ued at the ciere court, to the entent to so-  
cour florence and Arthur who were be-  
sieged by the myperoure, who had mye en-  
raged out of his wyte when he knewe  
that they were come into that countrey.  
Capitulo. C. li.



**I**n the morning becomes Ar-  
thur departed & toke with him  
Hector and Bilebar & toke  
with him. v. other knyghtes of  
florence, & the master abode  
styll in florence, thus Arthur rode forth  
a iii. leges, and than he espyed the baner  
of the duke his father and of al his host  
for the yonge kynge of Malogre halted  
hym as muche as he myght for the feare  
that he had of Arthur. And when Arthur  
sawe the baners and standerdes waue-  
ring with the wynd, and the helmes and  
sheldes shynnyng ayenst the sonne, than  
his hert smiled and said, a gentil France

god encrease the honour and noblines,  
and than he approached nere to his father  
and made hym reuerence and there was  
great ioye at their meynge, and the duke  
demaunded of hym howe that he hadde  
spide. And he recounted to hym and to  
his company al the hole matter as it was  
done, and so they rode forth together tyll  
they came into the myperours host. And  
at that season florence was lentyng oute  
of the batylmentes of the route for with  
her eyen she had conuayed Arthur before  
as farre as she myght, and at that tyme the  
quene of orqueney had espyed the frenche  
host compage, and sawe the frenche ba-  
ners displayed with the wynde. Saynte

mary said the saynt lady florence  
what people be yonder that I se com-  
pyng byder warde, I thynke it  
be the myperour. And when florence  
sawe them she was in fere of Ar-  
thur and sayde, alas I doute that  
if they haue encountered my loue  
Arthur that they haue slayne hym  
and therewith she began to wepe,  
than a knyght who came stryght  
from Arthur to the entent to she w-  
her how that he was coming sayd

Madame be wel assured for yonder peo-  
ple that ye se compyng are percyng  
to my lord Arthur, than she appeased her  
selfe and sayd she sawe the grete banner  
of the duke of Bityayne, and sawe helmes  
and sheldes flambe ayenst the sonne, al-  
so she behelde the goodly company of yon-  
ge knyghtes mounted vpon good horses  
and the herde horses braye and bete with  
theyr feet, than she prayd muche in her  
herte the noble countrey of France. She  
thought it was a better syghte of them  
than it was of the men of warre of her  
owne countrey, for they were moze better  
housled, and harnessed a great bele meze  
properly.

## The story of Arthur

properly, and than they saw coming after that the great banner royal of the king of malogre, and her heart reioysed to see the noble company that came with him than she sawe the erle of Fleuers banner and the noble butgonpons right properly beset, than the erle of Forre and the dolphin in his company, and than came the erle of Fops, and than the earle of mountbail, than the lord Beauieu, and laste of all came the banner of Bryppys, and all this company were to the number of .xv. thousande knyghtes, chosen for the nones. Than florence sayd, a my sweete loue Arthur is semerly wel than ye are not behated in your own countrey syth ye hyng with you so many noble men of warre, and of so great dygnyte. Certaynly madam sayd Margaret these people will destroye this Emperoure and all his host, they seme noo men but rather aungelles of heauen beholde madame howe lyghte and quicke they be in their armour, a noble realme of fraunce blessed be thou syth suche people cometh out of the. And whan their people were lodged, than Arthur caused the king and the duke his father and all the other erles and barons to mount vp into the castell. Than the kynge sayde too Arthur, sy I requyre you the we me the gentyl florence. Ye saye son sayd the duke the we me my dere doughter that shall be. Sy ye shall see her anon sayd Arthur, than he sente before duke Phillip too florence to content that she should make her selfe free against theyr comyng, and as soone as she sawe Phillip she made to him righte greate ioye and demaunded hym howe that he dyd, and howe that he liked by the realme of fraunce. Madame sayd he I like it verue well, for I ensueure you fraunce is a noble gentyl countrey, ma-

dame beholde here cometh the noble duke of Britayne father to Arthur, and with him king Alexander of malogre, and by these other erles and barons who are coming hither to see you, a Arthur despyeth you to asparile your selfe to pictures of Ioye, than she went to her chambry and apparayled her selfe according to her estate and as to receiue such noble men as were come to herwarde, and the quene of ozqueney & the fayre lady Margaret dyd helpe her, than these lordes alighted at the peron & so mounted vp into the palais than the wasser ran to florence and said madam come on your way & se the duke of britain & the king and other erles and barons and she who was the gentyl rose on the lily pong and tendre, alwayes having a smylng countenance, and the mooste gracious of al the worlde issued out of her castel and two knyghtes ledde her forth, and two other knyghtes led the quene of ozqueney, and whan the ponge hyng and the duke of Britayne & other erles sawe her they marueled greatly of the excellent beauty & god had giuen her. Than the king stept forth and his bonet in his hand and enclined him selfe to her and right sweetly did salute her, and she answered him and sayde, sy ye be righte hertely welcome into this countrey, chee wyche is and shall be at your noble commaundement and al other thinges wher of I haue anpeorder. Than the kynge dyd salute al the other ladies eche after other. Than the duke of Britayne came to florence and sayd, my righte dere lady god encrease your noble honour as vnto the mooste noble ladye of al the worlde. Than Hector sayd, madame this is the duke of Britayne father to Arthur, wher with he was righte gladd and embraced hym and sayd, sy ye be right hertely

Welc

Welcom into the lond of florence your  
 daughter as he þ̄ ſhal be myne own loyd  
 into whole handes and protectiō ſo hens  
 forþ I put me and al my realme of ſozo  
 loys. Then he toke florence by the hand  
 and wold: not let her depart for no bo-  
 dy that came to them than all the ſcher-  
 erles and barons did ſalute her, and ſhe re-  
 dyed agayne to them ſuche ſalutacyon þ̄  
 every man was wel content, and every  
 man marvelled greatly of her beauty, and  
 of the wyſe and ſage wordes that ſhe had  
 to every body. So than the king and the  
 Duke and florence ſate them downe togy-  
 ther, and the lady Margaret roke cherle of  
 fleurs and cherle of fozeſt a ſate down  
 w̄ them, and cherle of mourbelial and þ̄  
 dolphin and the lord Beaulieu wer lokin-  
 ge out at the wyndowes and behelde the  
 emperours grete hoſt, and at laſt Ar-  
 thur and the maſte came to them. Then  
 the dolphin ſaid, ſir Arthur as god helpe  
 me I haue grete deſyre to knowe what  
 people theſe be that be here w̄th this em-  
 perour, & to ſe how they can couche th̄ir  
 ſperes. Let vs go to them ſayd the lord  
 Beaulieu, & let vs make them knowe how  
 frenche men be come hyder. A grete ſhame  
 take he ſayde cherle of mourbelial that  
 ſayeth oʒ wyl abyde behynde. Well ſayd  
 ſayd Arthur yf it pleaſe you we ſhal not  
 do thus, for than ſhold we b̄ke our truſte  
 and n. e. kepe our promes made to them  
 for than they wold repure v̄ſals w̄ b̄-  
 kyng of our couenauces, and ſir frenche  
 men haue bene alwaies reputed true, ther-  
 fore let vs abyde tyl the daye be come, w̄  
 out ſo be that they b̄ake the truſte th̄ir  
 ſelfe. And ſir ſayd the lord Beaulieu how  
 longe ſhal pouze truſte yet endure. For q  
 Arthur it muſt endure yet a. x. dayes. A  
 ſayd the dolphin if it were not you,  
 ſhame haue he that ſet the daye ſo longe.

What all thys longe ſeaſon we ſhal, but  
 lye here ſtill lyk ſwyne and do no good.  
 And as they thus talked they herd grete  
 noyſe without in the emperours hoſt, for  
 there was a grete rumbur amonge them  
 becauſe of the frenche hoſtys commyng  
 into the caſtel, and therw̄th they ſaw eue-  
 ry man runne to th̄ir harnes, and anon  
 they eſpyed the emperours ſene ſhal moſt-  
 red on a good hoſe, & a great ſp̄er in his  
 hand, and his ſhelde about his necke, & he  
 came ſtreygh towarde the frenche hoſt  
 who were lodged w̄thout the caſtel gate  
 to th̄entent to know what people they  
 were, but the lord de la lounde whan he  
 ſaw him coming in þ̄ maner he thoughte  
 he deſired too haue juſted w̄th ſome of  
 the frenche men, than he mounted on his  
 hoys and toke a grete ſp̄er and ran at þ̄ ſe-  
 neſſhal, And whan the dolphin ſawe that  
 he ſayde to Arthur, ſir me thynketh by the  
 lord de la lounde that he thynketh but ly-  
 cel on your truſte, for yf he dyd he doothe  
 not wel thus to do, I praye you beholde  
 how faſt he runneth. Ye ſayd Arthur  
 I ſe him wel, god kepe his body froth any  
 hurt. And whan the ſeneſſhal ſaw hym  
 comyng ſo faſt towarde hym, he plun-  
 ged hym ſelfe in hys ſabell, and dyd caſte  
 his ſp̄er from hym and put his ſhelde be-  
 hynde hym, for he wold not juſt becauſe  
 of b̄kyng of the truſte. And whan the  
 lord de la lounde ſawe þ̄ he knew wel  
 he was not comyng to juſt, therefore he  
 diſcharged him ſelfe and reined his hoys  
 than the ſeneſſhal ſaluted him & deman-  
 ded what people they were þ̄ were ne we  
 come to the caſtel w̄th ſuch an hoſt. Cer-  
 tainly ſayd they be people of fraunce, who  
 dyd here ſtynges of a grete warre that  
 this emperour ſhold haue w̄xtly, & ther-  
 fore we be come into this country as ſou-  
 dours retaynyng vs who ſo euer wyl  
 ſouldyours

## The story of Arthur

Shouldours of the seneschal & therewith  
 he lyfte by his epen and beheld the hooſte  
 ouer al and there he ſaw the goodly yong  
 ſquyers vntuſſing of their ſomers & ca-  
 riages and pitching vp of their eſtes and  
 pauillions, and he ſaw þ goodly knyghtes  
 ten their horſes vp and downe in the fel-  
 des, ſome lyghtyng and ſome mounyng  
 and there he ſawe the armers ſurby the  
 the harneies & the ſpores and ſheldes fla-  
 ming agens the ſonne, the banners ſtan-  
 dardes and ſtremers wauering with the  
 wynd, than he ſayde to hym ſelfe, ſaynte  
 mary what people are theſe are they mo-  
 cal men or aungelles of paradyſe, Whom  
 may endue agens them. I fraunce an ho-  
 nourable country aboue al other, bleſſed  
 be thou that nouriſheſt by ſuche people  
 Than he ſayd to the lord de la lound, ge-  
 epl ſy will not theſe people abyde and be  
 retayned with my lord thempetour tyl  
 his warre be done, and he ſhal giue them  
 ſuche wages and fees, that of reaſon they  
 ſhal be content. Sy ſayd the lord de la  
 lounde yf ye woll knowe the certayne go-  
 and ſpeke with our lordes and mayſters  
 who are entred into the caſtel to go ſpeke  
 with a ladye I wote not what ſhe is, but  
 as it is repuced ſhe is right gracious and  
 ſayde. Saynt mary ſayd the ſeneſchal yf  
 I go thither I doubte me of them wyl  
 in the caſtel leaſte they take and kepe me  
 wyl there as prſoner, wherfore I wyl  
 go fyrſt and ſpake with my lord themp-  
 tour, than he departed and went ſtreight  
 to thempetours tent and ſaid to him gen-  
 tyl emperour there is come out of the no-  
 ble realme of fraunce the moſte goodlye  
 company of men of warre that euer was  
 ſene in al this world, and as I deme they  
 be wel to the nombre of. xv. thouſande, &  
 one of the ſhe wed me how that they were  
 ſouldiours, and the capitaines are gone

into the caſtel to ſpeke with florence, ſy  
 I feare me leſt that Arthur hath retained  
 them on his party, for he can get muche  
 people, therfore ſy after my counſaile ye  
 ſhal ſende to them in ſayde maner and be  
 ſy ye them to become your men during  
 your warre, and yf they wyl do ſo, than  
 gyue them largely bothe of golde and of  
 ſpures, and ſuche other thynges as they  
 ſhede for ſy and ye may get them ye ſhal  
 be able to conquere al the world yf ye wyl  
 Than the kynge Jonas ſayde to themp-  
 tour, ſy it were but well done to knowe  
 what people they were, & wherfore they  
 be come, for I vnderſtande that Arthur  
 hath bene in fraunce and ſir it myght for-  
 tune that he hath brought them with him  
 to theret to annoy you, and ſy yf they be  
 come to make warre agens you, than be-  
 gyn ye fyrſt on them, and rather to dye  
 than to morow, and ſtrike of al their hen-  
 des, and hange vpon they capytayne, and  
 ſlee Arthur quicke, and as for the ſtrom-  
 pet florence deliuer her among our kny-  
 ues and boyes, for ſhe hath done you ſul-  
 great annoyauce, and therfore ſy ſende  
 to yonder people of fraunce, who are new  
 come, Wenying to wyne al the world  
 and commaund them to come to your ſer-  
 uice, and if they wil be with you, than en-  
 terte them as ye ſhold do ſtraungers, and  
 if they wil not come to you than commaun-  
 de them on paine of they lyues incon-  
 nent to depart one of this country, and ſy  
 yf they wyl not do thus graunte me the  
 enterpriſe and I ſhall enſure you to get  
 you all their heades. Than the ſeneſchal  
 was in hys mynd dyſpleſed with the ſo-  
 lyſh proud wordes and ſayd, by god ſy  
 king yf ye eate no meteyl al this be done  
 I ſee me leſt it wyl be to late for you to  
 ere, but ſy it is your mynd I counſayl  
 my lord yf emperour here preſent to giue  
 you

you leue to achene this enterpryse either to byng them to my lordes seruyce or elles they to departe out of this realme, or elles al their hedes. In the name of god sayd the kyng Jonas I praye & requyre my lord thempour to giue me lycence to achene this enterpryse yf I can, and I promyse faithfully to go speke w<sup>th</sup> them or that I slepe without any longer delay and I shal knowe what is their wylls and myndes. Certainly gentle kyng of thempour ye haue a noble balliast herre, do as it pleaseh you for I gyue you leue, than he toke his g<sup>l</sup>oue, & the kyng toke it and thanked him, & soo than they wente to dynet, and all the noble company of Fraunce and bytayne were in the clere tounce where as they dined in grete helpe and spoite, and were serued right richely, and after diner they spoited them tyll it was aboute one of the clocke.

How that king Jonas al alone came to the castel of the clere tounce, and there byd his message fro thempour of ynde the moze.

Capitulo. C. lvi.

**T**han kyng Jonas yssued out of the emperours hooft al armed wel and freschely mounted, and so all alone without any company he came to the clere tounce, and vnder a fayre alnetree he alpyghted and mounted vp into the pallas, and there he founde Florence & the kyng of Walogre and the duke of Brytayne settinge togyder, than the kyng Jonas spake before Florence in open audience, so heueryman myghte well heere hym & sayd, the hye souerayne god who all thyng formeth of noughte defende & kepe the puppant emperour of ynde the moze and all his frendes where so euer

Arthur.

they be here or elles where, spytte to the Florence there as thou spyttest I saye fro the mighty emperour & thou go to him al onely in thy kyrtel on the bare fere w<sup>th</sup> thy heere hangynge about thy sholdres, and on thy knees crye hym humbly mercy of y gret outrage that thou hast done to hym, and I thynke that he wyll haue mercy on the that thou shalt not dye no cruell deeth, for yf thou wylt doo thus I thynke he wil giue the pardon of thy life and may y the to one of the gromes of his kechyn, & yf thou wilt not do thus knowe for certayne & to morow nexte conning this castel shall be rased down to y hard earth and thy selfe byente in a fayre fyre and the lurdyn that is called Arthur hanged vp by the necke. Than Florence began to smyle & said, syr Jonas she w<sup>th</sup> vnto your emperour that or al this be perfourmed here shal not abyde one to the in his heed but I shal cause them to be rashed out eche after othere, and as for comyng into my castell ayenst my wyll lette him knowe well I haue suche people aboute me that shal defende it tyght wel ayenst hym, for the of they be desyrous. Than the dolphyn slepte for the as he that was full of yre bycause of the rude wordes & kyng Jonas had spoken of Florence and Arthur and said to the kyng, thou foule o'be churlyshe bilaine yf thou were not a messenger I wold calte out thyn eyen out of thyn heed w<sup>th</sup> myne own handes what art thou come hyder to speake bylany to so hie a lady and pryncesse as Florence is, to saye that she shoulde be giuen to a kechyn grome in marriage, thou o'be sole say vnto thine emperour that he com to my lady Florence crepyng on his handes and knees, and to take of suche Iugement of death as she wyl assigne him to dye of, and yf he wil not so do let him

E. i.

lyg

## The story of Arthur

flye fast out of this countre, for as for me  
 nor none of my company haue taken no  
 trewe with him, therfore I utterly desie  
 hym, & syt here before thy face thou abu  
 sedst folke (the doctore) I desie the & al thy  
 malice. And whan king Jonas saw the  
 grete perill & daunger þe was in he was  
 nye for angre out of his wyte, and ther  
 with he set his hande on his swerde and  
 than Bysebar steyre to him with a grete  
 leuer in his hande & said, sye kinge saye  
 & softlye not so hard in thy heere þ thou  
 ones here, for & thou do thou shalt neuer  
 speke word more with thine emperoure,  
 than he helde his peas & rode awy, for he  
 sawe wel þ yf he had moued he had bene  
 but deuo. Than Bysebar sayd yf þ hast  
 any more to saye speke & auoyde fast out  
 of this presence yf thou loue thyne owne  
 lyfe. Than the kinge I was sayd to the  
 king of malogre & to the other lordes of  
 fraunce & britayne, sye it is so the kyng &  
 myghty puppant emperour hath harde  
 speking of you how þ ye be come hider  
 with moche people in hackys, for what  
 cause he knoweth not, wheder it be to be  
 with him or ayenst hym, yf it be for him  
 and that ye wyl com and dwel with hym  
 he wyl gyue you gelde & syluer, rentes &  
 landes & great possessions, & he wyl loue  
 and honour you in such wyse that of rea  
 son ye shal holde you ryght wel content  
 And yf ye be come to be ayenst hym he  
 wolde knowe it to thentent that he wyl  
 take counsaile what he shal do ayenst you,  
 & in this behalfe shew me your myndes.  
 Than the kinge Alexander of Malogre  
 spake first & said, sye ye seme to be a wise  
 man, I wote not what I should cal you  
 for I know not your name, but this I  
 say vnto you the w bnto your emperour  
 that he hath to lyrellonde & is of a smal  
 powere, & hat to lyrell stowe of golde &

syluer to retayne to hys seruice such peo  
 ple as we be, but yf he wyl dwel w us &  
 serue us truly let hym come to us & we  
 shal do ryght well for hym, & yf he haue  
 no wife we shal mary him to one of our  
 damoyelles who hath ben longe one of  
 our lauenders. And whan the kyng Jo  
 nas harde hym that he called hym a wise  
 man, & that he would mary his sode the  
 Emperour to a lewde damoyse he was  
 than so angry for despyte þ he was nye  
 in a grete rage & sayd to king Alexander,  
 sye ye haue an outrageous hart to cal me  
 a wise man & wold mary my sode to one  
 of your damoyelles, and he is the moste  
 myghty pryncce & moost honoured þ euer  
 bare a crowne of gold on his head, & more  
 our ye wold haue hym to come & serue  
 you, therfore sye I saye vnto you on hys  
 behalfe that he shal be to moztow assem  
 bled ayenst you with .xx. m. spones in his  
 company, therfore beware of hym and of  
 his, for in his name I despy you and all  
 you, & sye dolphyn to you I saye be  
 ware that ye come not ther, for & ye to I  
 pryncple you to take that head of routes  
 cleue fro your sholdres, than he went to  
 Bysebar & toke hym by the chyn so rude  
 ly that he made al the teith in his head to  
 dalle togyder, and sayd, by the fapth þ I  
 sowe vnto the emperour of ynde I shal ne  
 uer depart out of this countre yf I haue  
 hanged the by the necke before Arthur &  
 al these felle men that be here present  
 And whan Bysebar felde hym self so ru  
 dely handled and so churlishly chetned  
 he steyned his rethetogyder and froun  
 sed and glared w his eyen as though he  
 had ben wode, and therwith he lift by his  
 leuer and gaue king Jonas therewith su  
 che a stroke but wene the sholdres that he  
 fell flat to the earth, and Bysebar dashed  
 downe w hys knyg on hys bely, and  
 word

with a horte kniſe he cut of a gret parte of the herte of his berde, wherwith king Jonas biared and cried out a grette pace. And thus philyp did laughe therat and ſaid, ſpys beholde what a good harboure Biſebar is, me thynkerh he dooth lyue very harde, beholde howe the heres come out rotes & all. Then florence roſe and ſayd, frende Biſebar aryle and let hym alone ſo: he is a meſſenger, therwith Biſebar departed fro hym, than the kynge roſe and went downe the ſtaires al aſtonyſed, & ſo mounted on his houle & wence to the myperours hooſt, & by thar tyme the ſonne was farre draynen into the weſte. And whan the myperour ſawe kynge Jonas in þe caſe he demaunded of hym who had arayed him in that wyſe. And he answered, ſpys the frenſhe men in the blaſt the toun hath thus arayed me, and ther he recounted to the myperour how þe they woulde mary hym to one of thes lauensbers, and woulde haue hym to ſerue them. He ſaid the myperour are thei thari of that mynde, than I comaunde you that to morowe nexte ye bete downe this caſtell, & that the harlot florence be taken & bryt & the ribaude Arthur hanged by þe necke and al the remanant ſlayne. Then kynge Jonas ſayd, ſpys I vnder take on paine of my heed that all this that ye haue deuyſed ſhal be done to morowe betimes, and ſo he went to hys tent as ſo: that night. Then the noble knyghtes in the caſtell went to counſyle to determin how they ſhould do the nexte daye, ſo: thei knewe well that there ſhoulde be batayle made to them, than maister Struuen ſayd to kynge Alexander, ſpys I knowe well that this kynge Jonas that lately departed fro vs wyl make on vs a ſyerſe aſſaute to morowe nexte, therfore there is no more to doo but now let it be ſeen what frenſhe Arthur.

men can do, & yf we holde them rudely as this beginning they ſhal be the lightier diſcomfyred here after now alſo thei wyl not ſo lightly agayne aſſemble ayenſt vs therfore let euery knight ſtewe forth the beſt that thei can do, & bleſſed be he that now ſhal do valiauntly. ſpys me thynkerh that it were beſt that ye ſende ſo: al your people that lyeth without in the tentes & let them come into the caſtell as pryuelly as they can without any noyſe & conuaſ all theys ſtuffe w them, ſo: now all this nyght the myperours people wyl ſleepe faſt by cauſe thei thinke to fygth to morowe, and whan our people be come into this caſtell let vs all kepe our ſelfe in our harneys as pryuelly as we can, and than we ſhal let downe the byrdes & ſet open the gates, & ſo in the morning oure enemyes ſhal thynke that we be all fledde awaye this night ſo: ſere, & than I thynke we ſhal ſe this king Jonas, and al hys company come & entre into this caſtell, & as ſoone as thei be entred tha we may ſtepe to the gate and cloſe it faſt, & ſo tha thei can not eſcape vs, nor they that be with out ſhal not helpe them, ſo: yf we ſhold go and yſſue out & fight in the plaine ſel de woth them al we ſhould haue ouer more to doo, & by lyklyhode leſe many of our people, ſo: thei be in nombre an hundred ayenſt one of vs, & whan we haue ſlayne al them that ſhal be entred woth in this caſtel than let vs ſet open the gates & let the remanant entre who wyl, and yf they wyl not come to vs we may go wha we wil & loke on them in theys tentes, & the moo that be deed the fewe enemyes we ſhal haue. And whan florence herde the maiſters counſail it pleaſed her ryght wel, and ſaid how that ſhe woulde that they ſhold do as had deuſed. Adamas ſayde kynge Alexander youre grace

## The story of Arthur

grace not displeased we shal not do thus  
ye be doughter vnto a hye and a mighty  
puissant kyng, and I am also a kyng  
and it were shame for such people as we  
be to take our enemyes closed in a nette  
or cage, for rather we shold go seke them  
in the open felde with baners displayed  
ye say ryght wel sayd florence, but for  
they haue done agens me more vylande  
and trespace than this case is in, for thei  
become hyder into my countree and haue  
enclosed me here in my castell withoute  
any reasonable cause, wherfore it is no  
shame to take aduantage of them if we  
can. In the name of god madame sayde  
the dolphyn ye save but trowth, for it is  
good polyce in warre to spye auantage  
on our enemyes, so that there be no trea-  
son in the case, wherfore let vs doo thus  
as is deuysed. I am agreed thereto sayde  
the duke of Britayne, for tyme ynoughe  
here after we may issue out on the, but  
I promyse you I will be the porter and  
kepe the gate, and I shal gyue them fre  
entre as many as wil come without any  
daunger, but at the goyng out of the cas-  
telle I shal behoue them to pare for  
theyr scotte, for suche valentre I shal  
not fynde agayne theyr goyng out, than  
euery knyght dyd laughe at this netwe  
porter, than florence embraced hym and  
sayd, a myn owne dere lord and father  
it appereth ryght wel how that ye be of  
the persyns of Arthur your sone, and so  
at the laste they agreed all to thys coun-  
saile. Than Bysbar mounted on hys  
horse and rode forth to the frenshe hoost  
Without the castell and came to syr de la  
lounde who had the guydyng of them,  
and they t wo togyder dyde comay that  
sane nyght al thyr hoost as courtly as  
they coude into the castell, so that none  
of the emperours people espyed them,

and they within the castel dyd rest them  
al that nyght tyl that it was nere on the  
poynt of the daye lyght, than they harde  
masse, and after that they ordred al their  
people, and the duke of Britayne and al  
his company kepte the gate, and entred  
into the grete sellers and bawtes ioy-  
nyng thereto, and kept themselves priue-  
ly and close without any noyse, and in  
the market place of the towne was the  
dolphyn, and in another strete the erle of  
fores and the erle of mountbelpall, and  
in an other corner was syr erle of Reuers  
and the erle of Foss, and the pong kyng  
of malogres, mayster Soteuen, Arthur,  
Bysbar, and syr de la lounde accompa-  
nyed with fyue hondred other knyghtes  
kept the passage to the palays, and be-  
ke philyp and duke he cro were in the  
palays with florence, and al these noble  
men and all theyr company were redy as-  
med and all closed in chambres, sellers &  
bawtes and so kept them self close with-  
out any noyse makinge.

17 How that the emperor and kyng  
Jonas accompanied with fyfye  
thoulande men of warre came to the  
clerretoure for to haue made assaute  
thereto, and than they founde the ga-  
tes open and entred bothe in to the  
towne and in to the castell, for they  
thought verdy that all the frenshe  
men had ben fledde, but they were  
deceyued, for than the frenshe men  
lepte out from theyr enbushmentes  
tes and sette faste the gates, and  
there slew kyng Jonas and all  
the fyfye thoulande, soo that none  
escaped alpye but one and the Em-  
perour who was taken prysoner.  
Capitulo.

C. lxx.

In

**I**n the morning whā kyng  
Jonas saw the day begyn  
to syng he lept out of hys  
bedde and made to be cryed  
throughtout al his host & curi  
mā shold to harnes to p̄tent to make  
assaut to the clere toun, thā kyng Jonas  
assēbled thet togider to the nōbre of. xv.  
thousande persones, than there came to  
hym a knight, & said, syr flozēce and al  
the frenshe men are fledde away this sa  
me night priuely, for the gates of the ca  
stel and to ldn stonbeth wydeope, & the  
frenshe men hath left behynde them mo  
che bagage there as thet were lodged w  
out the toun. And whā kyng Jonas  
hard p̄ he had neuer so great ioye before  
and sayd, I knewe well that as soone as  
thet knew p̄ I would come apens them  
they durst not for they lyues abyde ony  
lenger, I am angry wth nothynge but  
with that flozēce shold thus escape vs  
thā he caused a great hoine to be sowne  
than ther assembled about hym on horsē  
backe wel to the nōbre of. xl. thousande  
& with great noyse of t̄ropettes, tabors  
& hornes thet rode to thempourours tēte  
who was as then rylen out of his bedde  
& stode without his tēte w great plente  
of people aboute hym, & as sone as kyng  
Jonas saw hym he alyghted and sayde,  
syr I am ryght soze displeed for flozēce  
& al the galaūtes of fraūce are this night  
priuely fled away, I am sure Arthur hath  
led them into his countre, but syr and it  
please you mouit on your horse & go ryde  
to the castel and take the possession ther  
of, & so shall ye haue the conquest before  
kyng Emendus doth come, for whā he  
is come ye shall haue a great auantage of  
hys, for than he shall be without a capne  
to lodge in the felde, & ye shall be at your  
ease within the towne & castel. And whā

Arthur,

that thempourour harde hōd that flozēce  
was escaped fro him he was nye oute of  
his mynde for dyspleasure, than he de  
maunded for hys harnes, and so armed  
hym & druerse other with hym, so whā  
of his company and of kyng Jonas thet  
were to the nōbre of fyfty thousande,  
so thempourour rode forth with baners  
displayed & with great noyse of t̄rompet  
tes, hornes, and tabours, and came to the  
fyrst gate of the castel, than there the m  
perour sawe the foundation of the grete  
walles the which wer ryght hye & thicke  
and the grete and depe dyches ful of wa  
ter, and the gates rythely buyde might y  
and stronge, & the sharpe cuttinge porte  
cullies of bright stele, also he behelde  
the hye and might y toures pyght full of  
waucryng fāces, than he praysed the ca  
stel so moche in hys harte that he would  
not gine it againe for al the gold of the  
world, and than he said to kyng Jonas  
verily this castel pleaseth me right well  
I shall make it my chaimbre, he sayd tru  
lyer than he was ware of, for there died  
he in grete myschefe, and was buried in  
the castel. Syr sayd kyng Jonas here  
ye and I will take by our lodgings, &  
thus oftē times people spekerh of a ching  
that they knowe but lytle what the con  
clusyon shall be, than by aduenture as  
the emperour lohed in at a windowe of  
the chese toun he had a blisse of flozēce  
for as than he was paste the fyrs gate  
and warde, than he sayde to her a gentil  
pūel make good chere for verily ye haue  
thempourour to your host. And whā flo  
rence harde him say so her harte trembled  
for fere & said, a swete loue Arthur it is  
nedeful this day p̄ ye be the chese floure  
of al other knyghtes, swete harte deliuer  
me this day of this emperour, & by p̄time  
thempourour wth all hys. l. thousande

E. iii.

were

## The story of Arthur

were passed the gates & wardes & were come to the chefe palays, than y noble & free duke of britayne rusht out of his embushe & hit by the bridge & closed fast y gates and did put out his stal arde ouer the wall of the gate into the castelwarde and caused to be biowen a grisley horne than knyghtes lept on horscs on euery syde, than Arthur came down out of the chefe dongeō wel mounted on horsebacke wel armed, & cried bytayne saynt malo than he broched to his horse & w greate randon he dressed hym to the mperour & strake hym so rudely with his spere that he bare downe emperour horse & all in a hepe, than Arthur had thoughte to haue taken hym but he myghte not the prese was soo thicke. And whan Arthur saw that he was holde so short with so grete a nombre he toke clare his good swerde in his hande and did cut down the with all that euer he attayned vnto, And whā kynge Alexander and hys company saw the noble prowesse of Arthur thei toke on them grete hardines, than kynge Alexander ran and encountred kynge Jonas so rudely y he fiewe clene ouer his horse croke hys legges by warde, & wth hys fall he had almost ouerthrowen the dolphyn who layde on with his swerde as a man out of his wyl, and whan he sawe kynge Jonas make a forke with his legges by warde, he lyfte by hys swerde & strake him betwene the legges so rudely that his ryght legge fiewe clene into the felde, and sayd go thy waye thou botching fole couer thyne arse waine haue thou & there this kynge Jonas was all to troden wth horse fete, and the emperoure was so brused with hys fall that nyte the thynne of his backe was broken asunder and soo was laide vnder a pyne tree on his shelde & coude not sturre to helpe hym

selfe. Than al theerles and the lord Boauisen, sy de la lounde, & Bysebar dalye into the prese and dyde there suche halp auntnes in armes that thei dyde in a manner with their enemyes as thei list them selfe, for they were wse hande dyfcomfited by cause of faute of their capptaynes, and so than they had thought to haue returned agayne to the gate, but than the noble duke of Britayne was before them who ryght sharpely receyued them for the bytious stroke of their heades armes & legges, but specially Arthur delte wonders strokes about them, and bette downe all that euer he attayned vnto, so that euery man fled before hym to make shorie procelle these noble menne dyde so moche that all the emperours wer clene dyfcomfited and slayne, hold be it they endured moche payne and labour & yste, for they were a great nombre of people, & by that tyme it was aboute none, than Arthur and all hys companye vnaimed them and toke they dyner, than they retourned to the palays, and as they went they sawe lyeng vnder the pyne tree the emperour who had hys chyne soze tused and almoost broken, than Arthur caused hym to be sayde and easely vnaimed, and made hym to be bozne to the palays & to be layde in a fayre goodly chambre, and appoynted vi. knyghtes to warte gise attendaunce on hym, & x. squyers to serue hym, than Arthur caused all the beste surgions of the countre to be brought to him to hele him of his soze hurtcs, and Arthur kept the Emperour as honourably as a man ought to kepe suche a per sone as he was. Than Arthur sayd to his company lordes what shall we do in yonder grete hoost that is without, for I thynke that yf they oncs knowe that the mperour be taken and kynge Jonas slayne they wyl

the

flee awayne, and so shal they escape fro vs  
 therefore let every man giue hym aduise  
 what is best ferder to be done. Merely sy  
 sayd mayster Breuen my counsaile is y  
 in the heghyt of the hyst coure in thys ca  
 sel that ye set out thempetroues banner  
 dysp. ayd to content that they without  
 in the host may se it, and than they wyl  
 thynke verely y thempetroue hath wonne  
 thys place, & so than they wyl abide still  
 and thynke him selfe wel assured, and sy  
 as soone as every man of our compaigny  
 hath dynd let vs yllue out wth baners  
 dysplayed and fghte with them, for peo  
 ple about a Gouernour are haile discom  
 fyted, for they shal haue noo verrus noz  
 power ayent vs, and let vs make king  
 Alexander our captayne and gouernour  
 for a king ought to gouerne an host, and  
 than let vs do soo that kyng Emendous  
 whan he cometh may haue but litle to  
 do. Than every man sayd howe that the  
 mayster had well aduysed, and agreed al  
 so to do, than every man went to dyner,  
 & whan they had dynd every man ctyed  
 to harness, and so armed them, & they wyl  
 out in the host were ryght ioyfull whan  
 they sawe theyz lordes baner dysplayed  
 in the toppe of the castel, and than kyng  
 Alexander and Arthur ordeyned y the ba  
 ner of bityaine sholde be in the way ward  
 and that Arthur sholde be in y company  
 of his fader the duke of bityayne, & nexte  
 after him in batayle sholde be the erle of  
 mountbelyal, & than the erle of Auer  
 than the erle of foy, & than the erle of fo  
 rest, next after the lord Beaulieu, & than  
 the dolphin, & than the lord de la lounde  
 and sy Wysebar, and than laste of all  
 kyng Alexander theyz chefe capytayne,  
 and mayster Breuen in his company, &  
 whan all these noble men were thus set  
 in good ordynance & theyz baners dysp

played, than florence behelde well theyz  
 noble & hie countenaunces & prayled them  
 moche in her herte and sayd, a gentyl cou  
 sty of fraunce ryght noble art thou, god  
 kepe the ther in a maynyn it lych thou  
 hast mourysed by suche a noble compa  
 ny of knightes as here be now at this ty  
 me present, so than there yllued frz our  
 the baner of bityaine wth the chekered  
 armes, and so al other every man in good  
 ordynance. And whan the emperours  
 sawe them come togyr than they knewe  
 wel howe that thempetroue & kyng Jo  
 nas were bothe slaine & taken, and than  
 they were so abashed y they had thought  
 all to haue fledde a way, than kyng flo  
 ryppe byddet to thempetroue and kyng  
 xandalas and kyng Almadoss collin  
 ger mayne to kyng flozyppe mounted al  
 on theyz hores, and rode al about theyz  
 host and bydde encourage theyz people,  
 than the kyng flozyppe called to him y  
 erle of the ple perdue, and comaunded him  
 to ryde ayent the frenche host & demaun  
 de of them what people they were, and  
 what they would and to shew them that  
 y they demaund batayle they shoulde ha  
 ue it on the mondaye nexte folowynge  
 without any sayle so that they wyl gy  
 ue trewse in the meane space, soo than  
 the erle rode streyght to the duke of Bity  
 ayne who was in the foremost bynt and  
 ryght nobly bydd salute hym. And whan  
 Arthur sawe hym he made to hym ryght  
 greet ioy, and than the erle desyred hym  
 that he wold cause hym to speke w theyz  
 chefe capytayne. Than Arthur broughe  
 hym to the presence of kyng Alexander  
 than the erle bydd bys reuerence and salu  
 ted hym, and demaunded of the kyng for  
 what entencion he and al bys company  
 bydd appoche soo nere to the emperours  
 host. & saynely frende sayde the kyng

## The story of Arthur

it is so that ye & your company be entred  
 into the londe perryngge to the gentyl  
 laop florence, & ye haue wasted & exyled  
 al her cuntry and subiects wrongfully &  
 wou: and resonable cause, & ye haue belie  
 ged & assailed her here in her castell wou:  
 any defiaunce made to her before, wherfore  
 we are riding in purpose to aseye your  
 spege and to dyspue you oute of this cou  
 trey. We can. For if the cause your  
 hood to carry and returne againe to your  
 castell, and king florence broder to the em  
 perour desireth of you truse and respite of  
 vacayle tyl monday next coming, & than  
 he p:omplyth you to deliuer you bataille  
 w:thout any fayle, for sy: al oure hood  
 is soze troubled because of our emperour,  
 for we wote not where he is, for sy: we se  
 wel if the castell is not deliuered too hym  
 sy: we se al you here redy to bataille, and  
 he is abiden behind and al his, we wote  
 not where to seke hym. Certaynly sy: if  
 the kyng your emperour is within the ca  
 stell in pryson, and the chine of his backe  
 nye broue asonder, and as for your king  
 Jonas is dead and al tho that came w:th  
 the, but sy: as for the respite if ye demaund  
 I shal take counsaile in if behalfe, and  
 than gyue you an answer, than the king  
 sent to al his lordes and shewed them if  
 requestes of kyng florence, and desired  
 them to giue him counsaile in if behalfe,  
 than the duke of Britaine desired the ma  
 ster to giue sy: his aduise, than the ma  
 ster sayd, lordes it is of treuth if this kyng  
 florence is a cruell prince and greatly  
 redoubted, for throughtout al the perryng  
 londe the people w:th do more for hym,  
 than for the emperour him selfe, and sy: as  
 ye may wel se before you all the bylles &  
 great battayles be ful of men of warre, so  
 wot for one of our company there is an. C  
 of theys, and also though the emperoure

were dead, yet these people are not w:th  
 out a capayne as long as they haue in  
 them this kyng florence, theretore my  
 counsaile is let vs giue them this truse  
 tyl monday, sy: it cometh of theys oon  
 delyre, for our people are ryghte loz tra  
 uayled of the payne if they haue had this  
 morning, and theys horsen be also ryghte  
 wery & loze chased, and sit there be many  
 of our knyghtes and people loze wounded  
 so they may wel take their rest the space  
 of these fourre dayes and so by mondays  
 euery ma and hors shal be wel restrethed  
 how be it on the other syde I se wel that  
 as now theys hood is in a maner w:th  
 out any ordinaunce, and in great trouble  
 for the myssyngge of theys emperoure, so  
 that if we shold go on them at this poynt  
 I thinke that we shold dyscomfy: them  
 al, but we shold haue no honour in that  
 behalf, for we shold do but dyscomfyte  
 people that were but as halfe dead, theretore  
 for let vs accomplishe theys request, and  
 on monday let vs assemble a peny: them  
 and than if god gyue vs the victorye than  
 our prayse and honour shal be the more,  
 greter and more laudable, And whan the  
 mayster had thus deuyled they were all  
 agreed to his saying. So than the kyng  
 Alexander graunted the trewse too the  
 eris tyl the monday folowynge. Than  
 the eris returned and sayd to kyng flo  
 rence & to suche other as were w:th hym  
 sy: it is so the frenche men herby graun  
 ted to you trewse tyl monday next, and  
 as for the emperour is in pryson soze wou  
 ded and the king Jonas slain and al the  
 companye, but of one thynge I ensure  
 you all, sy: the God sy: it made mankynd  
 there was neuer so goodly a loze of men  
 of watre assembled togyther as they be,  
 and as god helpe me if we were halfe as  
 many mo people as we be here already

we could not endure aponst them ther o:  
 dre they; barayles in so goodly a maner.  
 Holde your peace sy; etie sayd kyng flo  
 rysses; and if ye be aserd slye a way; for as  
 god helpe me as soon as mondy is come  
 I shall neyther eate nor drynke tyll I  
 haue agayne my broder thempetour and  
 put them al to dech by the swozd, thā he  
 sent for al the noble men of þ hoost & cheie  
 captaynes; and toke theire faith and troth  
 to helpe him in his quareil. Than kyng e  
 Alexander and al his company returned  
 agaim to the castel; and alighted at þ gate  
 And there florence met the and coualed  
 them vp into the palais; & thā she deman  
 ded theym the cause why they returned  
 agayne so soone wout barayle. Adam  
 said the duke of bairaine it is so þ kyng e  
 flozyses hath desyred of vs tie wle tyll  
 monday next comyng the which we ha  
 ue graunted him. In the name of god said  
 florence so be it. so than euery mā vnar  
 med the throughout al the castell; & after  
 they went and viſited thempetour & kept  
 him cōpany howe be it he was soze enpat  
 red because of the hurt þ he had. Now let  
 vs leue to speke of the and return to Go  
 uernar þ was going on message into the  
 realme of Sopoloy to kyng Emendus

How Gouvernar went into the realme  
 of Sopoloy to thentent to giue knowle  
 ge to kyng Emendus howe þ thempetour  
 had besyged his doughter florence in  
 her castell of clere route; desyryng hym  
 too hast hys hoost to rescoue her at that  
 tyme.

Capl. L. v.

W Han that Gouvernar was depar  
 ted fro blaunche route as ye haue  
 herde hereafoze he rode so longe  
 tyl at last he arriued at the fayre citie of pa  
 lestyne; and there he herde rydyngs of the

myghty kyng Emendus howe þ he had  
 knowlege that thempetour had besyged  
 his doughter in her castel of blaunche rou  
 te. Wherfoze he assembled his hostes to gy  
 der as fast as he might; to thentent to res  
 coue florence his doughter; and there it  
 was shewed him how þ the cheie gouer  
 nour of hys heost was the king of ozque  
 ney; who was put to the wayward with  
 xxx. M. hauberts; and alcei him þ king  
 of moymal with other. xxx. M. and than  
 the kyng of baifound with other. xxx.  
 M. and than the king of Jimaelye with  
 other. xxx. M. And thā the myghty kyng  
 Emendus with. L. M. in his company  
 and than there were of duke Whippes  
 company. xv. M. and of the laoy Wargu  
 retes of Argentons cōpany. xv. M. who  
 were brought by sy; Emery. And whan  
 Colletnar herde these rydynges he was  
 right ioyful; & so moued on his hoys and  
 rode so longe tyl he came within a dayes  
 iourney of the cite of Coynpte; than he  
 encolitted þ king of ozquenes baner w  
 a right noble company; & so rode forth &  
 passed by al those great routes; at last he  
 spyed sy; Ansell neuewe to sy; Reuelon  
 florence marthal & ech of them embraced  
 other; & so to them there came sy; Rowla  
 de of bigoz; & sy; Wleer of damalon & the  
 Altraude; & sy; Wozys of sentice & al these  
 were florence knyghts; and al these knew  
 wel Gouvernar & made to him grete chere  
 and at last þ king of ozqueny came to the  
 & he embraced Gouvernar and to hi made  
 right grete fest and chere; than Gouvernar  
 dyd alpyge; but the king made him to re  
 mount agayne & demaunded of him how  
 that Arthur did. Sy; q Gouvernar he is  
 at þ blaunche route there I left him; & w  
 him duke Hector; Bylebar & master Ste  
 uen sy; it is so þ thempetour hath besy  
 ged florence in the castel; & he hath with  
 hym

## The story of Arthur

hym people without numbre, and he had enclosed the castel rounde aboute or we entered, howe be it we entered by the subtil wytte of mayster Souden, but say I am sure there is by this tyme wyth Arthur the most noble company of al the worlde for he hath brought wyth him out of hys country the kynge of malogres and. iiii. erles and. iiii. barons, and also ymhyge duke of Britayne his owne fader & they are wel to the numbre of. x. thousande knyghtes of fraunce of great pryce and valure, wherfore I thinke by this tyme they haue made some maner of scarmyshe wth their enemies for they are hardy knyghtes and couragious for it is grete maynaye if they lye thus longe still. He sayd the kynge is Arthur chan of that vertue and strength y he hath brought wyth him such the people, as helpe me god I am ryght forful therof, now it wyll be wel knowne if he be an orphelyn in his owne country or not. Sayd Gouernar he herterly doth salute you & desyrez you to haste your people as fast as ye can toward hym for the rescowynge of florence. Wyth a ryght good wyl sayd the kynge, with goddes grace we shal be there by wednesday next comynge at nyght, let vs go & speke wyth my lord the kynge of Soudolys, so they passed for by the grete hostes, and Gouernar sayde beholde I trowe here be all the worlde of people than myche people demaunded tidings of Arthur and so did al the knynges in their owne pryue persons so at last they appoyched the grete host of kyng Emenous and passed for by al the grete routes til they came to kynge Emenous and as sone as he saw Gouernar his hert reioysed in his bady & embraced him & demaunded tidings of Arthur. Sayd Gouernar I leste hym at the blauche route, & there he recounted to the

kynge how y they entered into the castell, & shewed him how y Arthur had brought wyth him out of his country the most noble company of al the worlde, & also his fader y duke of Britayne and there he shewed the names of them al, both of the knynges and barons wherof the king had grete joye, than the kynge of Oqueneys sayde say your doughter is not yll bestowed, I thinke he wyl defende her ryght well against the myperour. That is true of the kynge, but is ther any grete company wth these noble men. He sayd truly of Gouernar, for or I departed fro them they had discomfited y Souda & also his broder and. xxx. of his company. That is a grete thing of the king. Sayd of Gouernar Arthur desyrez your grace too auance your host as hastily as ye can, and now say I wil retorne agayne to blauche route, for I thinke long to know the state of my lord Arthur and so he toke his leue. On your way frend of the king and salute fro me my doughter florence and Arthur al such as be come wth him, and thank them on my behalfe for coming into this country to the ayding of my doughter. Than the archbishop embraced Gouernar, and so Gouernar departed, and he and y king of Oqueneys went togider to his host. And whan sayd Ansean of valefoude knew y Gouernar wold depart agayne he said to the king of Oqueneys, say my lady florence is beleged wherfore I wyl by your licence go wth Gouernar and se my lord mine vncle & hoys wth Arthur. That kept forth sayd Myles and sayd Rowland of Bp go & sayd Alice and sayd Artaud & sayd morante, & they al demaunded licence of the kynge to go wth Gouernar, and he gaue them al licence, than they toke theyr harness and mounted on theyr horses & went forth on theyr way and passed al y hostes  
Hod

How that Arthur accompanied with the frenche men dyfcomfyd kynge floydes brother to the myproure, & flewe al them þe were in his company. Ca. C. vi.

**S**o it was that the next day after that the trewe was taken Arthur rose vp erly in the morning and entered into the payns and there he founde the dolphin & the lord de la lound, and so eche of them did salute other, than the dolphin said as helpe me god & anoye me greatly thus long to be closed in me we, I wold gladly go and sporte me abrode in the felde, but syt let vs go take oure harnes wyth vs because oure enemyes be so nete vs, and so they al. iiii. did arme them and Wysebat also, & mounted on theyr horses and issued out at the gates and rode downe by a fayre valey by the riuer side til they welwel the space of of a mille and halfe fro the castel, than the dolphin beheld wel the pleasant riuer & the goodly medowes on both sides, and praised muche the countrey in his mynd, than he dasyt his spores to his horse and galoped down along by the ryuer syde tyl he came to a thycke wood, & when he had thought to haue returned agayne, he perceiued a knight armed ysuyng out of the same wood mounted on a good horse, and came rennyng to wates him by great randon, and when the dolphin saw him he encountered hym wth such force þe knight brake his spere but the dolphin strake hym so rudely þe he put his spere through his body, and so the knight fel downe dead. Than Arthur sayde to his company, I se well the dolphin is a knight of grei valute and had scant synysshed his wordes but that he perceiued ysuyng out of the wood king Clamados with. ii. C. in harnes wth hym

compyng ayenst the dolphin wth grei fiercenes, and when the dolphin saw þe dasy to his hors and toke his sword and strake so the first that he claued him down to the teth, than al the remenant ran on him at al sydes, but than Arthur rused into the prele, and the first that he encountered he dasyt his spere & lenechroughe hym body so farre that he wounded an other knyght that was behynd him nye to the derb, than he dreyde out his sword and layd on among them that were in hand with the dolphin, and gaue among them so grei strokes þe he cut of armes, heddes, and legges, and bet down knyghtes and claued a sonder sheldes and made grei place afore him, so none appoyhed nere hym but that he receiued derb and also þe dolphin dyd as nobly as any knight could do, and Arthur beheld him, and vnder his helme dyde laughe at hym noble valute, than Wysebat & sy de la lounde dasyt in to the prele so rudely þe eche of them bet downe hym enemy, than they layde on wth theyr swordes like two world lions. And when þe kynge Clamados saw his people so slayne wth. iiii. persons he was right sorowful & replet wyte and said if al the other frenche men be like these. iiii. al the world can not endure ayenst them but by the sayth that I owe vnto the myproure I shal ryd one of them out of this mortal, and therwith he liff vnto his sword and strake Wysebat so rudely þe the gentyl knyght was nye stryken downe, for his hors with the stroke fel down on his knees, than there fel on him so many folkes þe they dreyd him downe to the earth And when the lord de la lound saw that he began for to crie as fast as he myght helpe Arthur for Wysebat is elles lost, than the dolphin espyed that and rushed into the thickest of þe prele, and he and sy

## The story of Arthur

de la lounde byd as muche as they could to rescowe Wysebar, but it auayled the not for there wer so many on him, and so he was taken prisoner & deliuered to .xx. men to kepe, and they led hym forth out of the host ryght rudely, and than vnarmed him and did bere him right ill. And whan Arthur knewe that Wysebar was taken & led out of the felde, he was righte sorowful and soze displeid, than he dalsh into the pyse so rudelye þ he confounded al that euer he attayned vnto, and clauesonder shildes and vnbarred helmes, & dunayled hawbertes & cut of heades, handes and armes, and threwe downe knyghtes, for none abode him wpythout deith, so that al fledde befoze him, and he and the dolphyn and syz de la lounde helde theym selfe euer togider in a front. And all thys season Wysebar was lede forth out of the felde tyl they came to þ fote of a gret mountayne, betyng and yll increatynge of Wysebar the prisoner, but it was not longe after tyl they were dyspleased and sorowful, for wpythyn a lytel whyle after they dranke of the same cup, for Gouvernar, syz Ansel, syz Apples, syz Rowland, syz Uicier, syz Traude, and sir Morant the same time descended downe thys same mountayne, for they were comyng out of the realme of Bozolois as ye haue herde here befoze. And whan that Gouvernar saw those people dele so foule wpyth Wysebar, his bloud trembled in his body for fete of Arthur, for than he doubted þ the blaunche cource had ben taken and destroyed and his lord Arthur deade than he sayd to Rowlande, saynte Warre I doubt me greatly of my lord Arthur, for yonder is some of our compant that is taken prisoner. therefore gentyl knightes helpe to rescowe hym who soo euer it be, than Gouvernar rode forth wpyth grette gan

don, and whan he approached nere to them he knewe ryght well how that it was Wysebar þ was taken prisoner, than he set his hand on his sword & laide on amonge them lyke a wolfe among a meyny of shepe and bydde cur botone and slewe al befor him, so wpythin a whyle al the .xx. knyghtes were al slayne, than Gouvernar came to Wysebar and sayd, a frende is semeth wel this people byd neuer nouriþh you by that thus foule & shamefully haue delte wpyth you, wherof I am ryghte soze, and soloused hym out of his bandes. And whan Wysebar sawe hym he had ryghte gret sope and sayd, a frende euer at nebe a man shal know his frend, but for goddes sake hast you to helpe my lord Arthur who is at grece myschpyete here by thys cruel syde, for as helpe me god I am moze soze for hym than for my selfe. And whan Gouvernar herde that he galloped forth incontynent & al bys company after them, and as soone as they came to theyr enemies they founde the lord de la lounde ourthrowen to the erth and raken prisoner, and was ledyng forth, and therewpyth Gouvernar sayde on rounde about hym, and his company wpyth him, & they breke downe knyghtes on every syde, than Gouvernar toke a hourse and deliuered se to syz de la lounde, and in the spyte of al his enemies he made hym to remouit, and whan Gouvernar went al about febyng of Arthur, and syz Rowland wpyth him, & at the last they founde him in the chekell of the pyse, where as he did manauiles in armes, and the dolphyn did helpe hym to the best of bys power. And whan Gouvernar sawe hym he dalsh in among the and frustred downe al that euer he attayned vnto, for he was a maruailous good knight and of gret vertue, and sir Rowland and his .vi. felowes did helpe hym to theyr

ther powers, & Gouvernar wente before  
doyng great meruayles. And whan Ar-  
thur sa w: hym his harte quickened and  
toke gret pyte of the paine & labour that  
he sawe hym take & endure so longe, and  
therwith he layde on moze rudelie than  
he had done before of al the day, for such  
was his maner the moze he had to do the  
moze grew eue his strenght & hardines.  
Then came in Wylebar well armed  
and horsed, for he had bene before at a  
good market where as he had chofte of  
the best, & he bare downe his enemyes be-  
fore him by grette hepes. And whan king  
Clamados sawe so his people dyscomfy-  
red he turned hym selfe to fflye & sayd to  
a knyght that was by him, go and hast  
you to the emperours hoost & bryng With  
you. m. Chawbertes to socour me, & so  
the knyghtes rode as faste as he myghte  
till he came to kynge flozpes & to king  
Brandolyn who wer schpyng all about  
the hoost for kynge Clamados, but they  
conde here nothyng of hym, wherwith  
they were gretely dyspleased, and at last  
the knyght messenger came to them and  
sayde to kynge flozpes, gentyl kynge  
haste you to socour the noble kinge Cla-  
mados who is punder by the ruuer syde,  
and he & his company are fighting With  
.x. frenshemen who I thynke are out of  
theyr myndes. I beleue they be not erth-  
ly people, but rather fendes of hell who  
are come for to destruy vs all, for I am  
sure they haue flarne by this tyme. It  
hended of .v. best knyghtes of kynge Cla-  
mados, and sy: king Clamados his selfe  
is wounded in .v. places of his body, and  
without ye hasten you the faster he is but  
eithir dead or takē. Saynt mary frende  
saynt king flozpes, and howe is it they  
haue not flarne al the frenshemen sith  
they be but .x. per sones. Slayne sy: sayd

Arthur.

the knyght, nay speke not therof, but sit  
pray to god to kepe you fro myscheyse, &  
that they approche not to nere you whan  
ye shal medle with them, for ther is none  
that approacheth to them without death  
sy: hast you or els ye wyl lese your good  
kynge Clamados, than kynge flozpes  
commaunded a great grilley hoine to be  
blowen, than all the hoost armed theym  
hastely & mounted on theyr horses & toke  
theyr speres & sheldes and made so great  
brayle & noyse that duke phylip as he  
was in the castel herd the, and looked out  
at a wyndow and sa we all the hoost ar-  
myng them & mouyng on their horses  
And than it was shewed hym how that  
Arthur & the dolphyn, sy: be la loude, &  
sy: Wylebar were yssued out of the ca-  
stel all armed and were riden do wne by  
the ruuer syde, & whan he sawe al the peo-  
ple of the hoost daryng thetwardes  
he thought wel that ther was some fray  
towards, wherfore he sent greatly of Ar-  
thur & his company, than he caused the  
gret wathe hoine of the castel to be blowen  
in .iii. times so p it was hard throug-  
out the towne and castel, where by eury  
man knew wel that ther was some newe  
tydynges, wherfore they armed them and  
mounted on theyr horses, & than al the er-  
les lordes & knyghtes did arme them and  
mounted on their horses saupng the du-  
ke of Brytayne, king Alexander, and the  
mayster who as than were not risen out  
of theyr beddes, & al these lordes & knigh-  
tes with baners dysplayd yssued out of  
the castel, & they wer well to the nombre  
of .xv. thousande in .iiii. battayles wel ren-  
ged & in good ordre, & they rode downe a  
longe by the ruuer syde, & duke phylip  
rode forwarde till at laste he met with the  
first company of the emperours hoost, &  
they encountred rudely togider, & so both

E. l. parties

## The story of Arthur

partys euer increased so that there was  
byr wene therein a great mortal bataille &  
a fyerte, the emperours were. xl thousande  
and the other parte were but. xv. thou-  
sande, howe be it thei were many of these  
enemys & king Brandalyn was chiefe  
gouernour of the emperours hooft, & in  
this meane season Arthur & hys. x. fel-  
lows did so much that thei cleue dyscom-  
forted al king Clamados company, than  
kyng Clamados was right sore displea-  
sed & ran at Arthur & strake hym on the  
whyte shelde, for he thought þ he wolde  
set lytle by al his losse so þ he might ouer-  
come hym, but the stroke rebouced again  
wout doing of ony hurte, for the shelde  
was so harde for hym to carye it, and  
whan the kyng saw þ he was nye wode  
for angre & therwith gaue Arthur an o-  
ther grete stroke, but al anapled hym no  
fayng, than Arthur strake at the kyng  
who was aserd of the stroke & thoughte  
to step a lytle a fyde but it was late for  
Arthur light so on hym that he claue his  
shelde cleue a sonder in the middes, & the  
stroke entred into his sholdre and strake  
cleue of the arme fro his body, & as the  
swerde dyd glent down it shate also cle-  
ue a way the calfe of his legge, & whan  
the kyng saw that he was so sore woun-  
ded he turned hym & flewe a way as fast  
as he myght, and. x. other with hym, for  
ther were no mo leste alyue of hys. ii. C.  
men & yet they were all mayned & hurte  
than kyng Clamados fledde til he came  
to the remnant of the emperours hooft  
wher as he founde kyng floypes, and  
there he fell down before hym & sayde, a  
gentle kyng why do ye ray thus long þ  
ye take not vengeance on these frenche  
glorons who haue thus atayed me, wher-  
fore kyng hast you & socour our people  
And whan kyng floypes saw hym in

that case he was right sorowful & swore  
a grete othe & sayd that he woulde nunt  
euer þ he had the hedes of the. ii. that had  
thus yll atayed hym & broke the crewe  
than he comanded hysnes & competes  
to be blown, soo that euery man withyn  
the hooft dyde arme thyn & mounted on  
theyr hysles & made grete noyse & bruite  
so that the duke of bytaine as he was in  
his chambrye within the castel harde well  
the great noyse, and thã he demaunded of  
his seruantes what it might be, & it as  
god helpe vs it is our company that are  
fychtyng without in the felde with the  
emperours hooft, for syr all the lordes of  
this castel are assue out sawing you and  
kyng Alexander who I thynke be yet in  
his bedde. Whernt whay sayd the duke &  
is not my baner there among them. So  
sy: i. i. uely no: none of your men. And  
the duke I lese my honour this day,  
gete me my banners and so hastily he ar-  
med hym, and thã he entred into the cha-  
mbrye wher as kyng Alexander was & re-  
counted to hym all this matter, & than the  
kyng was right sorry þ he was not gone  
forth with the hooft, so thã he armed hym  
and al his and mooued on theyr hysles,  
and soo in good ordinaunce they yllued  
out with banners displayed and rushe in  
to the batayle to helpe their company, &  
whan Arthur & his. x. fellows had dys-  
comforted cleue kyng Clamados and hys  
company he went ther had ben no more  
to do at that tyme, & so than he deman-  
ded yt ony of any his cōpany were hurte  
or sore wounded. And they all sayd that  
blessed be god ther was none of the that  
had ony great hurte and therwith they  
hard grete noyse and dallyng togidre  
with speres and swerdes and harde cry-  
enge bytayne. wel sayd Arthur I beleeue  
that our company of the castel be fych-  
tyng.

enge with the host without, wherefore  
 let us go helpe them & by that tyme they  
 had rydden a lytle waye for the they saw  
 where as the batayle was right fyer & a  
 cruel. Than Wynter clypped where as  
 king floppes came towarde them with  
 an hundred thousand men, and so they  
 wed them to Arthur and sayd, gentil  
 knyght and noble lord and our chiefe so  
 uerayne lord now is it no defall that ye  
 be here our no lie valure in this iourney  
 for ye beholde ponder cometh king flo  
 rypes with al the world of men after him  
 & noble kyng Emendus how is it that  
 ye come not to socoure this noble compa  
 ny. Frode sayde, Gouvernour be ye in cer  
 tayne that ye shall have by hys shortly  
 noble helpe & socour, let us leave our tal  
 kyng & go on our enemyes, for as go  
 helpe me I shall ones go through them  
 & vylles. I that spe on the ground in qua  
 st, for I wonder no derth with sayde  
 Arthur doubte not for al the world as  
 longe as I live, that I shal helpe you even  
 close here me for I prayse you ye shall  
 be not overthowen many knyghtes & it  
 shal be paine to you to thowen them, let  
 us go on thowen the tarye colonge. So he  
 sayd the delphyn doubte ye not of us, for  
 as longe as we live we shal never fayle  
 you, yet with they dallyt into the preste &  
 overthowen knyghtes by grete helpe, but  
 theydally. Arthur dyde wonderly, for he  
 was thas as fust as though he had done  
 with tye of al the daye before, thus he  
 toke us to the tynghing and went to the  
 mayster & drew in the castle who knew  
 nothing of all this matter. At this tyme  
 the mayster was even by his art & co  
 ming can see thaim preysed & gile & wage  
 with them & then and so overcomer &  
 byng & Enedus & al his host. At this tyme  
 Arthur.

**S**o it was & when mayster  
 Stenen had layd in his ven  
 as longe as u pleased him,  
 than he arose & went into the  
 hal, and there he founde flo  
 rence & the lady Margarete, and than he  
 had grete marvaile that he saw no body  
 elles and demaunded of them wher as al  
 the noble company were become. And flo  
 rence answered him and sayde, a gentil  
 mayster now is such besynes cometh  
 we have grete neede of your helpe for Ar  
 thur & al our company are without figh  
 tinge with the emperor's host, who are  
 an hundred thousande, & our company are  
 but xviii. thousande, and also more our  
 kyng floppes is coming on them with  
 another C. thousande, wherefore by all  
 behelphode our people shall be destroyed  
 wherefore gentil mayster as ye be sonc to  
 a kyng helpe us we our noble chivalry  
 by your clergy. And when the mayster  
 hadde these saynges he went in his cha  
 bre & toke his bowes, & dyde so moche by  
 his comynge that he raysed a grete myste  
 in king floppes host so that he could not  
 see his men, wherby they left their  
 byp & way to come on Arthur & his compa  
 ny, & toke the strenght waye & the king  
 of armenye & the grete host of a mighty  
 kyng Emendus was coming, & as they  
 met their hostes were were togider, the  
 the king of armenye hoche tyed and  
 knewe not by what banners & standerds  
 if they were of their enemyes, than they  
 ran to their banners & sayled their ho  
 ses & mounted on them, & the good kyng  
 of armenye was cleve armed & hel mou  
 sed on a grete mighty horse, & rode for  
 ward of all his company the while he was  
 still in the nombre of xxx. And next  
 after him came the king of morraill in  
 other way. And when they were met

## The History of Arthur

to theyr enemies, than the king of orque  
ney came ayenst kynge Bandalin who  
broke his speere al to peces, but the noble  
kinge of orquenei brake him so rudely þ  
he fell ouer his horse & crepe his legges by  
ward, so that he lay a gret space for dead  
on the erth, but at last he was reuived  
by his people, thā begā the barayle right  
brutal & ferre on both parties, & the kyng  
of orquenei & the kyng of morimall dyde  
ryght valiantly. Now let vs retorne  
to maister Breul who that after he wēt  
out of his chāber & had caused this grea  
mist to be in the petyours hoost he armed  
him and went down fith the court of the  
palays and ther he foud a gret & a  
myghty blacke horse whiche had neuer  
lyng as fyre, the whych horse had neuer  
eten prouender & was bare on al. fith  
fo; he was neuer thow, & that he maist  
incontinent moued on hym, and as soon  
as þ maister was on his backe he fode in  
ly þ myghty way so þ flogen & no; no  
he that wēt to her wyth wher he wōt to  
come, & so sodenly he was boyn into the  
hoost whiche as Arthur was fighting w  
his enemyes, & as soone as the mapster  
was there he blew fith a blast that the  
fole in fith a wynde & thome in thome  
rours hoost & thei lost thei half the  
strength & hardnes. than the mapster w  
his fildes in his hande balde into þ prest  
& gane in my gret strokes, but his horse  
to his fere both before and behinde gūt  
fiche strokes that he ouerthrew whiche  
euer he touched, so þ ther was none that  
approched nere him dar þ the horse wōt  
zen on him with open mouth & deuour  
hym so þ euer it flew wāp down the  
mapster for fere of his horse, the horse w  
the fopne to gyde his fere & lepe into the  
wyndes of the prest, & ther he wōt lye  
on with his fere both before & behinde

bye with his tethe so that he claued on  
der sheldes & brast asfoer helmes so that  
none durst abyde hym & Arthur & his co  
pany whan they saw the mapster & his  
horse they laughed at hym a gret pace,  
than the.iii. cries & the bytōs made pla  
ce before them, & specially Arthur about  
all other dyd meruailes in armes, and at  
conclufion they dyd so moche that they  
enmyes fledde before them, & thei folo  
wed after them and slawe so many of the  
that they were all come dyscomfyed, so  
they sawe well they had no socour, & had  
gret maruaile wher the kyng flosypes  
th his hoost was become that he cam not  
to socour them, thā Arthur caused a gret  
hoyn to be blowe and called to gyde his  
people about kynge Alexander, and so then  
toke counsaile to retorne agayne to the  
blakche fowre, than thei saw the maister  
coming to them fro the hys mountaynes  
on his horse wyng lyk the wynde, &  
whan he was come to them he sayd, fith  
now quere þat selle wel & fith & fith  
be noble men come out of the gentyl coun  
tre of fraunce, for it is the noble kyng  
of orquenei & the kyng of morimall  
deponynder and agayne to gyde  
kyng flosypes, & they are but.ii. thousand  
ayenst an.ii. thousand, wherfore they are  
forouermatched, for goddes sake let vs  
go and socour them. And whan Arthur  
hard that he was as frende of herte as a  
rager loun and saio to kynge Alexander  
gentyl kyng let vs go forthly and helpe  
these gracious kynges, & so forthly I had  
rather than the.ii. thousand on þ  
one of the isle of Germaine to the fith  
flosyce. Certainly frende Arthur said the  
Spay Jantouent whiche I had my hand, thā  
they capten theyr people together and  
went to the wyth good ordynance and  
baners displayed, & fith as they wōt

and a harte returned to the blacke tou-  
 ce, & so they rode forth such a way as the  
 master lede them, at last they came  
 to the batayle, than the master dasyt his  
 spores to his horse & rush into the host,  
 than his horse began to fyght with hys  
 fere, & to byte with his teth, than Arthur  
 & his company dyd laughe at hym than  
 Arthur, duke Philip, & Gouvernar dasyte  
 into the prele, & the fyrst that Arthur en-  
 countered with all he strake hym so rudely  
 that he claued hym to the sholdres, & fro  
 an other he toke his head, & so helapd on  
 rounde about hym and confounded all that  
 euer he attayned vnto, than a good kyng  
 Alexander and the noble duke of Britayne  
 and all other lordes rush into the prele,  
 than there began a fyerse batayle, And  
 whan the dolphyn sawe the noblenes of  
 Arthur & his company, he toke on hym  
 therby great hardines, than he broched  
 his horse with the spores & dasyt into the  
 prele & hys enemyes assayled hym on all  
 parties, but he defended hym lyke a good  
 knyght, but there were soo many apens  
 hym that they slew his horse vnder hym,  
 than he lyfte on his fete & slewe & dreyne  
 downe many knyghtes with his swerde  
 but at last for all that euer he coude do he  
 was taken prisoner, and whan Gouver-  
 nar saw that he dasyt into the prele and  
 the fyrst that he encountered he claued hym  
 to the teth, & fro another he strake of the  
 arme harde by the sholdre, & soo layde on  
 rounde aboute hym, & after hym wente  
 sy: Aucion & sy: Rowlande of brygo: &  
 dyd ryght valyauntly, but they were on  
 them mo than xl and they helpe them so  
 thort & they coude not abyde the dolphyn  
 And whan sy: Bischar saw his company  
 in that case than he went into the prele &  
 closed hym selfe iuste to Gouvernar, & by-  
 weene them they slew many of their ene-

Arthur.

myes, for they kepte them so close togy-  
 der that no man coude part them, at last  
 master Breuen sawe them in that case  
 he rush into wpyh his horse and dyd suche  
 wonder what wpyh hys hant es & whys  
 horse that his enemyes fledde fro his shou-  
 ldes & said, I haue hant suche Jodeler &  
 hath tanyt his horse thus to daunce, let  
 vs flye fro this feest, I haue hant he that  
 gytteth hym ony thyng, we are but dead  
 and we abyde hym, therefore let vs leue  
 hym, I aged may he be that brought him  
 into this countre, ther wyl thei repayed  
 and fledde a way fro the dolphyn, than  
 our knyghtes came again to the dolphyn  
 and cauled him again to moue on a good  
 horse, and dyd put them selfe agayne into  
 the batayle, than sy: Ansell strake so ru-  
 dely a knyght & he fell downe strake dead  
 And whan kyng Brandalyn sawe & he  
 was right sore displeased & strake sy: An-  
 sell so rudely that he purchis fowerde cleue  
 throughe his body more than a spere, ther  
 with the genyrl knyght fell downe to the  
 erth ryght dolorously hurt and wouiden  
 And whan duke Hector saw that he was  
 ryght sore displeased, for he wend he had  
 ben dead, & than he ran at kyng Brandalyn  
 and strake him with his swerde so vertu-  
 ously that he made his head to flye to the  
 erth and said, a vnhappy king thou haste  
 taken fro vs a right noble knyght, but  
 now thou hast paid for the mous, ther-  
 fore I clapme the as quyte, than the king  
 of orquney who had hel seen Hector do  
 that deed he said, a gentle knyghte blest  
 sy: be that rombe that bar: the, for he  
 sy: ye can well reuenge your frende, than  
 they began grete sorow in the myght  
 hooft for kyng Brandalyn, & than moche  
 people of them dreyne togyder to bere the  
 dead king out of the batayle, and Arthur  
 caused sy: Ansell to be borne to the blacke

H. lii.

che

## The history of Arthur

the toure to Florence, and ther his wo-  
des to be serched. And whan kynge Flo-  
rypes hadde cōpynges that kynge Ban-  
dalen was slayne and sawe his people so  
slayne and wounded he was for sorowe  
and angrenge out of his mynde, & there  
wyth he ranne at a knyght of the kynge  
of morimall with a grete spere & per-  
sed him ther wyth clene throught the bo-  
dy and soo he fell downe dead, and wyth  
his swerde he strake of the head of an o-  
ther, and the thyrde he rydde out of his  
lyfe. And whan the gentyl kynge of mori-  
mall sawe his people so slayne he ranne  
at kynge Florypes and gaue hym a grete  
stroke on the weide, but the stroke dyde  
hym but lytle hurte, but than the kynge  
Florypes gaue hym suche a stroke that  
he claued his sholdre downe to the sadell,  
and ther wyth he fell downe dead, tha-  
gan there a great sorow among his com-  
pany, for he was a ryght noble and gene-  
rall kynge. And whan Arthur sawe that  
he was neuer so sorowful before for any  
thyng that euer came vnto hym before,  
therwith in a great rage he began to flo-  
ryshe wyth clarence his good swerd and  
gaue kynge Florypes suche a stroke on  
hys on the helme that he claued hym clene  
a sonder downe to the sadell so that he fell  
a sonder in two partes, and what his peo-  
ple saw that they were so abashed that  
they had nos power longer to defende  
themselue but lyte, so than Arthur and  
Dector slewe of them euen as they lyfte,  
soo thus they were clene dyscōpyed, and  
so they fledde a way and saved them selue  
as wel as they might. Than the gentyl  
kynge of orquency cam to the place wher  
as the dead bodye of the noble kynge of  
morimall laye and wept for sorowe and  
said, certainly my hart is heuy for youre  
death, a gentyl noble kynge of morimall

this matre was eny begon for you, all  
trouth, bounte, and beaute was in you,  
certainly he had a harde hart that thus  
slew you, therwith he dysghed fro his  
horse, than kynge Alexandre cam to him  
and al the other dukes, erles, barons, and  
noble knyghtes, and they all made ryghte  
grete sorowe, than they dyscōpyed forth the  
dead body and did sende it to the blaiche  
toure. And whan Florence hadde of them  
great sorowe that they made she was in  
great feere of Arthur, and the lady Mar-  
garate had grete doute of the mayster  
till at laste she was encertayned that it  
was for the deatch of kynge of morimall  
wherof she was ryght sorowful and cau-  
sed the dead body to be layde on a  
crysche bere in the myddes of the quere of  
the chirche. Than the kynge of orquency  
sent to the myghty kynge Enebous, all  
knyghtes in message, certifyinge hym  
how that they haue had a great batayle,  
wherin the good kynge of morimall was  
slayne, and of the myghty parte howe  
that kynge Bandalyn king Clamados  
and kynge Florypes be al there slayne, and  
the erle of the perydue taken prysoner  
& mayned for euer, so than these mes-  
sengers departed, & than the kynge of or-  
quency caused his tent to be pyght vp a lytle  
besyde thence as the batayle was ther to  
abode the coming of king Enebous, and  
kept styll in his company the king Alex-  
ander of malogre, & the duke of byprains  
and the other erles & barons retourned  
to the blaiche toure to kepe it and to be in  
company with Florence.

How that the myghty dyed in prysone  
for sorowe whan that he knewe that his  
knyghtes and people were al slayne & dys-  
cōpyed.

Capitulo. C. viii.

**S**o die was that whan the kyng of moymal es body was brought in to the church within the castell, there was made right greet sorow in al the cytie and castell, in so muche that the emperor as he lay in hys bed soze speke, for he enpayred every day moze and moze, & as he lay he herd the greet sorow þat was made about in the castell, than he demaunded what it was and wherfor that greet hurte without was made, & than it was shewed hi how that it was because of the deeth of þat kyng of moymal who was slain by kyng flozypes. He sayd then the emperor & how doth kyng flozypes. I charge you tell me the trouthe. & for goodes sake encurge noo moze of that matter sþi ye be perfitte hole. I wyl not sayd the emperor I wyl know it, but than he said to a subiect of his own that was there with him. I charge the to tel me the plain troth, sþi sith it plese you I shal tel you the playne troth, it is so that de be al your people are destroyed, & your broder kyng flozypes and al your oþer kynges are al slayne, and whan then your herd that he had so greet sorow that he closed his eethes toggyder and caste hys handes abrode, and therewith his hert dytue asonder and so dyed for sorowe, and than such as were about him did cast out a greet crye, than flozence and the duke of brytaine went into the same chaumbre and there they found the emperor ded, than the duke of brytaine sent for kyng alexander and the kyng of ozquene and for all the oþer lordes and barons, and whan they were al toggyder than they sparrilled the emperours body, and conveyed it to church, and laid him by the kyng of moymal, & also thider was brought the body of kyng flozypes and laid by them, than incontinent there went a messenger to kyng smendus, & by that tyme the first

messengers were come to kyng smendus & said to him, sþi the emperor is in prision and al his voltes discomfited, & al his kynges oed and slayn, than the kyng demaunded whoo had donethose noble dedes, sþi said he as god helpe us þat hath done such knyghtes as arthur hath brought whithin for sþi in al your lyfe you neuer saw such knyghtes noz moze to be doubted, theris nothing that can endure ayenst them, but sþi al the world spekerh of arthur & hys colyn here, & for arthur al onely by hys noble prowes hath made an ende of all his enemies, how be it sþi ther is one grete myschefe fallen vnto your grace, for the good kyng of moymal is slayne by kyng flozypes, but incontinent arthur slew hi and clawe him asonder in al peres, & whan kyng smendus herd of the deeth of his good kyng he could speke no worde of a greet space, and whan he might speke he sayd, a gentyl knyghtes here true and honorable to al people, alas that I have thus lost you, certenly it forthinketh me, a emperor shams haue you sith ye haue taken fro me my noble & true companis certenly I shal take vengeance on you as sone as I shal se you, and as he was thus talkyng there came to hym the last messenger and said, sþi þat kyng of ozquene both accepteth you that the emperor is dead, and how is he dead of the kyng, certenly sþi of the knyght whan he herd of the deeth of his broder kyng flozypes and of his oþer kyngs and that his best was ciene discomfited, he dyed for sorowe as he that was soze sick before because of his hurt that he had in hys backe. Wil of the kyng than I am reuenged on him for me kyng how be it I woulde he were alyue again and at his so that I had again my good kyng of moymal, go your waye again of the kyng go to the kyng of ozquene and

## The story of Arthur

and say that I desyre him to ordeyne re-  
dy to burye the bodies of the emperour &  
of my kinge of moymail, of kyng flo-  
pes of king Bandalin, and of king Cla-  
mados and shew him how that I wyl be  
to mozo. We next comynge to him there  
to do the obseruance of thez burynge  
than the kyng sayd to his broder the arch-  
bisshop saye broder go to the blaunche  
coure and apatulle right hely for the bu-  
ryng of these kynges accordyng to thez  
estatres and your self this night say y ob-  
seruance y belongeth to thez obsequi-  
es, and by goddes licence I shall be there  
to mozo by masse tyme. Wy said y by so  
shon I shal fulfyl your commaundement  
with a right good wyll, and so he departed  
& went to the blaunche coure, & than flo-  
eence came to hi and said, mine own good  
uncle and frend pe be right hettely welcō  
than the king of ozqueny and king Alex-  
ander and al other cles and barons wel-  
comed hym, and when he was chaunged  
he and al his gabred togither and went  
to church & there the byshop did all the  
obseruance & al the ceremonies, and there  
was ordeined .v. rich beeres, and .v. ryth  
crownes of golde hanging ouer them in  
baners and cote armures betwixt with the  
colours of thez armes, and when the by-  
shop had done al the seruice ouer the body-  
es, than they al returned agayne to the pa-  
lays and so rested them tyl the next daye.

How that king Emendus came to the  
blaunche coure with al his noble compa-  
ny to the buryng of the emperour and of  
the other .iiii. kynges. Capl. C. ix.

**H**e next day betimes king Emen-  
dus and al his hooll mounted on  
their horses & toke the way to the  
blaunche coure, and commaunded that all

his hooll shold go in good ordynance as  
they were wont to do in baners and sta-  
nders displayed as though they shold en-  
tre into bataille if neede were, and than he  
sent for the king of ozqueny to y blaunche  
coure and for al his host, and as loone as  
the king of ozqueny knewe of the king E-  
mendus pleasure he departed fro y blaunche  
coure and went to the king, than incont-  
nent the king commaunded him y he shold  
arme hym and al his, for he said he wold  
y the frenche men shold see the sterrenesse of  
his power, so than the king of ozqueny  
and his company went into the first tye  
and in this maner the king Emendus  
came towarde the blaunche coure like a  
mighty puissant king to cheryent that he  
shold be the moze praisyd of the frenche loy-  
des, and there was sitting at a window  
of the castel, florece, king Alexander, the  
archbisshop and the duke of byrman togy-  
ther ever looking for the comynge of king  
Emendus, and at thez windowes there  
stode Arthur, Hector, cyke jophyp and  
the .iiii. carles and .iiii. barons, & the cou-  
phin and the marshal of mypoys and al  
the other knyghtes of fraunce, and at last  
they saw comynge dowayne a great hyl the  
banner of ozqueny waueyng wyth the  
wynd, beynge therein a felde of golde  
enrayled wyth azure, a barre of golde  
with a lion rampaunt golde, and tha they  
hearde trompettes hoynes and tabourres  
blowing merrily, tha they saw crossbowes  
and moysespykes on fote to a great num-  
bre, and knyghtes on horsebacke wel rena-  
ged and in good ordynance in many sta-  
nders and gylmes waueyng wyth  
the wynd, grete hostes haying and biting  
with thez fete, sheldes and helmes sy-  
nyng agens the sonne, and than nexte  
after came the host of the good kyng of  
moymail wepyng and making grete sorow  
without

about any baner saving a lytel girene of  
serval of black colour and curry knight  
of þ company bare theyr spees and þe be  
des down ward and the smal end of the  
shildes up ward. And when the archbyl  
shop saw them coming in þ maner he had  
so gret pite þ he wept for so; ow, and flo  
rence also could not kepe her self fro we  
pyng, and al ocher had gret pite of þ com  
pany, for it semed wel to them þ they wet  
sight sozowful and wout a lord. And af  
ter these people came the king of Irlan  
des host w his baner displayed, wherein  
was beien a libard passant azure crow  
ned w gold barred w flour de lys et spl  
les. Thir people were of a fere counte  
nauce and made gret bytte w homes  
and cabours, and they rode in good ordi  
nauce wel fringed w batayl. After them  
came the baner of Argentebering w felde  
of azure, a knight armed gold on a hois  
silust, and þ; Smer was the leader of  
þ copany, and as sone as the lady Mar  
garet saw her baner she said to florence  
madam my people haue not yet forgoen  
you. As god helpe me saye lady q flo  
rence they be ryght goodly to behold and  
semeth wet to be people to gyue ryght  
good adde, and as they lokid ferdit they  
sa w where þ; Armenton came ryding  
w duke þ philippes baner beting golde, a  
grent embled togyder, pouz d w roses a  
zure, than duke philipp false ponder. 3 se  
my baner. Werry q king Alradet ryght  
lyter and myghty forbat king þ may haue  
suche people at his comithement, than  
they saw where came the baner of þ king  
of balestoun fader to mayster Steuen. 3  
he bare a felde vert w crownes golde  
and chapiettes siluer. And last of al these  
came the ryche baner of kyng Emeus  
wherein was a great slanyng dragon,  
and than there came so muche people þ

at the erth was couered w them and thet  
were so many stardardes and tokens þ a  
man might say that al the world was co  
ming, than king Alexander a his compa  
ny fasto, where was al this people found  
that belongyth to this kinge, it semeth he  
had thought al the world w him. Than  
florence said to kinge Alexander þ; me  
thinketh it wet well done þ pe and your  
company did mount ou your hoeses & go  
and mete my lord a fader, þ; he wil take  
it for a gret honoz and loue. As god helpe  
me madam q the king þe haue said þ; he  
a noble lady ought to say, a so shal we do  
than mounted the king and al ocher riles  
barons and knyghtes wthout any hag  
nes, than king Alexander and the duke of  
byrtala rode togyther w the archbishop and  
Arthur, a soth arches bodes. ii. and. ii. togy  
ther, and they were so goodly to behold þ  
eucep than had maruyle of them, and so  
they passed by w the companyes tyl they  
came to king Emeus, who receiued the  
a ryght swete, and thanked them gretly  
of the gret ayde þ they had done to flo  
rence his daughter, than king Alexander  
rode on the ouer side of king Emeus, a  
the duke of byrtala on the other side, and  
soo they rode for the tyll they came to the  
blaur che toun, a there they alighted, than  
florence came to þ king her fader, a ethe  
of the embraced other and the kyng sayd,  
fair daughter þe haue a good lord that so  
gentil a copany had brought w him out  
of his country. 3 I semel þe bet al wel be  
flowed, than king Emeus toke þ duke  
of byrtala by the hand, a so they. ii. Wence  
toget to church, a there was done the  
seruce for them per our & for the ocher kin  
ges ful solemnyly a there they were ente  
red w gret honoz, a after that Arthur cam  
from rabye church to be dwelled in the same  
place where a the good king of mozmall  
was

## The story of Arthur

was slayne & there he founded a lodge of  
xl. chanoys and eche of the to haue vi. l.  
marke of yerely rent. & whan al these fore  
saya obseruaunce was done þ king Em-  
mus comanded þ at his tentes and paup  
lions shold be pyght vp about the castil,  
the which was done in conyent, & the  
diner was puruated for in the same place.  
and the king Emendus and king Alexan-  
der and þ duke of britaine sat them doune  
to geder at one table, and al other thing. &  
and princes sat doune at an other table  
euery mā after his estate and so there they  
were seated right richly, and florence re-  
mained stil in the castil and her vngles the  
archebishop, duke philip and the master  
wer with her, and whan king Emendus  
had dyned he called to him Arthur & sayde  
Arthur þe haue won on these emperours  
greatesture & riches, wherfore cause the  
to be gadered togider and depart them a-  
monge your knyghts where as it shall  
plese you best, and there as þe shall; þen-  
ch: muel employed. whi lord said Arthur  
th a right good wyl, and so than Arthur  
departed suche riches as was won in the  
felde, in such wise þ euery man heide him  
selte wel content, & euery man saide noble  
knight Arthur god encrease your bounte  
a honoz and god giue you good life, for we  
haue a rich & a noble lord of you, than flo-  
rence & the bishop came out of the castil to  
the kinges tent, and as sone as king Alex-  
ander saw her he rose vp on his feet and  
put of his cap and brought her to her fa-  
der, than the king her fader toke her by þ  
hand and set her doune by him and sayd,  
myrte daughter we haue bene right sore  
displeased for the death of your people, ther-  
fore tis now time þ þe retorne as in  
taking of Arthur to your lord a husband  
for we be accepted thereto and I wil þe  
that go to lanch: & there þe shall be wed-

ded. whi said florence al shall be at your  
pleasure, how be it þe; if it plese your grace  
I wil fyrst go to the poore norye, for there  
is the duchess of britain moder to Arthur  
and al these other ladies wyues to these  
noble lordes þ be here come to Irlund, &  
thi I wil bringe them into this countrey  
and do them suche honoz as I can, as I  
thinke they wil do to me if I wer in their  
countrey. And whan the king her farther  
herd that he smiled and said, sair: dought-  
er florence it pleseth me right well go  
your way to morow, and the kyng of oz  
quene duke philip and Arthur al go  
with you, and for the loue of them I shall  
mete with you and them at Argence. And  
whan the lady Margarete herd that the  
kyng wold go to argence, she sent hater-  
ly þe Emperour apparaple her palays,  
to receyue the kyng and his company  
ryght honourably, and gaue licence to  
her hooft to retorne home, so they were  
all that day in great ioy and sport, a batre  
great honour to king Emendus and to  
al his. thus they passed forth this nyght.

How after the dyscomfite of the po-  
rour and al his people þ king gaue licence  
to al his hooft to depart wher they man ho-  
me, & went him selfe to Argence there to  
make the weddyng betwene Arthur and  
florence, and how that florence went to  
the poore norye to make chere to the du-  
ches of britaine and to the other ladies  
& to bringe them to Argence to be fader  
king Emendus. Capit. C. l.

**A**s the next morning þ kyng  
Emendus rose & gaue licence  
to al his hooft to depart & he  
him selfe forwarde on his iour-  
ney toward Argence, & toke  
with him king Alexander & the duke of brit-  
taine

sayne & al the other earles and barons, &  
 brought them throughout duers of his  
 cities and castels and made them righte  
 greet here and lest, & also florence rose y  
 same daye betymes and entred into her  
 chariot and roke with her the quene of oz  
 queny and the saye lady Margarete, and  
 after her there were other.iii. charyours  
 full of saye ladies and damoysels, & Go  
 uernar and syz Keneles were chiefe rulers  
 of her household, and the kyng of Portu  
 gale, duke of Britayn, Arthur and the master  
 kepte her company, and soo rode forthe  
 togyder tyl they came to the porte noyze  
 Than Arthur, Byssebar and Clemenson  
 were sente somewhat before to lyt the  
 duchess of the comyng of the saye ladye  
 florence, daughter to the myghty Em  
 perour king of Romolys, and to make pur  
 ueyance for her comyng, soo they rode  
 forth so farre tyl at the last on a saterday  
 at nyghte they arrived at the porte noyze,  
 than they alighted and mounted vp to  
 the palays, and than they found the du  
 chess and all the other ladies in the cha  
 pell hearpyng of euensonge, eche of them  
 prayyng for thes lordes, for they were in  
 greete feare of them, for they herde no ma  
 ner of cryynges of them. And as sone as  
 the duchess sawe syz Byssebar, than her  
 herte came to her. And than syz Byssebar  
 kneled down on his kne, but the duchess  
 woulde not suffer hym to knele no leas  
 but reysed hym vp, and than she deman  
 ded cryynges of the duke her husbonde.  
 Than Iehanet steyd forth to here some  
 sprynges of Arthur, than Byssebar said  
 madame my lord the duke dothe ryghte  
 well, and he doth salute you by me, he is  
 with my lord the kyng Emperour who  
 dooth to him righte greete honour, and to  
 al poure other lordes and knyghtes, and  
 also madame my lord Arthur your son

doth humbly recommaund hym to you,  
 as he that is the best knyght and most ho  
 noured of al the world, and to you saye  
 damoysel Iehanet he recommaundeth  
 hym, and knowe you for certayne that  
 wythin these ryghte dayes as he shewed  
 me, he wyl put you vnto greete honour &  
 the most Iehanet cast downe her loke  
 to the erth and gaue a greete sigh. wada  
 me sayd Byssebar to the duchess behold  
 ponder the gentyl, florence, daughter  
 to the noble kyng Emperour who is co  
 myng hyder to you, and byngeth wyth  
 her the kyng of portugale her conyn, and  
 special frende to my lord Arthur your  
 sonne, and also duke whylp of Sabary  
 Arthur, Hector, and mayster & reuen is  
 with her, and al the people are comyng  
 to se you, and to byng you to the myghty  
 kyng Emperour vnto the cite of Ro  
 mence, and there I thinke shal be the ma  
 riage betwene Arthur your son and the  
 noble florence, a good lord sayd the du  
 chess I thanke the syth thou hast gyuen  
 me such a chyld that dooth me soo mo  
 che honour. syz Byssebar sayd Iehan  
 et is this my lord Arthurs loue, that is  
 comyng hyder. ye truly saye loue sayd  
 Byssebar. Certaynly sayd Iehanet I  
 woulde gladly se her, and shal setre and  
 loue her wyth a good herte, yet not wyth  
 standyng I had rather haue had Arthur  
 so haue bene my lord than hers, so they  
 past forth y day & nyghte. And in the morn  
 yng they came messengers before the  
 shewed how that florence wold be there  
 at dyner, than the duchess and al the other  
 counsellies ladies and damoyselles dyt a  
 raye them righte fresshy, and mounted on  
 thes palfreys and rode to entoure flo  
 rence. And at the last Byssebar sayd, ma  
 dame ponder cometh florence out of the  
 forrest syde, and at the same tyme the  
 kyng

## The story of Arthur

king of orqueny and Arthur had a sight  
at an heron with a gentleman so that al  
the ladies had syght cherot. And when  
Florence knew that it was the duchess  
that was coming towards her, she des-  
cended out of her chariot, and the duchess  
did alight fro her palfrey, and embraced  
eche other with great joy and feast than  
Florence said, madame ye be right heart-  
ly welcome into my country as she that  
I am most gladdest to se of al women ly-  
nyng. And when the duchess sawe her  
she marvelled greatly of her gret beauty  
and toke her by the hand and sayd, myn  
own dere lady blessed be the house that  
ever ye were bozne, for there is not in al  
the world agayne none so gentil and so  
fayre as ye be. Madam sayd Florence ye  
saye as it pleaseth you, but howe so ever  
it be I am & shal be your daughter and  
faythful lover for your sonne Arthur is  
gyuen me by the king my father, and so by  
goddes grace he shal be my lord and lover  
and when Jehanne herd that her heart  
trembled, howe be it when she sawe Flo-  
rence come so richly and that she was of  
so gret beauty, she wished in her heart that  
Florence had bene xxiii. yeres elder than  
she was for it greued her heart right sore  
assurance of her & of Arthur, howe be it  
she yeld her self contente because of the  
gret honor and profit of Arthur, & when  
she wente to Florence & embraced her  
and sayde, madame ryght hye honoured  
quene, of you wyl I make myne own de-  
re love the house of al other the gentil Ar-  
thur. And when Florence herd her she de-  
maunded of the duchess what she was, &  
what she went by her saying, than Flo-  
rence and the duchess late downe togidres  
and there the duchess recouered to Flo-  
rence all the hole matter as it was of Arthur  
first wylle, & howe yehanne had sent

for into the forest, & howe she had almost  
esloued Arthur & called hi ever her lord  
and dere love, and kept her self true to hi.

Howe Florence because of the doubt y  
she had lest yehanne should take fro  
her Arthur she gaue her to Gouvernar, &  
gaue them the realm of mormal, and cau-  
sed them to be ensured togyder the same  
houre, and also y same time she caused y  
lady Margaret to be ensured to maister  
Steven.

Capit. C.xi.

When that Florence had been under  
stande the wordes of the duchess  
concerning Jehanne and Arthur  
than in her mynd she doubted that Jehanne  
should let the love betwene her and Ar-  
thur, than she advised her selfe and pur-  
sued therfor right sagely, than she cal-  
led to her Arthur and y king of orqueny  
duke Philip and the maister & so late the  
down al togidres in a company, and there  
she desired the duchess to recount before  
them al the hole matter betwene Arthur  
and Jehanne, and so she did. And when  
the king of orqueny had herd al the mat-  
ter, he had therat gret joy & smiled therat  
at right wyllyngly and sayd to Jehanne  
As god helpe me saye generally domysel  
ye haue right wel deservyd that my lady  
Florence do you much honor and good  
and as helpe me god if she do not I shal  
prouyde for you right hyely for the love  
of y noble Arthur. Wyllyngly said Flo-  
rence by the grace of god I shal make her a gre-  
te lady cal to me Gouvernar and inconty-  
nent he was brought to her than he kne-  
led down before her. Than Florence said  
to the duchess, madame by the sayd that  
ye owe to your lord the duke of byrathne  
and to your son Arthur here being pre-  
sent, & by the saluacyon of your soule cell  
me

me the trowth wheder that your son ar-  
thur & this knyght Gouvernar be ony thi-  
ge of kynne & lignage togyder. As helpe  
me god madame of the duchesse they are  
no thyng of bloode nor kynrede, how be  
it I wold also y Gouvernar were my son  
for he were well worthy for he is a right  
noble knyght, & hath serued my son Ar-  
thur right nobly & truly, wherfore I am  
sure my son Arthur wyl remembre him  
whan y he seeth his tyme. Wel madame  
sayd florence we shall on our part remem-  
bre hym, & than she sayd to Gouvernar, sir  
I am well & credyibly enfourmed that ye  
haue serued Arthur well & truly & nou-  
ryshed & kept him by in his yowthe yght  
well & nobly, therfore it is reason y now  
he make you som what amendes, and to  
you saye damoyzell Jehānet ye haue al-  
wayes well & saythfully loued Arthur,  
wherfore ye shall in lyke wyse haue amē-  
des made to you, than she toke Jehānet  
by the hande and sayde to Gouvernar, sy-  
r knyght here I geue vnto you this saye  
damoyzell Jehānet to be your wyfe and  
spouse for euer, & to you Jehānet I geue  
Gouvernar to be your lord & husbāde,  
wherfore I wyl y eche of you do ensure  
other here before me. Madam of Gover-  
nar I thāke your grace syth it plese you  
I am contente, howe be it my dame in no  
wyse wyl I do it whout I haue the lices  
of my lord Arthur. Than Arthur sayde  
it pleaseth me ryght well for I am chere  
syth it pleaseth my lady florence, than a  
charytayne of the lady florence dyde en-  
sure them togyder, than florence sayd to  
Gouvernar, frend now haue ye a wyfe wh-  
our lord, wherfore here in open audy-  
ence I geue vnto you & to your eyes for  
ouer the noble realme of mozmall, & ther-  
of I make you kynge & lord so y ye hold  
it of Arthur to whome I wyl that ye go

and do him homage, than Gouvernar did  
his feaute to arthur, & Arthur receyued  
it with his open sul of water for toye y  
he had. And whan the duchesse saw Go-  
uernar in that grete honour she wropte  
for toye, than gouernar reuourded to flo-  
rence & thanked her right humbly, than  
the kynge of ozqueny sayd to florence  
my right dere laop: co: p: n: as god helpe  
me ye haue done right wel & honou: aris  
for ye myghtes not better haue employed  
your realme of mozmall than ye haue  
done & than he embraced gouernour and  
sayd, Gouvernar I promyse you that ye  
shall haue saythfull counsel & helpe of me  
& of myn at al times, & in lyke wyse so did  
promyse him al the other kinges, and so  
than euery man bare hi honour as they  
sholde do to a king. Now lordes of flo-  
rence ye haue I not done al y I wold do  
but now syth I haue begon I wil make  
an ende, than she called for the the saye  
lady Margaret of Argenton & mayster  
Steven and sayd ye two haue serued me  
ryght saythfully & truly, wherof I thāke  
you bothe, than she toke the lady by the  
hande and sayd, myne owne gentyl lady  
ye haue bozne me sayth loue & honou: &  
swete company, & ye haue tē euer richte  
nere of my counsel, wherfore madā here  
I geue to you my frende & my clerke &  
gentyl knight mayster Steven who hath  
kept & nourished me sith the begynning  
of my yowth & knowen the secrettes & cues  
of my hert, & curt he hath bozne the key  
of steadfastnes, saye lady I geue him vn-  
to you, he is son to a king and shall be a  
king yf he lyue, as he that is the most a-  
myable clerke, swete sage curters, ho-  
nourable & true in all poyntes, & to you  
mayster I say ye shall haue my Jewel  
wherfore I oue wel this lady Margaret  
I pray you ye shall be my frende & loue

## The story of Arthur

and I giue vnto you my freende & louer  
 Than the mayster kneled downe & than  
 ked florence, thā the noble markes stept  
 forth who was vncle & gouernour of þ  
 lady Margaret & thanked florence w al  
 his hert, thā florence called to her duke  
 Philip and sayd, freende I praye you re-  
 tourne agayne hastely to the king my fa-  
 der & shewe him how þ I haue dysposed  
 the realme of morzmal, & the lande of ar-  
 genton & desyre hym that he wyl sende  
 me his confirmacion in þ behalfe vnder  
 his great scale. Than Duke Philip toke  
 his leue and departed & rode to king E-  
 mendus & recoūted to him al þ florence  
 had comaunded him. And whan the big  
 herde all that he was right ioyous for þ  
 ioue of arthur, and so was al the court  
 so than the king did confirme al florence  
 desyre, & did send vnto her his lettres pa-  
 tentes sealed vnder his great scale, and  
 than florence was mouēd into her cha-  
 riot, & the quene of orqueney and the du-  
 chesse & Jehanne w her, & the countesses  
 rode eche by other next to the chariotes  
 Than the countesse of Flanders sayd to the  
 countesse of Fozeffe, madam this noble  
 lady florence hath done right wysely &  
 nobly to make these marriages, That is  
 true of the lady Fozeffe, she hath done it to  
 thentent that arthur shoulde not resorte  
 to Jehanne other wise than reason & ho-  
 nour wolde. Thā the lady Rossillō sayd  
 ye no w florence wil suffre theyr com-  
 pany in al honour & right, thus these la-  
 dies rode forth talking til they came to  
 the porte norze, where as they were. Illi  
 dayes in great feast & ioye, & there euery  
 day Gouernar talked of his marriage &  
 passed the tyme in al honour w his lady  
 Jehanne, & the mayster in lyke wise w  
 his lady Margaret & sayde how that it  
 was good to serue such a lord & such a

lady þ so hely rewarded theyr seruaun-  
 tes & frendes, & by that tyme duke Phyl-  
 lyp was retourned fro the kynges court  
 and brought w hym the letters patētes  
 of the kynges & there he deliuered to go-  
 uernar & to the mayster the sayd letters,  
 than duke Philip sayd to florence, ma-  
 dame the kyng your father desyreth you  
 to make as grete haste as ye can to þ cite  
 of Argence so þ ye may be there on mon-  
 daye nexte comynge, for there the kyng  
 wyl be redy agaynst your comynge, than  
 florence made her redy, & on þ next mor-  
 nyng betymes departed, & all hir noble  
 company w her, & dyde so moche by her  
 iourneys þ at last she was w in the sight  
 of the hye walles & toures of þ cite of Ar-  
 gence, thā the kyng Emenus whan he  
 knewe of theyr comynge he called all his  
 barons to mouē on theyr horses, and the  
 king Alexander & the king of balefode  
 & the kinge of Almachre & suche knygh-  
 tes of the kyng of morzmalles as was a  
 byden w in the court tyll suche seasō as  
 the kyng had purueyed for them a newe  
 king, & all the people of the cite of Argen-  
 ton went out to mete florence Arthur &  
 theyr lady Margaret, & the people of the  
 londe of morzmal cam to Gouernar & re-  
 ceuyed him as theyr lord & kyng & dyd  
 to hym homage, than they desyred to see  
 theyr newe lady and quene. Who as than  
 was in the chariot w florence apparay-  
 led in bestures ryall, and whan florence  
 knew theyr desyre she caused her to be ta-  
 kē out of the chariot & set on a goodly pal-  
 fray to thentent that every mā might se  
 her, & so than they were gladd to se her,  
 for she was a ryght fayr & a goodly lady  
 & so they made to her reverence & honour  
 as to theyr lady & quene, and the people of  
 the londe of Argenton receuyed mayster  
 & tenen for theyr souerayne lord & spe-  
 cially

cylls by Sump, and in this wyse they came to the ent of the cite, than the mee with them the archbishop and al þ hole clergy of the cite, & every man to his power made great feest and ioye, than the knyghts to florence & al her chenges & queens, dukes & baronelles, rich & countelles, lordes & ladies, knyghtes and damoiselles than the noble king Emours came oute of his palays, and receiued them with honnourably every person after thei estate than the began great feest and ioye, & so went by to the palays and there this noble company were togpyder in grete ioye and symple.

How Arthur wedded the saye florence daughter to the mighty kyng Emendus with great honour & triumph, & kyng Emour wedded the saye Jehanner, and mayster Brien wedded the saye lady Margarete of Wignton all in one daye and one houre. Capitulo. Lxii.



Arthur.

W han that Arthur saw so noble a sygnory & company wer assembled togpyder he went to king Emendus & said, sy and it hke your grace ther is now in this cite assembled righte noble and noble people, for here is now knyghtes, vi. dukes, x. countelles besyde other lordes & knyghtes, wherfore sy may it please your grace to kepe open court for a certayne space, for I beleue truly thes was neuer seen in one daye so many noble men assembled togpyder. He god helpe the son of the king I am content and so shal it be, therfore make ye purveyaunce therfore as ye shal thinke best for your honour & myn, & I well þe wedde florence my daughter here in this cite, and Emourat Jehanner, & the master the lady Margarete. Sy & Arthur in þ name of god al this shal be done accordyng to your comaundment, sy kyng Emour shal abyde & be lodged here in the palays, & my lord & father the duke of

byslayne & all þ other kynges & prynces shal be letted in the cite in noble & saye houses, and than Arthur made the temple to be appareled for hymself to be marryd in, & the abbey of sayntes Emour the for Emour, than there were Jesters, gyltes, & myracles gathered togpyder to a grete nombre so þe they made great myracles & ioye in every part of the cite, so that ther was neuer seen none suche before in no place, than Hector caused a false quintayne to be pright by in the myddes of the cite, & therat ran these yonge knyghtes by knyngs and Cheveringe of theyr speires, and some spake of makinge of a tourney, than was the dolphin

## The story of Arthur

mounted cleane arming holdynge a greace  
 a myghty spere in his hande, & the same  
 tyme the kyng & his aduysers, the kyng Alexander  
 & florece, the duke of brytaine  
 and Arthur wer lokyng out at the win-  
 dows of the palais, & al other kinges &  
 princes were in lyk wyse beholdynge the  
 lusty knyghtes brykynge of speres in eu-  
 ery crete of the cite agens the quynaynes  
 that there were made & ordeyned, & ther-  
 with the dolphin ran at the chesse quin-  
 tayne, & gaue theron suche a stroke y he  
 claued the shelde y hangid theron cleane a  
 sonder, & brake his spere all to sheweys &  
 so passed forth and kept his course, and  
 he was greatly praisid of al the princes  
 and barons, ladies and damoyelles, and  
 thei demaunded whos it was, and it was  
 shewed thei how it was one of the freyshe  
 lordes, wherof many of that countree had  
 great despyte, and spak therof in great  
 displeasure, and at last a knight of y cou-  
 tre of Normoys who was called sir Ber-  
 trand of the toure said to his felowes, lor-  
 des and felowes I se we. y these freyshe  
 men that be now here in this countree be  
 of great pryde and of spere countenance,  
 and by the occasiō of theim we are repu-  
 ted of the lesse valure, for we maye here  
 wel how generally thei be praisid, there-  
 fore I wyl haue thei y wyl suffre it on y  
 leger, wherfore let vs take a tournay a-  
 gainst thei, and that we shal know what  
 thei can do. In the name of god so let it be  
 said diuerse othre. So ther w water was  
 brought into the hal and the tables laid,  
 than to the court ther came kinges du-  
 kes, eyles, barons, and knyghtes fro al par-  
 tes, so that kyng Emeus, king Alex-  
 ander, and the duke of Britayne sate togi-  
 der at one table, and al the other kinges  
 sate one agens another, and every man  
 after his estate, and ther thei were right

ryght y seued, & whan dyner was done  
 & the tables taken away, some went in  
 to the chambres and behelde the ladies  
 daunce and some went & looke out at the  
 saye windowes. And thei sy Bertrand,  
 sy Angele an other knyght thei went  
 sportynge togiðer & spake of the tournay  
 of this tournay agens the freyshe men,  
 and thei founde sy Clemens & sy Hector  
 lymng in a window, and thei thei  
 demaunded of sy Bertrand wherof he &  
 his felaw orde talke. And he answered  
 & sayd how y it was of the tournay. And  
 whan sy Clemens hard thei mynde  
 he was wel of the same accord & sayd,  
 let vs go to duke Goubert of plaines &  
 know of him whether he wil be of y same  
 mynde, so that thei wet to the duke. And  
 whan he saw them he smiled and sayd,  
 welcome be ye sy knyghtes, what ridyn-  
 ges is the with you. Bertrand sy Hector  
 we say y we would saye know  
 what people these freyshe men be with  
 thei swerdes, it is said how that thei do  
 bere them self valiantly at the blacke  
 toure agens the emperor, how be it we  
 know it not, so we werenot there pre-  
 sent, therfore sy we are in mynde to ma-  
 ke a tournay agens them, and we wold  
 know your mynde whether ye wyl be on  
 our syde or not. And wha the duke Gon-  
 bert harde thei myndes it pleased him  
 right wel & sayd, let vs go to king Emeus  
 & despye graunt of him for this tour-  
 nay, & so thei al went togiðer and entred  
 into the chambere where as king Emeus  
 & a king Alexander of malogre and  
 the other eyles of France wer, there was  
 also Hector duke of goule & the dolphin  
 of bien, & the lord Beamen, the marshal  
 of myrpois, & the lord y lafonse. Than  
 the duke Goubert to king Emeus,  
 sy behelde herethis dolphin who

truly is a gentyl knyght, & verily he made yesterday a fayre tourney at a quintaine. Whereof he was greatly praised, and not without a good cause, and he hath thereby so quickened so the hartes of the knyghtes of this your countre so þat they haue a gret desire to make a turnay here in this cite yf it please you to graunte as leue, & sic we would be right gladd and ioyous if it wold please some of these frethe lordes & knyghtes to come forth & play them wth vs in this tourney, so we would take it for great loue, and pray the therof ryght hertely. Wherby so þat the kynge of malogre we shal not saye the nfor so lytel a thing, yf it please them let it be done to morow n:xt. And so be it q so þat Bertrande. In the name of god q kynge Sme dus we wil þat it shal be to morow, so to morow we wyl make the solempnyfacyon of the weddynge of Arthur & of my doughter Florence & of Gouvernat & Jehannet, & of the mayster & the lady Margarete, but the fourth day after Jamcoient þis tourney be done, wel q kyng Alexander it shal be as it pleaseh you. That the duke Goubert, so þat Bertrande and their copany departed fro the kyng and wnt down into the palays, and ther thei shewed to all the other knyghtes of their countre how þat they had taken a tourney against the frenche men to behold the fourth day after þe marriage, & so there wnt to the nombre of .v. M. that promysed to turnay togider of one part against the frenche men, & made their anauntes how þat they wold bere down to the erth al the frenche men & wyne al their horses. So this daye ther was grete feest & ioye throughtout al þe palays yf it was nyght, so everyman that went to the ryces tyl the next mornynge. The next mornynge betimes king Sme dus and all

Arthur,

other kinges & noble lordes did ryse, thā the king caused Arthur to be apparailled in vestures royal lyke a kyng, he had on a byrtel of flamig grene like an emeraude & a mantel of scarlet furred wth ermynes & so he stode before al þe kinges wth a freshe lyuely colour, & he was byg and byer by the head thā any other, & ther was hold before him by .iii. grette lordes a rich crowne of golde a seprer royal & a naked swerde, in signyfeng that he was chiefe chāpyon of al the realme, & al þat appertaineth to the crowne of Soroloy, thā þe duke hitz fader beheld hi wel & þe Water dasher into his eye for ioye that he had to se his sone in the great honour, thā tharchebisshop was redy in his pontificalibus to do theobseruaunce, & so wth great noyse of minstrelly Arthur was rialy brought to chirche, & than flozere was apparailled like a great quene as she was, crownd wth golde, & the quene of orqueny wnt on her one syde, & the quene of Jsmalire on her other side somewhat behind her, & alother quenes durche lles couiteuses & ladies cam after her, & the king Alexander & the kyng of orqueny her colyn led her to chirche, and there arthur maryed her wth great ioye, and ther was so great feest ioye & bruit made þat none coude scat here other bicause of the noyse of the instrumetes. Also Gouvernat was in the abbay of S. Germaines apparailled lyke a king, and with him was duke Philip, the dolphin and Hector, and al the barons of normall and ther he wedded Jehannet wth moche great ioye & pleasure. And also the geyl mayster was freschly apparailled lyke þe sone of a king, he was alwayes ffre and swete of hert wth a smylyng countenaunce & a gracious clerke aboue al other, & also ryght good & a valiaunt hardy knyght and with him ther was the king of bale-

G.iii. founde

## The story of Arthur

Founde his fader who hadde  
 ryght grete ioye whan he  
 sawe his sonne gentyl and  
 so gracious, there was also  
 with hym knyghts, Aueleon, knyght  
 Byssebar, knyght Mordant, & knyght  
 Rowlande of blygou, thā the  
 maister wedded the faire la-  
 dy Margarete wth grete ioye  
 & triumphe, & whā his wed-  
 dyng was done he moued  
 on a great courser, & a man-  
 tel of gren about him, & the  
 kyng his fader by hym, & o-  
 ther knyghtes to the nobre  
 of .v. C. & such a noyse of mun-  
 dre as befōr hym as though  
 all the world shoulde haue ri-  
 uen a sonder, & in that wyse  
 he came to the court of king



Emedus, & also there came king Gouer-  
 nat to the court after þe was wedded  
 wth grete ioye & myrth, than ther was ma-  
 de the grettest ioye & feest þe coude be deu-  
 sed, & þe mayster kept his feest at knyghts Em-  
 eries, & Gouerнат at thabbey of S. Ger-  
 maine and Arthur kept the court in þe pa-  
 lays, & this feest endured a hole moneth,  
 thus Arthur laye þe nyght wth the gentyl  
 Florence, & the same night engendred on  
 her a fayre sone whom the kyng Alexan-  
 der dyde holde ouer the fonte, & was na-  
 med Alexander after his name, the whi-  
 che chylde was afterwarde emperour of  
 ynde the more and of Constantinoble as  
 ye shal here more playnly here after.

Now the frensche knyghtes, & those  
 of Normans, of Argence, of Orqueny,  
 of Mormal, of Fflinaclyte, of Dalefoude,  
 and of Sabary dyde tournay togoder  
 wherof Arthur and Gouerнат had the  
 honour.

Capitulo. L. xiii.



The fourth daye after the ma-  
 ryage duryng the feest, duke  
 Goubert, knyght Bietrande, knyght  
 Clemenson, & knyght Berdecas  
 went to king Alexander and  
 desyred him to remembre the tournay þe  
 the had enterprysed, & with the wordes  
 Arthur came to them, than kyng Alex-  
 ander answered & sayde. Fayre lordes in  
 goddes name let it be done to morowe,  
 than he dyd sende for all þe erles barons  
 and knyghtes of France & shewed them  
 of the tournay to be holden the next day  
 wherof the had grete ioye, & every man  
 comaunded that they harneys shoulde be  
 made redy apenst the next morning, and  
 than the tidinges sprad ouer al the cite  
 how that þe frensche men shoulde tournay  
 apenst the knyghtes of that countre who  
 were in t. obye. & apenst one frensche man  
 And whan Arthur vnderstode þe he sente  
 for Gouerнат, & whan he was come to  
 hym he dyd shew him apert and sayd, sende

to morow shall be the tourney agaynst  
our men, wherfore we ought to kepe & de  
fend them, wherfore we must aduise vs  
how we shall do, for I se the knyghtes of  
this countrey haue greet enuy at this fren  
che knyghtes, & they are .x. tymes as ma  
ny as our people be, wherfore I doubt  
me that our knyghtes shoulde haue some  
hylap, & I had rather dye than suffer y  
therfore I shall shew you what we shall  
do, when the tourney shall be to morow  
begon, I shall come to your lodgynge as  
pryuely as I can, and there ye shall abide  
me, and then we will arme vs both in straū  
ge harnes, so thentent that we shoulde not  
be knowen and then we will go to the tur  
ney and helpe our knyghtes, for I thinke  
they shall haue grete nede of vs, & Hector  
and the Dolphin shall be in the fyrst front  
and yf I can, duke Whyllyp, the mayster  
and Wysebar shall not turney agaynst  
our knyghtes, because they haue bene in  
fraunce, and haue had there righte good  
chere and as for al the remenant I care  
not for, as for them they be oure frendes  
and lothe I were to displesse them, kepe  
secrete this matter yf no man knowe ther  
of, for I wyl that we do this as couerly  
as we can. In the name of god so be it q  
Gouernat, and so euery man ogeth to his  
rest for that day, and the next mornynge  
betwix, euery man rose and so went and  
herd masse, and after toke a sop in wine  
Then the knyghtes ran to theyr harnes  
on euery side, than hoynes and trompetes  
began to sowne in euery strete of y city &  
than duke Goubert and al his company  
wer redy aparailled and so pssued into the  
felde. Then kynge Alexander dyd arme  
hym and al his company. Then Arthur  
came to king Emenous and with hym  
was the kynge of ozquency, than Arthur  
said, sye the knyghtes of this your countrey

are .x. tymes as many as are these frenche  
knyghtes, and sye they are of luche counte  
ryons that they wyl neuer recule back to  
die therfor, & sye I knowe not the mynres  
of this your knyghtes, for yf they thinke  
to ouercome them and take therfor it ca  
be none other wise but yf many shall dye  
in the quarell, sye me thinketh therfor y  
it were well done yf I shoulde cause be ar  
med. v. hondred knyghtes and take them  
with me to kepe yf none yf shoulde be done  
In the name of god q kynge Emenous  
so be it than departed Arthur to he had  
that he despyed, than he toke w hym sye  
Wysebar and sye Terresin his new &  
did hit the chambere doore after them, than  
he said too sye Wysebar, sye I loue you &  
take you of my pryue counsaile, it is so  
there be many knyghtes apent oure fren  
che men, for I se well they are satre ouer  
matched, wherfore I wyl go apde them  
wherfore I wyl haue sye Terresin a men  
in my harnes, for he is ny of the same  
bygnes yf I am of, & he shall take w hym  
v. hondred knyghtes wyl armed & go too  
the turnay to kepe the felde that no hurt  
shall be done, and no mā shall know but yf  
it were I and ye sye Wysebar & I wyl go  
to Gouernars lodging as pryuely as we  
can, and there he & I wyl arme vs in some  
straunge harnes, so thentent yf no man  
shall know vs, wherfore I pray you dy  
couer me not, so than sye Terresin was  
armed in Arthurs armur & toke w hi. v  
hondred & pssued out of the Citie w gre  
noyse of trompetes and tabours, than cu  
ke Goubert sayd ponder cometh Arthur  
to kepe the felde so thentent that we shoulde  
do none ouerage too these frenche men.  
So than in the first front was duke Hes  
to, the Dolphin and the lord de la roud  
than all the other kynges and the duke  
of britayne mounted on theyr horses to be  
holde

## The story of Arthur

holde the tourney, and also theyder came the kyng of valefount and mayster Secuen hys son wyth hym, and .v. hondred knyghtes in his compayn. And whan the frenche men were entred into the fylde they were more .x. part so many as the other were. And whan mayster Secuen saw that he said to his fader, sy beholde ponder the knyghtes of grete hardynes leping they countenaunces, for they bee nothyng abashed for al that they be so far re ouermatched, than Arthur wence ppyrly to thabbey of saynt Germaines to Gouvernar, and there they armed them in strange harnes, and moued on .ii. grece coursers. And whan the frenche men were arenged, than Hector aduysed wel sy Rowland of bygoz who was compynge toward hym, than Hector rushe to his hoys and encounterd sir Rowland so rudely y he combled ouer his hoys taple than kyng Emendus sayde to the duke of byrpayne, sy this begynnyng is on your parte, than the dolphyn encountered at one scrilhe sy de la lound and sy Adorand & ouerthrewe them bothe to the earth, than the turney began to be maruailous fiers but the frenche knyghtes were sozeouer matched, wherfore they endured muche payn & at last Arthur & Gouvernar came toward the preleal dysgysed, than Arthur sayde too Gouvernar, sy whan ye se Hector bydde hym kepe vs .ii. compayn but be wel ware that he knowe you not, with a good wel sy q Gouvernar and so they rode forth saye a soferly, and whā duke Philp saw them compynge he sayd to the kyng, sy beholde ponder cometh two strange knyghtes, it semeth by they compynge that they are afrayd of the first strokes, therw they approached to the tourney, than Gouvernar thewed too Arthur sy Bertrand by whom the turnay was

first begon, and also the duke Gouberte who gaue many grete strokes to his swoorde, and cherw Arthur & Gouvernar stood styll and beheld them, than kyng Emendus sayde, I thynke ponder .ii. knyghtes doubte greatly these strokes. Pely they do wisely q duke Philp, therw Gouvernar ran at sir Bertrand & bare him cleue out of his sadel. Mary sayd the kyng & wehe we haue mocked ponder knyghtes wrougthfully, we shal se sone whatech other knight can do therw Arthur ran at duke Goubert and encountred him so rudely y he sent bothe hoys and knight all to therch in a hepe than he toke his swoorde & lapt on round about him so that he confounded y euer he attayned vnto, & Gouvernar was not behynd for his parte. Saynt mary q the kyng who knoweth ponder knyghtes, they seme to be the best knyghtes of al the world. sy sayde the kyng of ozquency but y I se Arthur ponder withoute the felde & wolde iape elles playnly that it were he, by that tyme Arthur had broken that grete prele, than he espyed where the dolphyn & Hector & the erle of mountbatal and .xxx. of their compayn were soze ouerladen, for there were many on them, and by that tyme the duke Gouberte was hoysed ne w agayne, than Arthur ran at hym and strake hym soo rudely on the helme soo that he was thereby in a traunce and hys hoys bare hym all about the fylde, xlii at the last he came before kyng Emendus where as he was, and than he came to hym selfe agayne and sayd, al the deuyles of hell take suche a carpenter, and he that fyrste brought him into this countrey, than Arthur was soze handled in the preale, but than he rushed forth and charged so his swerde on these knyghtes in suche wise that he and Gouvernar bet downe al that

one that before them. And when þe  
frenche knyghtes saw þe these. ii. knygh-  
tes do helpe and ayde the so nobly, than  
they toke on them so great hardines that  
they confounded al that were before the,  
than knyghtes of the other part sayd let  
us fle away for and we abide, wech wil so  
lowe therby, and so than they fled a way  
on every syde fro him, than the king a su-  
che as were in his company and al other þe  
dyd behold the tourney had great mar-  
uile of the dedes of the. ii. knyghtes and  
mayster steuen perceived wel the play  
of Arthur than he knewe well þe it was  
he and said softly to hym selfe, a gentyl  
knyght þe comest not farle thy frendes  
I can not suffre any longer that ye shold  
endure moze trauayle, than the mayster  
blowes suche a blow þe there rose suddenly  
in the tourney suche a myst þe one coulde  
scant se an other, than Arthur and Gouver-  
nar departed as pryncipe as they coulde  
went to shabbye of so. Germain and so  
than every man went to theirowne lod-  
ges, and as sone as they wer vnarmed al  
the french men went to king Alexanders  
lodging, and they went all togider to the  
knynges court, and the king Emendous bid  
welcome them and made to them ryght  
great fest and loye, and was ryght gladd of  
the great prynces that he had lene in them  
that day, than the king toke kinge Alex-  
ander by the hand and demaunded of hi  
what. ii. knyghtes that they were that so  
nobly dyd tourney on their part that day  
and where that they were. And he answe-  
red and sayd, I can not tell you what  
they be, nor where they are becom. And  
the king enquired of al the other if they  
could tell any poyntes of them, and when  
the kinge sawe that he could haue noo  
knowlege of them he fell sodenly in  
a greene ruyde, and as he stode so my-

syng Arthur and Gouvernar came to the  
court, than the kinge embraced them and  
demanded if they knewe any thyng of  
chole. ii. woo knyghtes that hadde coone  
so greete prynces. And they answered  
that they knewe nothyng of theym.  
So than they washed and wente to dy-  
ner, and after dyner they spozed theym  
every man as he liked best, and as byng  
Emendous sawe these knyghtes spozyn-  
ge of them in the palays, he remembred  
the two knyghtes and again demaunded  
if any body knewe them. And when the  
mayster sawe the knyng in that case he ca-  
me to him and said saye and softely, I  
believe certainly that these. ii. woo knygh-  
tes that ye desyre so sore to knowe was  
Arthur and Gouvernar. Than the king  
had ryght greete loye, and so wente to  
them and embraced wyth wepyng eyes  
for loye, and sayd in open audyence, I  
haue gyuen my daughter to Arthur I  
repente me not, for I could not haue be-  
lieued her moze nobly than on hym, for  
I coulde not haue beleued to haue seene  
so muche noblenes in one knyght as I  
haue seene in hym this day, than the kinge  
made so greete feast and loye that it  
was maruayle to beholde, thus continued  
the feast. xv. dayes. Than all the ladyes  
would recuthe into fraunce wherof Flo-  
rence was ryght sorowfull, howe be it we  
dyd so muche that they all abode there  
xv. dayes and so than they departed. Than  
king Emendous a florence and al other  
lordes and ladies broughte Gouvernar  
Iohannet into theyr londe of mozmall,  
and there they were receiued with greete  
loy and honoz, and caried there. viii. dayes

Howe after the maryage of Arthur  
the barons and ladies of fraunce returned  
into theyr owne countreys except king  
Florence

## The story of Arthur

Alexander whom king Emendus kept  
 up to the harte him grete chere, and he  
 tarped there soo longe tyl that florence  
 was deliuered of a fayre son who kinge  
 Alexander held on the fons. Ca. L. xiiij.

**A**fter that these viij. dayes we  
 re synysshed than the frenche  
 lordes ladyes & knyghtes to-  
 ke thep leue of kyng Emen-  
 dus, who conuayned them. iiij.  
 dayes iourney, than king Emendus and  
 florence toke thep leue of the duke of byr-  
 rayne and of al the other lordes & knygh-  
 tes ladies and damoysels, and florence re-  
 quyred them to recourne into þ country  
 agayn as shortly as they myght, for she  
 sayd she wolde gladly haue gone wth  
 sayng for keepng of compaigne wth  
 the kynges fader, soo eche of them kyssed  
 other & so departed, and Arthur & Gouer-  
 nar dyd conuey them a lytel waye, than  
 the duke of byrrayne sayd to Arthur his  
 sonne, good sonne thynke alway to please  
 wel the noble king Emendus, & Arthur  
 promysed hym so to do, & than he toke his  
 leue of the duchesse hi modre & kyssed ech  
 other wth wynging even, so than the du-  
 ke and the duchesse toke their way home-  
 ward and Arthur & Gouernar returned  
 to the kyng, and sold him and king Alex-  
 ander togyder, for kyng Emendus had  
 so entreted kyng Alexander that he pro-  
 mysed hym to abyde in his compaign for  
 a certayne space, and so he abode there so  
 long in grete myght and pleasure tyl at last  
 the noble quene florence was brought a  
 bed and had a fayre sonne. And on a fayre  
 daye king Alexander Arthur and Gou-  
 uernar were spoyntinge them by a ryuer  
 syde, there came a messenger rydynge to  
 them a greet pace and sayd to Arthur sy-  
 I haue brought pou good tidings, sy- him

ge Emendus both send þan thep þan  
 þ your noble quene florence is broughte  
 a bed of a fayre sonne, wherfore he desy-  
 reth pou to come as fast as ye can, for þ  
 king wil desire king Alexander and king  
 Gouernar to hold þan on the fons, & king  
 Arthur herd þ he was righte toful and  
 said to the messager, I gyue the for the tyde  
 ges. Ca. li. I ord where lordes & ladyes best  
 to haue te, thā the squier chāned hē tye  
 hūbly so than they rode togyth, and he  
 came to king Emendus who made righte  
 greet loy of them, and wher solemynly  
 the chylde was than broughte to church &  
 cristened and had to his godfathers king  
 Emendus, king Alexander and king go-  
 uernar, and was called Alexander, and  
 at their coming fro the church there was  
 made suche feast and chere and reuel þ  
 was wonder to behold, for there was no  
 thing þ could haue made king Emendus  
 more toful than he was, for he had hym  
 al his request of god, for his prayer was  
 euer that florence might haue a chylde  
 male of her body bozne to succede in the  
 realme, and this chylde was the most fau-  
 ourd chylde toward of the world, and wel cou-  
 med byg and myghty, and he had on his  
 sholdre a fayre crose as rubby as a red  
 rose wherof kyng Emendus sayde that  
 it was a sygne that he shoulde attayne to  
 muche honour, for so he bsd after in dede  
 for he was o he died emperor of ynde the  
 more and of constantynoble, and was re-  
 vered by his petyers by many other realmes.

**C**how king Alexander returned into his  
 country and led wth hym Arthur Gouer-  
 nar. Hector and master & truch, & setten  
 in byrrayne so long tyl florence sent for  
 Arthur becaus þ her father kyng Emen-  
 dus was departed this life wherof she  
 made grete lamentacion. Ca. li. v.

**W**han that kynge Alexander had bene a longe season with kynge Emendus he toke leue of hym & retourned into fraunce, & there went with hym Arthur, Gouvernar, Hector, and mayster Dreuen, & within a whyle after that they were departed king Emendus, what for the grete Joye y<sup>e</sup> he had of his son & for suche labour as he toke before he fell seke & laye in his bedde, & as th<sup>e</sup> Roys sayth he laye but. vii. weekes but that he dyed, & kynge Alexander & suche other as went with hym rode so longe by their



Journeys tyll at laste they arriued in the lond of bryptayn, than a messenger wente before to the duke & he wold how y<sup>e</sup> they wolde be with hym on the monday next comynge. And whan the duke herde that he was neuer so ioyefull before, than the duke sent for al his lordes & ladies of his court y<sup>e</sup> they shoulde be with him at y<sup>e</sup> receyvinge of his son Arthur & of such other as came with hym, & so they dyd, & the same daye Arthur arriued there & was receyued w<sup>th</sup> grete feest and ioye the whiche feest endured. viii. dayes, than all they couyned kynge Alexander in to his owne realme. It needeth not to be demaunded whether that Arthur and his company had there good there or not.

**H**ow Arthur was set for because of the deeth of king Emendus, and how y<sup>e</sup> he was crowned kynge of sozoloys. Ca. Cxvi.




Arthur and his company were a grete season with kynge Alexander and hadde ryght good chere. and on a day as he sat at the table there came in a messenger fro

his lady florence, and he kneled down and arthur dydarise & went to hym and receyued of him a letter sent to hym fro florence the whiche arthur incontinent dolyke by, & therein he found how that the myghty kinge Emendus was dead, wherof he & al that company made righte great sorow, than arthur despyed kynge Alexander y<sup>e</sup> he wolde go with him agayne into the realme of sozoloys, & he graunted him so to do w<sup>th</sup> a right good herte, so thā incontinent they apparayled for their departing, & so mounted on they<sup>r</sup> horses & dyd so much by they<sup>r</sup> Journeys y<sup>e</sup> they arriued in y<sup>e</sup> realme of sozoloys, & there they founde florence making righte great sorow for the deeth of the kynge her ladye but as sone as she saw her ladye Arthur her herte reuiued, in suche wise that she forgat in a maner halfe her sorowe, than the next day the corpes was borne to the chyrche, & with great solempnite there he was ryally buried as it appertayned to such a noble prince, than w<sup>th</sup>en a while after kynge Alexander sayd that it was tyme to make purveyaunce for Arthurs crownacon, than there was sent for al

## The history of Arthur

the kinges, dukes, erles, barons, knyghts and squyers and al theyr kinne and frendes and there came thither people without nombre, that arthur was there with greates triumphe renowned with golde and toke homaige of euery man, & after his crownacion the feast endured. viii. dayes euery man makinge greatesoye for the death of her father, and after this greatesoye and tope and that euery man had made homaige to arthur for theyr lordomes, dukedomes and baronies and for all theyr landes, than euery man departed into theyr owne countreys, and euery after arthur, gouernat hector, and the mayster loued eche other and helde so fast together that none of theyr enemies durste neuer approche on none of them, and so they blessed theyr lyues in greathonour and loue, & peas and vnion was euery betwene the & theyr subiectes for as long as they liued there was neuer none of that euery moued any warre agaynst them, thus arthur and florence reigned in greatesoye, by ad and soze doubted of all the worlde, and byd many sayre conquestes, for he conquered o he d. viii. realmes and diuerse countreys and ryche seignories, but he liued not longe after

There is deuysed how longe that arthur liued, and how that he was buried. Cap. C. xvi.

 The historye recounteth that the noble Arthur liued bur. xxxii. yere and that he died, & the quene florence whome he loued so well dyed for sozowe & so they were bothe buried with greatesoye, & layde bothe in the tombe with kinge Emendus, on the

Whiche tombe there was wyte this epitaph, here lyeth the myghty kyng Emendus Arthur and florence his wife who ledde so good lyfe togider that they were neuer displeased eyther with other, and gouernat, hector, and the mayster made greatesoye for the deeth of Arthur, & the yonge Allynader son to arthur, & to florence was in the gubping of kyng gouernat, of hector, & of the genyll mayster Allyn, who afterwarde was Emperour of ynde & of Constantinoble, and thus endeth the historye of the valyaunte knyght Arthur son to the duke of Byscayne, & of the noble lady florence daughter to the myghty kyng Emendus kyng of the realme of Byscayne. And all those that rederth or hereth this historye I pray god sende them blessed perourable.

Amen.

Here endeth the historye of Arthur of Byscayne.

Printed at London in Dowles church yeard at the signe of the Cocke by Roberte Redbozne.

